

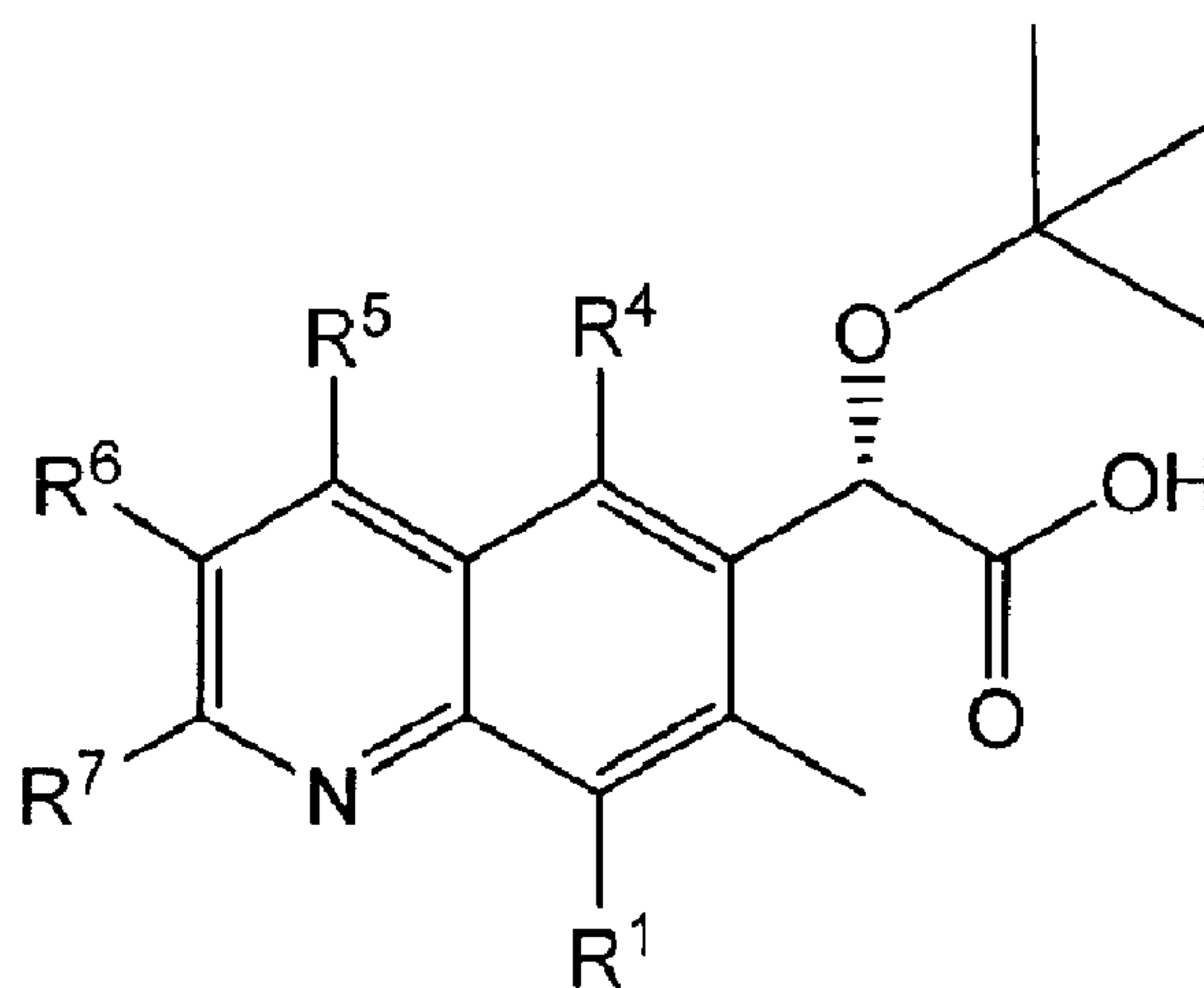


(86) Date de dépôt PCT/PCT Filing Date: 2011/07/01
(87) Date publication PCT/PCT Publication Date: 2012/01/05
(45) Date de délivrance/Issue Date: 2018/10/16
(85) Entrée phase nationale/National Entry: 2012/12/12
(86) N° demande PCT/PCT Application No.: US 2011/042881
(87) N° publication PCT/PCT Publication No.: 2012/003498
(30) Priorité/Priority: 2010/07/02 (US61/361,335)

(51) Cl.Int./Int.Cl. *C07D 215/06* (2006.01),
A61K 31/47 (2006.01), *A61P 31/18* (2006.01),
C07D 215/14 (2006.01), *C07D 215/18* (2006.01),
C07D 215/227 (2006.01), *C07D 215/38* (2006.01),
C07D 215/48 (2006.01), *C07D 401/04* (2006.01),
C07D 401/12 (2006.01), *C07D 405/04* (2006.01),
C07D 413/04 (2006.01), ...

(72) Inventeurs/Inventors:
BABA OGLU, KERIM, US;
BJORN SON, KYLA, US;
GUO, HONGYAN, US;
HALCOMB, RANDALL L., US;
...

(54) Titre : DERIVES D'ACIDE 2-QUINOLINYL-ACETIQUE EN TANT QUE COMPOSES ANTIVIRAUX CONTRE LE VIH
(54) Title: 2-QUINOLINYL-ACETIC ACID DERIVATIVES AS HIV ANTIVIRAL COMPOUNDS



Ih

(57) Abrégé/Abstract:

The invention provides compounds of formula (I): or a salt thereof as described herein. The invention also provides pharmaceutical compositions comprising a compound of formula (I), processes for preparing compounds of formula (I), intermediates useful for

(51) Cl.Int./Int.Cl. (suite/continued) *C07D 417/04* (2006.01), *C07D 487/04* (2006.01), *C07D 519/00* (2006.01)

(72) Inventeurs(suite)/Inventors(continued): LINK, JOHN O., US; LIU, HONGTAO, US; MITCHELL, MICHAEL L., US; SUN, JIANYU, US; VIVIAN, RANDALL W., US; XU, LIANHONG, US; TAYLOR, JAMES, US

(73) Propriétaires(suite)/Owners(continued): GILEAD SCIENCES, INC., US

(74) Agent: ROBIC

(57) Abrégé(suite)/Abstract(continued):

preparing compounds of formula I and therapeutic methods for treating the proliferation of the HIV virus, treating AIDS or delaying the onset of AIDS or ARC symptoms in a mammal using compounds of formula (I).

(12) INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(19) World Intellectual Property Organization
International Bureau(43) International Publication Date
5 January 2012 (05.01.2012)

PCT

(10) International Publication Number
WO 2012/003498 A1

(51) International Patent Classification:

C07D 215/06 (2006.01) **C07D 413/04** (2006.01)
C07D 215/14 (2006.01) **C07D 417/04** (2006.01)
C07D 215/18 (2006.01) **C07D 487/04** (2006.01)
C07D 215/38 (2006.01) **C07D 519/00** (2006.01)
C07D 215/48 (2006.01) **C07D 215/227** (2006.01)
C07D 401/04 (2006.01) **A61P 31/18** (2006.01)
C07D 401/12 (2006.01) **A61K 31/47** (2006.01)
C07D 405/04 (2006.01)

(21) International Application Number:

PCT/US2011/042881

(22) International Filing Date:

1 July 2011 (01.07.2011)

(25) Filing Language:

English

(26) Publication Language:

English

(30) Priority Data:

61/361,335 2 July 2010 (02.07.2010) US

(71) Applicant (for all designated States except US):
GILEAD SCIENCES, INC. [US/US]; 333 Lakeside Drive, Foster City, CA 94404 (US).

(72) Inventors; and

(71) Applicants : **BABA OGLU, Kerim** [US/US]; 39 Kathleen Ct., Pacifica, CA 94044 (US). **BJORNSEN, Kyla** [US/US]; 333 Lakeside Drive, Foster City, CA 94404 (US). **GUO, Hongyan** [CN/US]; 1743 Maxine Avenue, San Mateo, CA 94401 (US). **HALCOMB, Randall, L.** [US/US]; 892 Gull Avenue, Foster City, CA 94404 (US). **LINK, John, O.** [US/US]; 74 Prospect Avenue, San Francisco, CA 94110 (US). **LIU, Hongtao** [CN/US]; 10320 Orange Avenue, Cupertino, CA 95014 (US). **MITCHELL, Michael, L.** [US/US]; 108 Crossing Court,

Hayward, CA 94544 (US). **SUN, Jianyu** [CA/US]; 1592 Lago Street, Apt. 100, San Mateo, CA 94403 (US). **VIVIAN, Randall, W.** [US/US]; 1430 Via Vista, San Mateo, CA 94404 (US). **XU, Lianhong** [US/US]; 970 Blair Court, Palo Alto, CA 94404 (US).

(74) Agents: **MICKELSON, John, W.** et al.; Viksnins Harris & Padys PLLP, P.O. Box 111098, St. Paul, MN 55111-1098 (US).

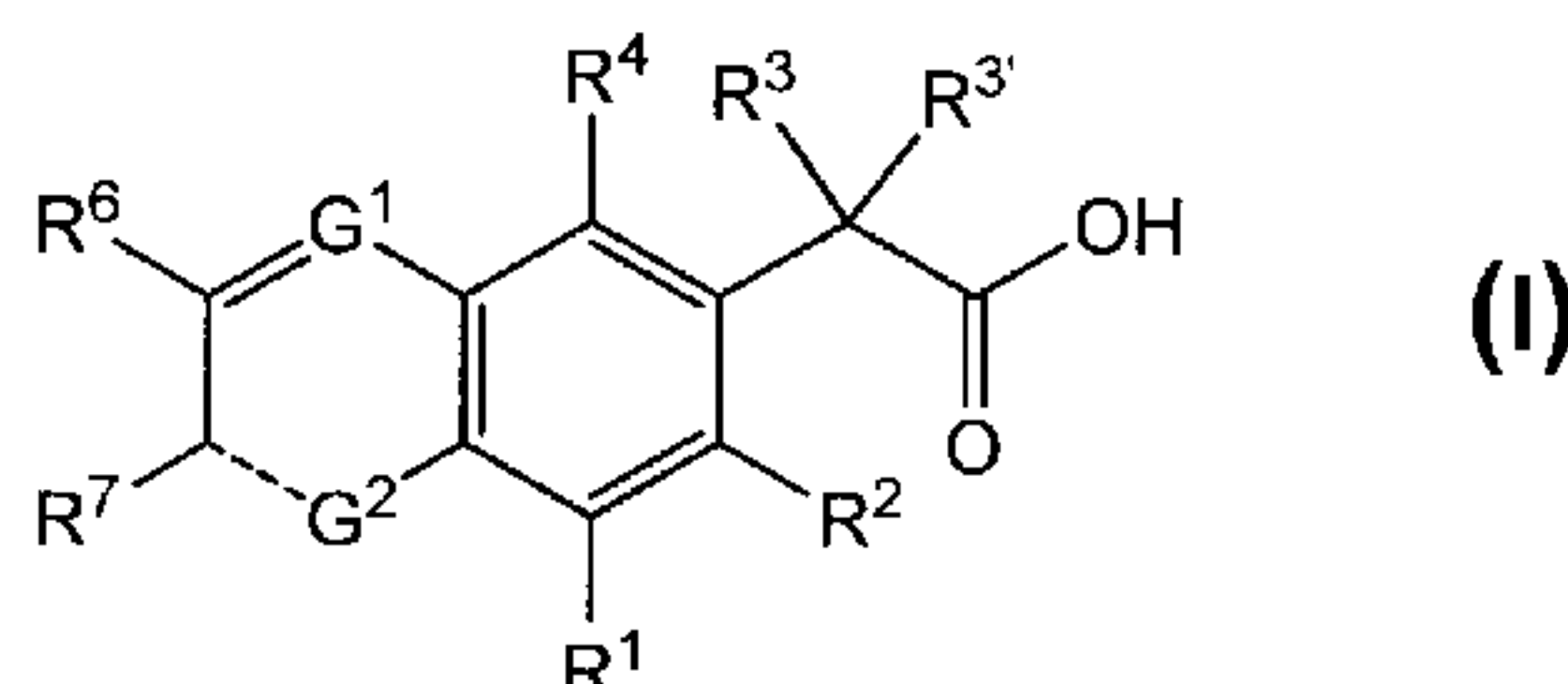
(81) Designated States (unless otherwise indicated, for every kind of national protection available): AE, AG, AL, AM, AO, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BH, BR, BW, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CL, CN, CO, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, DO, DZ, EC, EE, EG, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, GT, HN, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KM, KN, KP, KR, KZ, LA, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LY, MA, MD, ME, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MY, MZ, NA, NG, NI, NO, NZ, OM, PE, PG, PH, PL, PT, RO, RS, RU, SC, SD, SE, SG, SK, SL, SM, ST, SV, SY, TH, TJ, TM, TN, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VC, VN, ZA, ZM, ZW.

(84) Designated States (unless otherwise indicated, for every kind of regional protection available): ARIPO (BW, GH, GM, KE, LR, LS, MW, MZ, NA, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZM, ZW), Eurasian (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European (AL, AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HR, HU, IE, IS, IT, LT, LU, LV, MC, MK, MT, NL, NO, PL, PT, RO, RS, SE, SI, SK, SM, TR), OAPI (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GQ, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

Published:

— with international search report (Art. 21(3))

(54) Title: 2 -QUINOLINYL- ACETIC ACID DERIVATIVES AS HIV ANTIVIRAL COMPOUNDS



(57) Abstract: The invention provides compounds of formula (I): or a salt thereof as described herein. The invention also provides pharmaceutical compositions comprising a compound of formula (I), processes for preparing compounds of formula (I), intermediates useful for preparing compounds of formula I and therapeutic methods for treating the proliferation of the HIV virus, treating AIDS or delaying the onset of AIDS or ARC symptoms in a mammal using compounds of formula (I).

DEMANDES OU BREVETS VOLUMINEUX

**LA PRÉSENTE PARTIE DE CETTE DEMANDE OU CE BREVETS
COMPREND PLUS D'UN TOME.**

CECI EST LE TOME __1__ DE __2__

NOTE: Pour les tomes additionels, veuillez contacter le Bureau Canadien des Brevets.

JUMBO APPLICATIONS / PATENTS

**THIS SECTION OF THE APPLICATION / PATENT CONTAINS MORE
THAN ONE VOLUME.**

THIS IS VOLUME __1__ OF __2__

NOTE: For additional volumes please contact the Canadian Patent Office.

2-QUINOLINYL-ACETIC ACID DERIVATIVES AS HIV ANTIVIRAL COMPOUNDS

Cross Reference to Related Application

This patent application claims the benefit of priority of U.S. application serial
 5 No. 61/361335, filed July 2, 2010.

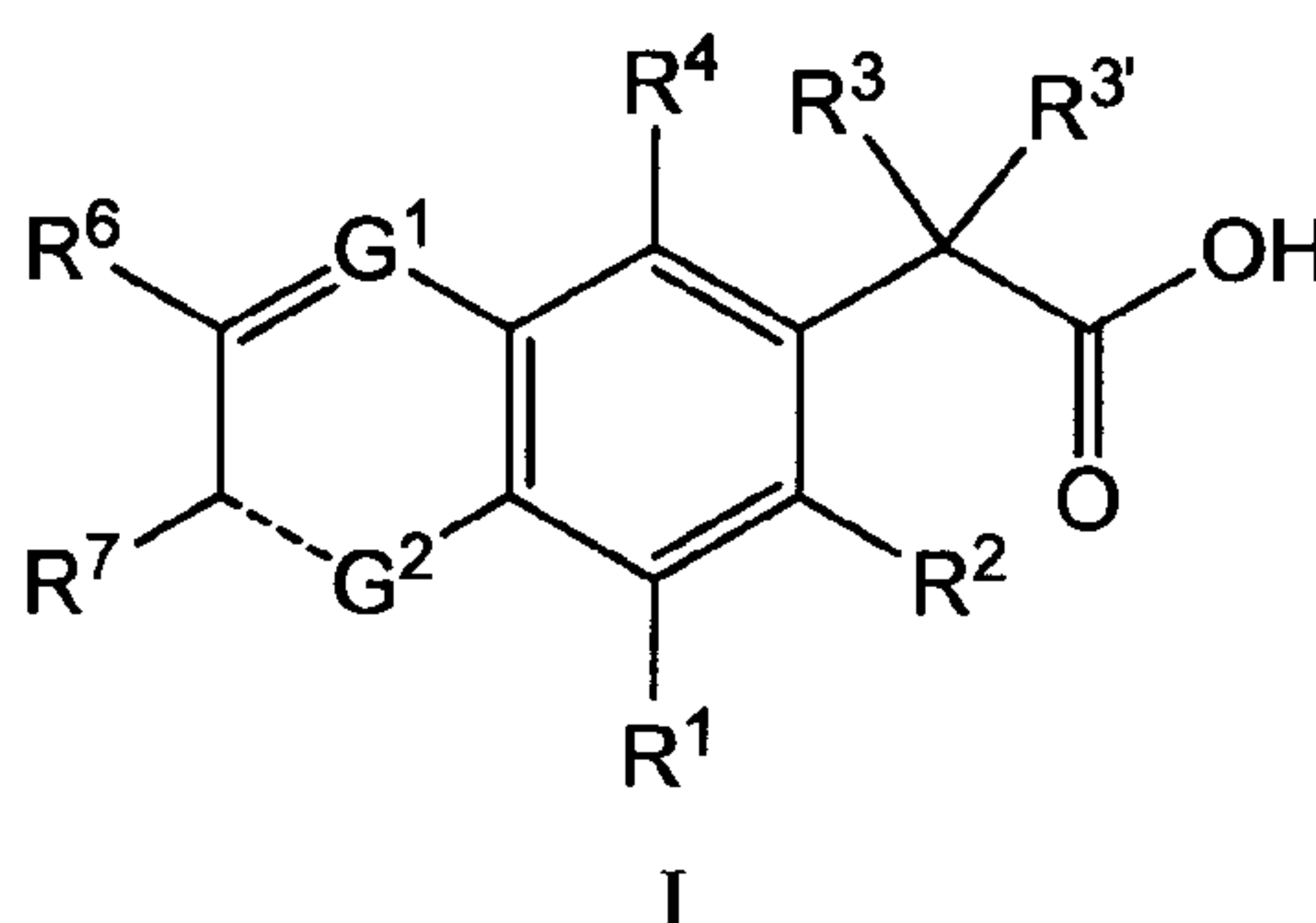
Background of the Invention

Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection and related diseases are a
 major public health problem worldwide. Human immunodeficiency virus type 1 (HIV-
 10 1) encodes three enzymes which are required for viral replication: reverse transcriptase,
 protease, and integrase. Although drugs targeting reverse transcriptase and protease are
 in wide use and have shown effectiveness, particularly when employed in combination,
 toxicity and development of resistant strains have limited their usefulness (Palella, et al
N. Engl. J. Med. (1998) 338:853-860; Richman, D. D. *Nature* (2001) 410:995-1001).
 15 Accordingly, there is a need for new agents that inhibit the replication of HIV. There is
 also a need for agents that are directed against alternate sites in the viral life cycle
 including agents that target the interaction of Lens Epithelial Derived Growth Factor
 (LEDGF/p75) and HIV-1 integrase.

20

Summary of the Invention

In one embodiment, the invention provides a compound of the invention which
 is a compound of formula I:



25

wherein:

G^1 is N, G^2 is CR^8 , and the dashed bond is a double bond; or
 G^1 is CR^5 , G^2 is N, and the dashed bond is a double bond; or

G^1 is CR^5 , G^2 is NR^{13} , the dashed bond is a single bond, and R^7 is an oxo ($=O$) group; or

G^1 is CR^5 , G^2 is NR^{13} , the dashed bond is a single bond, and R^7 and R^{13} together with the atoms to which they are attached form a heteroaryl, wherein the heteroaryl is
 5 optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;

R^1 is R^{1a} or R^{1b} ;

R^2 is R^{2a} or R^{2b} ;

R^3 is R^{3a} or R^{3b} ;

$R^{3'}$ is $R^{3a'}$ or $R^{3b'}$;

10 R^4 is R^{4a} or R^{4b} ;

R^5 is R^{5a} or R^{5b} ;

R^6 is R^{6a} or R^{6b} ;

R^7 is R^{7a} or R^{7b} ;

R^8 is R^{8a} or R^{8b} ;

15 R^{13} is R^{13a} or R^{13b} ;

R^{1a} is selected from:

a) H, halo, (C_1-C_6) alkyl and (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl;

b) (C_2-C_6) alkenyl, (C_2-C_6) alkynyl, (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl, nitro, cyano, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl;

20 c) $-C(=O)-R^{11}$, $-C(=O)-O-R^{11}$, $-O-R^{11}$, $-S-R^{11}$, $-S(O)-R^{11}$, $-SO_2-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- R^{11} , $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- $C(=O)-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- $C(=O)-O-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- $O-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- $S-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- $S(O)-R^{11}$ and $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- SO_2-R^{11} ,

wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from H, (C_1-C_6) alkyl, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl, (C_2-C_6) alkynyl, (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl, (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl; and

25 d) $-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-C(=O)-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-O-C(=O)-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-SO_2-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- $N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- $C(=O)-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- $O-C(=O)-N(R^9)R^{10}$ and $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- $SO_2-N(R^9)R^{10}$, wherein each R^9 is independently selected

from H, (C_1-C_6) alkyl and (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl, and each R^{10} is independently selected from R^{11} , $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- R^{11} , $-SO_2-R^{11}$, $-C(=O)-R^{11}$, $-C(=O)OR^{11}$ and $-C(=O)N(R^9)R^{11}$,

30 wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from H, (C_1-C_6) alkyl, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl, (C_2-C_6) alkynyl, (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl, (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl,

and wherein any aryl, heterocycle or heteroaryl of R^{1a} is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2 or 3) Z^{10} groups;

R^{1b} is selected from:

- a) $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-SO_2-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-SO_2-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-C(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-O-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-S-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-S(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-SO_2-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{14}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-C(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-C(O)-O(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $-(C_3-C_7)halocarbocycle$, $-NR_aSO_2NR_cR_d$, $-NR_aSO_2O(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-NR_aSO_2Oaryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-aryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-heteroaryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-heterocycle$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-aryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-heteroaryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-heterocycle$, $-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle-Z^1$ and $-halo(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^3$, wherein any $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $(C_3-C_7)halocarbocycle$, $(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, either alone or as part of a group, is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;
- b) spiro-bicyclic carbocycle, fused-bicyclic carbocycle and bridged-bicyclic carbocycle, wherein any spiro-bicyclic carbocycle, fused-bicyclic carbocycle and bridged-bicyclic carbocycle is optionally substituted with one or more Z^1 groups (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5), wherein two Z^1 groups together with the atom or atoms to which they are attached optionally form a $(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$ or heterocycle, wherein the $(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$ or heterocycle is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;
- c) $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, wherein $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$ is substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^2 groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;
- d) $-X(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $-X(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $-X(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $-X(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$ and $-X(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, wherein any $-X(C_1-C_6)alkyl$ and $-X(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$ is substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^3 groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups, and wherein any

-X(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -X(C₂-C₆)alkynyl and -X(C₃-C₇)carbocycle is substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z⁴ groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups;

e) aryl, heteroaryl, heterocycle, -Xaryl, -Xheteroaryl and -Xheterocycle, wherein any aryl heteroaryl and heterocycle, either alone or as part of a group, is substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z⁵ groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups;

f) (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, and (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, wherein (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl and (C₂-C₆)alkynyl are each substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z⁶ groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups; and

g) -NR_eR_f, -C(O)NR_eR_f, -OC(O)NR_eR_f, -SO₂NR_eR_f, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-NR_eR_f, -(C₁-C₆)alkylC(O)-NR_eR_f, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(O)-NR_eR_f and -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-SO₂NR_eR_f, wherein any (C₁-C₆)alkyl, as a part of group, is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups;

R^{2a} is selected from:

a) H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl and -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl;
 b) (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, aryl, heterocycle, heteroaryl, halo, nitro and cyano;
 c) C(=O)-R¹¹, -C(=O)-O-R¹¹, -S-R¹¹, -S(O)-R¹¹, -SO₂-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-O-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-S-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-S(O)-R¹¹ and -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-SO₂-R¹¹, wherein each R¹¹ is independently selected from H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, aryl and heterocycle and heteroaryl, wherein aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl are each optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2 or 3) Z¹¹ groups; and

d) -OH, -O(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -O(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, -O(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -O(C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, -Oaryl, -Oheterocycle and -Oheteroaryl;

e) -N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -C(=O)-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -O-C(=O)-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -SO₂-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(=O)-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, and -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-SO₂-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, wherein each R⁹ is independently selected from H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl and (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, and each R¹⁰ is independently selected

from R^{11} , $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-R^{11}$, $-SO_2-R^{11}$, $-C(=O)-R^{11}$, $-C(=O)OR^{11}$ and $-C(=O)N(R^9)R^{11}$, wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from H, $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$, $(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $(C_3-C_7)cycloalkyl$, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl;

5 R^{2b} is selected from:

- a) $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-SO_2-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-SO_2-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-C(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-O-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-S-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-S(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-SO_2-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{14}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-C(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-C(O)-O(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $(C_3-C_7)halocarbocycle$, $-NR_aSO_2NR_cR_d$, $-NR_aSO_2O(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-NR_aSO_2Oaryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-aryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-heteroaryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-heterocycle$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-aryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-heteroaryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-heterocycle$, $-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle-Z^1$ and $-halo(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^3$, wherein any $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $(C_3-C_7)halocarbocycle$, $(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, either alone or as part of a group, is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;
- b) spiro-bicyclic carbocycle, fused-bicyclic carbocycle and bridged-bicyclic carbocycle, wherein any spiro-bicyclic carbocycle, fused-bicyclic carbocycle and bridged-bicyclic carbocycle is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups, and wherein two Z^1 groups together with the atom or atoms to which they are attached optionally form a $(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$ or heterocycle, wherein the $(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$ or heterocycle is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;
- c) $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, wherein $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$ is substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^2 groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;
- d) $-X(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $-X(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $-X(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $-X(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$ and $-X(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, wherein any $-X(C_1-C_6)alkyl$ and $-X(C_1-$

C₆)haloalkyl is substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z³ groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups, and wherein any -X(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -X(C₂-C₆)alkynyl and -X(C₃-C₇)carbocycle is substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z⁴ groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups;

e) aryl, heteroaryl, heterocycle, -Xaryl, -Xheteroaryl and -Xheterocycle; wherein any aryl, heteroaryl and heterocycle, either alone or as part of a group, is substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z⁵ groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z¹ groups;

f) (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, and (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, wherein (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl and (C₂-C₆)alkynyl are each substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z⁶ groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups; and

g) -NR_eR_f, -C(O)NR_eR_f, -OC(O)NR_eR_f, -SO₂NR_eR_f, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-NR_eR_f, -(C₁-C₆)alkylC(O)-NR_eR_f, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(O)-NR_eR_f and -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-SO₂NR_eR_f, wherein any (C₁-C₆)alkyl, as a part of group, is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups;

R^{3a} is (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-(C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-aryl, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-heterocycle, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-heteroaryl, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -O(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -O(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -O(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, -O(C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, -Oaryl, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl-(C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl-aryl, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl-heterocycle or -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl-heteroaryl, wherein any (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl or (C₂-C₆)alkynyl of R^{3a}, either alone or as part of a group, is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2 or 3) groups selected from -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl, halo, oxo and -CN, and wherein any (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, aryl, heterocycle or heteroaryl of R^{3a}, either alone or as part of a group, is optionally substituted with one or more groups selected from (C₁-C₆)alkyl, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl, halo, oxo and -CN; and R^{3a'} is H;

R^{3b} is -(C₇-C₁₄)alkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, aryl, heteroaryl, heterocycle, -(C₁-C₆)alkylOH, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-Z¹², -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-(C₂-C₆)alkenyl-Z¹², -(C₂-C₆)alkyl-O-(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-Z¹², -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-S-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-Z¹², -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-S-(C₂-C₆)alkenyl-Z¹², -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-S-(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-Z¹², -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-

- $S(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{12}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S(O)-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-Z^{12}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S(O)-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-Z^{12}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-SO_2-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{12}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-SO_2-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-Z^{12}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-SO_2-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-Z^{12}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_aR_b$,
 $-(C_1-C_6)alkylOC(O)-NR_cR_d$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_a-C(O)-OR_b$,
5 $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_a-C(O)-NR_aR_b$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-SO_2(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-SO_2NR_cR_d$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_aSO_2NR_cR_d$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_aSO_2O(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$,
 $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_aSO_2Oaryl$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_a-SO_2-(C_1-C_6)alkyl$,
 $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_a-SO_2-halo(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_a-SO_2-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$,
 $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_a-SO_2-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_a-SO_2-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$,
10 $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_a-SO_2-halo(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_a-SO_2-aryl$,
 $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_a-SO_2-heteroaryl$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_a-SO_2-heterocycle$, $-O(C_7-C_{14})alkyl$, $-O(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_aR_b$, $-O(C_1-C_6)alkylOC(O)-NR_cR_d$, $-O(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_a-C(O)-OR_b$,
 $-O(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_a-C(O)-NR_aR_b$, $-O(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_a-SO_2-(C_1-C_6)alkyl$,
 $-O(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_a-SO_2-halo(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $-O(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_a-SO_2-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$,
15 $-O(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_a-SO_2-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$, $-O(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_a-SO_2-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$,
 $-O(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_a-SO_2-halo(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-O(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_a-SO_2-aryl$,
 $-O(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_a-SO_2-heteroaryl$, $-O(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_a-SO_2-heterocycle$,
 $-O(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_a-SO_2-NR_aR_b$, $-O(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_a-SO_2-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$,
 $-O(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_a-SO_2-halo(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-O(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_a-SO_2-aryl$, $-O(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_aSO_2NR_cR_d$,
20 $-O(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_aSO_2O(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-O(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_aSO_2Oaryl$, $-Oheteroaryl$, $-Oheterocycle$, $-Sheteroaryl$, $-Sheterocycle$,
 $-S(O)heteroaryl$, $-S(O)heterocycle$, $-SO_2heteroaryl$ or $-SO_2heterocycle$, wherein any
 $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $-(C_7-C_{14})alkyl$, $(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$, $aryl$, $(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$,
 $heteroaryl$ or $heterocycle$ of R^{3b} , either alone or as part of a group, is optionally
25 substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups; and $R^{3b'}$ is H, $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$
or $-O(C_1-C_6)alkyl$; or R^{3b} and $R^{3b'}$ together with the carbon to which they are attached
form a heterocycle or $(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$ which heterocycle or $(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$ of R^{3b}
and $R^{3b'}$ together with the carbon to which they are attached is optionally substituted
with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;
30 R^{4a} is selected from aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, wherein any aryl,
heterocycle and heteroaryl of R^{4a} is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2,
3, 4 or 5) groups each independently selected from halo, $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$,

(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, -OH, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -SH, -S(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -NH₂, -NH(C₁-C₆)alkyl and -N((C₁-C₆)alkyl)₂, wherein (C₁-C₆)alkyl is optionally substituted with hydroxy, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl, cyano and oxo;

R^{4b} is selected from;

5 a) (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl and (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, wherein (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl and (C₂-C₆)alkynyl are each optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups;

b) (C₃-C₁₄)carbocycle, wherein (C₃-C₁₄)carbocycle is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups, wherein two Z¹ groups
10 together with the atom or atoms to which they are attached optionally form a (C₃-C₇)carbocycle or heterocycle;

c) spiro-heterocycle and bridged-heterocycle, wherein spiro-heterocycle and bridged-heterocycle are each optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups, and wherein two Z¹ groups together with the atom or atoms to which
15 they are attached optionally form a (C₃-C₇)carbocycle or heterocycle; and

d) aryl, heteroaryl, spiro-heterocycle, fused-heterocycle and bridged-heterocycle, wherein aryl, heteroaryl, spiro-heterocycle, fused-heterocycle and bridged-heterocycle are each independently substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z⁷ groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups; or

20 R⁴ and R³ together with the atoms to which they are attached form a macroheterocycle or a macrocarbocycle wherein any macroheterocycle or macrocarbocycle of R⁴ and R³ together with the atoms to which they are attached may be optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups; and R^{3'} is H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl or -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl;

25 R^{5a} is selected from:

a) halo, nitro and cyano;

b) R¹¹, -C(=O)-R¹¹, -C(=O)-O-R¹¹, -O-R¹¹, -S-R¹¹, -S(O)-R¹¹, -SO₂-R¹¹, -
(C₁-C₆)alkyl-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-O-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-
O-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-S-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-S(O)-R¹¹ and -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-SO₂-R¹¹, wherein
30 each R¹¹ is independently selected from H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl,

wherein aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl are each optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2 or 3) Z^{11} groups; and

c) $-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-C(=O)-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-O-C(=O)-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-SO_2-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-C(=O)-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-C(=O)-N(R^9)R^{10}$,
 5 and $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-SO_2-N(R^9)R^{10}$, wherein each R^9 is independently selected from H, $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$ and $(C_3-C_7)cycloalkyl$, and each R^{10} is independently selected from R^{11} , $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-R^{11}$, $-SO_2-R^{11}$, $-C(=O)-R^{11}$, $-C(=O)OR^{11}$ and $-C(=O)N(R^9)R^{11}$, wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from H, $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$, $(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $(C_3-C_7)cycloalkyl$, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl;
 10 R^{5b} is selected from:

a) $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$,
 $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$,
 $-(C_1-C_6)alkylS(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_6)carbocycle$,
 $-(C_1-C_6)alkylSO_2(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, -
 15 $(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, - $(C_3-C_7)halocarbocycle$, $-NR_aSO_2NR_cR_d$,
 $-NR_aSO_2O(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-NR_aSO_2Oaryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$,
 $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-aryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-heteroaryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-heterocycle$,
 $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-aryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-heteroaryl$,
 $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-heterocycle$, $-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle-Z^1$ and $-halo(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^3$, wherein
 20 any $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $(C_3-C_7)halocarbocycle$, $(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$,
 $(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, either alone or as part
 of a group, is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;

b) spiro-bicyclic carbocycle, fused-bicyclic carbocycle and bridged-bicyclic carbocycle, wherein any spiro-bicyclic carbocycle, fused-bicyclic carbocycle
 25 and bridged-bicyclic carbocycle is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups, wherein two Z^1 groups together with the atom or atoms to which they are attached optionally form a $(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$ or heterocycle, wherein the $(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$ or heterocycle is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;

c) $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, wherein $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$ is substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^2 groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;

d) $-X(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $-X(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $-X(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$,
 $-X(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$ and $-X(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, wherein any $-X(C_1-C_6)alkyl$ and $-X(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$ is substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^3 groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups, and wherein any
 5 $-X(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $-X(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$ and $-X(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$ is substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^4 groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;

e) aryl, heteroaryl, heterocycle, $-Xaryl$, $-Xheteroaryl$ and $-Xheterocycle$, wherein any aryl, heteroaryl and heterocycle, either alone or as part of a group, is
 10 substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^5 groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;

f) $(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, and $(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$, wherein $(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$ and $(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$ are each independently substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5)
 15 Z^6 groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups; and

g) $-NR_eR_f$, $-C(O)NR_eR_f$, $-OC(O)NR_eR_f$, $-SO_2NR_eR_f$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_eR_f$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkylC(O)-NR_eR_f$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-C(O)-NR_eR_f$ and $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-SO_2NR_eR_f$, wherein any $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, as part of a group, is optionally substituted with one or more
 20 (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;

R^{6a} is selected from:

- a) H, halo, $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, and $(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$;
- b) $(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$, $(C_3-C_7)cycloalkyl$, nitro, cyano, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl;
- 25 c) $-C(=O)-R^{11}$, $-C(=O)-O-R^{11}$, $-O-R^{11}$, $-S-R^{11}$, $-S(O)-R^{11}$, $-SO_2-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-C(=O)-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-C(=O)-O-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S(O)-R^{11}$ and $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-SO_2-R^{11}$, wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from H, $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$, $(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $(C_3-C_7)cycloalkyl$, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl; and
- 30 d) $-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-C(=O)-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-O-C(=O)-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-SO_2-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-C(=O)-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-C(=O)-N(R^9)R^{10}$ and $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-SO_2-N(R^9)R^{10}$, wherein each R^9 is independently selected

from H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl and (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, and each R¹⁰ is independently selected from R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-R¹¹, -SO₂-R¹¹, -C(=O)-R¹¹, -C(=O)OR¹¹ and -C(=O)N(R⁹)R¹¹, wherein each R¹¹ is independently selected from H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl;

5 and wherein any aryl, heterocycle or heteroaryl of R^{6a} is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2 or 3) Z¹⁰ groups;

R^{6b} is selected from:

a) -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-S-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-S(O)-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-SO₂-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl-(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, halo(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -NR_aSO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -NR_aSO₂Oaryl, -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl-(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl-aryl, -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl-heteroaryl, -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl-heterocycle, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-aryl, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-heteroaryl, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-heterocycle, -(C₃-C₇)carbocycle-Z¹ and -halo(C₁-C₆)alkyl-Z³, wherein any (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, either alone or as part of a group, is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups;

b) spiro-bicyclic carbocycle, fused-bicyclic carbocycle and bridged-bicyclic carbocycle, wherein any spiro-bicyclic carbocycle, fused-bicyclic carbocycle and bridged-bicyclic carbocycle is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups, wherein two Z¹ groups together with the atom or atoms to which they are attached optionally form a carbocycle or heterocycle wherein the carbocycle or heterocycle is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups;

c) (C₁-C₆)alkyl, wherein (C₁-C₆)alkyl is substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z² groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups;

d) -X(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -X(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -X(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -X(C₂-C₆)alkynyl and -X(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, wherein any -X(C₁-C₆)alkyl and -X(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl is substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z³ groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups, and wherein any -X(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -X(C₂-C₆)alkynyl and -X(C₃-C₇)carbocycle is substituted with one or

more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^4 groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;

e) aryl, heteroaryl, heterocycle, -Xaryl, -Xheteroaryl and -Xheterocycle, wherein any aryl, heteroaryl and heterocycle, either alone or as part of a group, is substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^5 groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;

f) (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl, (C_3-C_7) carbocycle, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl, and (C_2-C_6) alkynyl, wherein (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl, (C_3-C_7) carbocycle, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl and (C_2-C_6) alkynyl are each independently substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^6 groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups; and

g) $-NR_eR_f$, $-C(O)NR_eR_f$, $-OC(O)NR_eR_f$, $-SO_2NR_eR_f$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_eR_f$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkylC(O)-NR_eR_f$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-C(O)-NR_eR_f$ and $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-SO_2NR_eR_f$ wherein any $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, as part of a group, is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;

R^{7a} is selected from:

- a) H, halo, $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$ and $(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$;
- b) $(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$, $(C_3-C_7)cycloalkyl$, nitro, cyano, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl;
- c) $-C(=O)-R^{11}$, $-C(=O)-O-R^{11}$, $-O-R^{11}$, $-S-R^{11}$, $-S(O)-R^{11}$, $-SO_2-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-C(=O)-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-C(=O)-O-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S(O)-R^{11}$ and $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-SO_2-R^{11}$, wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from H, $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$, $(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $(C_3-C_7)cycloalkyl$, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl; and
- d) $-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-C(=O)-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-O-C(=O)-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-SO_2-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-C(=O)-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-C(=O)-N(R^9)R^{10}$ and $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-SO_2-N(R^9)R^{10}$, wherein each R^9 is independently selected from H, $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$ and $(C_3-C_7)cycloalkyl$, and each R^{10} is independently selected from R^{11} , $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-R^{11}$, $-SO_2-R^{11}$, $-C(=O)-R^{11}$, $-C(=O)OR^{11}$ and $-C(=O)N(R^9)R^{11}$, wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from H, $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$, $(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $(C_3-C_7)cycloalkyl$, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl,

and wherein any aryl, heterocycle or heteroaryl of R^{7a} is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2 or 3) Z^{10} groups;

R^{7b} is selected from:

- a) $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-SO_2-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-C(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-O-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-S-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-S(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-SO_2-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{14}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-C(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-C(O)-O(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-SO_2-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $(C_3-C_7)halocarbocycle$, $-NR_aSO_2NR_cR_d$, $-NR_aSO_2O(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-NR_aSO_2Oaryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-aryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-heteroaryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-heterocycle$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-aryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-heteroaryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-heterocycle$, $-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle-Z^1$ and $-halo(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^3$, wherein any $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $(C_3-C_7)halocarbocycle$, $(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, either alone or as part of a group, is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;
- b) spiro-bicyclic carbocycle, fused-bicyclic carbocycle and bridged-bicyclic carbocycle, wherein any spiro-bicyclic carbocycle, fused-bicyclic carbocycle and bridged-bicyclic carbocycle is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups, wherein two Z^1 groups together with the atom or atoms to which they are attached optionally form a $(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$ or heterocycle, wherein the $(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$ or heterocycle is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;
- c) $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, wherein $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$ is substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^2 groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;
- d) $-X(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $-X(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $-X(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $-X(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$ and $-X(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, wherein any $-X(C_1-C_6)alkyl$ and $-X(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$ is substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^3 groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups, and wherein any

-X(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -X(C₂-C₆)alkynyl and -X(C₃-C₇)carbocycle is substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z⁴ groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups;

e) aryl, heteroaryl, heterocycle, -Xaryl, -Xheteroaryl and -Xheterocycle, wherein any aryl, heteroaryl and heterocycle, either alone or as part of a group, is substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z⁵ groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups;

f) (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl and (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, wherein (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl and (C₂-C₆)alkynyl are each substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z⁶ groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups; and

g) -NR_eR_f, -C(O)NR_eR_f, -OC(O)NR_eR_f, -SO₂NR_eR_f, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-NR_eR_f, -(C₁-C₆)alkylC(O)-NR_eR_f, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(O)-NR_eR_f and -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-SO₂NR_eR_f, wherein any (C₁-C₆)alkyl, as a part of group, is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups;

R^{8a} is selected from:

- a) halo, nitro and cyano;
- b) R¹¹, -C(=O)-R¹¹, -C(=O)-O-R¹¹, -O-R¹¹, -S-R¹¹, -S(O)-R¹¹, -SO₂-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-O-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-S-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-S(O)-R¹¹ and -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-SO₂-R¹¹, wherein each R¹¹ is independently selected from H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, wherein aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl are each optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2 or 3) Z¹¹ groups; and
- c) -N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -C(=O)-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -O-C(=O)-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -SO₂-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(=O)-N(R⁹)R¹⁰ and -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-SO₂-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, wherein each R⁹ is independently selected from H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl and (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, and each R¹⁰ is independently selected from R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-R¹¹, -SO₂-R¹¹, -C(=O)-R¹¹, -C(=O)OR¹¹ and -C(=O)N(R⁹)R¹¹, wherein each R¹¹ is independently selected from H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl,

wherein aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl are each optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2 or 3) Z^{11} groups;

R^{8b} is selected from:

- a) $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-SO_2-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-C(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-O-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-S-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-S(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-SO_2-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{14}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-C(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-C(O)-O-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-SO_2-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $halo(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-NR_aSO_2NR_cR_d$, $-NR_aSO_2O(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-NR_aSO_2Oaryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-aryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-heteroaryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-heterocycle$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-aryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-heteroaryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-heterocycle$, $-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle-Z^1$ and $-halo(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^3$, wherein any $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, either alone or as part of a group, is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;
- b) spiro-bicyclic carbocycle, fused-bicyclic carbocycle and bridged-bicyclic carbocycle, wherein any spiro-bicyclic carbocycle, fused-bicyclic carbocycle and bridged-bicyclic carbocycle is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups, wherein two Z^1 groups together with the atom or atoms to which they are attached optionally form a $(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$ or heterocycle wherein the $(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$ or heterocycle is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;
- c) $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, wherein $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$ is substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^2 groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;
- d) $-X(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $-X(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $-X(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $-X(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$ and $-X(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, wherein any $-X(C_1-C_6)alkyl$ and $-X(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$ is substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^3 groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups, and wherein any

-X(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -X(C₂-C₆)alkynyl and -X(C₃-C₇)carbocycle is substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z⁴ groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups;

e) aryl, heteroaryl, heterocycle, -Xaryl, -Xheteroaryl and -Xheterocycle, wherein any aryl, heteroaryl and heterocycle, either alone or as part of a group, is substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z⁵ groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups;

f) (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl and (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, wherein (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl and (C₂-C₆)alkynyl are each independently substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z⁶ groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups; and

g) -NR_eR_f, -C(O)NR_eR_f, -OC(O)NR_eR_f, -SO₂NR_eR_f, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-NR_eR_f, -(C₁-C₆)alkylC(O)-NR_eR_f, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(O)-NR_eR_f and -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-SO₂NR_eR_f, wherein any (C₁-C₆)alkyl, as part of a group, is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups;

R^{13a} is selected from:

a) R¹¹, -C(=O)-R¹¹, -C(=O)-O-R¹¹, -O-R¹¹, -S-R¹¹, -S(O)-R¹¹, -SO₂-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-O-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-S-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-S(O)-R¹¹ and -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-SO₂-R¹¹, wherein each R¹¹ is independently selected from H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, wherein aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl are each optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2 or 3) Z¹¹ groups; and

b) -C(=O)-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -SO₂-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(=O)-N(R⁹)R¹⁰ and -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-SO₂-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, wherein each R⁹ is independently selected from H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl and (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, and each R¹⁰ is independently selected from R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-R¹¹, -SO₂-R¹¹, -C(=O)-R¹¹, -C(=O)OR¹¹ and -C(=O)N(R⁹)R¹¹, wherein each R¹¹ is independently selected from H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, -(C₁-C₆)alkylaryl, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, wherein aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl are each optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2 or 3) Z¹¹ groups;

R^{13b} is selected from:

- a) $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-SO_2-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-C(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-O-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-S-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-S(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-SO_2-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{14}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-C(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-C(O)-O(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-SO_2-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $-halo(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-aryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-heteroaryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-heterocycle$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-aryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-heteroaryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-heterocycle$, $-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle-Z^1$, $-halo(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^3$, $-NR_aSO_2NR_cR_d$, $-NR_aSO_2O(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$ and $-NR_aSO_2Oaryl$, wherein any $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$, $aryl$, $heterocycle$ and $heteroaryl$, either alone or as part of a group, is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;
- b) spiro-bicyclic carbocycle, fused-bicyclic carbocycle and bridged-bicyclic carbocycle, wherein spiro-bicyclic carbocycle, fused-bicyclic carbocycle and bridged-bicyclic carbocycle are optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups, wherein two Z^1 groups together with the atom or atoms to which they are attached optionally form a $(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$ or $heterocycle$ wherein the $(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$ or $heterocycle$ is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;
- c) $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, wherein $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$ is substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^2 groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;
- d) $-X(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $-X(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $-X(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $-X(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$ and $-X(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, wherein any $-X(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $-X(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, is substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^3 groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups, and wherein any $-X(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $-X(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$ and $-X(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, is substituted with one

or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^4 groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;

e) aryl, heteroaryl, heterocycle, -Xaryl, -Xheteroaryl and -Xheterocycle, wherein any aryl, heteroaryl and heterocycle, either alone or as part of a group, is substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^5 groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;

f) (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl, (C_3-C_7) carbocycle, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl and (C_2-C_6) alkynyl, wherein (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl, (C_3-C_7) carbocycle, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl and (C_2-C_6) alkynyl are each independently substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^6 groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups; and

g) $-C(O)NR_eR_f$, $-SO_2NR_eR_f$, $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- NR_eR_f , $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkylC(O)- NR_eR_f , $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl-O-C(O)- NR_eR_f and $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- $SO_2NR_eR_f$, wherein any (C_1-C_6) alkyl, as part of a group, is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;

or any of R^{5a} and R^{6a} , R^{6a} and R^{7a} , R^{7a} and R^{8a} , R^1 and R^8 , R^1 and R^2 or R^1 and R^{13} together with the atoms to which they are attached form a 5 or 6-membered carbocycle or a 4, 5, 6 or 7-membered heterocycle, wherein the 5 or 6-membered carbocycle or the 4, 5, 6 or 7-membered heterocycle is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2 or 3) substituents each independently selected from halo, (C_1-C_6) alkyl, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl, (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl, (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl, -OH, -O (C_1-C_6) alkyl, -SH, -S (C_1-C_6) alkyl, -NH₂, -NH (C_1-C_6) alkyl and -N $((C_1-C_6)$ alkyl)₂;

or any of R^5 and R^6 , R^6 and R^7 or R^7 and R^8 , together with the atoms to which they are attached form a 5 or 6-membered carbocycle or a 4, 5, 6 or 7-membered heterocycle, wherein the 5 or 6-membered carbocycle or the 4, 5, 6 or 7-membered heterocycle are each independently substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2 or 3) Z^7 or Z^8 groups, wherein when two Z^7 groups are on same atom the two Z^7 groups together with the atom to which they are attached optionally form a (C_3-C_7) carbocycle or 4, 5 or 6-membered heterocycle;

or any of R^1 and R^8 , R^1 and R^2 or R^1 and R^{13} together with the atoms to which they are attached form a 5 or 6-membered carbocycle or a 4, 5, 6 or 7-membered heterocycle, wherein the 5 or 6-membered carbocycle or the 4, 5, 6 or 7-membered heterocycle are each independently substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2 or 3) Z^7 or Z^8

groups; wherein when two Z^7 groups are on same atom the two Z^7 groups together with the atom to which they are attached optionally form a (C₃-C₇)carbocycle or 4, 5 or 6-membered heterocycle;

X is independently selected from O, -C(O)-, -C(O)O-, -S-, -S(O)-, -SO₂-, -(C₁-C₆)alkylO-, -(C₁-C₆)alkylC(O)-, -(C₁-C₆)alkylC(O)O-, -(C₁-C₆)alkylS-, -(C₁-C₆)alkylS(O)- and -(C₁-C₆)alkylSO₂-;

each Z^1 is independently selected from halo, -NO₂, -OH, =NOR_a, -SH, -CN, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, aryl, heteroaryl, heterocycle, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -O(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -O(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, -O(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -O(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -Oaryl, -Oheteroaryl, -Oheterocycle, -S(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -S(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, -S(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -S(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -S(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -Saryl, -Sheteroaryl, -Sheterocycle, -S(O)(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(O)(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -S(O)(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, -S(O)(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -S(O)(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -S(O)(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -SO₂(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(O)aryl, -S(O)carbocycle, -S(O)heteroaryl, -S(O)heterocycle, -SO₂(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -SO₂(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, -SO₂(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -SO₂(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -SO₂(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -SO₂aryl, -SO₂heteroaryl, -SO₂heterocycle, -SO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_cR_d, -NR_aC(O)R_a, -NR_aC(O)OR_a, -NR_aC(O)NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂R_b, -NR_aSO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -NR_aSO₂Oaryl, -OS(O)₂R_a, -C(O)R_a, -C(O)OR_b, -C(O)NR_cR_d, and -OC(O)NR_cR_d, wherein any (C₁-C₆)alkyl, -(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, aryl, heteroaryl and heterocycle of Z, either alone or as part of a group, is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) halogen, -OH, -OR_b, -CN, -NR_aC(O)₂R_b, -heteroaryl, -heterocycle, -Oheteroaryl, -Oheterocycle, -NHheteroaryl, -NHheterocycle or -S(O)₂NR_cR_d;

each Z^2 is independently selected from -NO₂, -CN, spiro-heterocycle, bridged-heterocycle, spiro-bicyclic carbocycle, bridged-bicyclic carbocycle, NR_aSO₂(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -NR_aSO₂aryl, -NR_aSO₂heteroaryl, -NR_aSO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle and -NR_aSO₂Oaryl;

each Z^3 is independently selected from -NO₂, -CN, -OH, oxo, =NOR_a, thioxo, -aryl, -heterocycle, -heteroaryl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -Ohalo(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -Oaryl, -Oheterocycle,

-Oheteroaryl, -S(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -S(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -Saryl, -Sheterocycle, -Sheteroaryl, -S(O)(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(O)(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -S(O)(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -S(O)aryl, -S(O)heterocycle, -S(O)heteroaryl, -SO₂(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -SO₂(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -SO₂(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, SO₂aryl, -SO₂heterocycle, -SO₂heteroaryl, -NR_aR_b, -NR_aC(O)R_b, -C(O)NR_cR_d, -SO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle and -NR_aSO₂Oaryl;

each Z⁴ is independently selected from halogen, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -halo(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -NO₂, -CN, -OH, oxo, =NOR_a, thioxo, -aryl, -heterocycle, -heteroaryl, -(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -O(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -Oaryl, -Oheterocycle, -Oheteroaryl, -S(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -S(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -Saryl, -Sheterocycle, -Sheteroaryl, -S(O)(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(O)(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -S(O)(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -S(O)aryl, -S(O)heterocycle, -S(O)heteroaryl, -SO₂(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -SO₂(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -SO₂(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, SO₂aryl, -SO₂heterocycle, -SO₂heteroaryl, -NR_aR_b, -NR_aC(O)R_a, -C(O)NR_cR_d, -SO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle and -NR_aSO₂Oaryl;

each Z⁵ is independently selected from -NO₂, -CN, -NR_aSO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -NR_aSO₂Oaryl, -NR_aSO₂(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -NR_aSO₂(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -NR_aSO₂(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, -NR_aSO₂(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -NR_aSO₂(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -NR_aSO₂aryl, -NR_aSO₂heteraryl, -NR_aSO₂heteroaryl, -NR_aSO₂heterocycle, -NR_aC(O)alkyl, -NR_aC(O)alkenyl, -NR_aC(O)alkynyl, -NR_aC(O)(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -NR_aC(O)(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -NR_aC(O)aryl, -NR_aC(O)heteroaryl, -NR_aC(O)heterocycle, NR_aC(O)NR_cR_d and NR_aC(O)OR_b;

each Z⁶ is independently selected from -NO₂, -CN, -NR_aR_a, NR_aC(O)R_b, -C(O)NR_cR_d, -(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -aryl, -heteroaryl, -heterocycle, -Oaryl, -Oheteroaryl, -Oheterocycle, -O(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -Ohalo(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -Saryl, -Sheteroaryl, -Sheterocycle, -S(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -S(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -S(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -S(O)aryl, -S(O)heteroaryl, -S(O)heterocycle, -S(O)(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -S(O)(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(O)(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -S(O)halo(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -SO₂aryl, -SO₂heteroaryl, -SO₂heterocycle, -SO₂(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -SO₂halo(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -SO₂(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -SO₂(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -SO₂NR_cR_d,

-NR_aSO₂(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -NR_aSO₂aryl, -NR_aSO₂heteroaryl, -NR_aSO₂heteroaryl,
-NR_aSO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle and -NR_aSO₂Oaryl;

each Z⁷ is independently selected from -NO₂, =NOR_a, -CN, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-Z¹²,
-(C₂-C₆)alkenyl-Z¹², -(C₂-C₆)alkenylOH, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-Z¹², -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-OH,
5 -(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl-Z¹², -(C₁-C₆)haloalkylOH, -(C₃-C₇)carbocycle-Z¹², -(C₃-
C₇)carbocycleOH, -(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -(C₁-C₆)alkylNR_cR_d, -(C₁-
C₆)alkylNR_aC(O)R_a, -(C₁-C₆)alkylNR_aSO₂R_a, -aryl, -heteroaryl, -heterocycle, -O(C₁-
C₆)alkyl-Z¹², -O(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -O(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, -O(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -O(C₃-
C₇)carbocycle, -O(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -Oaryl, -O(C₁-C₆)alkylNR_cR_d, -O(C₁-
10 C₆)alkylNR_aC(O)R_a, -O(C₁-C₆)alkylNR_aSO₂R_a, -Oheteroaryl, -Oheterocycle, -S(C₁-
C₆)alkyl-Z¹², -S(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -S(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, -S(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -S(C₃-
C₇)carbocycle, -S(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -S(C₁-C₆)alkylNR_cR_d, -S(C₁-
C₆)alkylNR_aC(O)R_a, -S(C₁-C₆)alkylNR_aSO₂R_a, -Saryl, -Sheteroaryl, -Sheterocycle,
-S(O)(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(O)(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -S(O)(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, -S(O)(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl,
15 -S(O)(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -S(O)(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -SO₂(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(O)(C₁-
C₆)alkylNR_cR_d, -S(O)(C₁-C₆)alkylNR_aC(O)R_a, -S(O)(C₁-C₆)alkylNR_aSO₂R_a, -
S(O)aryl, -S(O)heteroaryl, -S(O)heterocycle, -SO₂(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -SO₂(C₂-C₆)alkenyl,
-SO₂(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, -SO₂(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -SO₂(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -SO₂(C₃-
C₇)halocarbocycle, -SO₂aryl, -SO₂heteroaryl, -SO₂heterocycle, -SO₂(C₁-
20 C₆)alkylNR_cR_d, -SO₂(C₁-C₆)alkylNR_aC(O)R_a, -SO₂(C₁-C₆)alkylNR_aSO₂R_a,
-SO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_aC(O)OR_b, -NR_aC(O)NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂R_b, -NR_aSO₂NR_cR_d,
-NR_aSO₂O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -NR_aSO₂Oaryl, -OS(O)₂R_a, -C(O)NR_cR_d, and
-OC(O)NR_cR_d, wherein any (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-
C₆)alkynyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, aryl, heteroaryl and heterocycle
25 of Z⁷, either alone or as part of a group, is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g.
1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) halogen, -OH, -OR_b, -CN, -NR_aC(O)₂R_b, -heteroaryl, -heterocycle, -
Oheteroaryl, -Oheterocycle, -NHheteroaryl, -NHheterocycle, or -S(O)₂NR_cR_d.

each Z⁸ is independently selected from -NO₂ and -CN;

each Z⁹ is independently selected from -(C₁-C₆)alkyl and -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl;

30 each Z¹⁰ is independently selected from:

i) halo, oxo, thioxo, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-
C₇)cycloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-, -OH, -O(C₁-

C₆)alkyl, -O(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -SH, -S(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -SO(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -SO₂(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -NH₂, -NH(C₁-C₆)alkyl and -N((C₁-C₆)alkyl)₂;

5 ii) (C₁-C₆)alkyl optionally substituted with -OH, -O-(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, or -O-(C₁-C₆)alkyl; and

iii) aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, which aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl is optionally substituted with halo, (C₁-C₆)alkyl or COOH;

each Z¹¹ is independently selected from Z¹⁰, -C(=O)-NH₂, -C(=O)-NH(C₁-C₄)alkyl, -C(=O)-N((C₁-C₄)alkyl)₂, -C(=O)-aryl, -C(=O)-heterocycle and
10 -C(=O)-heteroaryl;

each Z¹² is independently selected from -NO₂, =NOR_a, thioxo, -aryl, -heterocycle, -heteroaryl, -(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -Ohalo(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -Oaryl, -Oheterocycle, -Oheteroaryl, -S(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -Shalo(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -Saryl, -Sheterocycle, -Sheteroaryl, -S(O)(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(O)(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -S(O)halo(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -S(O)aryl, -S(O)heterocycle, -S(O)heteroaryl, -SO₂(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -SO₂(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -SO₂(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, SO₂aryl, -SO₂heterocycle, -SO₂heteroaryl, -NR_aR_a, -NR_aC(O)R_b, -C(O)NR_cR_d, -SO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle and -NR_aSO₂Oaryl;

20 each Z¹³ is independently selected from -NO₂, -OH, =NOR_a, -SH, -CN, -(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -O(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -O(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, -O(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -O(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -Oaryl, -Oheteroaryl, -Oheterocycle, -S(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -S(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, -S(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -S(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -S(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -Saryl, -Sheteroaryl, -Sheterocycle, -S(O)(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(O)(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -S(O)(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, -S(O)(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -S(O)(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -S(O)(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -S(O)aryl, -S(O)heteroaryl, -S(O)heterocycle, -SO₂(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -SO₂(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -SO₂(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, -SO₂(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -SO₂(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -SO₂(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -SO₂aryl, -SO₂heteroaryl, -SO₂heterocycle, -SO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_cR_d, -NR_aC(O)R_a, -NR_aC(O)OR_b,
25 -NR_aC(O)NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂R_b, -NR_aSO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -NR_aSO₂Oaryl, -OS(O)₂R_a, -C(O)R_a, -C(O)OR_b, -C(O)NR_cR_d, and -OC(O)NR_cR_d,
30 wherein any (C₁-C₆)alkyl, -(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, -(C₃-

C₇)halocarbocycle, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, aryl, heteroaryl and heterocycle of Z¹³, either alone or as part of a group, is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) halogen, -OH, -OR_b, -CN, -NR_aC(O)₂R_b, heteroaryl, heterocycle, -Oheteroaryl, -Oheterocycle, -NHheteroaryl, -NHheterocycle, or
 5 -S(O)₂NR_cR_d;

each Z¹⁴ is independently selected from -NO₂, =NOR_a, -CN, -(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -O(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -S(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -S(O)(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -SO₂(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -NR_aSO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂O(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -NR_aSO₂Oaryl and -OS(O)₂R_a, wherein any -(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle
 10 of Z¹⁴, either alone or as part of a group, is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) halogen, -OH, -OR_b, -CN, -NR_aC(O)₂R_b, heteroaryl, heterocycle, -Oheteroaryl, -Oheterocycle, -NHheteroaryl, -NHheterocycle, or -S(O)₂NR_cR_d;

each R_a is independently H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, heterocycle, aryl, aryl(C₁-C₆)alkyl-, heteroaryl or heteroaryl(C₁-
 15 C₆)alkyl-, wherein any (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, heterocycle, aryl or heteroaryl of R_a, either alone or as part of a group, is optionally substituted by one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) halogen, OH and cyano;

each R_b is independently -(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, heterocycle, aryl, aryl(C₁-C₆)alkyl-, heteroaryl or heteroaryl(C₁-
 20 C₆)alkyl-, wherein any (C₁-C₆)alkyl, -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, heterocycle, aryl or heteroaryl of R_b, either alone or as part of a group, is optionally substituted by one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) halogen, OH and cyano;

R_c and R_d are each independently selected from H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, aryl, aryl(C₁-C₆)alkyl-, heterocycle, heteroaryl and heteroaryl(C₁-C₆)alkyl-, wherein any (C₁-C₆)alkyl, -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, heterocycle, aryl and heteroaryl of R_c or R_d, either alone or as part
 25 of a group, is optionally substituted by one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) halogen, OH and cyano; or R_c and R_d together with the nitrogen to which they are attached form a heterocycle, wherein any heterocycle of R_c and R_d together with the nitrogen to which
 30

they are attached is optionally substituted by one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) halogen, OH or cyano;

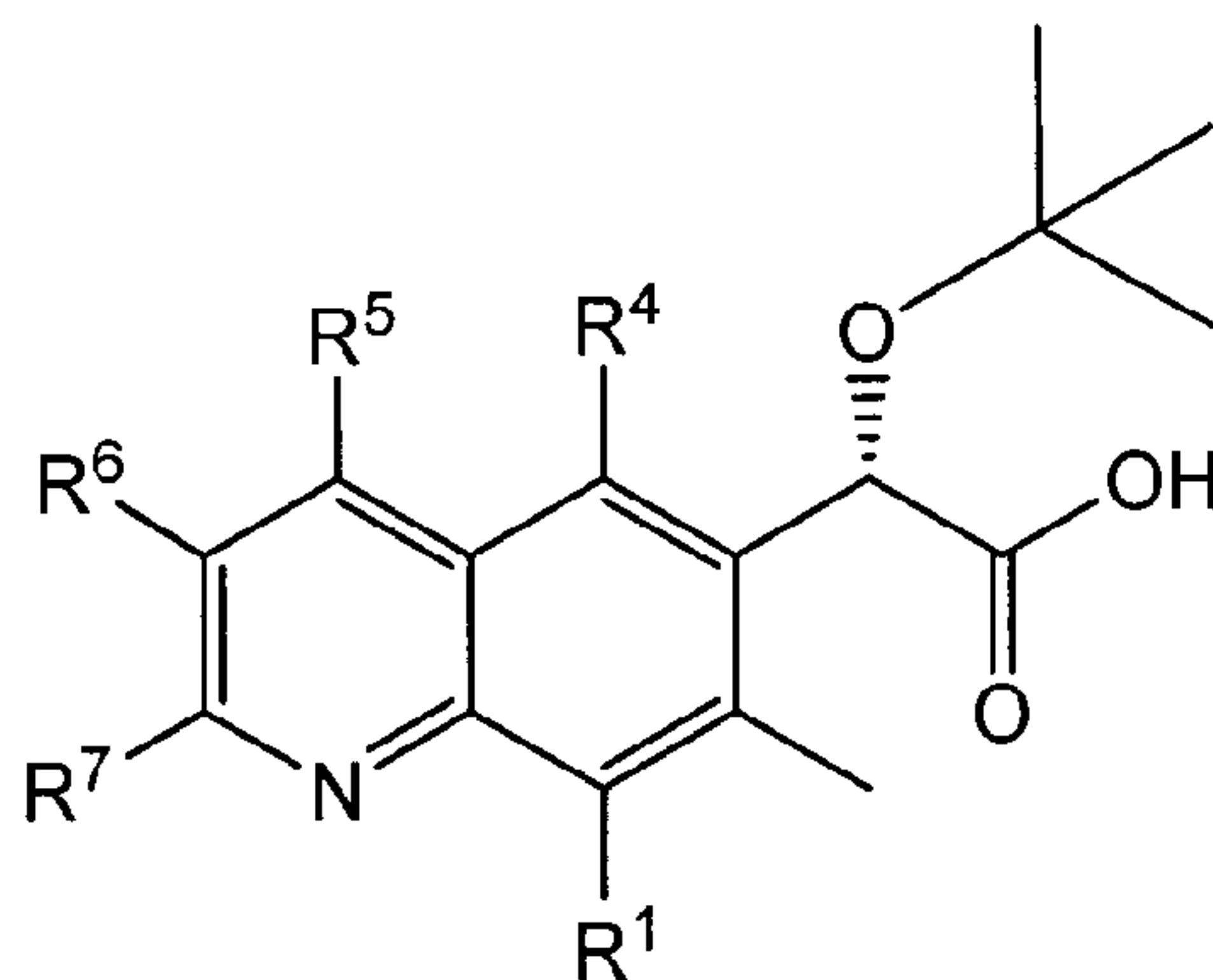
each R_e is independently selected from $-OR_a$, (C_1-C_6) alkyl and (C_3-C_7) carbocycle, wherein (C_1-C_6) alkyl and (C_3-C_7) carbocycle is substituted by one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^6 and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 , $-(C_2-C_6)$ haloalkyl, $-(C_2-C_6)$ alkenyl and $-(C_2-C_6)$ alkynyl, wherein any $-(C_2-C_6)$ haloalkyl, $-(C_2-C_6)$ alkenyl and $-(C_2-C_6)$ alkynyl is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 , and aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl wherein aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl is substituted by one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^5 ;

each R_f is independently selected from $-R_g$, $-OR_a$, $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- Z^6 , $-SO_2R_g$, $-C(O)R_g$, $C(O)OR_g$ and $-C(O)NR_eR_g$; and

each R_g is independently selected from H, $-OR_a$, (C_1-C_6) alkyl, (C_3-C_7) carbocycle, (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl, (C_2-C_6) alkynyl, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, wherein any (C_1-C_6) alkyl, (C_3-C_7) carbocycle, (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl, (C_2-C_6) alkynyl, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl of R_g is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;

or a salt thereof.

The invention also provides a compound of formula Ih or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof



Ih

wherein:

R^1 is R^{1a} or R^{1b} ;

R⁴ is R^{4a};

R⁵ is R^{5a} or R^{5b};

R⁶ is R^{6a} or R^{6b};

R⁷ is R^{7a} or R^{7b};

R^{1a} is selected from the group consisting of:

- a) H, halo, (C₁-C₆)alkyl and (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl;
- b) (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, nitro, cyano, (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl;
- c) -C(=O)-R¹¹, -C(=O)-O-R¹¹, -O-R¹¹, -S-R¹¹, -S(O)-R¹¹, -SO₂-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-O-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-S-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-S(O)-R¹¹ and -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-SO₂-R¹¹, wherein each R¹¹ is independently selected from the group consisting of H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl; and
- d) -N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -C(=O)-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -O-C(=O)-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -SO₂-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(=O)-N(R⁹)R¹⁰ and -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-SO₂-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, wherein each R¹⁰ is independently selected from the group consisting of R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-R¹¹, -SO₂-R¹¹, -C(=O)-R¹¹, -C(=O)OR¹¹ and -C(=O)N(R⁹)R¹¹, each R⁹ is independently selected from the group consisting of H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl and (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, and wherein each R¹¹ is independently selected from the group consisting of H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl,

and wherein any (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heterocycle or heteroaryl of R^{1a} is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 3 Z¹⁰ groups;

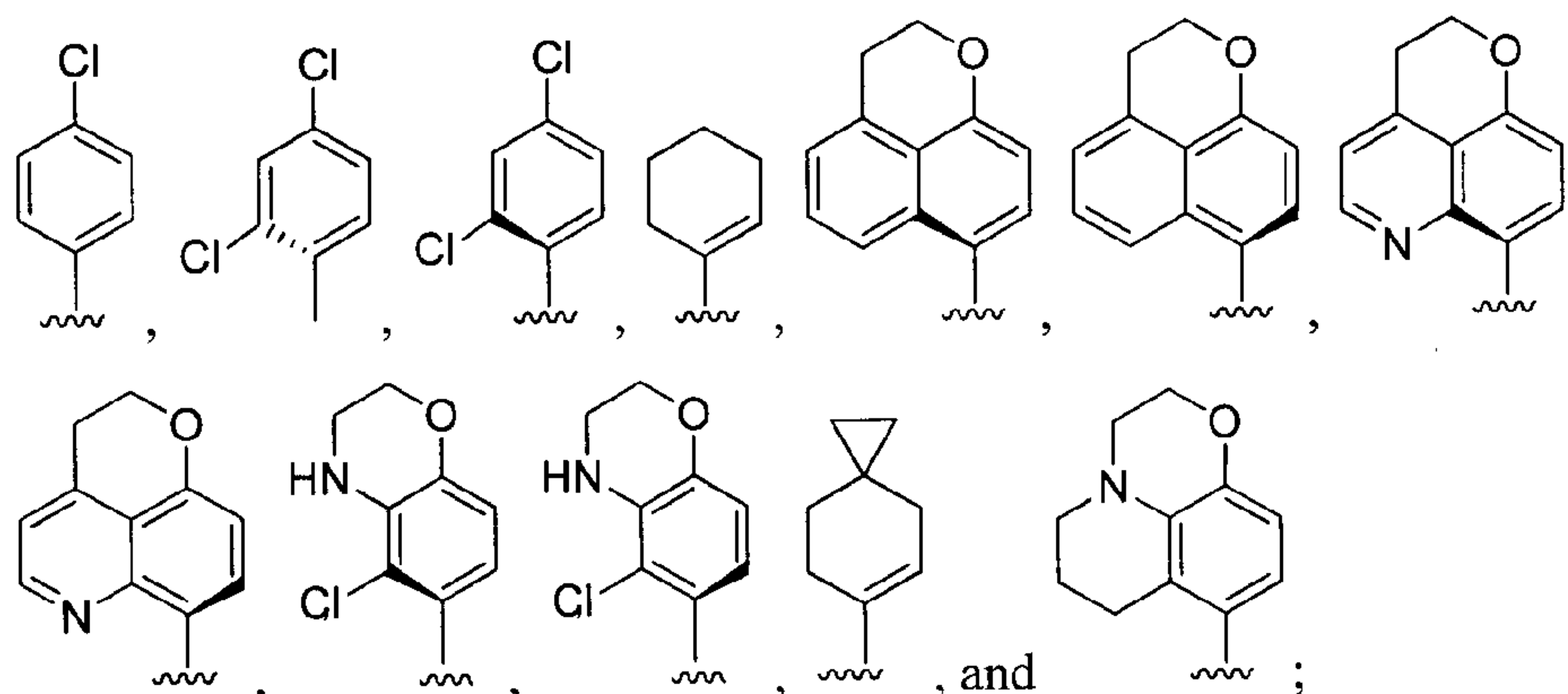
R^{1b} is selected from the group consisting of:

- a) $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$,
 $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$,
 $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$,
 $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-SO_2-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$,
 $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-SO_2-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-C(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$,
 $-O-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-S-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-S(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-SO_2-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{14}$,
 $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-C(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$,
 $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-C(O)-O(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$,
 $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$,
 $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$,
 $-(C_3-C_7)halocarbocycle$, $-NR_aSO_2NR_cR_d$,
 $-NR_aSO_2O(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-NR_aSO_2O(C_6-C_{20})aryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-(C_6-C_{20})aryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-heteroaryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-heterocycle$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-(C_6-C_{20})aryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-heteroaryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-heterocycle$,
 $-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle-Z^1$ and $-halo(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^3$, wherein each $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $(C_3-C_7)halocarbocycle$, $(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$, $(C_6-C_{20})aryl$, heterocycle and heteroaryl, either alone or as part of a group, is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^1 groups;
- b) spiro-bicyclic carbocycle, fused-bicyclic carbocycle and bridged-bicyclic carbocycle, wherein each spiro-bicyclic carbocycle, fused-bicyclic carbocycle and bridged-bicyclic carbocycle is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^1 groups, wherein two Z^1 groups together with the atom or atoms to which they are attached optionally form a $(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$ or heterocycle, wherein the $(C_3-$

C₇)carbocycle or heterocycle is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups;

- c) (C₁-C₆)alkyl, wherein (C₁-C₆)alkyl is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z² groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups;
- d) -X(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -X(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -X(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -X(C₂-C₆)alkynyl and -X(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, wherein each X(C₁-C₆)alkyl and X(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z³ groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups, and wherein each X(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, X(C₂-C₆)alkynyl and X(C₃-C₇)carbocycle is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z⁴ groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups;
- e) (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heteroaryl, heterocycle, -X(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -Xheteroaryl and -Xheterocycle, wherein each (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heteroaryl and heterocycle, either alone or as part of a group, is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z⁵ groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups;
- f) (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, and (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, wherein each (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl and (C₂-C₆)alkynyl is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z⁶ groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups; and
- g) -NR_eR_f, -C(O)NR_eR_f, -OC(O)NR_eR_f, -SO₂NR_eR_f, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-NR_eR_f, -(C₁-C₆)alkylC(O)-NR_eR_f, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(O)-NR_eR_f and -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-SO₂NR_eR_f, wherein each (C₁-C₆)alkyl, as part of a group, is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups,

R^{4a} is selected from the group consisting of:



R^{5a} is selected from the group consisting of:

- a) halo, nitro and cyano;
- b) R¹¹, -C(=O)-R¹¹, -C(=O)-O-R¹¹, -O-R¹¹, -S-R¹¹, -S(O)-R¹¹, -SO₂-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-O-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-S-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-S(O)-R¹¹ and -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-SO₂-R¹¹, wherein each R¹¹ is independently selected from the group consisting of H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, wherein each (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 3 Z¹¹ groups;
- c) -N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -C(=O)-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -O-C(=O)-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -SO₂-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(=O)-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, and -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-SO₂-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, wherein each R¹⁰ is independently selected from the group consisting of R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-R¹¹, -SO₂-R¹¹, -C(=O)-R¹¹, -C(=O)OR¹¹ and -C(=O)N(R⁹)R¹¹, each R⁹ is independently selected from the group consisting of H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl and (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, and wherein each R¹¹ is independently selected from the group consisting of H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl,

(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl;

R^{5b} is selected from the group consisting of:

- a) -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-S-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -(C₁-C₆)alkylS(O)-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-(C₃-C₆)carbocycle, -(C₁-C₆)alkylSO₂(C₁-C₆)alkyl-(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl-(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -NR_aSO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -NR_aSO₂O(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl-(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl-(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl-heteroaryl, -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl-heterocycle, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-heteroaryl, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-heterocycle, -(C₃-C₇)carbocycle-Z¹ and -halo(C₁-C₆)alkyl-Z³, wherein each (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, either alone or as part of a group, is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups;
- b) spiro-bicyclic carbocycle, fused-bicyclic carbocycle and bridged-bicyclic carbocycle, wherein each spiro-bicyclic carbocycle, fused-bicyclic carbocycle and bridged-bicyclic carbocycle is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups, wherein two Z¹ groups together with the atom or atoms to which they are attached optionally form a (C₃-C₇)carbocycle or heterocycle, wherein the (C₃-C₇)carbocycle or heterocycle is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups;

- c) (C₁-C₆)alkyl, wherein (C₁-C₆)alkyl is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z² groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups;
- d) -X(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -X(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -X(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -X(C₂-C₆)alkynyl and -X(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, wherein each X(C₁-C₆)alkyl and X(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z³ groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups, and wherein each X(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, X(C₂-C₆)alkynyl and X(C₃-C₇)carbocycle is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z⁴ groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups;
- e) (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heteroaryl, heterocycle, -X(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -Xheteroaryl and -Xheterocycle, wherein each (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heteroaryl and heterocycle, either alone or as part of a group, is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z⁵ groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups;
- f) (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, and (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, wherein each (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl and (C₂-C₆)alkynyl is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z⁶ groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups; and
- g) -NR_eR_f, -C(O)NR_eR_f, -OC(O)NR_eR_f, -SO₂NR_eR_f, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-NR_eR_f, -(C₁-C₆)alkylC(O)-NR_eR_f, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(O)-NR_eR_f and -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-SO₂NR_eR_f, wherein each (C₁-C₆)alkyl, as part of a group, is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups;

R^{6a} is selected from the group consisting of:

- a) H, halo, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, and (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl;

- b) (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, nitro, cyano, (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl;
- c) -C(=O)-R¹¹, -C(=O)-O-R¹¹, -O-R¹¹, -S-R¹¹, -S(O)-R¹¹, -SO₂-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-O-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-S-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-S(O)-R¹¹ and -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-SO₂-R¹¹, wherein each R¹¹ is independently selected from the group consisting of H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl; and
- d) -N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -C(=O)-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -O-C(=O)-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -SO₂-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(=O)-N(R⁹)R¹⁰ and -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-SO₂-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, wherein each R¹⁰ is independently selected from the group consisting of R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-R¹¹, -SO₂-R¹¹, -C(=O)-R¹¹, -C(=O)OR¹¹ and -C(=O)N(R⁹)R¹¹, each R⁹ is independently selected from the group consisting of H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl and (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, and wherein each R¹¹ is independently selected from the group consisting of H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl;

and wherein any (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heterocycle or heteroaryl of R^{6a} is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 3 Z¹⁰ groups;

R^{6b} is selected from the group consisting of:

- a) -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-(C₃-C₇)carbocycle,
 -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-S-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-(C₃-C₇)carbocycle,
 -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-S(O)-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-(C₃-C₇)carbocycle,
 -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-SO₂-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-(C₃-C₇)carbocycle,
 -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl-(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -halo(C₃-C₇)carbocycle,-

$\text{NR}_a\text{SO}_2\text{NR}_c\text{R}_d$,

$-\text{NR}_a\text{SO}_2\text{O}(\text{C}_3\text{-C}_7)\text{carbocycle}$, -

$\text{NR}_a\text{SO}_2\text{O}(\text{C}_6\text{-C}_{20})\text{aryl}$, $-(\text{C}_2\text{-C}_6)\text{alkenyl}-(\text{C}_3\text{-C}_7)\text{carbocycle}$, $-(\text{C}_2\text{-C}_6)\text{alkenyl}-(\text{C}_6\text{-C}_{20})\text{aryl}$, $-(\text{C}_2\text{-C}_6)\text{alkenyl-heteroaryl}$, $-(\text{C}_2\text{-C}_6)\text{alkenyl-heterocycle}$, $-(\text{C}_2\text{-C}_6)\text{alkynyl}-(\text{C}_3\text{-C}_7)\text{carbocycle}$, $-(\text{C}_2\text{-C}_6)\text{alkynyl}-(\text{C}_6\text{-C}_{20})\text{aryl}$, $-(\text{C}_2\text{-C}_6)\text{alkynyl-heteroaryl}$, $-(\text{C}_2\text{-C}_6)\text{alkynyl-heterocycle}$,

$-(\text{C}_3\text{-C}_7)\text{carbocycle-Z}^1$ and $-\text{halo}(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl-Z}^3$, wherein each $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl}$, $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{haloalkyl}$, $(\text{C}_3\text{-C}_7)\text{carbocycle}$, $(\text{C}_2\text{-C}_6)\text{alkenyl}$, $(\text{C}_2\text{-C}_6)\text{alkynyl}$, $(\text{C}_6\text{-C}_{20})\text{aryl}$, heterocycle and heteroaryl, either alone or as part of a group, is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^1 groups;

- b) spiro-bicyclic carbocycle, fused-bicyclic carbocycle and bridged-bicyclic carbocycle, wherein each spiro-bicyclic carbocycle, fused-bicyclic carbocycle and bridged-bicyclic carbocycle is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^1 groups, wherein two Z^1 groups together with the atom or atoms to which they are attached optionally form a carbocycle or heterocycle wherein the carbocycle or heterocycle is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^1 groups;
- c) $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl}$, wherein $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl}$ is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^2 groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^1 groups;
- d) $-\text{X}(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl}$, $-\text{X}(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{haloalkyl}$, $-\text{X}(\text{C}_2\text{-C}_6)\text{alkenyl}$, $-\text{X}(\text{C}_2\text{-C}_6)\text{alkynyl}$ and $-\text{X}(\text{C}_3\text{-C}_7)\text{carbocycle}$, wherein each $\text{X}(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl}$ and $\text{X}(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{haloalkyl}$ is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^3 groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^1 groups, and wherein each $\text{X}(\text{C}_2\text{-C}_6)\text{alkenyl}$, $\text{X}(\text{C}_2\text{-C}_6)\text{alkynyl}$ and $\text{X}(\text{C}_3\text{-C}_7)\text{carbocycle}$ is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^4

groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^1 groups;

- e) (C_6-C_{20}) aryl, heteroaryl, heterocycle, $-X(C_6-C_{20})$ aryl, $-X$ heteroaryl and $-X$ heterocycle, wherein each (C_6-C_{20}) aryl, heteroaryl and heterocycle, either alone or as part of a group, is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^5 groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^1 groups;
- f) (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl, (C_3-C_7) carbocycle, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl, and (C_2-C_6) alkynyl, wherein each (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl, (C_3-C_7) carbocycle, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl and (C_2-C_6) alkynyl is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^6 groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^1 groups; and
- g) $-NR_eR_f$, $-C(O)NR_eR_f$, $-OC(O)NR_eR_f$, $-SO_2NR_eR_f$, $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- NR_eR_f , $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl $C(O)-NR_eR_f$, $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- $O-C(O)-NR_eR_f$ and $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- $SO_2NR_eR_f$ wherein each (C_1-C_6) alkyl, as part of a group, is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^1 groups;

R^{7a} is selected from the group consisting of:

- a) H, halo, (C_1-C_6) alkyl and (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl;
- b) (C_2-C_6) alkenyl, (C_2-C_6) alkynyl, (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl, nitro, cyano, (C_6-C_{20}) aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl;
- c) $-C(=O)-R^{11}$, $-C(=O)-O-R^{11}$, $-O-R^{11}$, $-S-R^{11}$, $-S(O)-R^{11}$, $-SO_2-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- R^{11} , $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- $C(=O)-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- $C(=O)-O-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- $O-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- $S-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- $S(O)-R^{11}$ and $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- SO_2-R^{11} , wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from the group consisting of H, (C_1-C_6) alkyl, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl, (C_2-C_6) alkynyl, (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl, (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl, (C_6-C_{20}) aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl; and
- d) $-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-C(=O)-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-O-C(=O)-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-SO_2-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- $N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- $C(=O)-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- $O-C(=O)-N(R^9)R^{10}$ and $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- $SO_2-N(R^9)R^{10}$

$N(R^9)R^{10}$, wherein each R^{10} is independently selected from the group consisting of R^{11} , $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-R^{11}$, $-SO_2-R^{11}$, $-C(=O)-R^{11}$, $-C(=O)OR^{11}$ and $-C(=O)N(R^9)R^{11}$, each R^9 is independently selected from the group consisting of H, $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$ and $(C_3-C_7)cycloalkyl$, and wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from the group consisting of H, $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$, $(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $(C_3-C_7)cycloalkyl$, $(C_6-C_{20})aryl$, heterocycle and heteroaryl,

and wherein any $(C_6-C_{20})aryl$, heterocycle or heteroaryl of R^{7a} is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 3 Z^{10} groups;

R^{7b} is selected from the group consisting of:

- a) $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-SO_2-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-C(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-O-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-S-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-S(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-SO_2-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{14}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-C(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-C(O)-O(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-SO_2-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $-(C_3-C_7)halocarbocycle$, $-NR_aSO_2NR_cR_d$, $-NR_aSO_2O(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-NR_aSO_2O(C_6-C_{20})aryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-(C_6-C_{20})aryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-heteroaryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-heterocycle$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-(C_6-C_{20})aryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-heteroaryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-heterocycle$, $-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle-Z^1$ and $-halo(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^3$, wherein each

- (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, either alone or as part of a group, is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups;
- b) spiro-bicyclic carbocycle, fused-bicyclic carbocycle and bridged-bicyclic carbocycle, wherein each spiro-bicyclic carbocycle, fused-bicyclic carbocycle and bridged-bicyclic carbocycle is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups, wherein two Z¹ groups together with the atom or atoms to which they are attached optionally form a (C₃-C₇)carbocycle or heterocycle, wherein the (C₃-C₇)carbocycle or heterocycle is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups;
- c) (C₁-C₆)alkyl, wherein (C₁-C₆)alkyl is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z² groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups;
- d) -X(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -X(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -X(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -X(C₂-C₆)alkynyl and -X(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, wherein each X(C₁-C₆)alkyl and X(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z³ groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups, and wherein each X(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, X(C₂-C₆)alkynyl and X(C₃-C₇)carbocycle is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z⁴ groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups;
- e) (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heteroaryl, heterocycle, -X(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -Xheteroaryl and -Xheterocycle, wherein each (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heteroaryl and heterocycle, either alone or as part of a group, is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z⁵ groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups;
- f) (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl and (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, wherein each (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle,

(C₂-C₆)alkenyl and (C₂-C₆)alkynyl is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z⁶ groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups; and

g) -NR_eR_f, -C(O)NR_eR_f, -OC(O)NR_eR_f, -SO₂NR_eR_f, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-NR_eR_f, -(C₁-C₆)alkylC(O)-NR_eR_f, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(O)-NR_eR_f and -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-SO₂NR_eR_f, wherein each (C₁-C₆)alkyl is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups;

or any of R^{5a} and R^{6a} or R^{6a} and R^{7a}, together with the atoms to which they are attached form a 5 or 6-membered carbocycle or a 4, 5, 6 or 7-membered heterocycle, wherein the 5 or 6-membered carbocycle or the 4, 5, 6 or 7-membered heterocycle is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halo, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, -OH, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -SH, -S(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -NH₂, -NH(C₁-C₆)alkyl and -N((C₁-C₆)alkyl)₂;

or any of R⁵ and R⁶ or R⁶ and R⁷, together with the atoms to which they are attached form a 5 or 6-membered carbocycle or a 4, 5, 6 or 7-membered heterocycle, wherein each 5 or 6-membered carbocycle or 4, 5, 6 or 7-membered heterocycle is independently substituted with 1 to 3 Z⁷ or Z⁸ groups, wherein when two Z⁷ groups are on same atom the two Z⁷ groups together with the atom to which they are attached optionally form a (C₃-C₇)carbocycle or 4, 5 or 6-membered heterocycle;

X is independently selected from the group consisting of O, -C(O)-, -C(O)O-, -S-, -S(O)-, -SO₂-, -(C₁-C₆)alkylO-, -(C₁-C₆)alkylC(O)-, -(C₁-C₆)alkylC(O)O-, -(C₁-C₆)alkylS-, -(C₁-C₆)alkylS(O)- and -(C₁-C₆)alkylSO₂-;

each Z¹ is independently selected from the group consisting of halo, -NO₂, -OH, =NOR_a, -SH, -CN, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, -(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -heteroaryl, -heterocycle, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -O(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -O(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, -O(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle,

-O(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -O(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -Oheteroaryl, -
 Oheterocycle, -S(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -S(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, -S(C₁-
 C₆)haloalkyl, -S(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -S(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -
 S(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -Sheteroaryl, -Sheterocycle, -S(O)(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(O)(C₂-
 C₆)alkenyl, -S(O)(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, -S(O)(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -S(O)(C₃-
 C₇)carbocycle, -S(O)(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -SO₂(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -
 S(O)(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -S(O)carbocycle, -S(O)heteroaryl, -
 S(O)heterocycle, -SO₂(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -SO₂(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, -SO₂(C₁-
 C₆)haloalkyl, -SO₂(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -SO₂(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -
 SO₂(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -SO₂heteroaryl, -SO₂heterocycle, -SO₂NR_cR_d, -
 NR_cR_d, -NR_aC(O)R_a, -NR_aC(O)OR_a, -NR_aC(O)NR_cR_d -
 NR_aSO₂R_b, -NR_aSO₂NR_cR_d,
 -NR_aSO₂O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -
 NR_aSO₂O(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -OS(O)₂R_a, -C(O)R_a, -C(O)OR_b, -C(O)NR_cR_d,
 and -OC(O)NR_cR_d, wherein any
 (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl,
 -(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle,
 (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heteroaryl and heterocycle of Z¹, either alone or as part of a
 group, is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5
 halogen, -OH, -OR_b, -CN, -NR_aC(O)₂R_b, heteroaryl, heterocycle, -
 Oheteroaryl, -Oheterocycle, -NHheteroaryl, -NHheterocycle,
 or -S(O)₂NR_cR_d;

each Z² is independently selected from the group consisting of -NO₂, -CN, spiro-
 heterocycle, bridged- heterocycle, spiro-bicyclic carbocycle,
 bridged-bicyclic carbocycle, NR_aSO₂(C₃-
 C₇)carbocycle, -NR_aSO₂(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -NR_aSO₂heteroaryl, -
 NR_aSO₂NR_cR_d,
 -NR_aSO₂O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle and -NR_aSO₂O(C₆-C₂₀)aryl;

each Z³ is independently selected from the group consisting of -NO₂, -CN, -OH,
 oxo, =NOR_a, thioxo, -(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -heterocycle, -heteroaryl,

-(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -Ohalo(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -O(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -Oheterocycle, -Oheteroaryl, -S(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -S(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -S(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -Sheterocycle, -Sheteroaryl, -S(O)(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(O)(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -S(O)(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -S(O)(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -S(O)heterocycle, -S(O)heteroaryl, -SO₂(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -SO₂(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -SO₂(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -SO₂(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -SO₂heterocycle, -SO₂heteroaryl, -NR_aR_b, -NR_aC(O)R_b, -C(O)NR_cR_d, -SO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle and -NR_aSO₂O(C₆-C₂₀)aryl;

each Z⁴ is independently selected from the group consisting of halogen,

-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -halo(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -NO₂, -CN, -OH, oxo, =NOR_a, thioxo, -(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -heterocycle, -heteroaryl, -(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -O(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -O(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -Oheterocycle, -Oheteroaryl, -S(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -S(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -S(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -Sheterocycle, -Sheteroaryl, -S(O)(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(O)(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -S(O)(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -S(O)(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -S(O)heterocycle, -S(O)heteroaryl, -SO₂(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -SO₂(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -SO₂(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -SO₂(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -SO₂heterocycle, -SO₂heteroaryl, -NR_aR_b, -NR_aC(O)R_a, -C(O)NR_cR_d, -SO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle and -NR_aSO₂O(C₆-C₂₀)aryl;

each Z⁵ is independently selected from the group consisting

of -NO₂, -CN, -NR_aSO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -NR_aSO₂O(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -NR_aSO₂(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -NR_aSO₂(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -NR_aSO₂(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, -NR_aSO₂(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -NR_aSO₂(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -NR_aSO₂(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -

NR_aSO₂heteroaryl, -NR_aSO₂heterocycle, -NR_aC(O)alkyl, -NR_aC(O)alkenyl, -NR_aC(O)alkynyl,
 -NR_aC(O)(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -NR_aC(O)(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle,
 -NR_aC(O)(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -NR_aC(O)heteroaryl, -NR_aC(O)heterocycle,
 NR_aC(O)NR_cR_d and NR_aC(O)OR_b;

each Z⁶ is independently selected from the group consisting

of -NO₂, -CN, -NR_aR_a, NR_aC(O)R_b, -C(O)NR_cR_d, -(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -heteroaryl, -heterocycle, -O(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -Oheteroaryl, -Oheterocycle, -O(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -Ohalo(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -Sheteroaryl, -Sheterocycle, -S(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -S(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -S(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -S(O)(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -S(O)heteroaryl, -S(O)heterocycle, -S(O)(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -S(O)(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(O)(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -S(O)halo(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -SO₂(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -SO₂heteroaryl, -SO₂heterocycle, -SO₂(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -SO₂halo(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -SO₂(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -SO₂(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -SO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -NR_aSO₂(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -NR_aSO₂heteroaryl, -NR_aSO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle and -NR_aSO₂O(C₆-C₂₀)aryl;

each Z⁷ is independently selected from the group consisting of -NO₂,

=NOR_a, -CN, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-Z¹², -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl-Z¹², -(C₂-C₆)alkenylOH, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-Z¹², -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-OH, -(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl-Z¹², -(C₁-C₆)haloalkylOH, -(C₃-C₇)carbocycle-Z¹², -(C₃-C₇)carbocycleOH, -(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -(C₁-C₆)alkylNR_cR_d, -(C₁-C₆)alkylNR_aC(O)R_a, -(C₁-C₆)alkylNR_aSO₂R_a, -(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -heteroaryl, -heterocycle, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl-Z¹², -O(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -O(C₂-C₆)alkynyl,

-O(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -O(C₃-C₇)halocarbo-
 cycle, -O(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -O(C₁-C₆)alkylNR_cR_d, -O(C₁-C₆)alkylNR_aC(O)R_a,
 -O(C₁-C₆)alkylNR_aSO₂R_a, -Oheteroaryl, -Oheterocycle, -S(C₁-C₆)alkyl-
 Z¹², -S(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -S(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, -S(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl,
 -S(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -S(C₃-C₇)halocarbo-
 cycle, -S(C₁-C₆)alkylNR_cR_d, -S(C₁-C₆)alkylNR_aC(O)R_a, -S(C₁-C₆)alkylNR_aSO₂R_a, -
 S(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -Sheteroaryl, -Sheterocycle, -S(O)(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(O)(C₂-
 C₆)alkenyl, -S(O)(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, -S(O)(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -S(O)(C₃-
 C₇)carbocycle, -S(O)(C₃-C₇)halocarbo-
 cycle, -SO₂(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(O)(C₁-
 C₆)alkylNR_cR_d, -S(O)(C₁-C₆)alkylNR_aC(O)R_a, -S(O)(C₁-
 C₆)alkylNR_aSO₂R_a,
 -S(O)(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -S(O)heteroaryl, -S(O)heterocycle, -SO₂(C₁-
 C₆)alkyl, -SO₂(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -SO₂(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, -SO₂(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl,
 -SO₂(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -SO₂(C₃-
 C₇)halocarbo-
 cycle, -SO₂(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -SO₂heteroaryl, -SO₂heterocycle, -
 SO₂(C₁-C₆)alkylNR_cR_d,
 -SO₂(C₁-C₆)alkylNR_aC(O)R_a, -SO₂(C₁-C₆)alkylNR_aSO₂R_a, -
 SO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_aC(O)OR_b, -NR_aC(O)NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂R_b, -
 NR_aSO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -
 NR_aSO₂O(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -OS(O)₂R_a, -C(O)NR_cR_d, and -OC(O)NR_cR_d,
 wherein any (C₁-C₆)alkyl,
 (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle,
 (C₃-C₇)halocarbo-
 cycle, (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heteroaryl and heterocycle of Z⁷,
 either alone or as part of a group, is optionally independently substituted
 with 1 to 5 halogen, -OH, -OR_b, -CN, -NR_aC(O)₂R_b, -
 heteroaryl, -heterocycle, -Oheteroaryl, -Oheterocycle, -
 NHheteroaryl, -NHheterocycle, or -S(O)₂NR_cR_d;
 each Z⁸ is independently selected from the group consisting of -NO₂ and -CN;

each Z^9 is independently selected from the group consisting of $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl$ and $-O(C_1-C_6)alkyl$;

each Z^{11} is independently selected from the group consisting of Z^{10} , $-C(=O)-NH_2$, $-C(=O)-NH(C_1-C_4)alkyl$, $-C(=O)-N((C_1-C_4)alkyl)_2$, $-C(=O)-(C_6-C_{20})aryl$, $-C(=O)-heterocycle$ and $-C(=O)-heteroaryl$;

each Z^{10} is independently selected from the group consisting of:

- i) halo, oxo, thioxo, $(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $(C_3-C_7)cycloalkyl$, $(C_3-C_7)cycloalkyl-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-$, $-OH$, $-O(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $-O(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $-SH$, $-S(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $-SO(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $-SO_2(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $-NH_2$, $-NH(C_1-C_6)alkyl$ and $-N((C_1-C_6)alkyl)_2$;
- ii) $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$ optionally independently substituted with $-OH$, $-O-(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, or $-O-(C_1-C_6)alkyl$; and
- iii) $(C_6-C_{20})aryl$, heterocycle and heteroaryl, which each $(C_6-C_{20})aryl$, heterocycle and heteroaryl is optionally independently substituted with halo, $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$ or $COOH$;

each Z^{12} is independently selected from the group consisting of $-NO_2$, $=NOR_a$, thioxo, $-(C_6-C_{20})aryl$, $-heterocycle$, $-heteroaryl$, $-(C_3-C_7)halocarbo$ cycle, $-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-O(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-Ohalo(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-O(C_6-C_{20})aryl$, $-Oheterocycle$, $-Oheteroaryl$, $-S(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $-S(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-Shalo(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-S(C_6-C_{20})aryl$, $-Sheterocycle$, $-Sheteroaryl$, $-S(O)(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $-S(O)(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-S(O)halo(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-S(O)(C_6-C_{20})aryl$, $-S(O)heterocycle$, $-S(O)heteroaryl$, $-SO_2(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $-SO_2(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-SO_2(C_3-C_7)halocarbo$ cycle, $SO_2(C_6-C_{20})aryl$, $-SO_2heterocycle$, $-SO_2heteroaryl$, $-NR_aR_a$, $-NR_aC(O)R_b$, $-C(O)NR_cR_d$, $-SO_2NR_cR_d$, $-NR_aSO_2NR_cR_d$, $-NR_aSO_2O(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$ and $-NR_aSO_2O(C_6-C_{20})aryl$;

each Z^{13} is independently selected from the group consisting of $-\text{NO}_2$, $-\text{OH}$, $=\text{NOR}_a$, $-\text{SH}$, $-\text{CN}$, $-(\text{C}_3\text{-C}_7)\text{halocarbo cycle}$, $-\text{O}(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl}$, $-\text{O}(\text{C}_2\text{-C}_6)\text{alkenyl}$, $-\text{O}(\text{C}_2\text{-C}_6)\text{alkynyl}$, $-\text{O}(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{haloalkyl}$, $-\text{O}(\text{C}_3\text{-C}_7)\text{carbocycle}$, $-\text{O}(\text{C}_3\text{-C}_7)\text{halocarbo cycle}$, $-\text{O}(\text{C}_6\text{-C}_{20})\text{aryl}$, $-\text{Oheteroaryl}$, $-\text{Oheterocycle}$, $-\text{S}(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl}$, $-\text{S}(\text{C}_2\text{-C}_6)\text{alkenyl}$, $-\text{S}(\text{C}_2\text{-C}_6)\text{alkynyl}$, $-\text{S}(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{haloalkyl}$, $-\text{S}(\text{C}_3\text{-C}_7)\text{carbocycle}$, $-\text{S}(\text{C}_3\text{-C}_7)\text{halocarbo cycle}$, $-\text{S}(\text{C}_6\text{-C}_{20})\text{aryl}$, $-\text{Sheteroaryl}$, $-\text{Sheterocycle}$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl}$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})(\text{C}_2\text{-C}_6)\text{alkenyl}$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})(\text{C}_2\text{-C}_6)\text{alkynyl}$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{haloalkyl}$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})(\text{C}_3\text{-C}_7)\text{carbocycle}$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})(\text{C}_3\text{-C}_7)\text{halocarbo cycle}$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})(\text{C}_6\text{-C}_{20})\text{aryl}$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})\text{heteroaryl}$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})\text{heterocycle}$, $-\text{SO}_2(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl}$, $-\text{SO}_2(\text{C}_2\text{-C}_6)\text{alkenyl}$, $-\text{SO}_2(\text{C}_2\text{-C}_6)\text{alkynyl}$, $-\text{SO}_2(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{haloalkyl}$, $-\text{SO}_2(\text{C}_3\text{-C}_7)\text{carbocycle}$, $-\text{SO}_2(\text{C}_3\text{-C}_7)\text{halocarbo cycle}$, $-\text{SO}_2(\text{C}_6\text{-C}_{20})\text{aryl}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{heteroaryl}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{heterocycle}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NR}_c\text{R}_d$, $-\text{NR}_c\text{R}_d$, $-\text{NR}_a\text{C}(\text{O})\text{R}_a$, $-\text{NR}_a\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OR}_b$, $-\text{NR}_a\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}_c\text{R}_d$, $-\text{NR}_a\text{SO}_2\text{R}_b$, $-\text{NR}_a\text{SO}_2\text{NR}_c\text{R}_d$, $-\text{NR}_a\text{SO}_2\text{O}(\text{C}_3\text{-C}_7)\text{carbocycle}$, $-\text{NR}_a\text{SO}_2\text{O}(\text{C}_6\text{-C}_{20})\text{aryl}$, $-\text{OS}(\text{O})_2\text{R}_a$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{R}_a$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OR}_b$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}_c\text{R}_d$, and $-\text{OC}(\text{O})\text{NR}_c\text{R}_d$, wherein any $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl}$, $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{haloalkyl}$, $(\text{C}_2\text{-C}_6)\text{alkenyl}$, $(\text{C}_2\text{-C}_6)\text{alkynyl}$, $(\text{C}_3\text{-C}_7)\text{carbocycle}$, $(\text{C}_3\text{-C}_7)\text{halocarbo cycle}$, $(\text{C}_6\text{-C}_{20})\text{aryl}$, heteroaryl and heterocycle of Z^{13} , either alone or as part of a group, is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 halogen, $-\text{OH}$, $-\text{OR}_b$, $-\text{CN}$, $-\text{NR}_a\text{C}(\text{O})_2\text{R}_b$, $-\text{heteroaryl}$, $-\text{heterocycle}$, $-\text{Oheteroaryl}$, $-\text{Oheterocycle}$, $-\text{NHheteroaryl}$, $-\text{NHheterocycle}$, or $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{NR}_c\text{R}_d$;

each Z^{14} is independently selected from the group consisting of $-\text{NO}_2$, $=\text{NOR}_a$, $-\text{CN}$, $-(\text{C}_3\text{-C}_7)\text{halocarbo cycle}$, $-\text{O}(\text{C}_3\text{-C}_7)\text{halocarbo cycle}$, $-\text{S}(\text{C}_3\text{-C}_7)\text{halocarbo cycle}$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})(\text{C}_3\text{-C}_7)\text{halocarbo cycle}$, $-\text{SO}_2(\text{C}_3\text{-C}_7)\text{halocarbo cycle}$, $-\text{NR}_a\text{SO}_2\text{NR}_c\text{R}_d$, $-\text{NR}_a\text{SO}_2\text{O}(\text{C}_3\text{-C}_7)\text{halocarbo cycle}$, $-\text{NR}_a\text{SO}_2\text{O}(\text{C}_6\text{-C}_{20})\text{aryl}$ and $-\text{OS}(\text{O})_2\text{R}_a$, wherein any $-(\text{C}_3\text{-C}_7)\text{halocarbo cycle}$ of Z^{14} , either alone

or as part of a group, is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 halogen, -OH, -OR_b, -CN, -NR_aC(O)₂R_b, -heteroaryl, -heterocycle, -Oheteroaryl, -Oheterocycle, -NHheteroaryl, -NHheterocycle, or -S(O)₂NR_cR_d;

each R_a is independently H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, heterocycle, (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, (C₆-C₂₀)aryl(C₁-C₆)alkyl-, heteroaryl or heteroaryl(C₁-C₆)alkyl-, wherein any (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, heterocycle, (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, or heteroaryl of R_a, either alone or as part of a group, is optionally independently substituted by 1 to 5 halogen, OH or cyano;

each R_b is independently -(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, heterocycle, (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, (C₆-C₂₀)aryl(C₁-C₆)alkyl-, heteroaryl or heteroaryl(C₁-C₆)alkyl-; wherein any (C₁-C₆)alkyl, -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, heterocycle, (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, or heteroaryl of R_b, either alone or as part of a group, is optionally independently substituted by 1 to 5 halogen, OH or cyano;

R_c and R_d are each independently selected from the group consisting of H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, (C₆-C₂₀)aryl(C₁-C₆)alkyl-, heterocycle, heteroaryl and heteroaryl(C₁-C₆)alkyl-, wherein any (C₁-C₆)alkyl, -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, heterocycle, (C₆-C₂₀)aryl and heteroaryl of R_c or R_d, either alone or as part of a group, is optionally independently substituted by 1 to 5 halogen, OH or cyano; or R_c and R_d together with the nitrogen to which they are attached form a heterocycle, wherein any heterocycle of R_c and R_d together with the nitrogen to which they are attached is optionally independently substituted by 1 to 5 halogen, OH or cyano;

each R_e is independently selected from the group consisting of -OR_a, (C₁-C₆)alkyl and (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, wherein each (C₁-C₆)alkyl and (C₃-C₇)carbocycle is independently substituted by 1 to 5 Z⁶ and

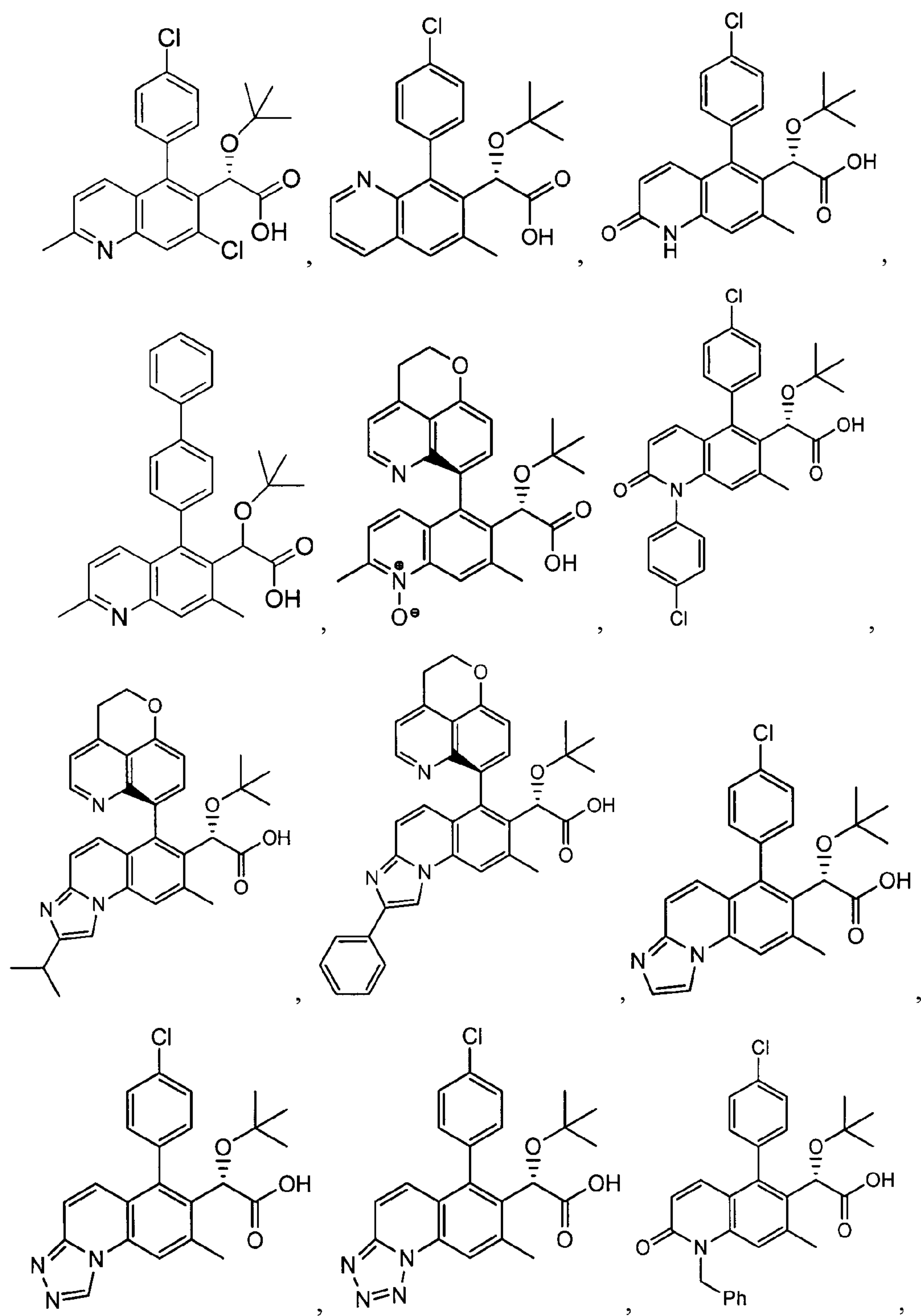
optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^1 , $-(C_2-C_6)$ haloalkyl, $-(C_2-C_6)$ alkenyl and $-(C_2-C_6)$ alkynyl, wherein each $-(C_2-C_6)$ haloalkyl, $-(C_2-C_6)$ alkenyl and $-(C_2-C_6)$ alkynyl is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^1 ; and (C_6-C_{20}) aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl wherein each (C_6-C_{20}) aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl is independently substituted by 1 to 5 Z^5 ;

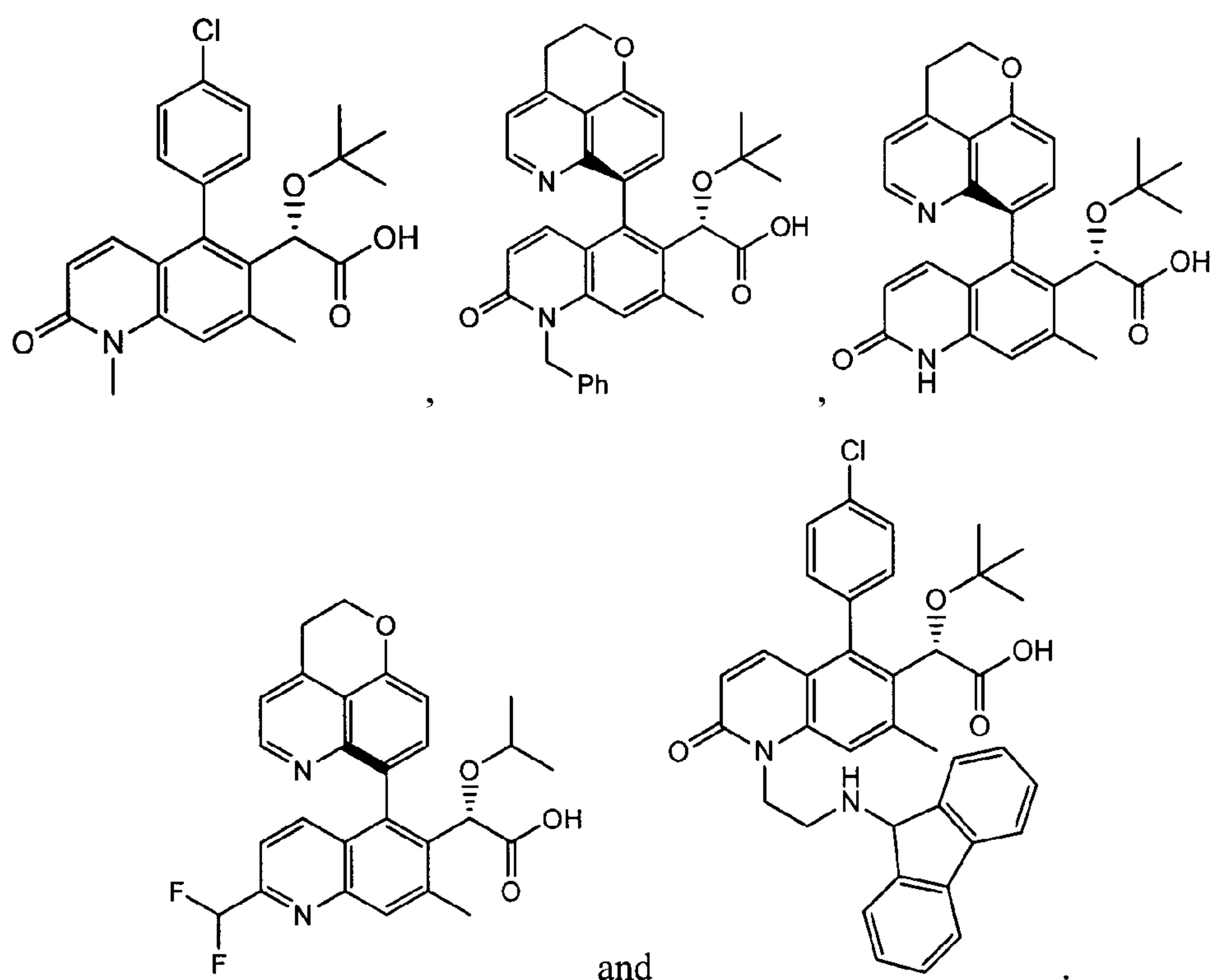
each R_f is independently selected from the group consisting of $-R_g$, $-OR_a$, $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- Z^6 , $-SO_2R_g$, $-C(O)R_g$, $C(O)OR_g$ and $-C(O)NR_eR_g$; and

each R_g is independently selected from the group consisting of H, $-OR_a$, (C_1-C_6) alkyl, (C_3-C_7) carbocycle (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl, (C_2-C_6) alkynyl, (C_6-C_{20}) aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, wherein any (C_1-C_6) alkyl, (C_3-C_7) carbocycle $-(C_1-C_6)$ haloalkyl, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl, (C_2-C_6) alkynyl, (C_6-C_{20}) aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl of R_g is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z_1 groups;

wherein each heteroaryl has 1 to 6 carbon atoms and 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from the group consisting of oxygen, nitrogen and sulfur, and each heterocycle has 1 to 6 carbon atoms and 1 to 3 heteroatoms selected from the group consisting of oxygen, nitrogen and sulfur.

The invention also provides a compound, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, selected from the group consisting of:





The invention also provides a pharmaceutical composition comprising a compound of the invention or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, in combination with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

The invention also provides a method for treating (e.g. preventing, mediating or inhibiting) the proliferation of the HIV virus, treating AIDS or delaying the onset of AIDS or ARC symptoms in a mammal (e.g. a human), comprising administering a compound of formula I, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, to the mammal.

The invention also provides a use of a compound as defined herein, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, or a composition as defined herein for treating the proliferation of the HIV virus, treating AIDS or delaying the onset of AIDS or ARC symptoms in a mammal.

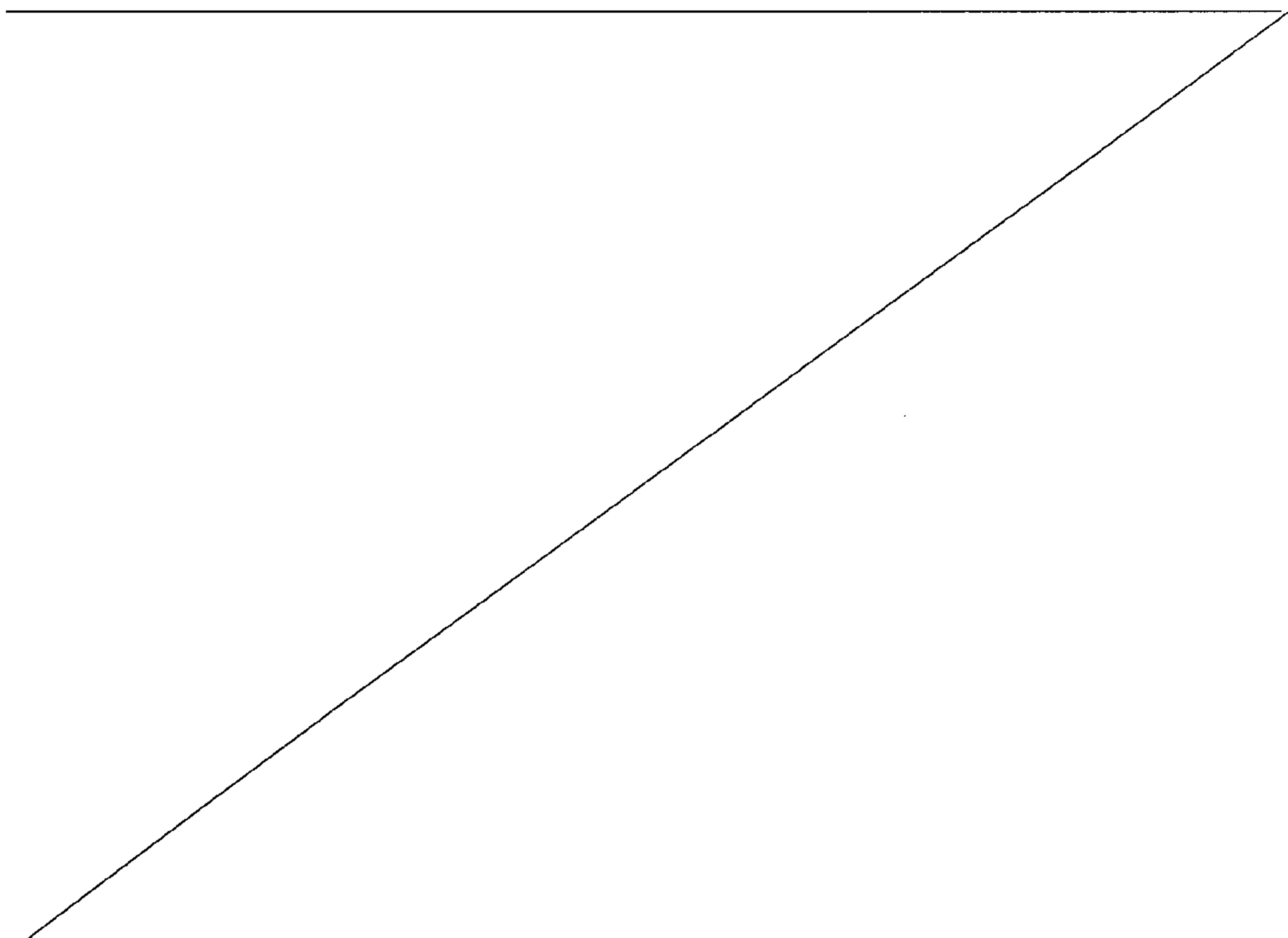
The invention also provides a compound of the invention, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof for use in medical therapy (e.g. for use in treating (e.g. preventing,

mediating or inhibiting) the proliferation of the HIV virus or AIDS or delaying the onset of AIDS or ARC symptoms in a mammal (e.g. a human)).

The invention also provides a compound as defined herein or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, for use in the prophylactic or therapeutic treatment of the proliferation of the HIV virus or AIDS or for use in the therapeutic treatment of delaying the onset of AIDS or ARC symptoms.

The invention also provides a compound of the invention, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof for use in the manufacture of a medicament for treating (e.g. preventing, mediating or inhibiting) the proliferation of the HIV virus or AIDS or delaying the onset of AIDS or ARC symptoms in a mammal (e.g. a human).

The invention also provides a use of a compound as defined herein or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, for the manufacture of a medicament for treating the proliferation of the HIV virus, treating AIDS or delaying the onset of AIDS or ARC symptoms in a mammal.



24w

The invention also provides a compound of formula I, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, for use in the prophylactic or therapeutic treatment (e.g. prevention, mediation or inhibiting) of the proliferation of the HIV virus or AIDS or for use in the therapeutic treatment of delaying the onset of AIDS or ARC symptoms.

- 5 The invention also provides processes and intermediates disclosed herein that are useful for preparing compounds of formula I or salts thereof.

Detailed Description of the Invention

Definitions

- 10 Unless stated otherwise, the following terms and phrases as used herein are intended to have the following meanings:

When trade names are used herein, applicants intend to independently include the tradename product and the active pharmaceutical ingredient(s) of the tradename product.

- 15 “Alkyl” is hydrocarbon containing normal, secondary or tertiary atoms. For example, an alkyl group can have 1 to 20 carbon atoms (*i.e.*, (C₁-C₂₀)alkyl), 1 to 10 carbon atoms (*i.e.*, (C₁-C₁₀)alkyl), 1 to 8 carbon atoms (*i.e.*, (C₁-C₈)alkyl) or 1 to 6 carbon atoms (*i.e.*, (C₁-C₆ alkyl). Examples of suitable alkyl groups include, but are not limited to, methyl (Me, -CH₃), ethyl (Et, -CH₂CH₃), 1-propyl (n-Pr, n-propyl, -CH₂CH₂CH₃), 2-propyl (i-Pr, i-propyl, -CH(CH₃)₂), 1-butyl (n-Bu, n-butyl, -CH₂CH₂CH₂CH₃), 2-methyl-1-propyl (i-Bu, i-butyl, -CH₂CH(CH₃)₂), 2-butyl (s-Bu, s-butyl, -CH(CH₃)CH₂CH₃), 2-methyl-2-propyl (t-Bu, t-butyl, -C(CH₃)₃), 1-pentyl (n-pentyl, -CH₂CH₂CH₂CH₂CH₃), 2-pentyl (-CH(CH₃)CH₂CH₂CH₃), 3-pentyl (-CH(CH₂CH₃)₂), 2-methyl-2-butyl (-C(CH₃)₂CH₂CH₃), 3-methyl-2-butyl (-CH(CH₃)CH(CH₃)₂), 3-methyl-1-butyl (-CH₂CH₂CH(CH₃)₂), 2-methyl-1-butyl (-CH₂CH(CH₃)CH₂CH₃), 1-hexyl (-CH₂CH₂CH₂CH₂CH₂CH₃), 2-hexyl (-CH(CH₃)CH₂CH₂CH₂CH₃), 3-hexyl (-CH(CH₂CH₃)(CH₂CH₂CH₃)), 2-methyl-2-pentyl (-C(CH₃)₂CH₂CH₂CH₃), 3-methyl-2-pentyl (-CH(CH₃)CH(CH₃)CH₂CH₃), 4-methyl-2-pentyl (-CH(CH₃)CH₂CH(CH₃)₂), 3-methyl-3-pentyl (-C(CH₃)(CH₂CH₃)₂), 2-methyl-3-pentyl (-CH(CH₂CH₃)CH(CH₃)₂), 2,3-dimethyl-2-butyl (-C(CH₃)₂CH(CH₃)₂), 3,3-dimethyl-2-butyl (-CH(CH₃)C(CH₃)₃), and octyl (-CH₂)₇CH₃). “Alkyl” also refers to a saturated, branched or straight chain hydrocarbon

radical having two monovalent radical centers derived by the removal of two hydrogen atoms from the same or two different carbon atoms of a parent alkane. For example, an alkyl group can have 1 to 10 carbon atoms(*i.e.*, (C₁-C₁₀)alkyl), or 1 to 6 carbon atoms(*i.e.*, (C₁-C₆)alkyl) or 1-3 carbon atoms(*i.e.*, (C₁-C₃)alkyl). Typical alkyl radicals include, but
 5 are not limited to, methylene (-CH₂-), 1,1-ethyl (-CH(CH₃)₂-), 1,2-ethyl (-CH₂CH₂-), 1,1-propyl (-CH(CH₂CH₃)₂-), 1,2-propyl (-CH₂CH(CH₃)₂-), 1,3-propyl (-CH₂CH₂CH₂-), 1,4-butyl (-CH₂CH₂CH₂CH₂-), and the like.

“Alkenyl” is a straight or branched hydrocarbon containing normal, secondary or tertiary carbon atoms with at least one site of unsaturation, *i.e.* a carbon-carbon, *sp*²
 10 double bond. For example, an alkenyl group can have 2 to 20 carbon atoms (*i.e.*, C₂-C₂₀ alkenyl), 2 to 8 carbon atoms (*i.e.*, C₂-C₈ alkenyl), or 2 to 6 carbon atoms (*i.e.*, C₂-C₆ alkenyl). Examples of suitable alkenyl groups include, but are not limited to, ethylene or vinyl (-CH=CH₂), allyl (-CH₂CH=CH₂), cyclopentenyl (-C₅H₇), and 5-hexenyl (-CH₂CH₂CH₂CH₂CH=CH₂).

“Alkynyl” is a straight or branched hydrocarbon containing normal, secondary or tertiary carbon atoms with at least one site of unsaturation, *i.e.* a carbon-carbon, *sp*
 15 triple bond. For example, an alkynyl group can have 2 to 20 carbon atoms (*i.e.*, C₂-C₂₀ alkynyl), 2 to 8 carbon atoms (*i.e.*, C₂-C₈ alkyne), or 2 to 6 carbon atoms (*i.e.*, C₂-C₆ alkynyl). Examples of suitable alkynyl groups include, but are not limited to,
 20 acetylenic (-C≡CH), propargyl (-CH₂C≡CH), and the like.

The term “halo” or “halogen” as used herein refers to fluoro, chloro, bromo and iodo.

The term “haloalkyl” as used herein refers to an alkyl as defined herein, wherein one or more hydrogen atoms are each replaced by a halo substituent. For example, a
 25 (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl is a (C₁-C₆)alkyl wherein one or more of the hydrogen atoms have been replaced by a halo substituent. Such a range includes one halo substituent on the alkyl group up to complete halogenation of the alkyl group.

The term “aryl” as used herein refers to a single aromatic ring or a bicyclic or multicyclic ring. For example, an aryl group can have 6 to 20 carbon atoms, 6 to 14
 30 carbon atoms, or 6 to 12 carbon atoms. Aryl includes a phenyl radical or an ortho-fused bicyclic or multicyclic radical having about 9 to 14 atoms in which at least one ring is aromatic (e.g. an aryl fused to one or more aryl or carbocycle). Such bicyclic or

multicyclic rings may be optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2 or 3) oxo groups on any carbocycle portion of the bicyclic or multicyclic ring. It is to be understood that the point of attachment of a bicyclic or multicyclic radical, as defined above, can be at any position of the ring including an aryl or a carbocycle portion of the ring. Typical aryl groups include, but are not limited to, phenyl, indenyl, naphthyl, 1, 2, 3, 4-tetrahydronaphthyl, anthracenyl, and the like.

“Arylalkyl” refers to an alkyl radical as defined herein in which one of the hydrogen atoms bonded to a carbon atom is replaced with an aryl radical as described herein (*i.e.*, an aryl-alkyl- moiety). The alkyl group of the “arylalkyl” is typically 1 to 6 carbon atoms (*i.e.* aryl(C₁-C₆)alkyl). Arylalkyl groups include, but are not limited to, benzyl, 2-phenylethan-1-yl, 1-phenylpropan-1-yl, naphthylmethyl, 2-naphthylethan-1-yl and the like.

The term “heteroaryl” as used herein refers to a single aromatic ring or a multiple condensed ring. The term includes single aromatic rings of from about 1 to 6 carbon atoms and about 1-4 heteroatoms selected from the group consisting of oxygen, nitrogen and sulfur in the rings. The sulfur and nitrogen atoms may also be present in an oxidized form provided the ring is aromatic. Such rings include but are not limited to pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, oxazolyl or furyl. The term also includes multiple condensed ring systems (e.g. ring systems comprising 2 or 3 rings) wherein a heteroaryl group, as defined above, can be fused with one or more heteroaryls (e.g. naphthyridinyl), carbocycles (e.g. 5,6,7,8-tetrahydroquinolyl) or aryls (e.g. indazolyl) to form a multiple condensed ring. Such multiple condensed rings may be optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2 or 3) oxo groups on the carbocycle portions of the condensed ring. It is to be understood that the point of attachment of a heteroaryl multiple condensed ring, as defined above, can be at any position of the ring including a heteroaryl, aryl or a carbocycle portion of the ring. Exemplary heteroaryls include but are not limited to pyridyl, pyrrolyl, pyrazinyl, pyrimidinyl, pyridazinyl, pyrazolyl, thienyl, indolyl, imidazolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, furyl, oxadiazolyl, thiadiazolyl, quinolyl, isoquinolyl, benzothiazolyl, benzoxazolyl, indazolyl, quinoxalyl, quinazolyl, 5,6,7,8-tetrahydroisoquinolyl, benzofuranyl, benzimidazolyl and thianaphthenyl.

The term “heterocyclyl” or “heterocycle” as used herein refers to a single saturated or partially unsaturated ring or a multiple condensed ring system. The term

includes single saturated or partially unsaturated ring (e.g. 3, 4, 5, 6 or 7-membered ring) from about 1 to 6 carbon atoms and from about 1 to 3 heteroatoms selected from the group consisting of oxygen, nitrogen and sulfur in the ring. The ring may be substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2 or 3) oxo groups and the sulfur and nitrogen atoms may also be present in their oxidized forms. Such rings include but are not limited to azetidiny, tetrahydrofuranyl or piperidiny. The term also includes multiple condensed ring systems (e.g. ring systems comprising 2 or 3 rings) wherein a heterocycle group (as defined above) can be connected to two adjacent atoms (fused heterocycle) with one or more heterocycles (e.g. decahydronaphthyridiny), heteroaryls (e.g. 1,2,3,4-tetrahydronaphthyridiny), carbocycles (e.g. decahydroquinoly) or aryls. It is to be understood that the point of attachment of a heterocycle multiple condensed ring, as defined above, can be at any position of the ring including a heterocycle, heteroaryl, aryl or a carbocycle portion of the ring. Exemplary heterocycles include, but are not limited to aziridiny, azetidiny, pyrrolidiny, piperidiny, homopiperidiny, morpholiny, thiomorpholiny, piperaziny, tetrahydrofuranyl, dihydrooxazolyl, tetrahydropyranyl, tetrahydrothiopyranyl, 1,2,3,4- tetrahydroquinoly, benzoxaziny, dihydrooxazolyl, chromanyl, 1,2-dihydropyridiny, 2,3-dihydrobenzofuranyl, 1,3-benzodioxolyl and 1,4-benzodioxanyl.

The term "bridged-heterocycle" as used herein refers to a 4, 5, 6, 7 or 8-membered heterocycle as defined herein connected at two non-adjacent atoms of the 4, 5, 6, 7 or 8-membered heterocycle with one or more (e.g. 1 or 2) 3, 4, 5 or 6-membered heterocycles or a (C₃-C₇)carbocycles as defined herein. Such bridged-heterocycles include bicyclic and tricyclic ring systems (e.g. 2-azabicyclo[2.2.1]heptane and 4-azatricyclo[4.3.1.1^{3,8}]undecane).

The term "spiro-heterocycle" as used herein refers to a 3, 4, 5, 6, 7 or 8-membered heterocycle as defined herein connected to one or more (e.g. 1 or 2) single atoms of the 3, 4, 5, 6, 7 or 8-membered heterocycle with one or more (e.g. 1 or 2) 3, 4, 5, 6-membered heterocycles or a (C₃-C₇)carbocycles as defined herein. Such spiro-heterocycles include bicyclic and tricyclic ring systems (e.g. 1,4-dioxaspiro[4.5]dec-7-enyl).

The term "macroheterocycle" as used herein refers to a saturated or partially unsaturated 8, 9, 10, 11 or 12-membered ring comprising about 5 to 11 carbon atoms

and about 1 to 3 heteroatoms selected from the group consisting of oxygen, nitrogen and sulfur in the ring which may be optionally fused at two adjacent atoms of the macroheterocycle to one or more (e.g. 1, 2 or 3) aryls, carbocycles, heteroaryls or heterocycles. The macroheterocycle may be substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2 or 3) oxo groups and the sulfur and nitrogen atoms may also be present in their oxidized forms.

“Heteroarylalkyl” refers to an alkyl radical as defined herein in which one of the hydrogen atoms bonded to a carbon atom is replaced with a heteroaryl radical as described herein (*i.e.*, a heteroaryl-alkyl- moiety). The alkyl group of the “heteroarylalkyl” is typically 1 to 6 carbon atoms (*i.e.* heteroaryl(C₁-C₆)alkyl). Heteroarylalkyl groups include, but are not limited to heteroaryl-CH₂-, heteroaryl-CH(CH₃)-, heteroaryl-CH₂CH₂-, 2-(heteroaryl)ethan-1-yl, and the like, wherein the “heteroaryl” portion includes any of the heteroaryl groups described above. One skilled in the art will also understand that the heteroaryl group can be attached to the alkyl portion of the heteroarylalkyl by means of a carbon-carbon bond or a carbon-heteroatom bond, with the proviso that the resulting group is chemically stable. Examples of heteroarylalkyls include by way of example and not limitation 5-membered sulfur, oxygen, and/or nitrogen containing heteroaryls such as thiazolylmethyl, 2-thiazolyethan-1-yl, imidazolylmethyl, oxazolylmethyl, thiadiazolylmethyl, etc., 6-membered sulfur, oxygen, and/or nitrogen containing heteroaryls such as pyridinylmethyl, pyridizylmethyl, pyrimidinylmethyl, pyrazinylmethyl, etc.

“Heterocyclalkyl” refers to an alkyl radical as defined herein in which one of the hydrogen atoms bonded to a carbon atom is replaced with a heterocyclalkyl radical as described herein (*i.e.*, a heterocyclalkyl-alkyl- moiety). The alkyl group of the “heterocyclalkyl” is typically 1 to 6 carbon atoms (*i.e.* heterocyclalkyl(C₁-C₆)alkyl). Typical heterocyclalkyl groups include, but are not limited to heterocyclalkyl-CH₂-, heterocyclalkyl-CH(CH₃)-, heterocyclalkyl-CH₂CH₂-, 2-(heterocyclalkyl)ethan-1-yl, and the like, wherein the “heterocyclalkyl” portion includes any of the heterocyclalkyl groups described above. One skilled in the art will also understand that the heterocyclalkyl group can be attached to the alkyl portion of the heterocyclalkyl alkyl by means of a carbon-carbon bond or a carbon-heteroatom bond, with the proviso that the resulting group is

chemically stable. Examples of heterocyclalkyls include by way of example and not limitation 5-membered sulfur, oxygen, and/or nitrogen containing heterocycles such tetrahydrofuranylmethyl and pyrrolidinylmethyl, etc., and 6-membered sulfur, oxygen, and/or nitrogen containing heterocycles such as piperidinylmethyl, piperazinylmethyl, morpholinylmethyl, etc.

The term “carbocycle” or “carbocyclyl” refers to a saturated (i.e., cycloalkyl) or partially unsaturated (e.g. cycloalkenyl, cycloalkadienyl, etc.) ring having 3 to 7 carbon atoms as a monocycle or a multicyclic ring system. In one embodiment the carbocycle is a monocycle comprising 3-6 ring carbons (i.e. (C₁-C₆)carbocycle). Carbocycle includes multicyclic carbocycles have 7 to 12 carbon atoms as a bicycle, and up to about 20 carbon atoms as a polycycle provided that the largest single ring of a multicyclic carbocycle is 7 carbon atoms. The term “spiro-bicyclic carbocycle” refers to a carbocycle bicyclic ring system wherein the rings of the bicyclic ring system are connected to a single carbon atom (e.g. spiro[4,5]decane, spiro[4.5]decane, etc). The term “fused-bicyclic carbocycle” refers to a carbocycle bicyclic ring system wherein the rings of the bicyclic ring system are connected to two adjacent carbon atoms such as a bicyclo [4,5], [5,5], [5,6] or [6,6] system, or 9 or 10 ring atoms arranged as a bicyclo [5,6] or [6,6] system (e.g. decahydronaphthalene, norsabinane, norcarane). The term “bridged-bicyclic carbocycle” refers to a carbocycle bicyclic ring system wherein the rings of the bicyclic ring system are connected to two non-adjacent carbon atoms (e.g. norbornane, bicyclo[2.2.2]octane, etc). The “carbocycle” or “carbocyclyl” may be optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2 or 3) oxo groups. Non-limiting examples of monocyclic carbocycles include cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, 1-cyclopent-1-enyl, 1-cyclopent-2-enyl, 1-cyclopent-3-enyl, cyclohexyl, 1-cyclohex-1-enyl, 1-cyclohex-2-enyl and 1-cyclohex-3-enyl.

The term “halocarbocycle” as used herein refers to a carbocycle as defined herein, wherein one or more hydrogen atoms are each replaced by a halo substituent. For example, (C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle is a (C₃-C₇)carbocycle wherein one or more of the hydrogen atoms have been replaced by a halo substituent. Such a range includes one halo substituent on the carbocycle group to complete halogenation of the carbocycle group.

The term “macrocarbocycle” as used herein refers to a saturated or partially unsaturated 8, 9, 10, 11 or 12-membered ring comprising 8 to 12 carbon atoms which may be optionally fused at two adjacent atoms of the macrocarbocycle to one or more (e.g. 1, 2 or 3) aryls, carbocycles, heteroaryls or heterocycles. The macrocarbocycle
 5 may be substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2 or 3) oxo groups.

“Carbocyclalkyl” refers to an alkyl radical as defined herein in which one of the hydrogen atoms bonded to a carbon atom is replaced with a carbocyclalkyl radical as described herein (*i.e.*, a carbocyclalkyl- moiety). The alkyl group of the “carbocyclalkyl” is typically 1 to 6 carbon atoms (*i.e.* carbocycl(C₁-C₆)alkyl).
 10 Typical carbocyclalkyl groups include, but are not limited to carbocycl-CH₂-, carbocycl-CH(CH₃)-, carbocycl-CH₂CH₂-, 2-(carbocycl)ethan-1-yl, and the like, wherein the “carbocycl” portion includes any of the carbocycl groups described above.

It is to be understood that when a variable is substituted, for example, as
 15 described by the phrase “(C₁-C₆)alkyl, either alone or as part of a group, is optionally substituted”, the phrase means that the variable (C₁-C₆)alkyl can be substituted when it is alone and that it can also be substituted when the variable “(C₁-C₆)alkyl” is part of a larger group such as for example an aryl(C₁-C₆)alkyl or a -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-SO₂-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-(C₃-C₇)carbocycle group. Similarly, when stated, other variables (e.g. (C₁-
 20 C₆)alkenyl, (C₁-C₆)alkynyl, aryl, heteroaryl, heterocycle, etc...) can also be substituted “either alone or as part of a group.”

It is to be understood that certain variables of formula I that connect two chemical groups may be oriented in either direction. Thus, for the X group of formula I (e.g. O, -C(O)-, -C(O)O-, -S-, -S(O)-, -SO₂-, -(C₁-C₆)alkylO-, -(C₁-C₆)alkylC(O)-, -
 25 -(C₁-C₆)alkylC(O)O-, -(C₁-C₆)alkylS-, -(C₁-C₆)alkylS(O)- and -(C₁-C₆)alkylSO₂-) certain values of X that are not symmetric can be oriented in either direction. For example, the -C(O)O-, can be oriented as either -C(O)O- or -OC(O)-, relative to the groups it connects.

It is to be understood that the nitrogen that is included in the core of the
 30 compound of formula I can be present in an oxidized form. For example, the quinoline nitrogen of either G¹ or G² of formula I can be an N-oxide. Accordingly, the invention

includes a compound of formula I (as defined in the summary of the invention) or a salt or N-oxide thereof.

One skilled in the art will recognize that substituents and other moieties of the compounds of formula I should be selected in order to provide a compound which is sufficiently stable to provide a pharmaceutically useful compound which can be formulated into an acceptably stable pharmaceutical composition. Compounds of formula I which have such stability are contemplated as falling within the scope of the present invention.

The modifier “about” used in connection with a quantity is inclusive of the stated value and has the meaning dictated by the context (e.g., includes the degree of error associated with measurement of the particular quantity).

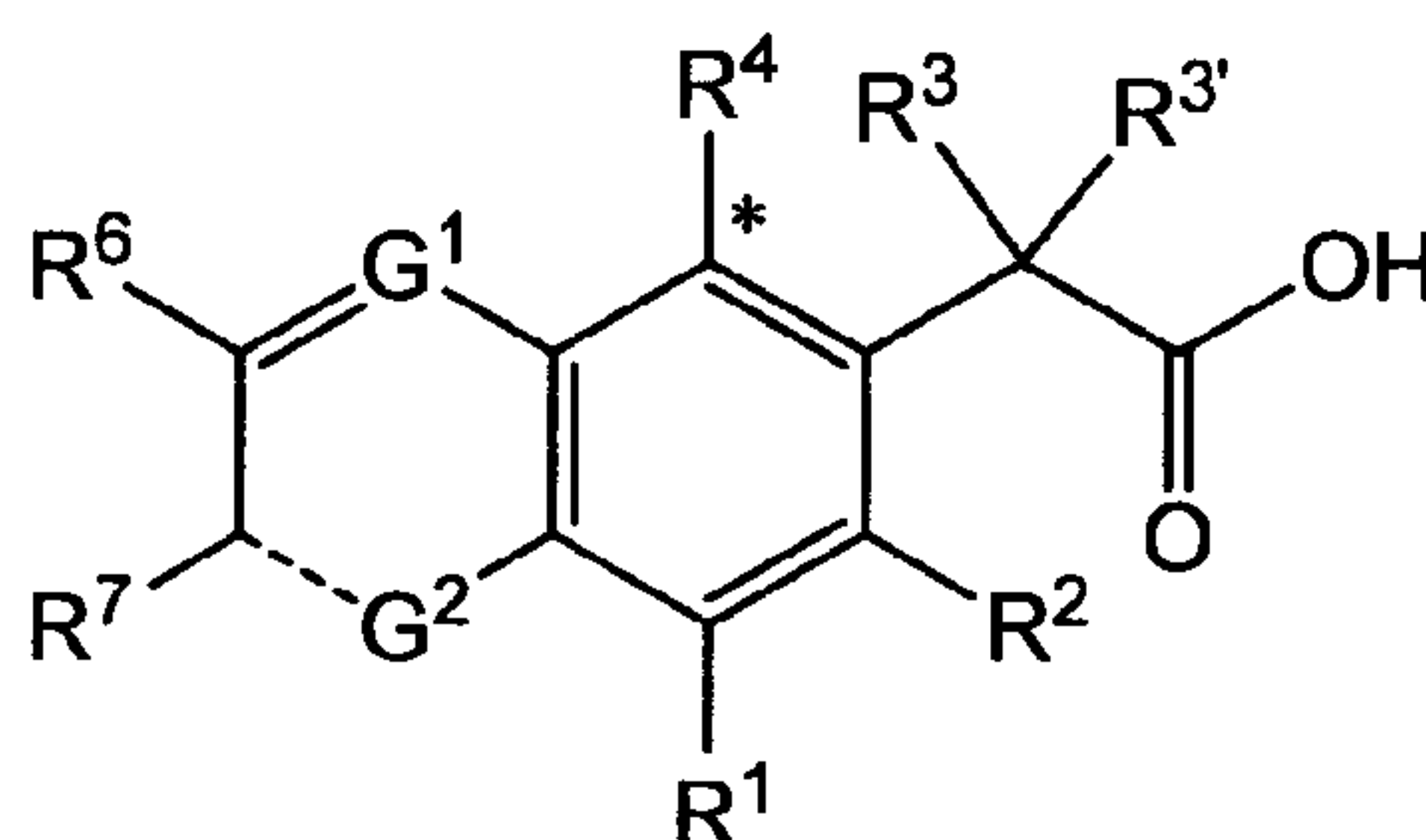
The term “chiral” refers to molecules which have the property of non-superimposability of the mirror image partner, while the term “achiral” refers to molecules which are superimposable on their mirror image partner.

The term “stereoisomers” refers to compounds which have identical chemical constitution, but differ with regard to the arrangement of the atoms or groups in space.

“Diastereomer” refers to a stereoisomer with two or more centers or axes of chirality and whose molecules are not mirror images of one another. Diastereomers typically have different physical properties, *e.g.*, melting points, boiling points, spectral properties, and reactivities. Mixtures of diastereomers may separate under high resolution analytical procedures such as electrophoresis and chromatography.

“Enantiomers” refer to two stereoisomers of a compound which are non-superimposable mirror images of one another.

Certain compounds of the invention can exist as atropisomers. For example, it has been discovered that atropisomers exist for certain substituents at the R⁴ position of formula I as marked by an asterisk in the formula below.



The chirality that results from the atropisomers at the asterisk position is a feature of certain compounds of the invention. Accordingly, the invention includes all atropisomers of compounds of the invention including mixtures of atropisomers and well as mixtures that are enriched in an atropisomer as well as single atropisomers,
5 which mixtures or compounds possess the useful properties described herein.

In one embodiment, the compounds of the invention of formula I are at least 60% a single atropisomer for the R⁴ substituent at the asterisk position. In another embodiment, the compounds of the invention of formula I are at least 70% a single atropisomer for the R⁴ substituent at the asterisk position. In another embodiment, the
10 compounds of the invention of formula I are at least 80% a single atropisomer for the R⁴ substituent at the asterisk position. In another embodiment, the compounds of the invention of formula I are at least 90% a single atropisomer for the R⁴ substituent at the asterisk position. In another embodiment, the compounds of the invention of formula I are at least 95% a single atropisomer for the R⁴ substituent at the asterisk position. In
15 one embodiment the stereochemistry for the R⁴ substituent at the carbon marked with an asterisk as shown above for Formula I is the (R) stereochemistry. In another embodiment the stereochemistry for the R⁴ substituent at the carbon marked with an asterisk as shown above for Formula I is the (S) stereochemistry.

The term "treatment" or "treating," to the extent it relates to a disease or
20 condition includes preventing the disease or condition from occurring, inhibiting the disease or condition, eliminating the disease or condition, and/or relieving one or more symptoms of the disease or condition.

Stereochemical definitions and conventions used herein generally follow S. P. Parker, Ed., McGraw-Hill Dictionary of Chemical Terms (1984) McGraw-Hill Book
25 Company, New York; and Eliel, E. and Wilen, S., Stereochemistry of Organic Compounds (1994) John Wiley & Sons, Inc., New York. Many organic compounds exist in optically active forms, *i.e.*, they have the ability to rotate the plane of plane-polarized light. In describing an optically active compound, the prefixes (D and L) or (R and S) are used to denote the absolute configuration of the molecule about its chiral
30 center(s). The prefixes d and l or (+) and (-) are employed to designate the sign of rotation of plane-polarized light by the compound, with (-) or l meaning that the compound is levorotatory. A compound prefixed with (+) or d is dextrorotatory. For a

given chemical structure, these stereoisomers are identical except that they are mirror images of one another. A specific stereoisomer may also be referred to as an enantiomer, and a mixture of such isomers is often called an enantiomeric mixture. A 50:50 mixture of enantiomers is referred to as a racemic mixture or a racemate, which
5 may occur where there has been no stereoselection or stereospecificity in a chemical reaction or process. The terms “racemic mixture” and “racemate” refer to an equimolar mixture of two enantiomeric species, devoid of optical activity.

Protecting Groups

In the context of the present invention, protecting groups include prodrug
10 moieties and chemical protecting groups.

“Protecting group” refers to a moiety of a compound that masks or alters the properties of a functional group or the properties of the compound as a whole. Chemical protecting groups and strategies for protection/deprotection are well known in the art. *See e.g., Protective Groups in Organic Chemistry*, Theodora W. Greene,
15 John Wiley & Sons, Inc., New York, 1991. Protecting groups are often utilized to mask the reactivity of certain functional groups, to assist in the efficiency of desired chemical reactions, *e.g.*, making and breaking chemical bonds in an ordered and planned fashion. Protection of functional groups of a compound alters other physical properties besides the reactivity of the protected functional group, such as the polarity,
20 lipophilicity (hydrophobicity), and other properties which can be measured by common analytical tools. Chemically protected intermediates may themselves be biologically active or inactive.

Protected compounds may also exhibit altered, and in some cases, optimized properties *in vitro* and *in vivo*, such as passage through cellular membranes and
25 resistance to enzymatic degradation or sequestration. In this role, protected compounds with intended therapeutic effects may be referred to as prodrugs. Another function of a protecting group is to convert the parental drug into a prodrug, whereby the parental drug is released upon conversion of the prodrug *in vivo*. Because active prodrugs may be absorbed more effectively than the parental drug, prodrugs may possess greater
30 potency *in vivo* than the parental drug. Protecting groups are removed either *in vitro*, in the instance of chemical intermediates, or *in vivo*, in the case of prodrugs. With chemical intermediates, it is not particularly important that the resulting products after

deprotection, *e.g.*, alcohols, be physiologically acceptable, although in general it is more desirable if the products are pharmacologically innocuous.

Protecting groups are available, commonly known and used, and are optionally used to prevent side reactions with the protected group during synthetic procedures, *i.e.* routes or methods to prepare the compounds of the invention. For the most part the decision as to which groups to protect, when to do so, and the nature of the chemical protecting group “PG” will be dependent upon the chemistry of the reaction to be protected against (*e.g.*, acidic, basic, oxidative, reductive or other conditions) and the intended direction of the synthesis. PGs do not need to be, and generally are not, the same if the compound is substituted with multiple PG. In general, PG will be used to protect functional groups such as carboxyl, hydroxyl, thio, or amino groups and to thus prevent side reactions or to otherwise facilitate the synthetic efficiency. The order of deprotection to yield free deprotected groups is dependent upon the intended direction of the synthesis and the reaction conditions to be encountered, and may occur in any order as determined by the artisan.

Various functional groups of the compounds of the invention may be protected. For example, protecting groups for –OH groups (whether hydroxyl, carboxylic acid, phosphonic acid, or other functions) include “ether- or ester-forming groups”. Ether- or ester-forming groups are capable of functioning as chemical protecting groups in the synthetic schemes set forth herein. However, some hydroxyl and thio protecting groups are neither ether- nor ester-forming groups, as will be understood by those skilled in the art, and are included with amides, discussed below.

A very large number of hydroxyl protecting groups and amide-forming groups and corresponding chemical cleavage reactions are described in Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis, Theodora W. Greene (John Wiley & Sons, Inc., New York, 1991, ISBN 0-471-62301-6) (“Greene”). See also Kocienski, Philip J.; Protecting Groups (Georg Thieme Verlag Stuttgart, New York, 1994). In particular Chapter 1, Protecting Groups: An Overview, pages 1-20, Chapter 2, Hydroxyl Protecting Groups, pages 21-94, Chapter 3, Diol Protecting Groups, pages 95-117, Chapter 4, Carboxyl Protecting Groups, pages 118-154, Chapter 5, Carbonyl Protecting Groups, pages 155-184. For protecting groups for carboxylic

acid, phosphonic acid, phosphonate, sulfonic acid and other protecting groups for acids see Greene as set forth below.

Stereoisomers

The compounds of the invention may have chiral centers, *e.g.*, chiral carbon or
5 phosphorus atoms. The compounds of the invention thus include racemic mixtures of all stereoisomers, including enantiomers, diastereomers, and atropisomers. In addition, the compounds of the invention include enriched or resolved optical isomers at any or all asymmetric, chiral atoms. In other words, the chiral centers apparent from the depictions are provided as the chiral isomers or racemic mixtures. Both racemic and
10 diastereomeric mixtures, as well as the individual optical isomers isolated or synthesized, substantially free of their enantiomeric or diastereomeric partners, are all within the scope of the invention. The racemic mixtures can be separated into their individual, substantially optically pure isomers through well-known techniques such as, for example, the separation of diastereomeric salts formed with optically active
15 adjuncts, *e.g.*, acids or bases followed by conversion back to the optically active substances. In most instances, the desired optical isomer is synthesized by means of stereospecific reactions, beginning with the appropriate stereoisomer of the desired starting material.

The compounds of the invention can also exist as tautomeric isomers in certain
20 cases. Although only one delocalized resonance structure may be depicted, all such forms are contemplated within the scope of the invention. For example, ene-amine tautomers can exist for purine, pyrimidine, imidazole, guanidine, amidine, and tetrazole systems and all their possible tautomeric forms are within the scope of the invention.

Salts and Hydrates

25 Examples of pharmaceutically acceptable salts of the compounds of the invention include salts derived from an appropriate base, such as an alkali metal (for example, sodium), an alkaline earth metal (for example, magnesium), ammonium and NX_4^+ (wherein X is C_1 – C_4 alkyl). Pharmaceutically acceptable salts of a hydrogen atom or an amino group include for example salts of organic carboxylic acids such as
30 acetic, benzoic, lactic, fumaric, tartaric, maleic, malonic, malic, isethionic, lactobionic and succinic acids; organic sulfonic acids, such as methanesulfonic, ethanesulfonic,

benzenesulfonic and p-toluenesulfonic acids; and inorganic acids, such as hydrochloric, hydrobromic, sulfuric, phosphoric and sulfamic acids. Pharmaceutically acceptable salts of a compound of a hydroxy group include the anion of said compound in combination with a suitable cation such as Na^+ and NX_4^+ (wherein X is independently
5 selected from H or a C_1 – C_4 alkyl group).

For therapeutic use, salts of active ingredients of the compounds of the invention will typically be pharmaceutically acceptable, *i.e.* they will be salts derived from a physiologically acceptable acid or base. However, salts of acids or bases which are not pharmaceutically acceptable may also find use, for example, in the preparation
10 or purification of a compound of formula I or another compound of the invention. All salts, whether or not derived from a physiologically acceptable acid or base, are within the scope of the present invention.

Metal salts typically are prepared by reacting the metal hydroxide with a compound of this invention. Examples of metal salts which are prepared in this way
15 are salts containing Li^+ , Na^+ , and K^+ . A less soluble metal salt can be precipitated from the solution of a more soluble salt by addition of the suitable metal compound.

In addition, salts may be formed from acid addition of certain organic and inorganic acids, *e.g.*, HCl, HBr, H_2SO_4 , H_3PO_4 or organic sulfonic acids, to basic centers, typically amines, or to acidic groups. Finally, it is to be understood that the
20 compositions herein comprise compounds of the invention in their un-ionized, as well as zwitterionic form, and combinations with stoichiometric amounts of water as in hydrates.

Also included within the scope of this invention are the salts of the parental compounds with one or more amino acids. Any of the natural or unnatural amino acids
25 are suitable, especially the naturally-occurring amino acids found as protein components, although the amino acid typically is one bearing a side chain with a basic or acidic group, *e.g.*, lysine, arginine or glutamic acid, or a neutral group such as glycine, serine, threonine, alanine, isoleucine, or leucine.

Specific values listed below for radicals, substituents, and ranges in the
30 embodiments of the invention are for illustration only; they do not exclude other defined values or other values within defined ranges for the radicals and substituents.

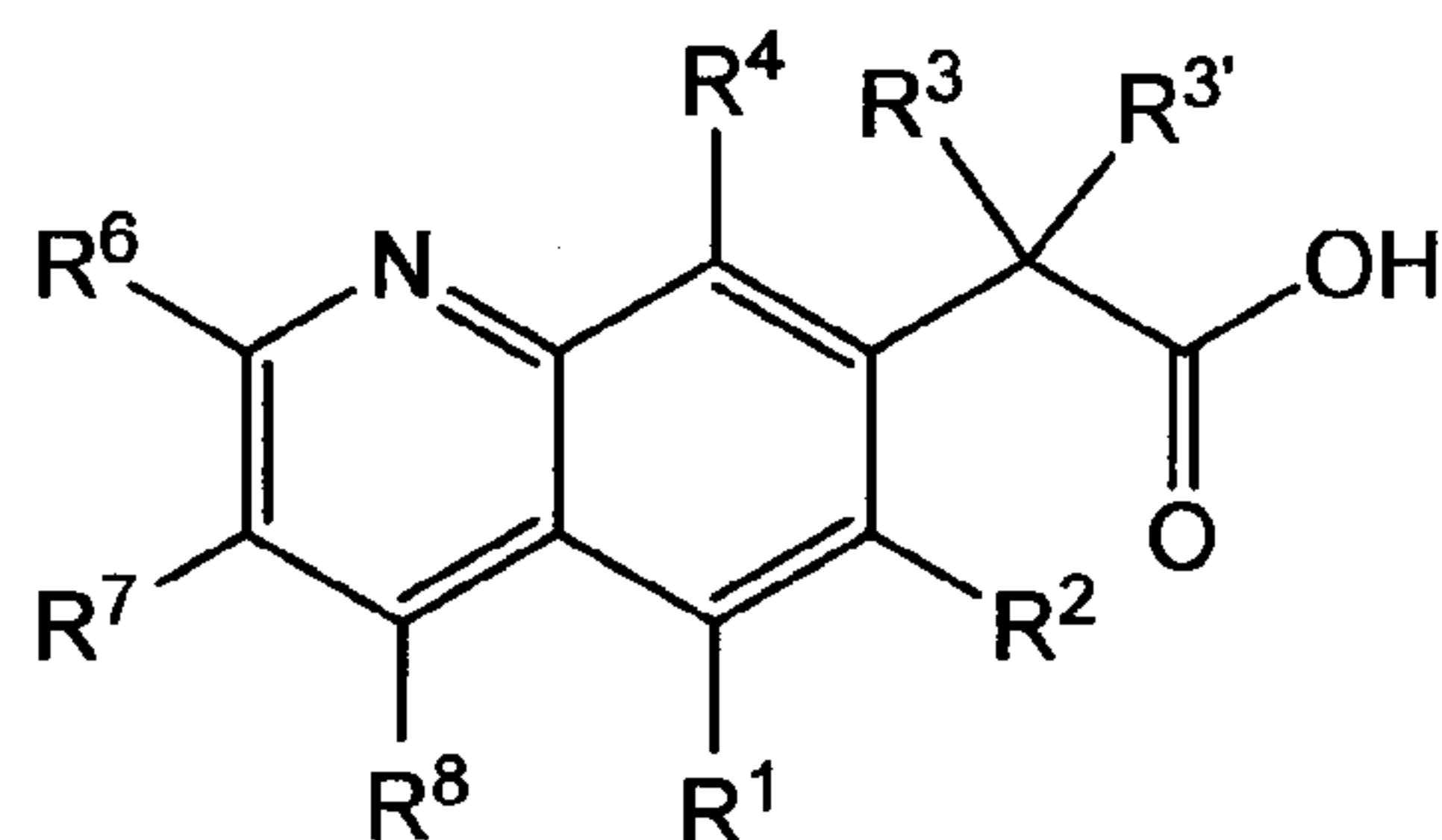
Isotopes

It is understood by one skilled in the art that this invention also includes any compound claimed that may be enriched at any or all atoms above naturally occurring isotopic ratios with one or more isotopes such as, but not limited to, deuterium (^2H or D). As a non-limiting example, a $-\text{CH}_3$ group may be substituted with $-\text{CD}_3$.

5

Compounds of formula I.

A specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds of formula Ia.

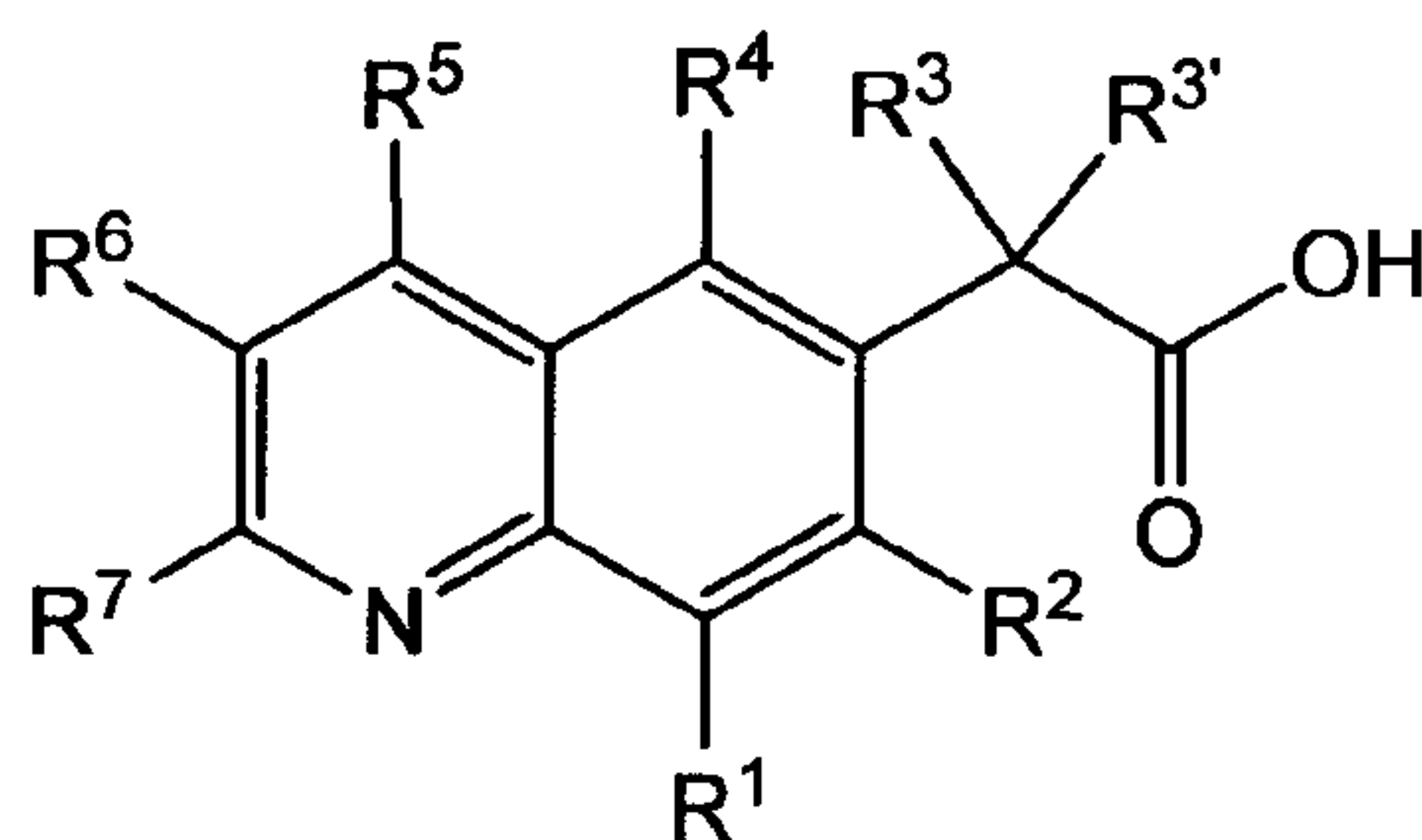


Ia

10

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds of formula

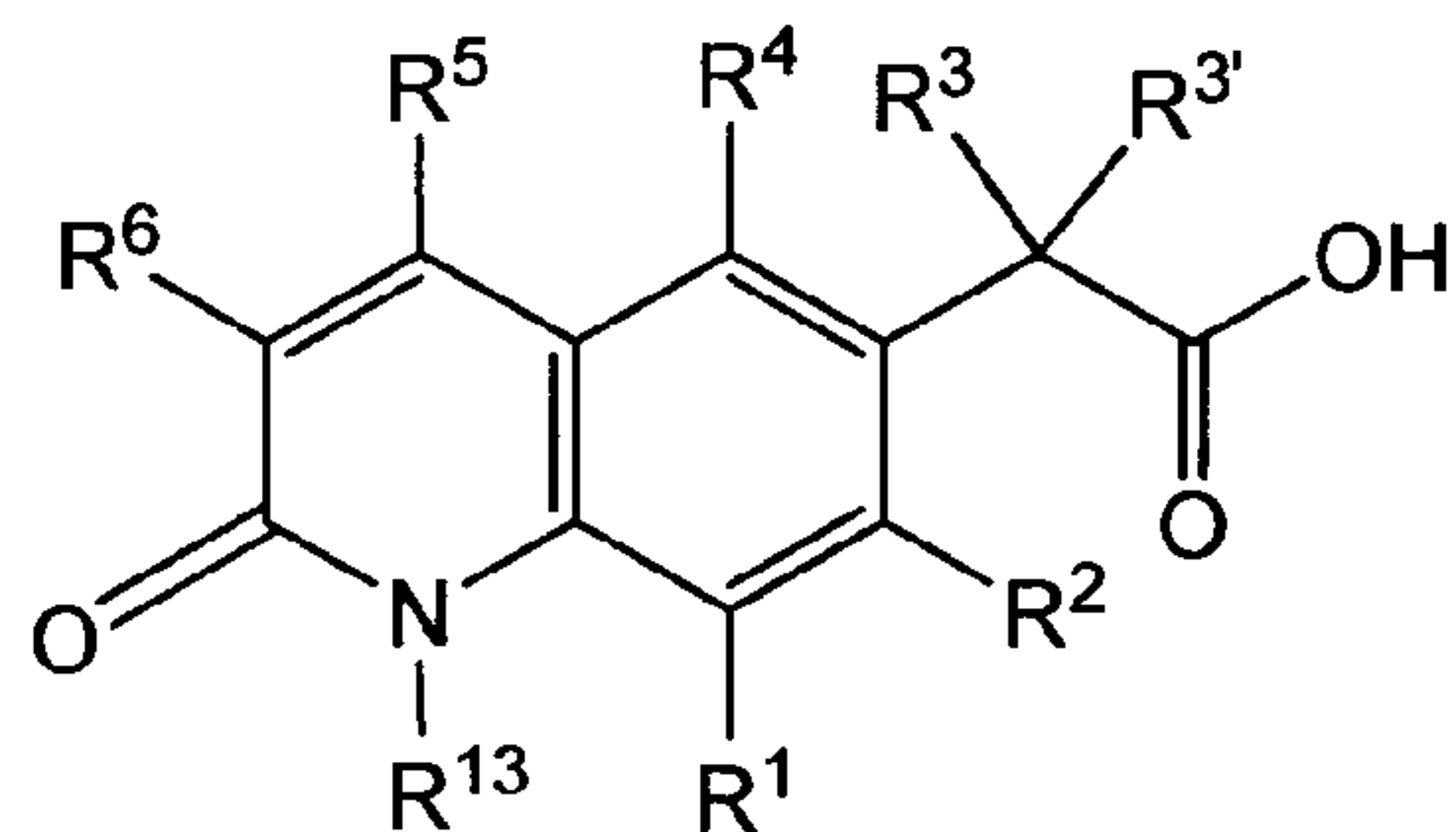
Ib.



Ib

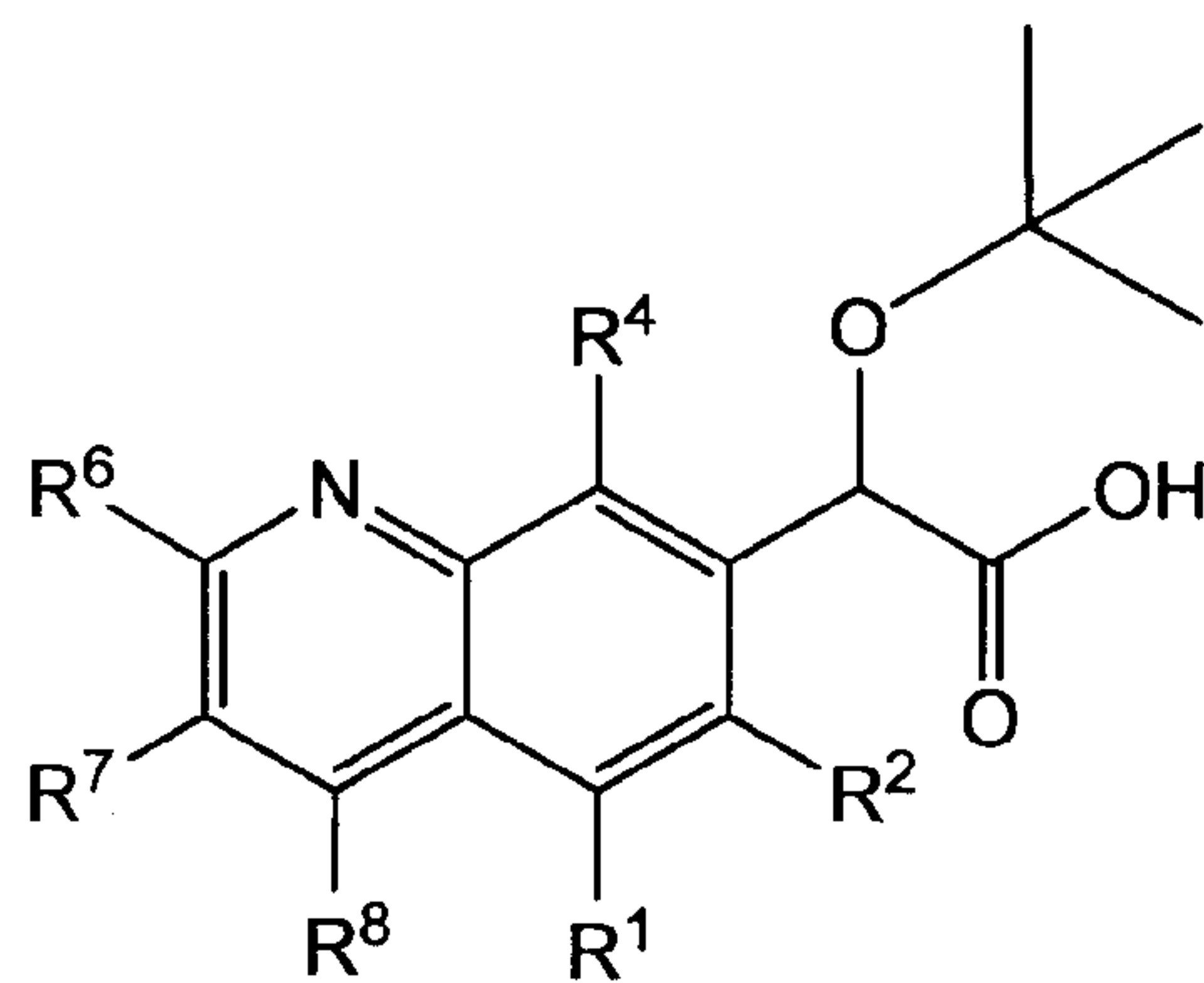
15

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds of formula Ic.



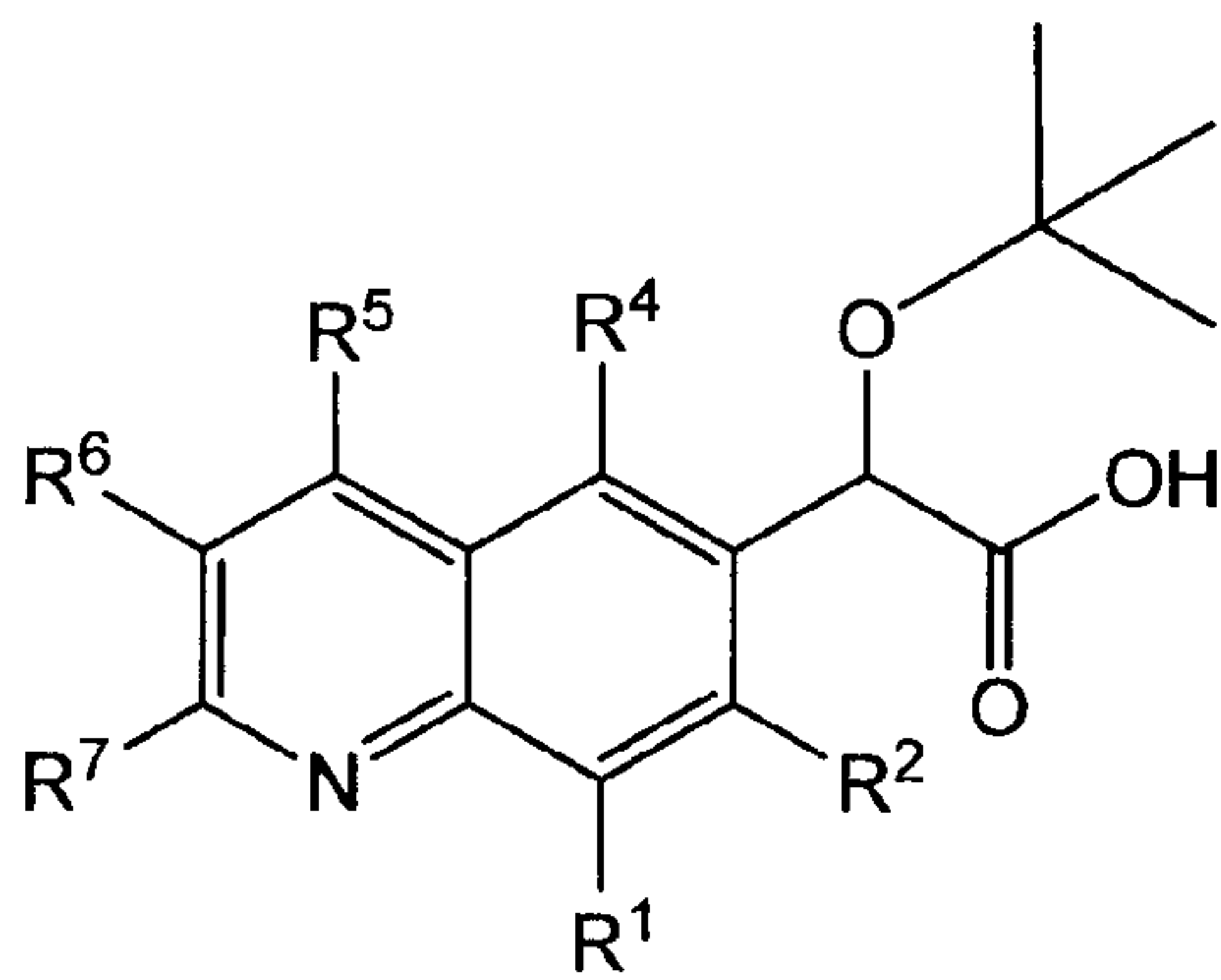
Ic

5 Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds of formula Id.



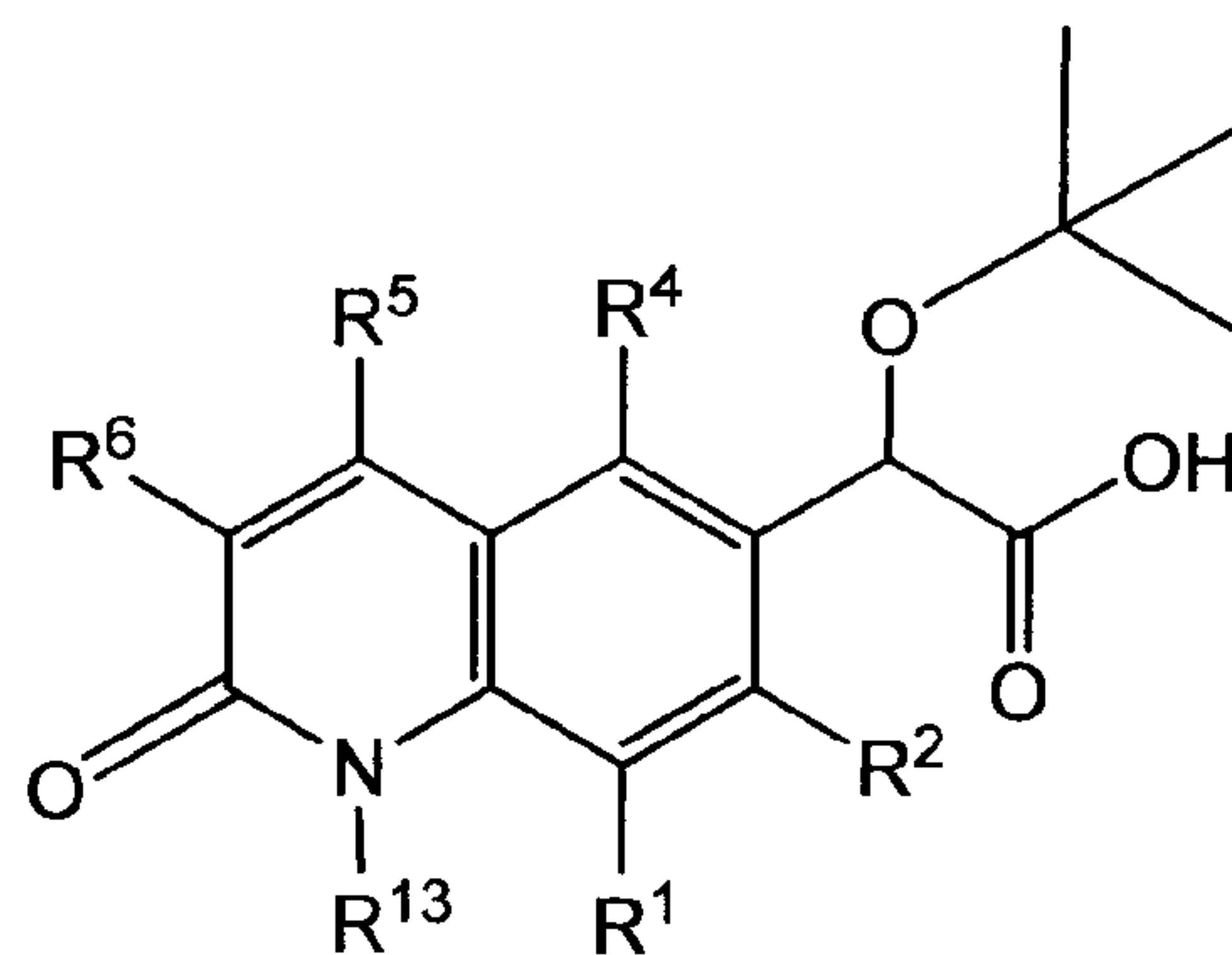
Id

10 Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds of formula Ie.



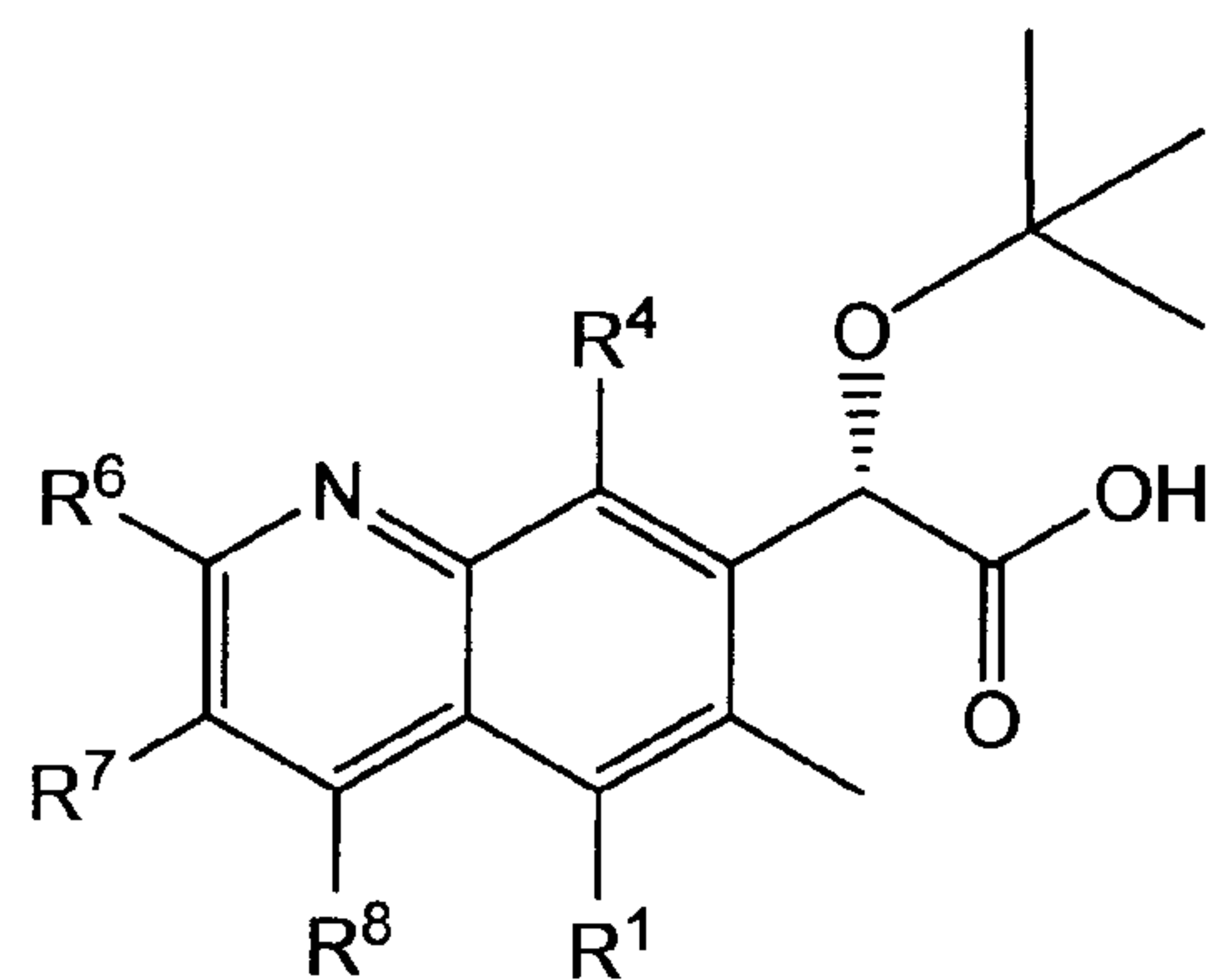
Ie

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds of formula If.



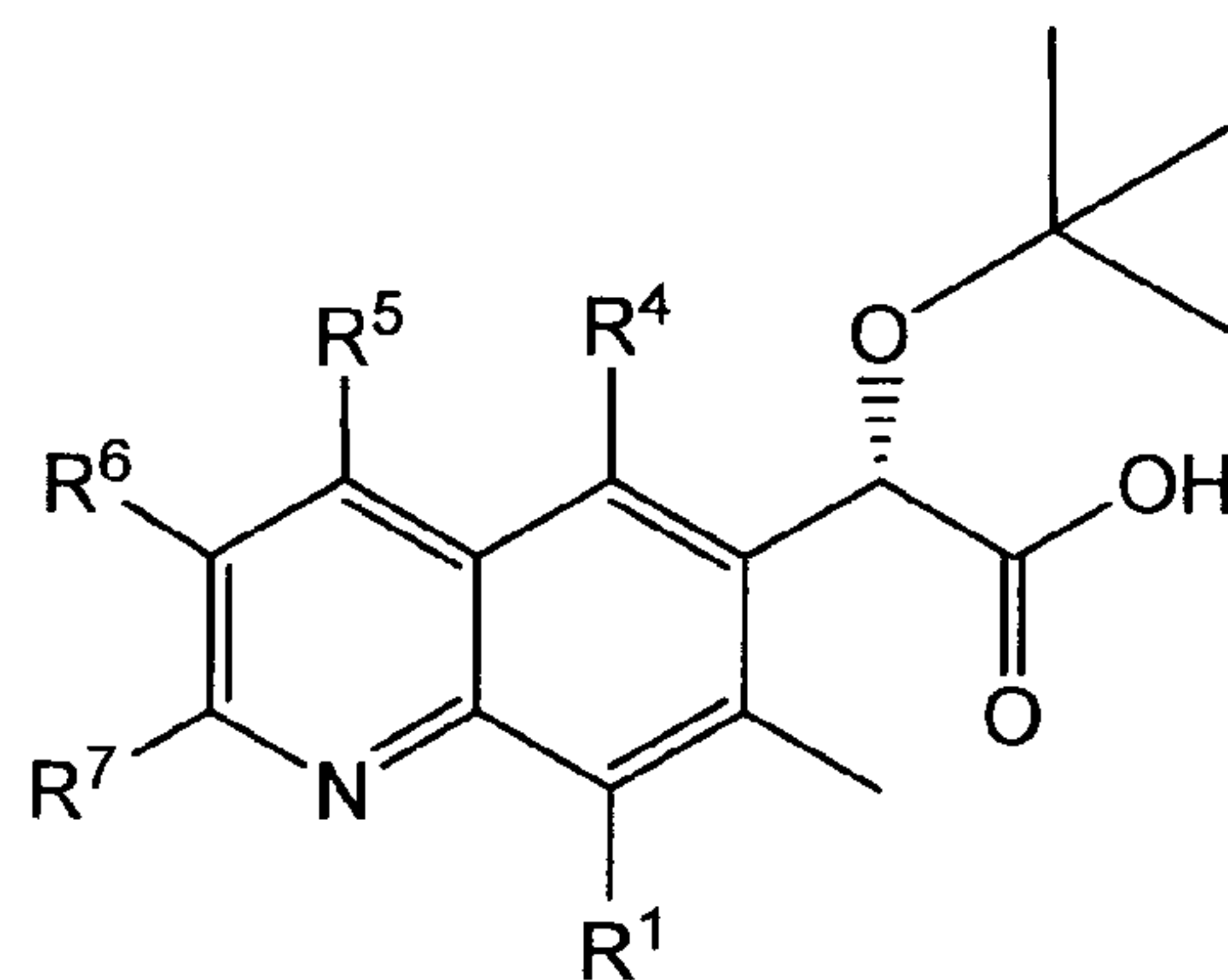
If

5 Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds of formula Ig.



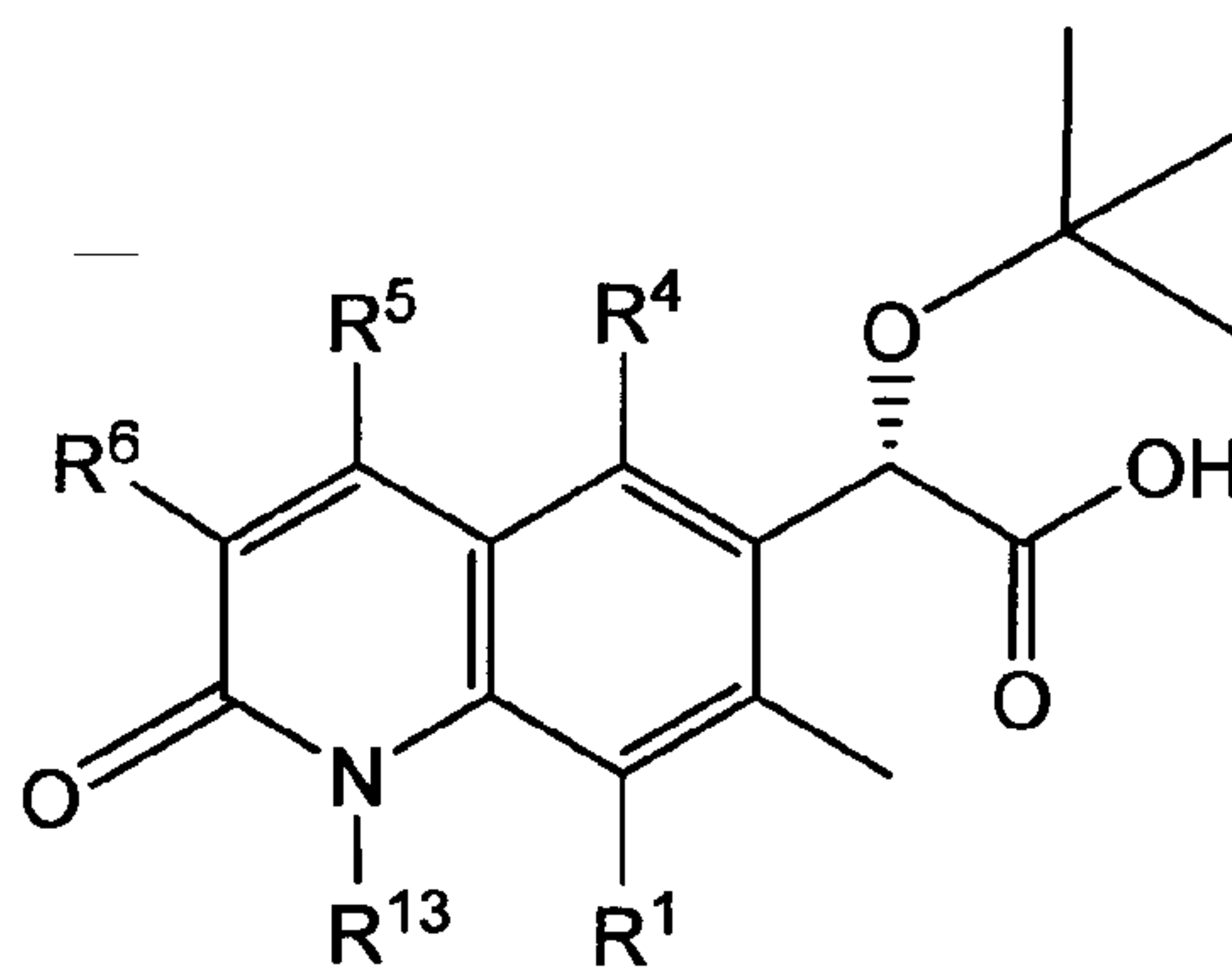
Ig

10 Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds of formula Ih.



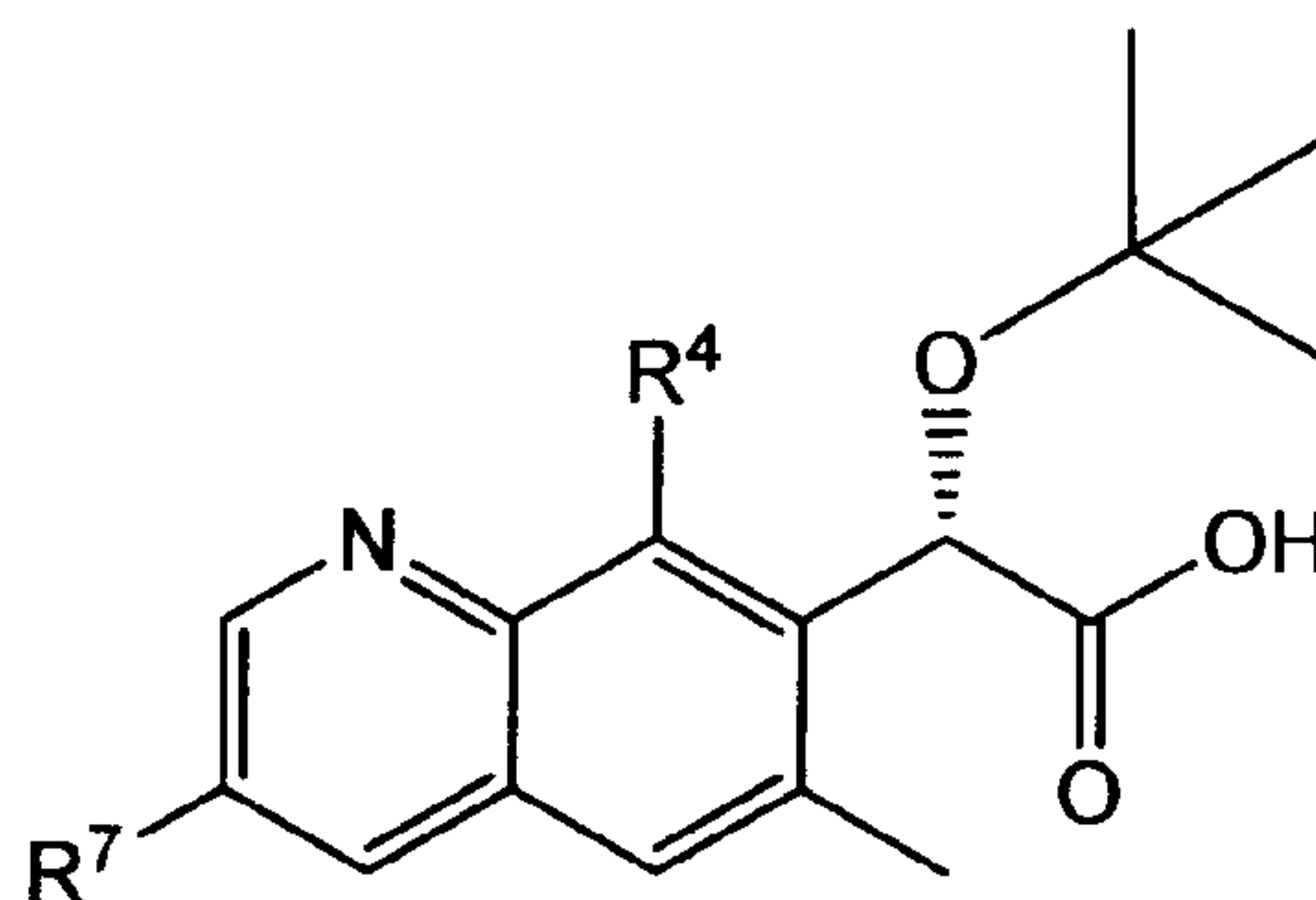
Ih

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds of formula Ii.



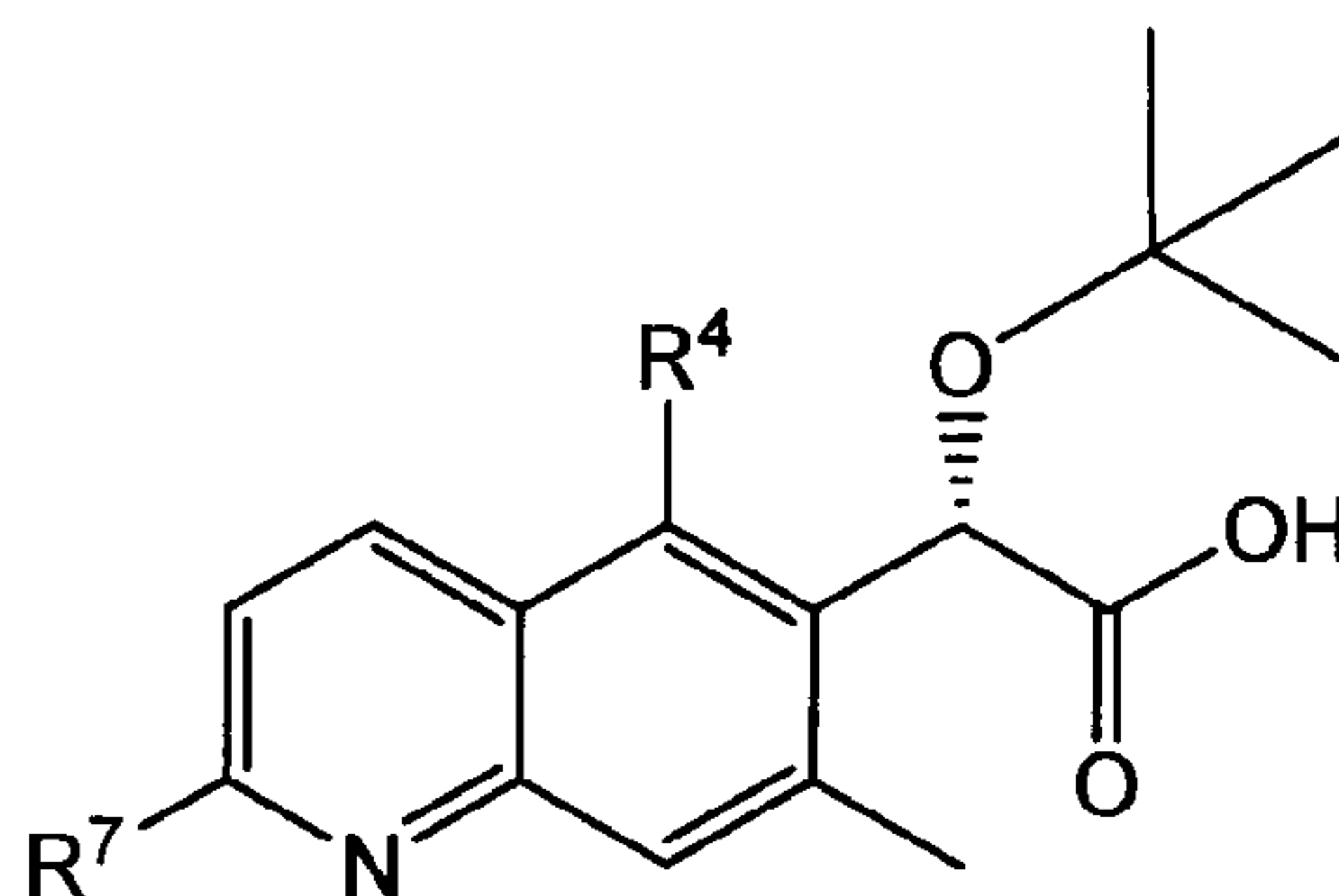
Ii

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds of formula Ij.



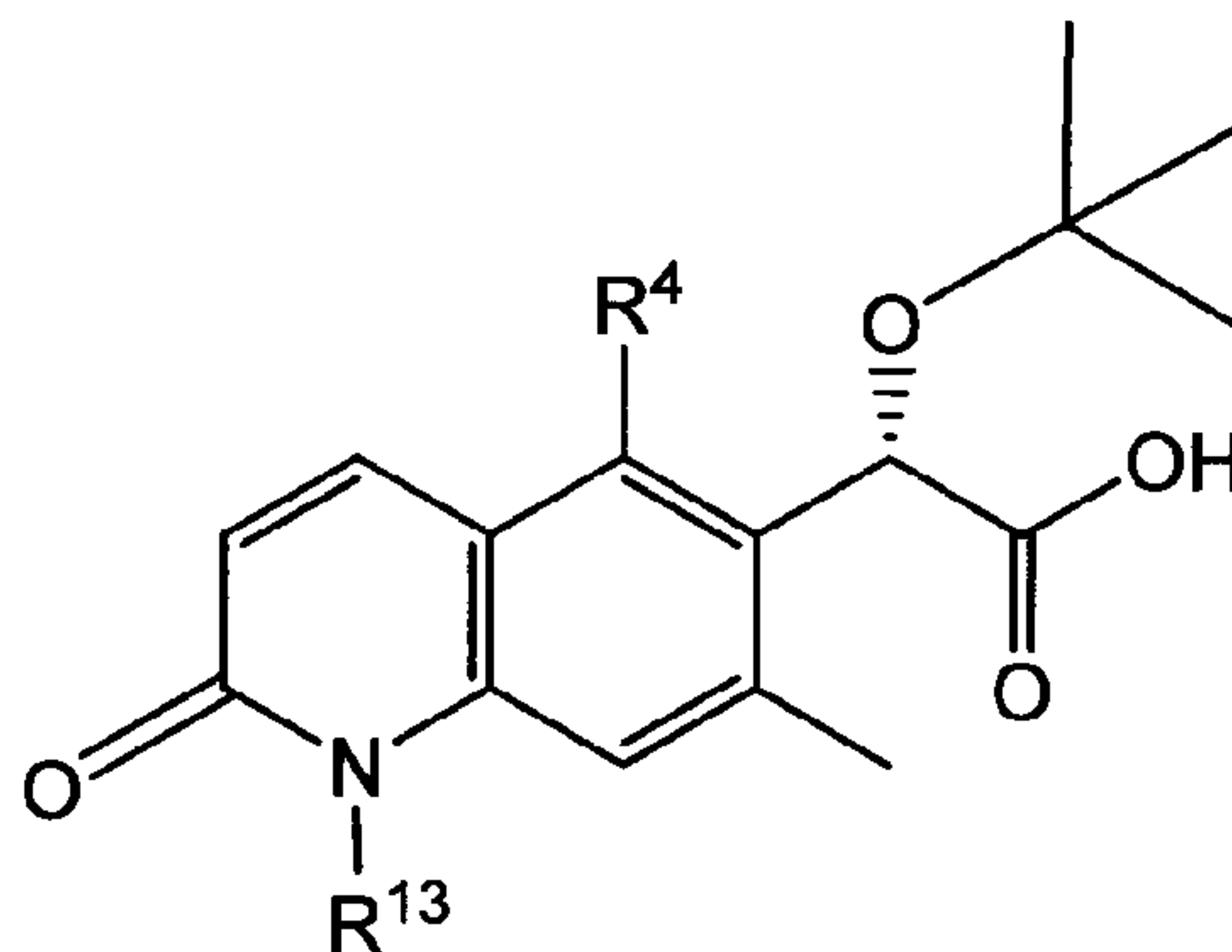
Ij

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds of formula Ik.



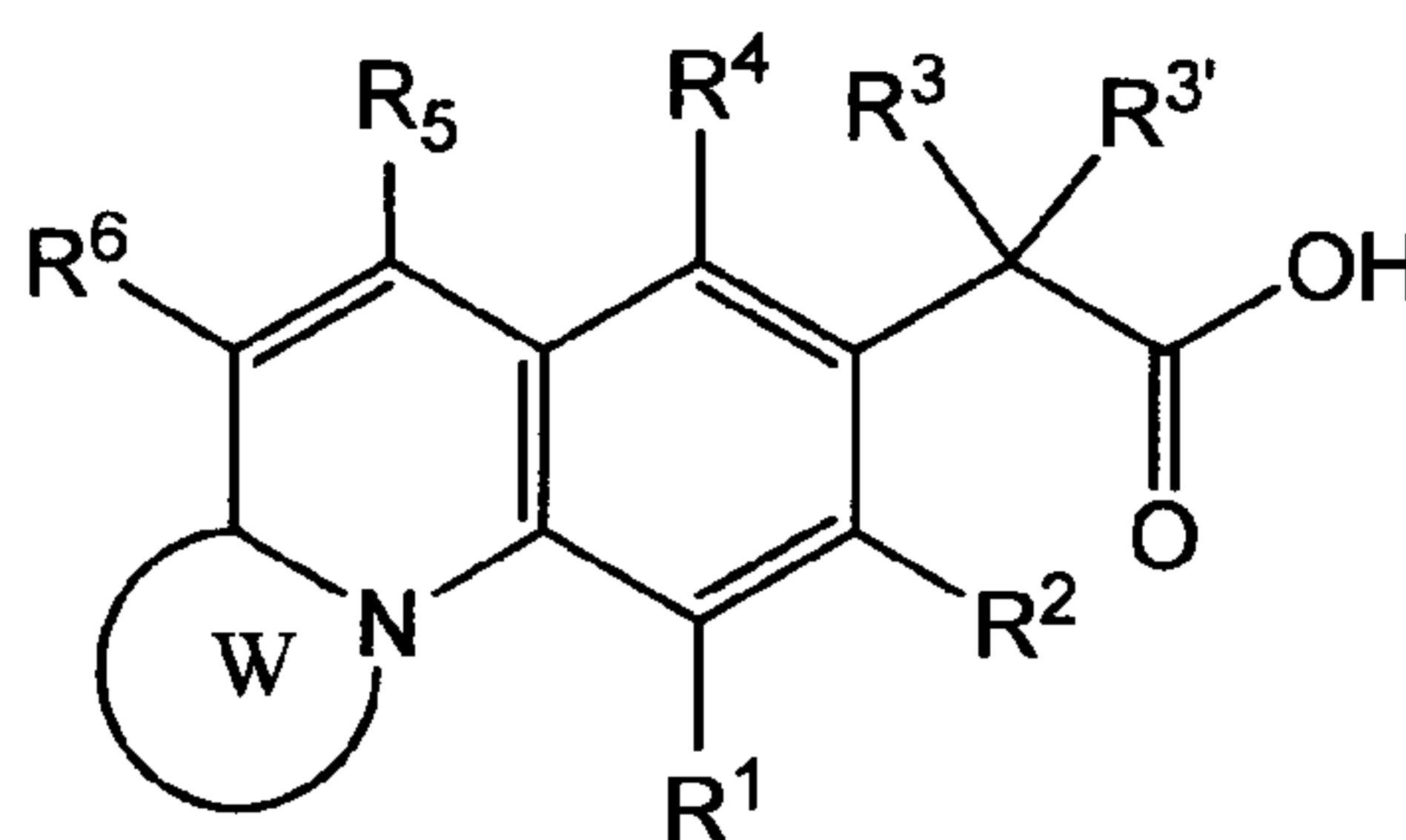
Ik

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds of formula Im.



Im

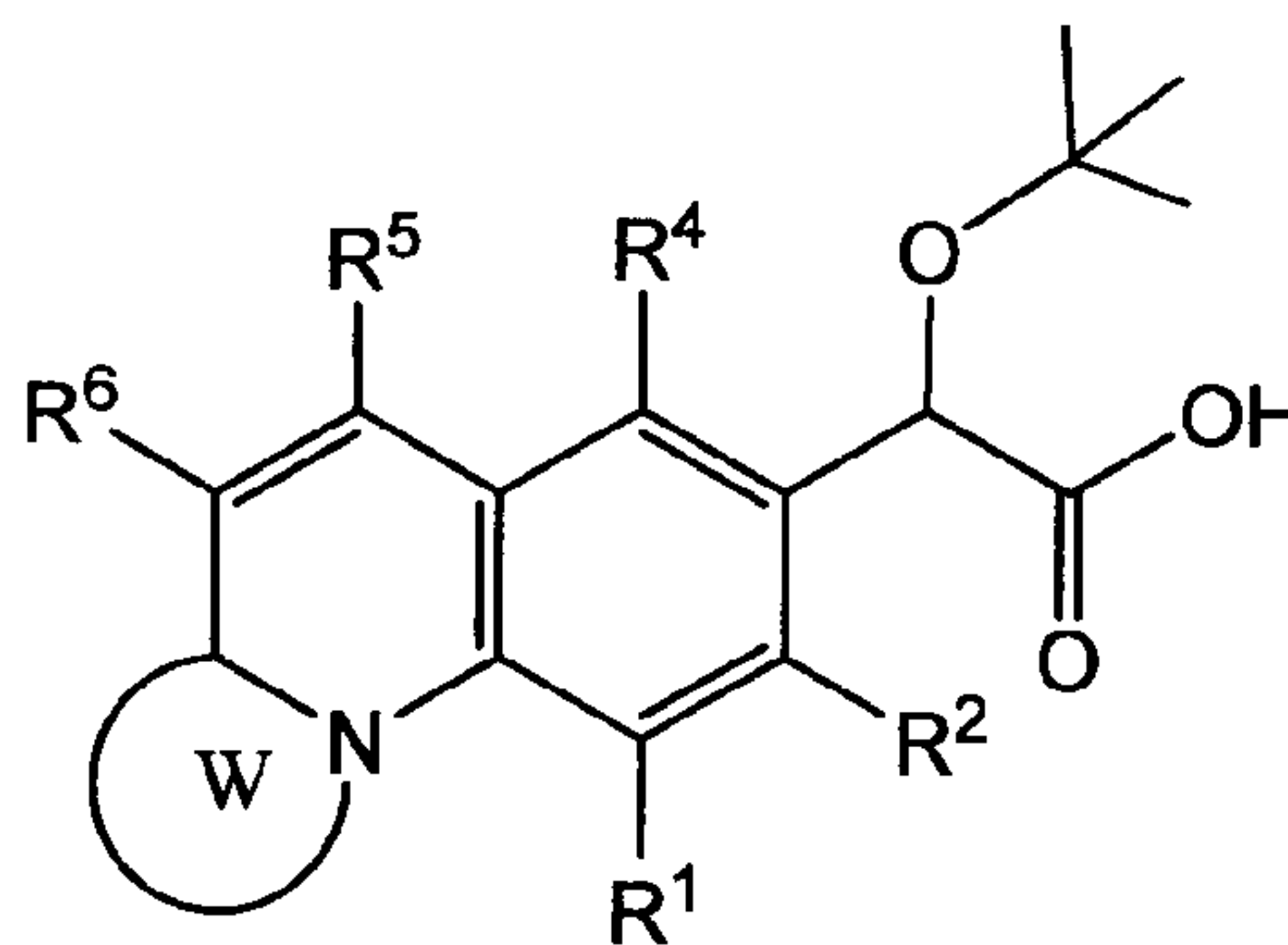
5 Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds of formula In.



In

wherein the ring W is heteroaryl optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups.

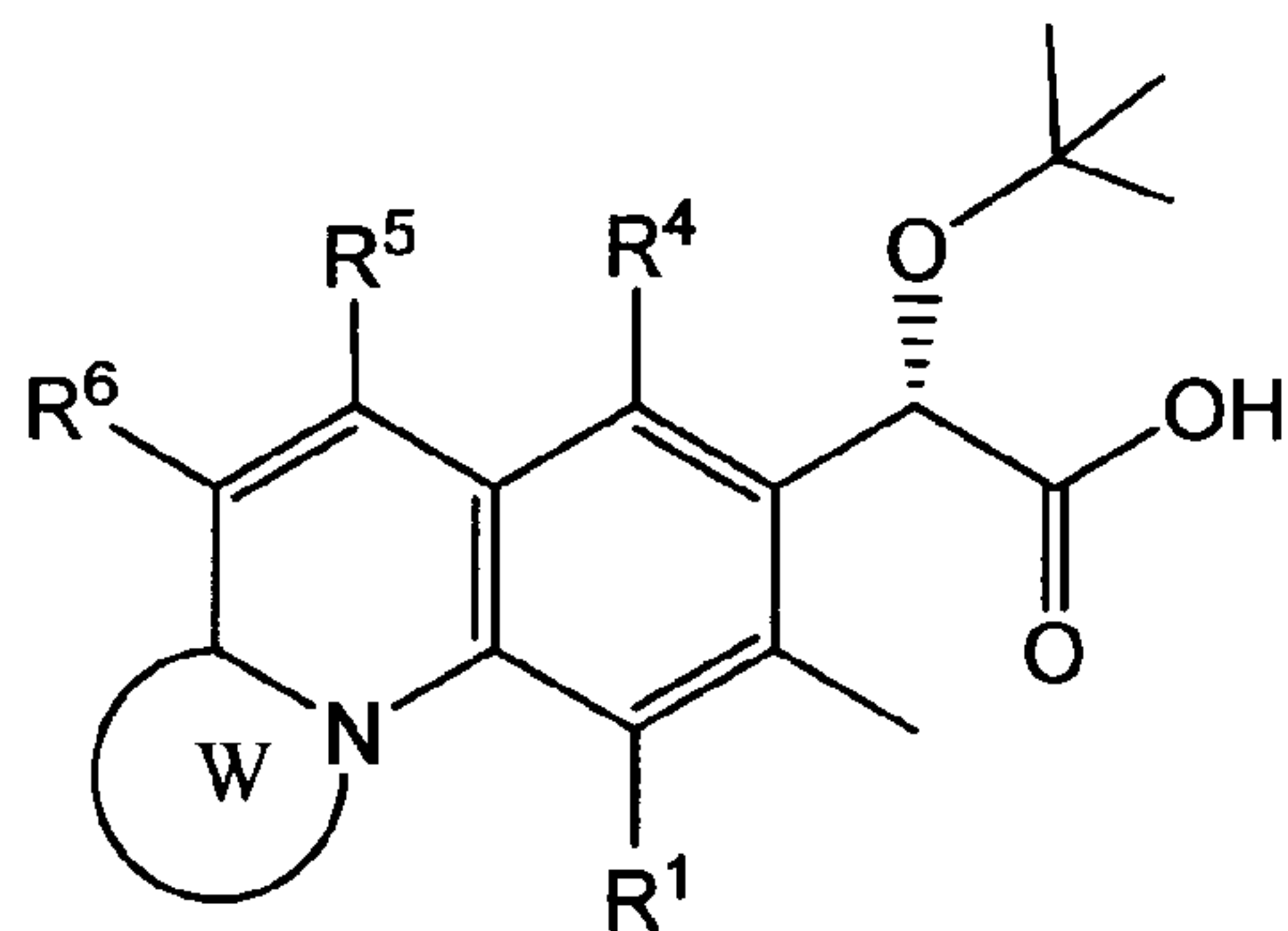
Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds of formula Io.



Io

wherein the ring W is heteroaryl optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups.

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds of formula Ip.



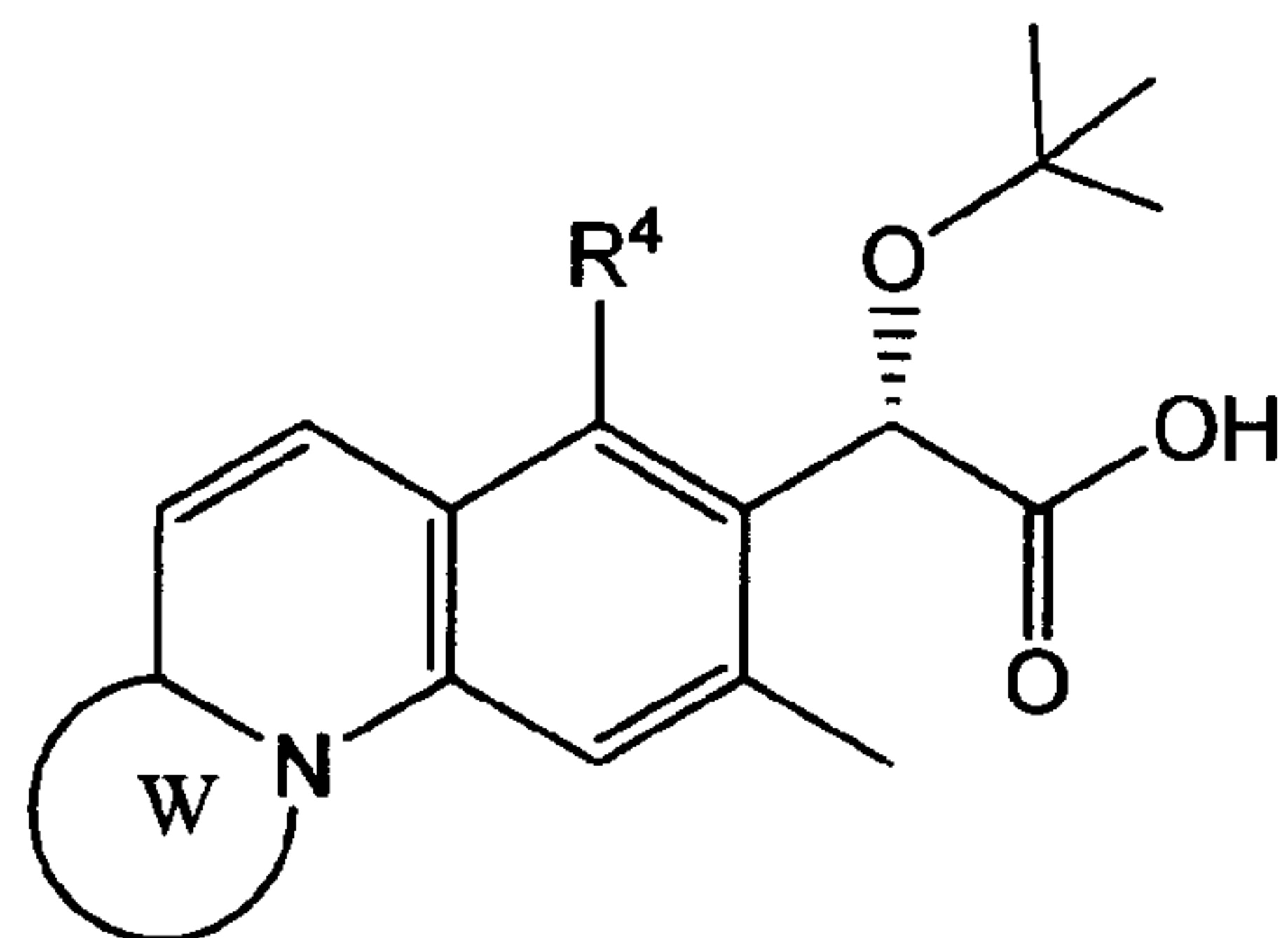
5

Ip

wherein the ring W is heteroaryl optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups.

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds of formula Iq.

10

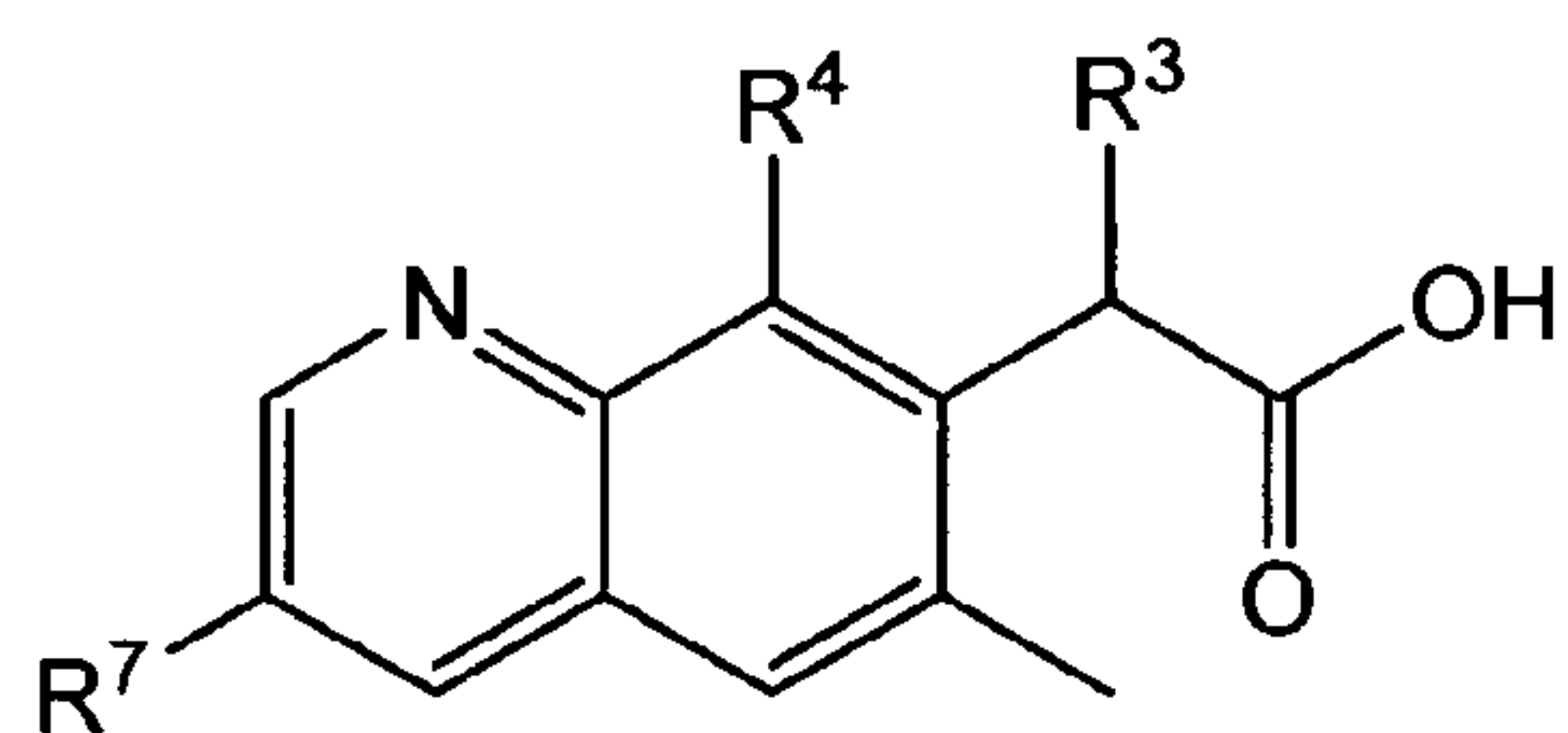


Iq

wherein the ring W is heteroaryl optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups.

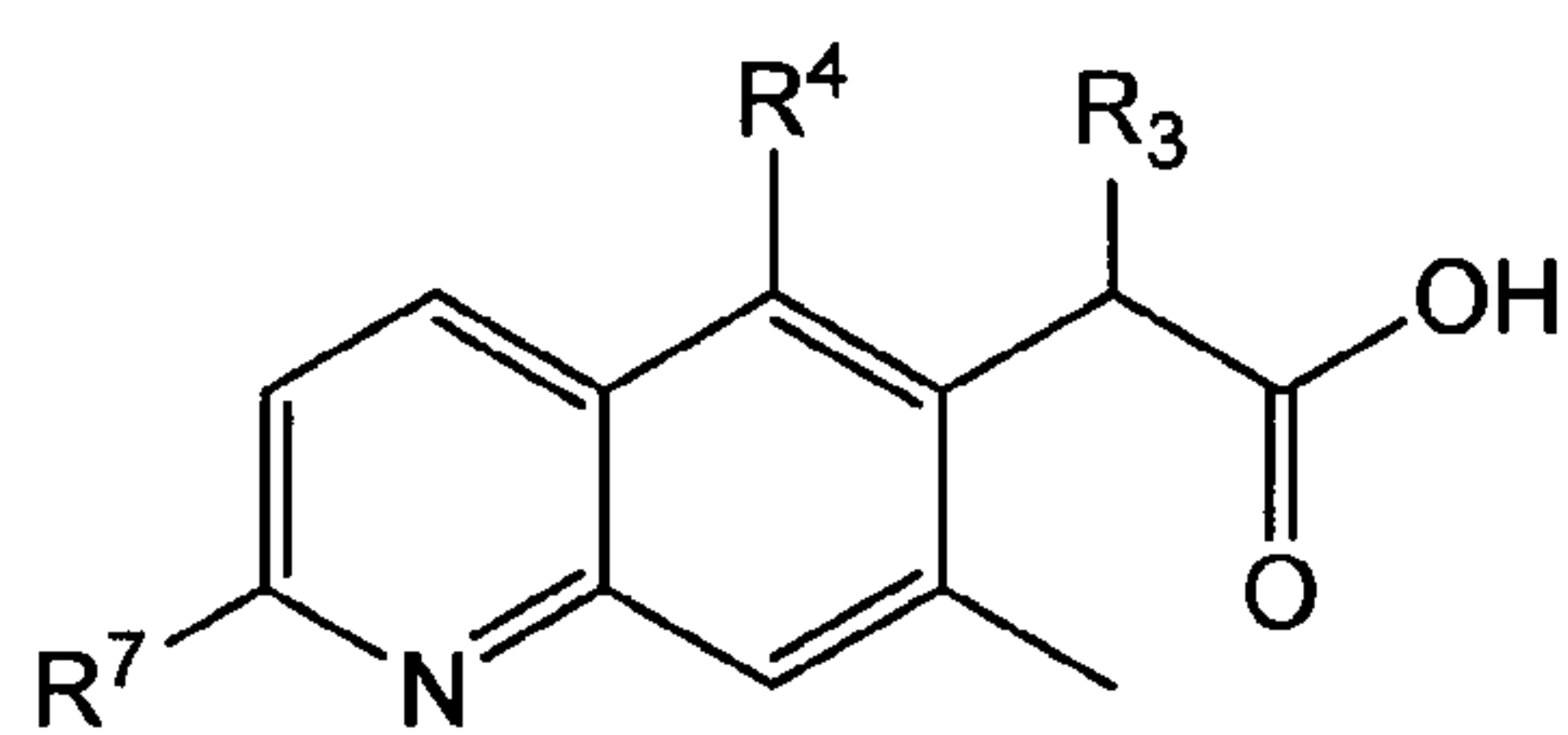
Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds of formula Ir.

15



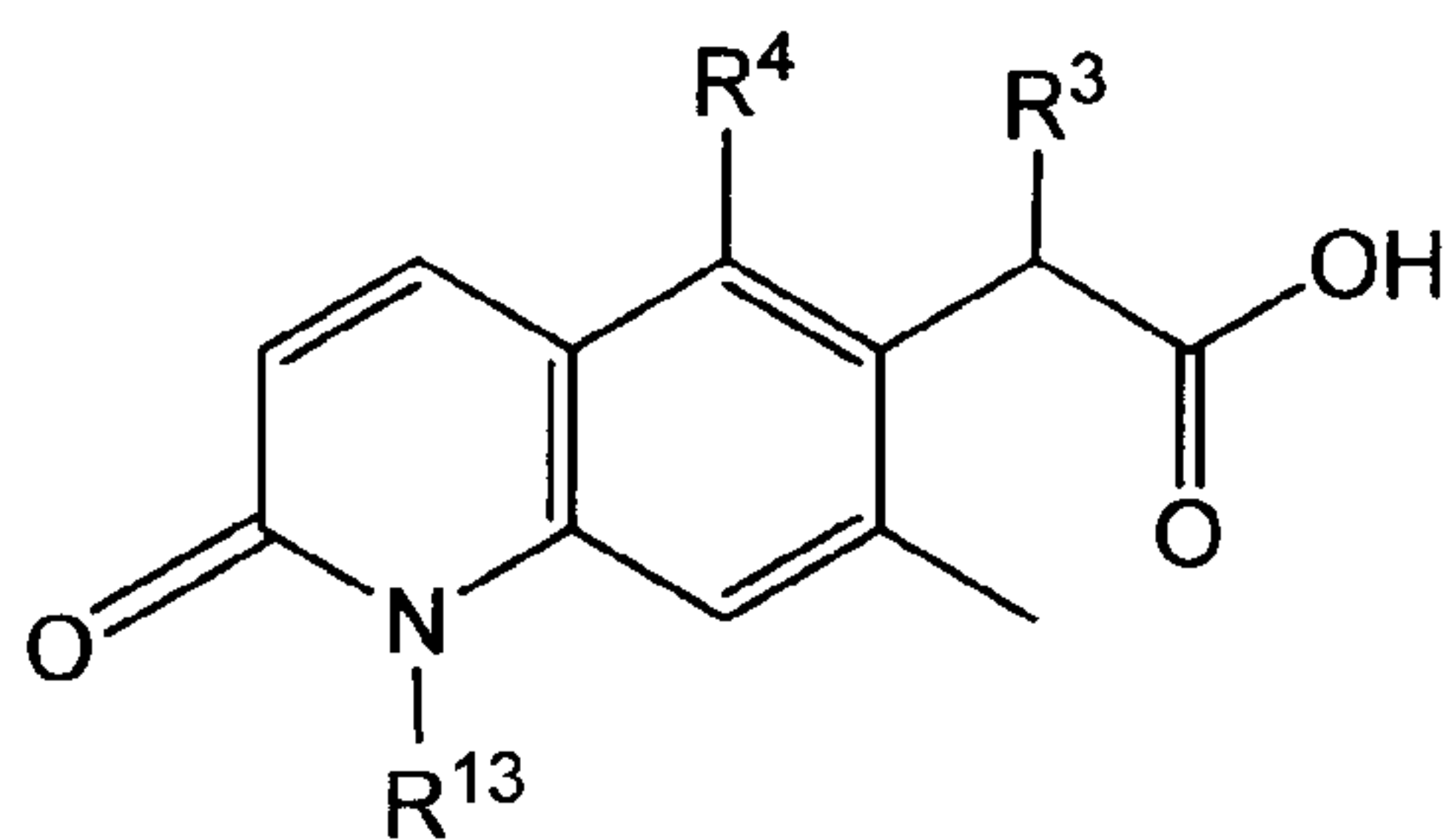
Ir

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds of formula Is.



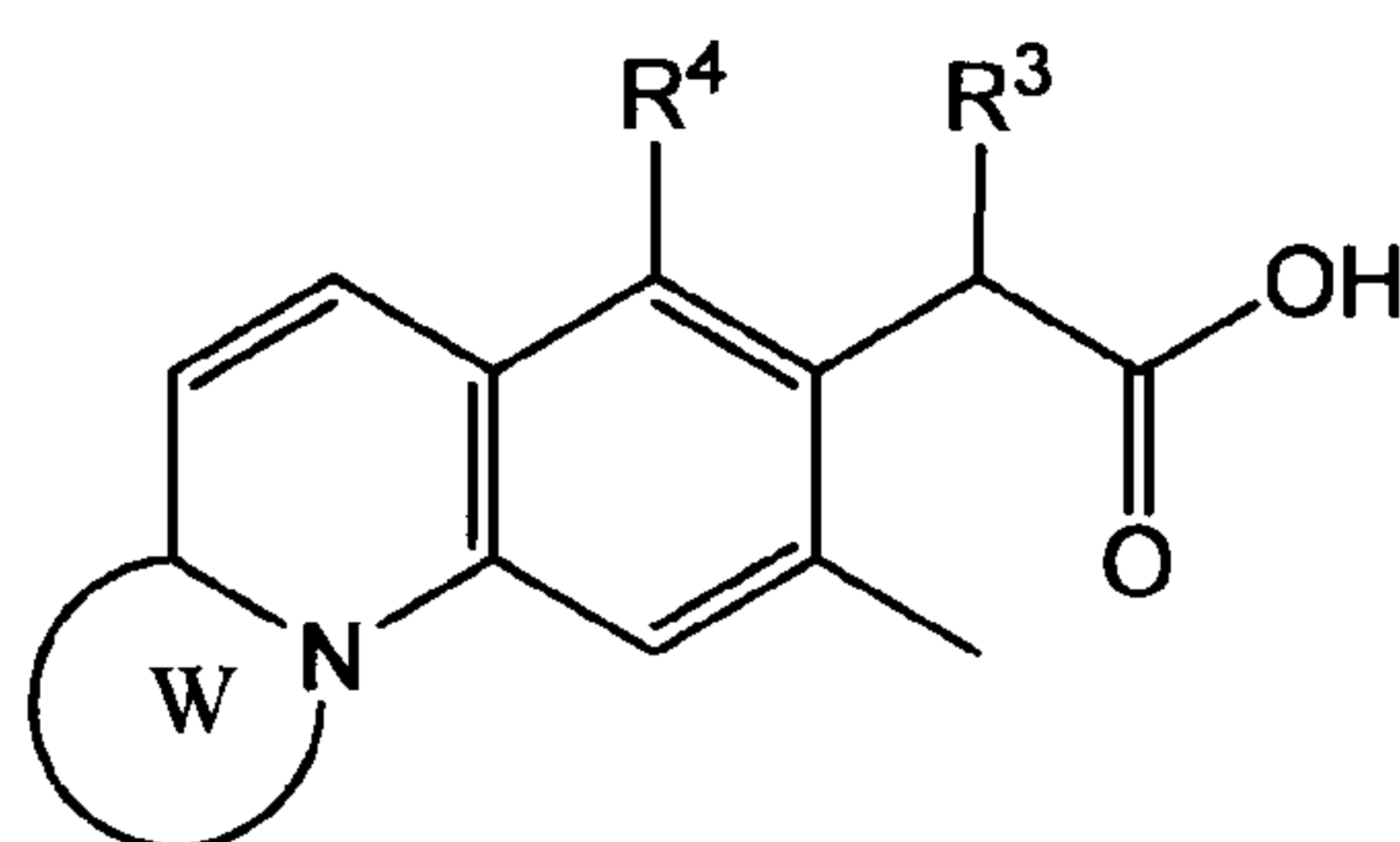
Is

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds of formula It.



It

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds of formula Iu.



Iu

wherein the ring W is heteroaryl optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups.

5 Specific values listed below are values for compounds of formula I as well as the compounds of formula Ia, Ib, Ic, Id, Ie, If, Ig, Ih, Ii, Ij, Ik, Im, In, Io, Ip, Iq, Ir, Is, It and Iu.

A specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein at least one of $R^1, R^2, R^3, R^{3'}, R^4, R^5, R^6, R^7, R^8$ or R^{13} is selected from $R^{1b}, R^{2b}, R^{3b}, R^{3b'}, R^{4b}, R^{5b}, R^{6b}, R^{7b}, R^{8b}$ and R^{13b} .

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein at least two of $R^1, R^2, R^3, R^{3'}, R^4, R^5, R^6, R^7, R^8$ or R^{13} is selected from $R^{1b}, R^{2b}, R^{3b}, R^{3b'}, R^{4b}, R^{5b}, R^{6b}, R^{7b}, R^{8b}$ or R^{13b} .

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein at least three of $R^1, R^2, R^3, R^{3'}, R^4, R^5, R^6, R^7, R^8$ or R^{13} is selected from $R^{1b}, R^{2b}, R^{3b}, R^{3b'}, R^{4b}, R^{5b}, R^{6b}, R^{7b}, R^{8b}$ and R^{13b} .

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein at least four of $R^1, R^2, R^3, R^{3'}, R^4, R^5, R^6, R^7, R^8$ or R^{13} is selected from $R^{1b}, R^{2b}, R^{3b}, R^{3b'}, R^{4b}, R^{5b}, R^{6b}, R^{7b}, R^{8b}$ and R^{13b} .

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein at least five of $R^1, R^2, R^3, R^{3'}, R^4, R^5, R^6, R^7, R^8$ or R^{13} is selected from $R^{1b}, R^{2b}, R^{3b}, R^{3b'}, R^{4b}, R^{5b}, R^{6b}, R^{7b}, R^{8b}$ and R^{13b} .

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein at least six of $R^1, R^2, R^3, R^{3'}, R^4, R^5, R^6, R^7, R^8$ or R^{13} is selected from $R^{1b}, R^{2b}, R^{3b}, R^{3b'}, R^{4b}, R^{5b}, R^{6b}, R^{7b}, R^{8b}$ and R^{13b} .

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein at least seven of $R^1, R^2, R^3, R^{3'}, R^4, R^5, R^6, R^7, R^8$ or R^{13} is selected from $R^{1b}, R^{2b}, R^{3b}, R^{3b'}, R^{4b}, R^{5b}, R^{6b}, R^{7b}, R^{8b}$ and R^{13b} .

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein at least eight of $R^1, R^2, R^3, R^{3'}, R^4, R^5, R^6, R^7, R^8$ or R^{13} is selected from $R^{1b}, R^{2b}, R^{3b}, R^{3b'}, R^{4b}, R^{5b}, R^{6b}, R^{7b}, R^{8b}$ and R^{13b} .

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein at least nine of $R^1, R^2, R^3, R^{3'}, R^4, R^5, R^6, R^7, R^8$ or R^{13} is selected from $R^{1b}, R^{2b}, R^{3b}, R^{3b'}, R^{4b}, R^{5b}, R^{6b}, R^{7b}, R^{8b}$ and R^{13b} .

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein $R^1, R^2, R^3, R^{3'}, R^4, R^5, R^6, R^7, R^8$ and R^{13} is selected from $R^{1b}, R^{2b}, R^{3b}, R^{3b'}, R^{4b}, R^{5b}, R^{6b}, R^{7b}, R^{8b}$ and R^{13b} .

A specific value for R^3 is R^{3b} .

A specific value for R^{3b} is $-\text{OC}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$, $-\text{OC}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$, $-\text{O}(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl-O-C(O)-NH}_2$, $-\text{O}(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl-O-C(O)-N}(\text{CH}_3)_2$ or $-\text{O}(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl-O-C(O)-NH(phenyl)}$.

Another specific value for R^{3b} is $-(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkylOH}$ or $-\text{O}(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl-O-C(O)-NR}_c\text{R}_d$.

Another specific value for R^3 is R^{3a} .

A specific value for R^{3a} is $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl}$, $(\text{C}_2\text{-C}_6)\text{alkenyl}$ or $-\text{O}(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl}$, wherein any $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl}$ or $(\text{C}_2\text{-C}_6)\text{alkenyl}$ of R^{3a} is optionally substituted with one or more groups selected from $-\text{O}(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl}$, halo, oxo and $-\text{CN}$.

Another specific value for R^{3a} is $-\text{OC}(\text{CH}_3)$.

A specific value for $R^{3'}$ is $R^{3b'}$.

A specific value for $R^{3b'}$ is $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl}$ or $-\text{O}(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl}$.

A specific value for $R^{3'}$ is $R^{3a'}$.

A specific value for $R^{3a'}$ is H.

A specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R^{3b} and $R^{3b'}$ together with the carbon to which they are attached form a $(\text{C}_3\text{-C}_7)\text{carbocycle}$ or heterocycle, wherein the $(\text{C}_3\text{-C}_7)\text{carbocycle}$ or heterocycle is optionally substituted with one or more Z^1 groups.

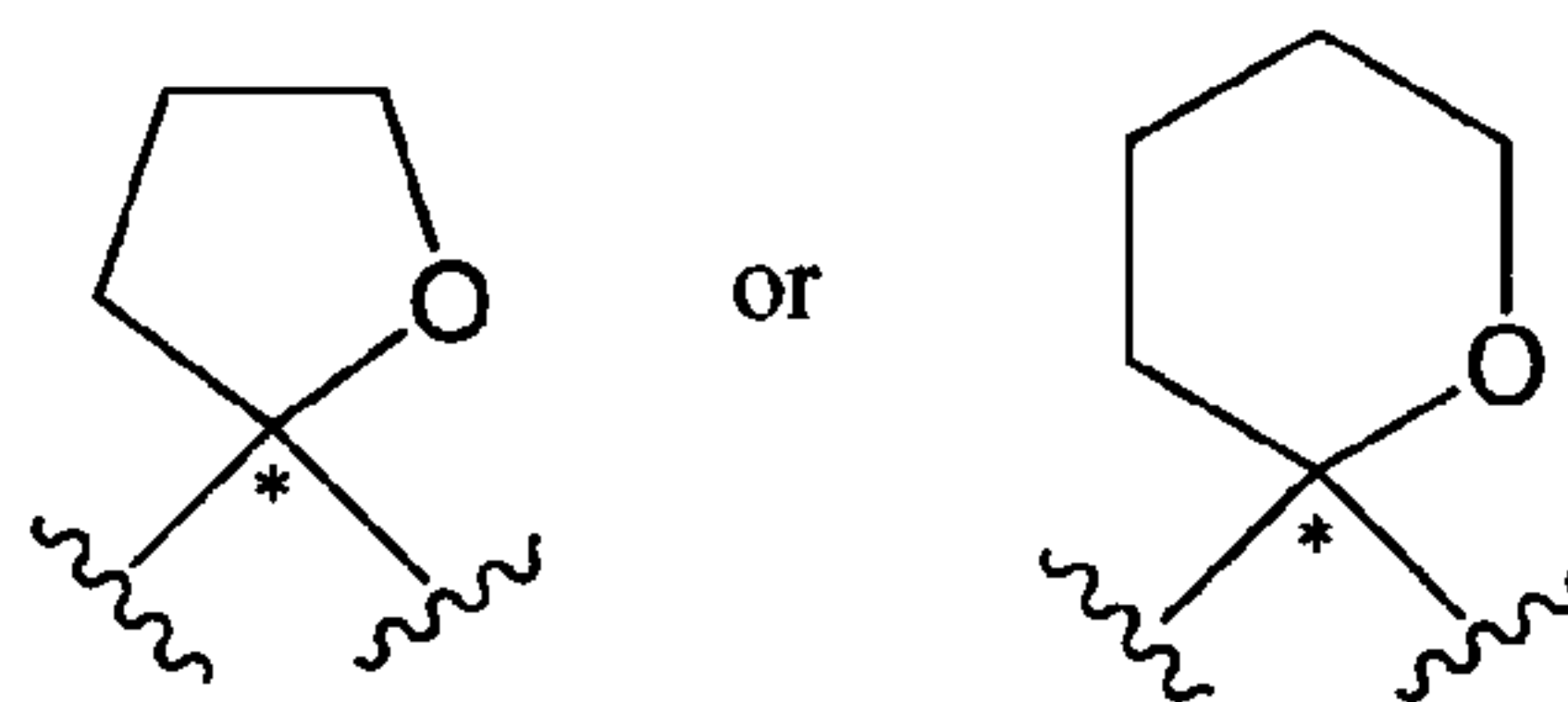
Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R^{3b} and $R^{3b'}$ together with the carbon to which they are attached form a (C₃-C₇)carbocycle or a 4, 5 or 6-membered heterocycle, wherein the (C₃-C₆)carbocycle or the 4, 5 or 6-membered heterocycle is optionally substituted with one or more Z^1 groups.

5 Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R^{3b} and $R^{3b'}$ together with the carbon to which they are attached form a (C₄-C₆)carbocycle or a 5 or 6-membered heterocycle, wherein the (C₄-C₆)carbocycle or the 5 or 6-membered heterocycle is optionally substituted with one or more Z^1 groups.

10 Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R^{3b} and $R^{3b'}$ together with the carbon to which they are attached form a 5 or 6-membered heterocycle, wherein the 5 or 6-membered heterocycle is optionally substituted with one or more Z^1 groups.

15 Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R^{3b} and $R^{3b'}$ together with the carbon to which they are attached form a tetrahydropyran or tetrahydrofuran optionally substituted with one or more Z^1 groups.

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R^{3b} and $R^{3b'}$ together with the carbon to which they are attached form:

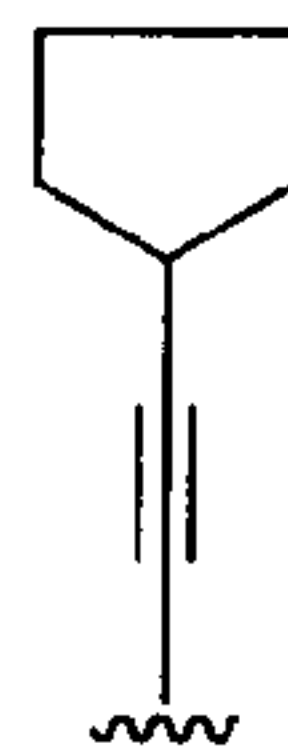


20 each of which is optionally substituted with one or more Z^1 groups, and wherein “*” denotes the point of attachment to the carbon of the compound of formula I.

A specific value for R^4 is R^{4b} .

A specific value for R^{4b} is (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl or (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, wherein (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl or (C₂-C₆)alkynyl are each optionally substituted with one or more Z^1 groups.

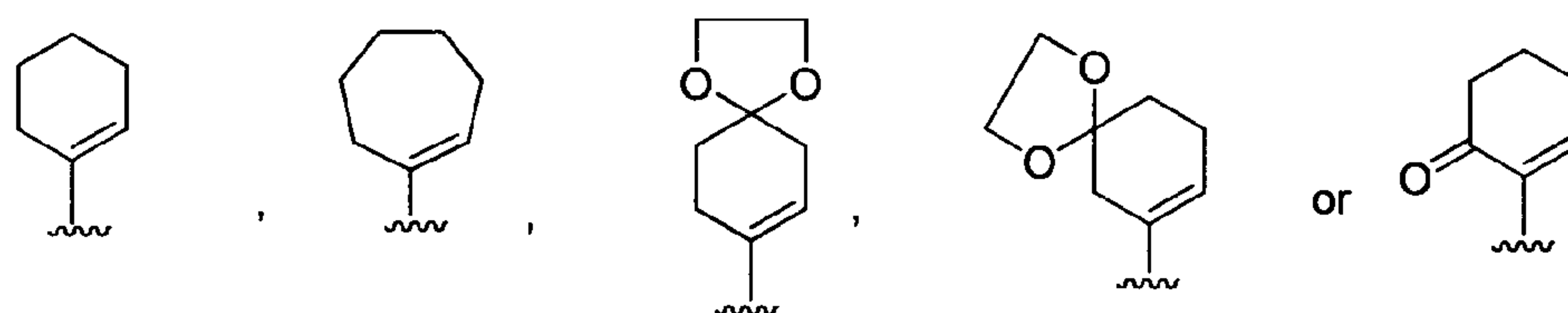
25 Another specific value for R^{4b} is:



optionally substituted with one or more Z^1 groups.

Another specific value for R^{4b} is (C_3-C_7) carbocycle, wherein (C_3-C_7) carbocycle is optionally substituted with one or more Z^1 groups, or wherein two Z^1 groups together with the atom or atoms to which they are attached optionally form a (C_3-C_6) carbocycle or 5-6-membered heterocycle.

Another specific value for R^{4b} is:

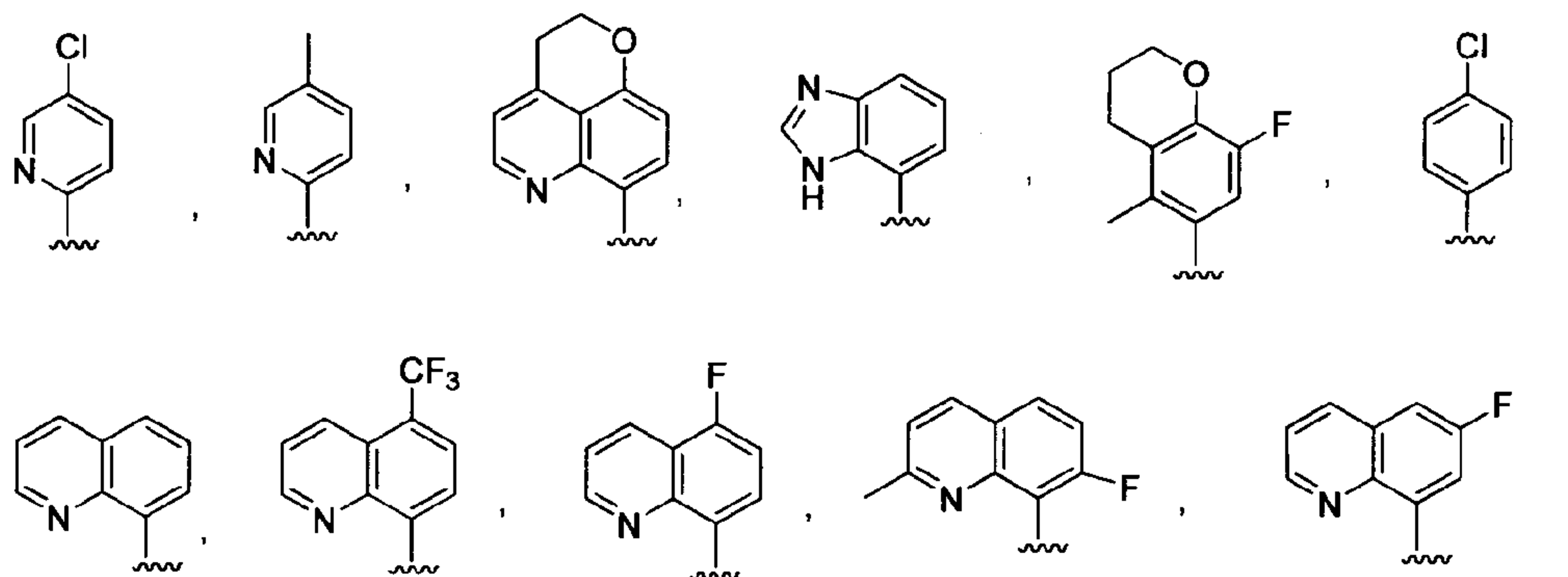


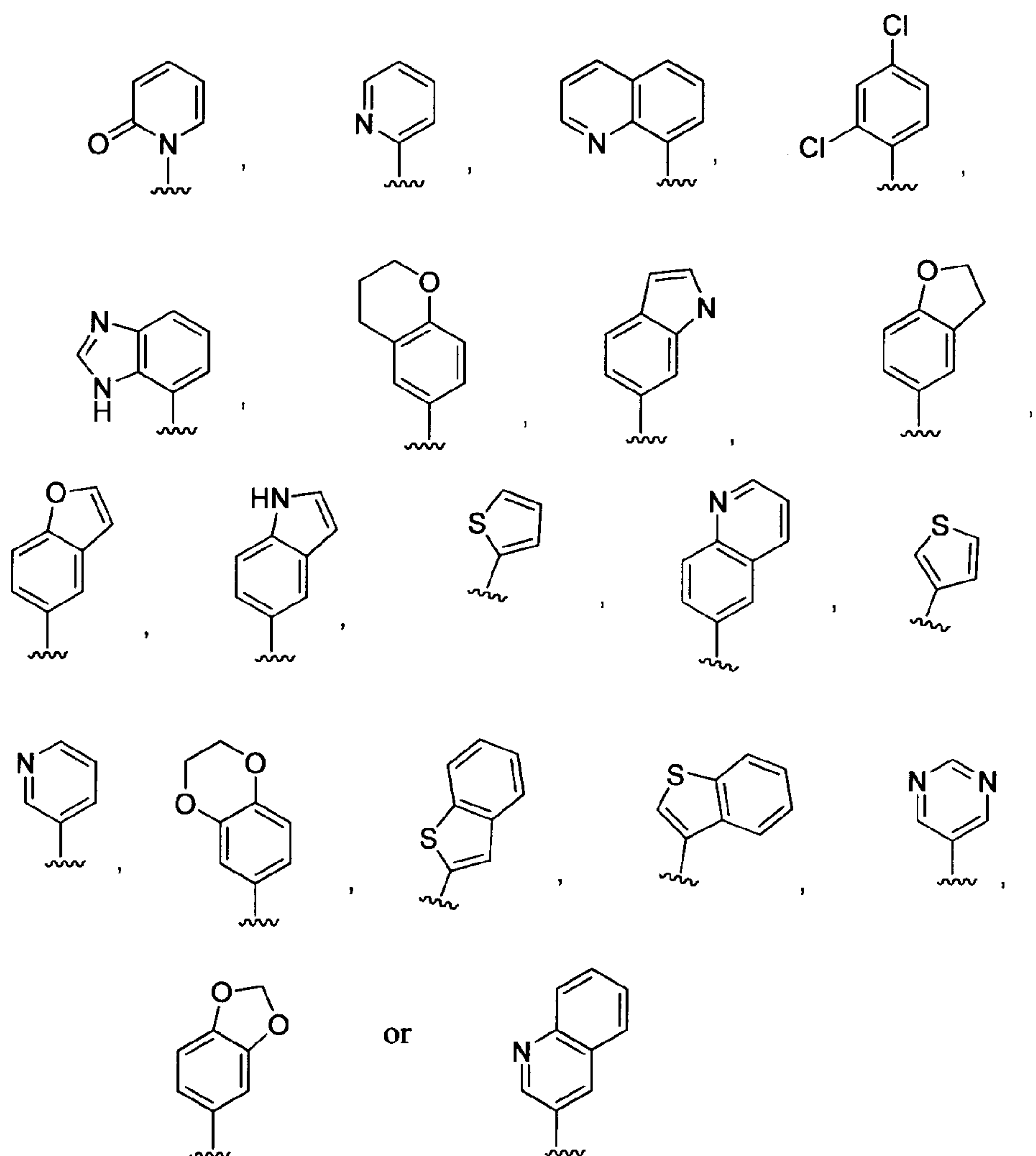
each of which is optionally substituted with one or more Z^1 groups.

Another specific value for R^{4b} is aryl, heterocycle or heteroaryl, wherein aryl, heterocycle or heteroaryl are each independently substituted with one or more Z^7 groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z^1 groups.

Another specific value for R^{4b} is:

A specific value for R^{4a} is:

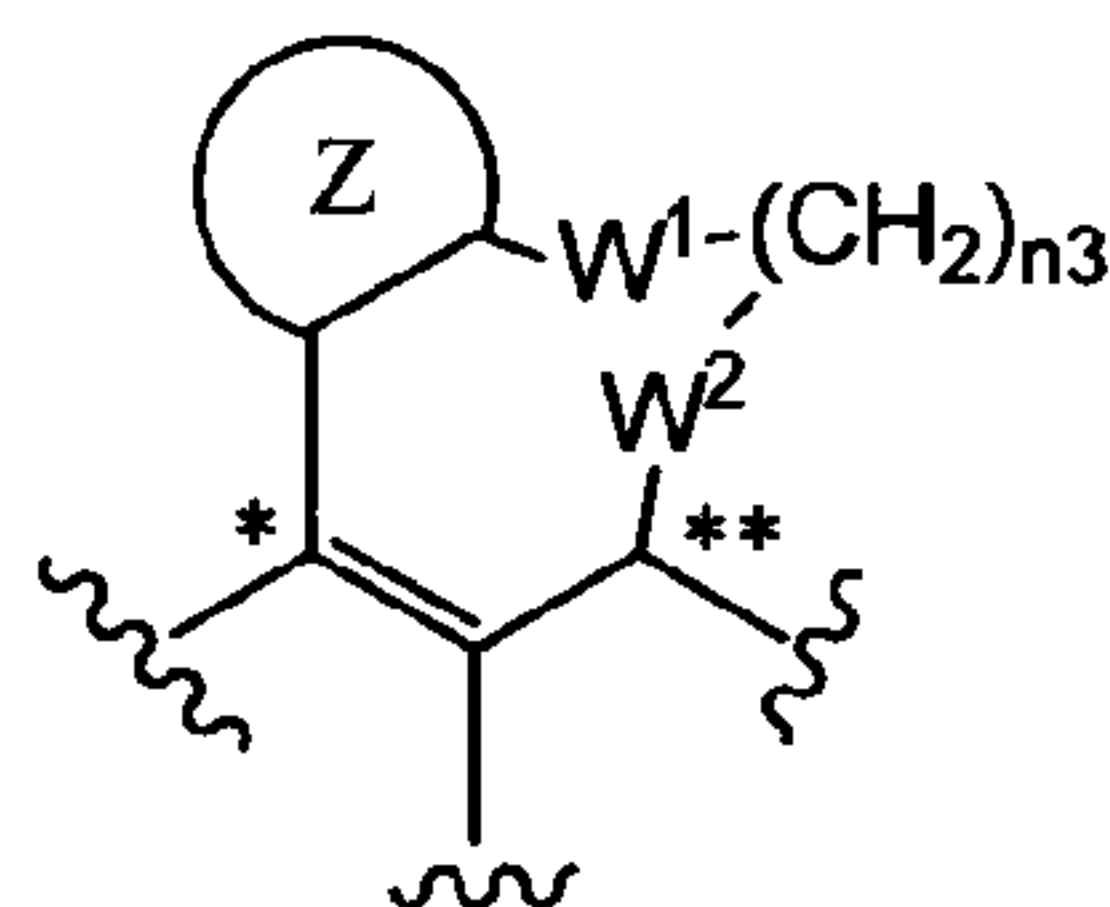




A specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R^4 and R^3 together with the atoms to which they are attached form a macroheterocycle or a macrocarbocycle, wherein any macroheterocycle or macrocarbocycle of R^4 and R^3 together with the atoms to which they are attached may be optionally substituted with one or more Z^1 groups; and $R^{3'}$ is H, (C_1-C_6) alkyl or $-O(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl.

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R^4 and R^3 together with the atoms to which they are attached form a macroheterocycle or a macrocarbocycle, wherein any macroheterocycle or macrocarbocycle of R^4 and R^3 together with the atoms to which they are attached may be optionally substituted with one or more Z^1 groups; and $R^{3'}$ is H.

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R^4 and R^3 together with the atoms to which they are attached form the macroheterocycle or a macrocarbocycle which is further fused to a Z group;



5 wherein:

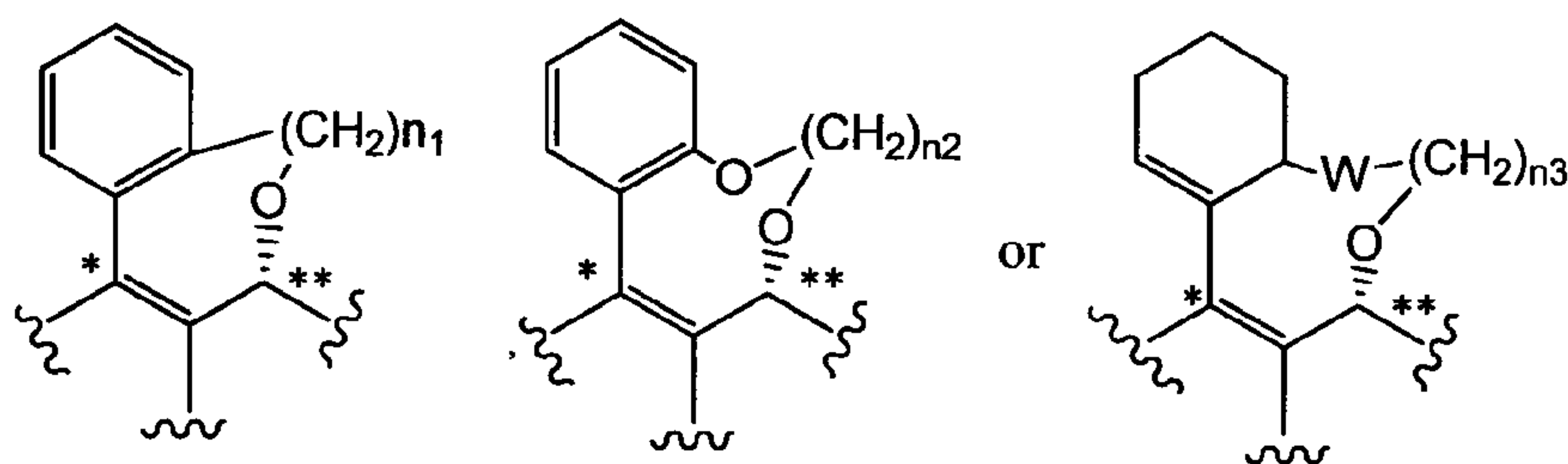
Z is aryl, heteroaryl or (C₃-C₆)carbocycle;

n₃ is 2, 3 or 4;

W¹ and W² are each independently O, NH or CH₂; and

10 wherein “*” denotes the R^4 point of attachment of the macroheterocycle or macrocarbocycle to the compound of formula I and “**” denotes the R^3 point of attachment of the macroheterocycle or macrocarbocycle to the compound of formula I, and wherein the macroheterocycle or a macrocarbocycle is optionally substituted with one or more Z¹ groups.

15 Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein, R^4 and R^3 together with the atoms to which they are attached form the macroheterocycle:



wherein:

n₁ is 3 or 4; n₂ is 2, 3 or 4; n₃ is 2, 3 or 4; W is O, NH or N(C₁-C₄)alkyl; and

20 wherein “*” denotes the R^4 point of attachment of the macroheterocycle to the compound of formula I and “**” denotes the R^3 point of attachment of the macroheterocycle to the compound of formula I; and wherein the macroheterocycle or a macrocarbocycle is optionally substituted with one or more Z¹ groups.

- A specific value for R^1 is R^{1b} .
 Another specific value R^1 is R^{1a} .
 A specific value for R^{1a} is H or halo.
 A specific value for R^2 is R^{2b} .
 5 Another specific value R^2 is R^{2a} .
 A specific value for R^{2a} is H, halo or $-CH_3$.
 Another specific value for R^{2a} is $-Cl$.
 A specific value for R^5 is R^{5b} .
 Another specific value for R^5 is R^{5a} .
 10 A specific value for R^{5a} is H.
 A specific value for R^6 is R^{6b} .
 Another specific value for R^6 is R^{6a} .
 A specific value for R^{6a} is H.
 A specific value for R^7 is R^{7b} .
 15 Another specific value for R^7 is R^{7a} .
 A specific value for R^{7a} is H, $-CH_3$, CF_3 or halogen.
 A specific value for R^8 is R^{8b} .
 Another specific value for R^8 is R^{8a} .
 Another specific value for R^{8a} is H.
 20 A specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R^{4b} is selected from:
- a) (C_1-C_6) alkyl, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl and (C_2-C_6) alkynyl, wherein (C_1-C_6) alkyl, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl and (C_2-C_6) alkynyl are each optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;
 - 25 b) (C_3-C_{14}) carbocycle, wherein (C_3-C_{14}) carbocycle is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;
 - c) Spiro-heterocycle and bridged-heterocycle, wherein spiro-heterocycle and bridged-heterocycle is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups; and
 - 30 d) aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, wherein aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl are each independently substituted with one or more Z^7 groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups.

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R^{4b} is selected from:

- a) (C_1-C_6) alkyl, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl and (C_2-C_6) alkynyl, wherein (C_1-C_6) alkyl, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl and (C_2-C_6) alkynyl are each optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;
- b) (C_3-C_{14}) carbocycle, wherein (C_3-C_{14}) carbocycle is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups, wherein two Z^1 groups together with the atom or atoms to which they are attached optionally form a (C_3-C_7) carbocycle or heterocycle; and
- c) aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, wherein aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl are each independently substituted with one or more Z^7 groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups.

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R^{4b} is selected from:

- a) (C_1-C_6) alkyl, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl and (C_2-C_6) alkynyl, wherein (C_1-C_6) alkyl, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl and (C_2-C_6) alkynyl are each optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;
- b) (C_3-C_{14}) carbocycle, wherein (C_3-C_{14}) carbocycle is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups; and
- c) aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, wherein aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl are each independently substituted with one or more Z^7 groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups.

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R^3 is (C_1-C_6) alkyl, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl or $-O(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl, wherein any (C_1-C_6) alkyl or (C_2-C_6) alkenyl of R^3 is optionally substituted with one or more groups selected from $-O(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl, halo, oxo and $-CN$, and wherein $R^{3'}$ is H.

Another specific value for R^3 is $-O(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl.

Another specific value for R^3 is $-OtBu$.

Another specific value for $R^{3'}$ is H.

Another specific value for R^2 is halo, H or $-CH_3$.

Another specific value for R^2 is chloro or $-CH_3$.

Another specific value for R^2 is $-CH_3$.

Another specific value for R^1 is H.

Another specific value for R^6 is H.

Another specific value for R^5 is H or (C_1-C_6) alkyl.

Another specific value for R^5 is H or $-CH_3$.

5 Another specific value for R^5 is H.

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R^4 is selected from:

a) aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, wherein aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl are each optionally substituted with one or more groups each independently selected from halo, (C_1-C_6) alkyl, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl, (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl, (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl, -OH, $-O(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl, -SH, $-S(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl, $-NH_2$, $-NH(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl and $-N((C_1-C_6)alkyl)_2$, wherein (C_1-C_6) alkyl is optionally substituted with hydroxy, $-O(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl, cyano or oxo; and

b) (C_3-C_{14}) carbocycle, wherein (C_3-C_{14}) carbocycle is optionally substituted with one or more Z^1 groups, wherein two Z^1 groups together with the atom or atoms to which they are attached optionally form a (C_3-C_7) carbocycle or heterocycle; and

c) aryl, heteroaryl, spiro-heterocycle, fused-heterocycle and bridged-heterocycle, wherein aryl, heteroaryl, spiro-heterocycle, fused-heterocycle and bridged-heterocycle are each independently substituted with one or more Z^7 groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z^1 groups.

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R^4 is selected from:

a) aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, wherein aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl are each optionally substituted with one or more groups each independently selected from halo, (C_1-C_6) alkyl, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl, (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl, (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl, -OH, $-O(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl, -SH, $-S(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl, $-NH_2$, $-NH(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl and $-N((C_1-C_6)alkyl)_2$, wherein (C_1-C_6) alkyl is optionally substituted with hydroxy, $-O(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl, cyano or oxo;

b) aryl, heteroaryl, spiro-heterocycle, fused-heterocycle and bridged-heterocycle, wherein spiro-heterocycle, fused-heterocycle and bridged-heterocycle are

each independently substituted with one or more Z^7 groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z^1 groups.

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R^4 is selected from:

- 5 a) aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, wherein aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl are each optionally substituted with one or more groups each independently selected from halo, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, -OH, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -SH, -S(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -NH₂, -NH(C₁-C₆)alkyl and -N((C₁-C₆)alkyl)₂, wherein (C₁-C₆)alkyl is optionally substituted with hydroxy, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl, cyano or
10 oxo; and

- b) aryl, heteroaryl and fused-heterocycle, wherein aryl, heteroaryl and fused-heterocycle are each independently substituted with one or more Z^7 groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z^1 groups.

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R^4 is
15 selected from:

- a) heterocycle, wherein heterocycle is optionally substituted with one or more groups each independently selected from halo, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, -OH, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -SH, -S(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -NH₂, -NH(C₁-C₆)alkyl and -N((C₁-C₆)alkyl)₂, wherein (C₁-C₆)alkyl is optionally substituted with
20 hydroxy, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl, cyano or oxo; and

- b) fused-heterocycle, wherein fused-heterocycle is substituted with one or more Z^7 groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z^1 groups.

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R^4 is selected from:

- 25 a) bicyclic aryl, tricyclic aryl, bicyclic heterocycle, tricyclic heterocycle, bicyclic heteroaryl and tricyclic heteroaryl, wherein bicyclic aryl, tricyclic aryl, bicyclic heterocycle, tricyclic heterocycle, bicyclic heteroaryl and tricyclic heteroaryl are each optionally substituted with one or more groups each independently selected from halo, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, -OH, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -
30 SH, -S(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -NH₂, -NH(C₁-C₆)alkyl and -N((C₁-C₆)alkyl)₂, wherein (C₁-C₆)alkyl is optionally substituted with hydroxy, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl, cyano or oxo; and

- b) bicyclic aryl, tricyclic aryl, bicyclic heteroaryl, tricyclic heteroaryl bicyclic fused-heterocycle, and tricyclic fused-heterocycle, wherein bicyclic aryl, tricyclic aryl, bicyclic heteroaryl, tricyclic heteroaryl bicyclic fused-heterocycle and tricyclic fused-heterocycle are each independently substituted with one or more Z^7 groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z^1 groups.

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R^4 is selected from:

- a) bicyclic heterocycle and tricyclic heterocycle, wherein bicyclic heterocycle and tricyclic heterocycle are each optionally substituted with one or more groups each independently selected from halo, (C_1-C_6) alkyl, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl, (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl, (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl, -OH, -O (C_1-C_6) alkyl, -SH, -S (C_1-C_6) alkyl, -NH₂, -NH (C_1-C_6) alkyl and -N $((C_1-C_6)$ alkyl)₂, wherein (C_1-C_6) alkyl is optionally substituted with hydroxy, -O (C_1-C_6) alkyl, cyano or oxo; and
- b) bicyclic fused-heterocycle and tricyclic fused-heterocycle, wherein bicyclic fused-heterocycle and tricyclic fused-heterocycle fused-heterocycle are each substituted with one or more Z^7 groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z^1 groups.

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R^4 is selected from:

- a) bicyclic heterocycle, tricyclic heterocycle, bicyclic heteroaryl and tricyclic heteroaryl wherein bicyclic heterocycle, tricyclic heterocycle, bicyclic heteroaryl and tricyclic heteroaryl are each optionally substituted with one or more groups each independently selected from halo, (C_1-C_6) alkyl, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl, (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl, (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl, -OH, -O (C_1-C_6) alkyl, -SH, -S (C_1-C_6) alkyl, -NH₂, -NH (C_1-C_6) alkyl and -N $((C_1-C_6)$ alkyl)₂, wherein (C_1-C_6) alkyl is optionally substituted with hydroxy, -O (C_1-C_6) alkyl, cyano or oxo; and
- b) bicyclic fused-heterocycle and tricyclic fused-heterocycle, wherein bicyclic fused-heterocycle and tricyclic fused-heterocycle fused-heterocycle are each substituted with one or more Z^7 groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z^1 groups.

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R^4 is selected from:

- a) tricyclic heterocycle, wherein tricyclic heterocycle is optionally substituted with one or more groups each independently selected from halo, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, -OH, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -SH, -S(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -NH₂, -NH(C₁-C₆)alkyl and -N((C₁-C₆)alkyl)₂, wherein (C₁-C₆)alkyl is
5 optionally substituted with hydroxy, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl, cyano or oxo; and
- b) tricyclic fused-heterocycle wherein tricyclic fused-heterocycle is substituted with one or more Z⁷ groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z¹ groups.

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R⁴ is
10 selected from:

- a) (C₃-C₁₄)carbocycle, wherein (C₃-C₁₄)carbocycle is optionally substituted with one or more Z¹ groups, wherein two Z¹ groups together with the atom or atoms to which they are attached optionally form a (C₃-C₇)carbocycle or heterocycle; and
- 15 b) aryl, heteroaryl, spiro-heterocycle, fused-heterocycle and bridged-heterocycle, wherein aryl, heteroaryl or spiro-heterocycle, fused-heterocycle and bridged-heterocycle are each independently substituted with one or more Z⁷ groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z¹ groups.

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R⁴ is
20 selected from aryl, heteroaryl, spiro-heterocycle, fused-heterocycle and bridged-heterocycle, wherein spiro-heterocycle, fused-heterocycle and bridged-heterocycle are each independently substituted with one or more Z⁷ groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z¹ groups.

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R⁴ is
25 selected from aryl, heteroaryl and fused-heterocycle, wherein aryl, heteroaryl and fused-heterocycle are each independently substituted with one or more Z⁷ groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z¹ groups.

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R⁴ is
30 fused-heterocycle, wherein fused-heterocycle is substituted with one or more Z⁷ groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z¹ groups.

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R⁴ is selected from bicyclic aryl, tricyclic aryl, bicyclic heteroaryl, tricyclic heteroaryl

bicyclic fused-heterocycle and tricyclic fused-heterocycle, wherein bicyclic aryl, tricyclic aryl, bicyclic heteroaryl, tricyclic heteroaryl bicyclic fused-heterocycle and tricyclic fused-heterocycle are each independently substituted with one or more Z^7 groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z^1 groups.

5 Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R^4 is selected from bicyclic fused-heterocycle and tricyclic fused-heterocycle, wherein bicyclic fused-heterocycle and tricyclic fused-heterocycle fused-heterocycle are each substituted with one or more Z^7 groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z^1 groups.

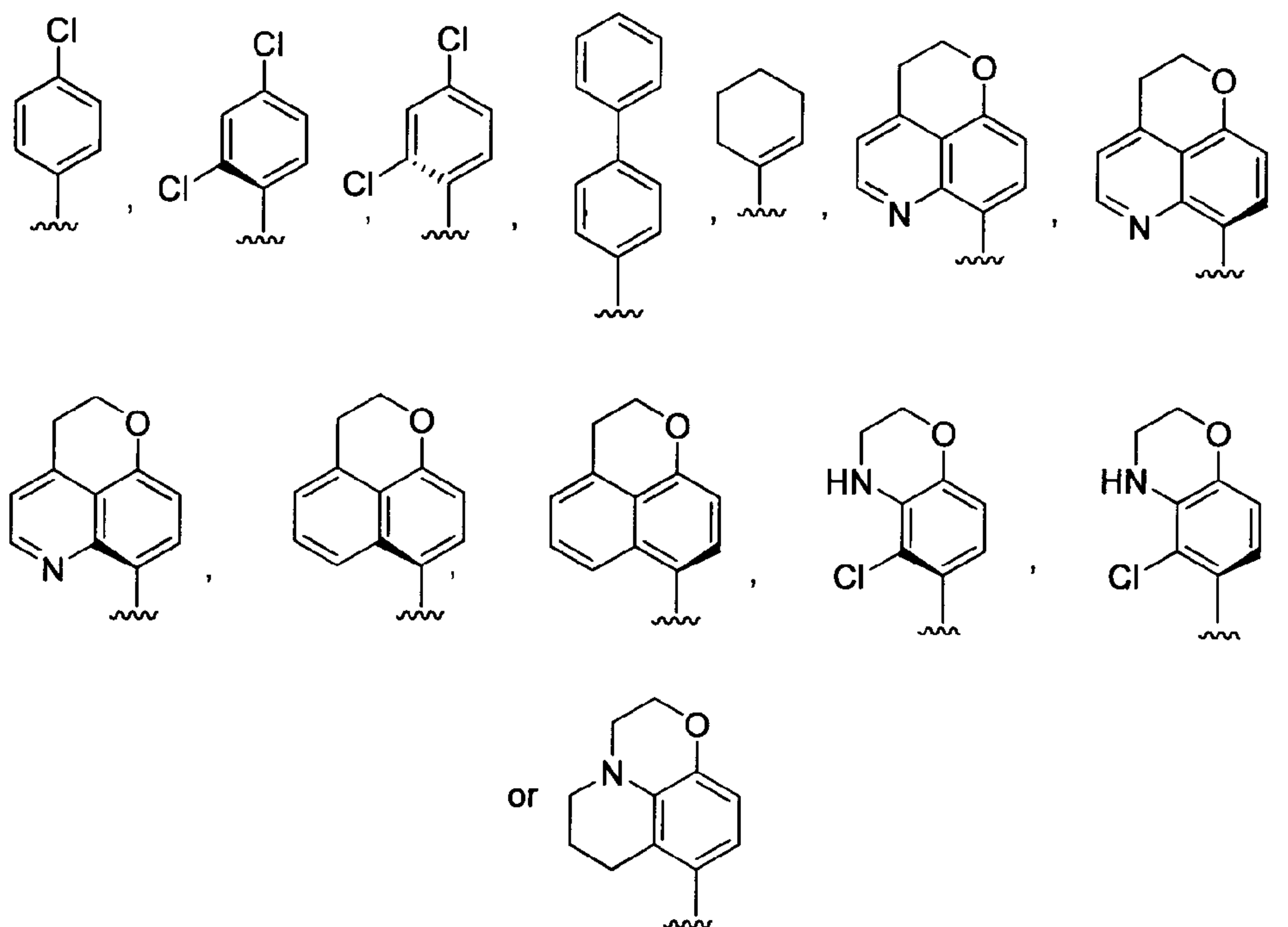
10 Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R^4 is tricyclic fused-heterocycle, wherein tricyclic fused-heterocycle fused-heterocycle is substituted with one or more Z^7 groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z^1 groups.

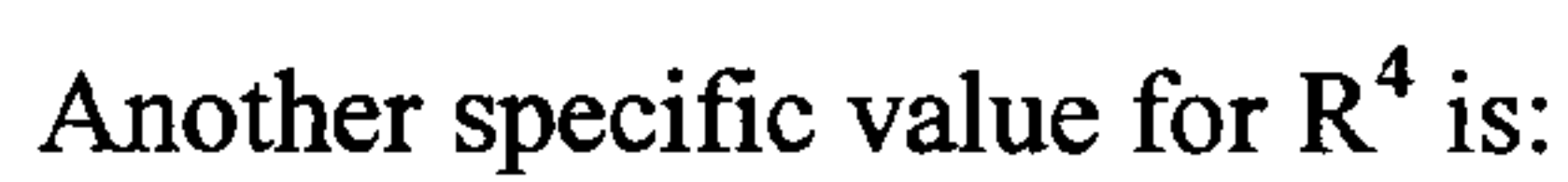
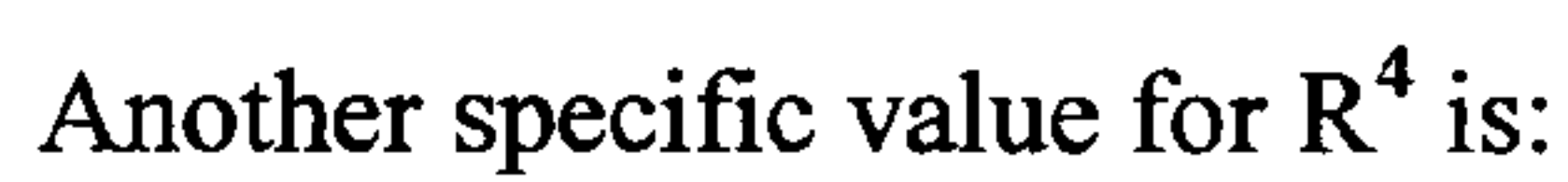
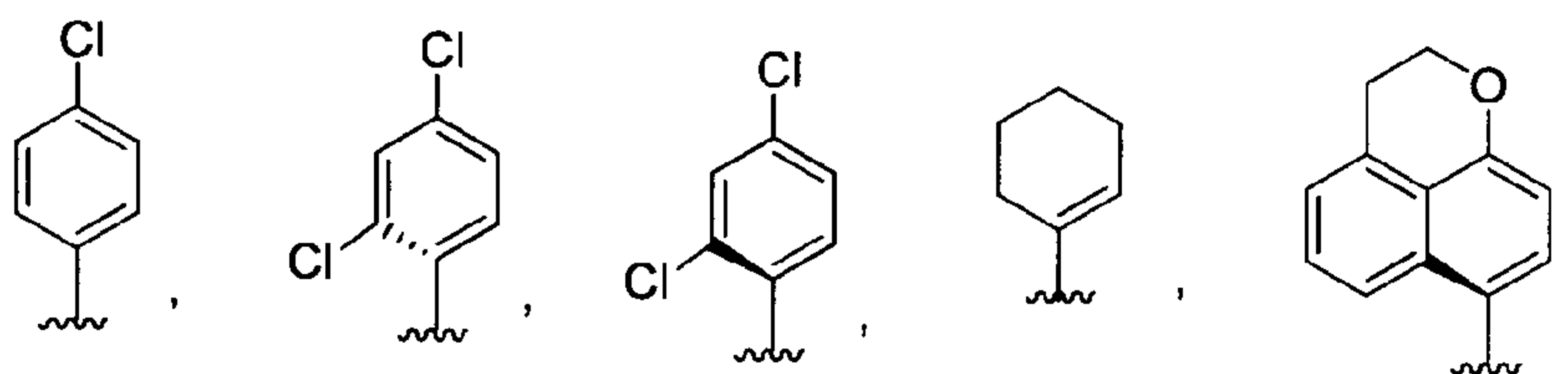
A specific value for Z^{10} is:

- 15 i) halo, (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl; or
ii) (C_1-C_6) alkyl optionally substituted with -OH, -O-
 (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl.

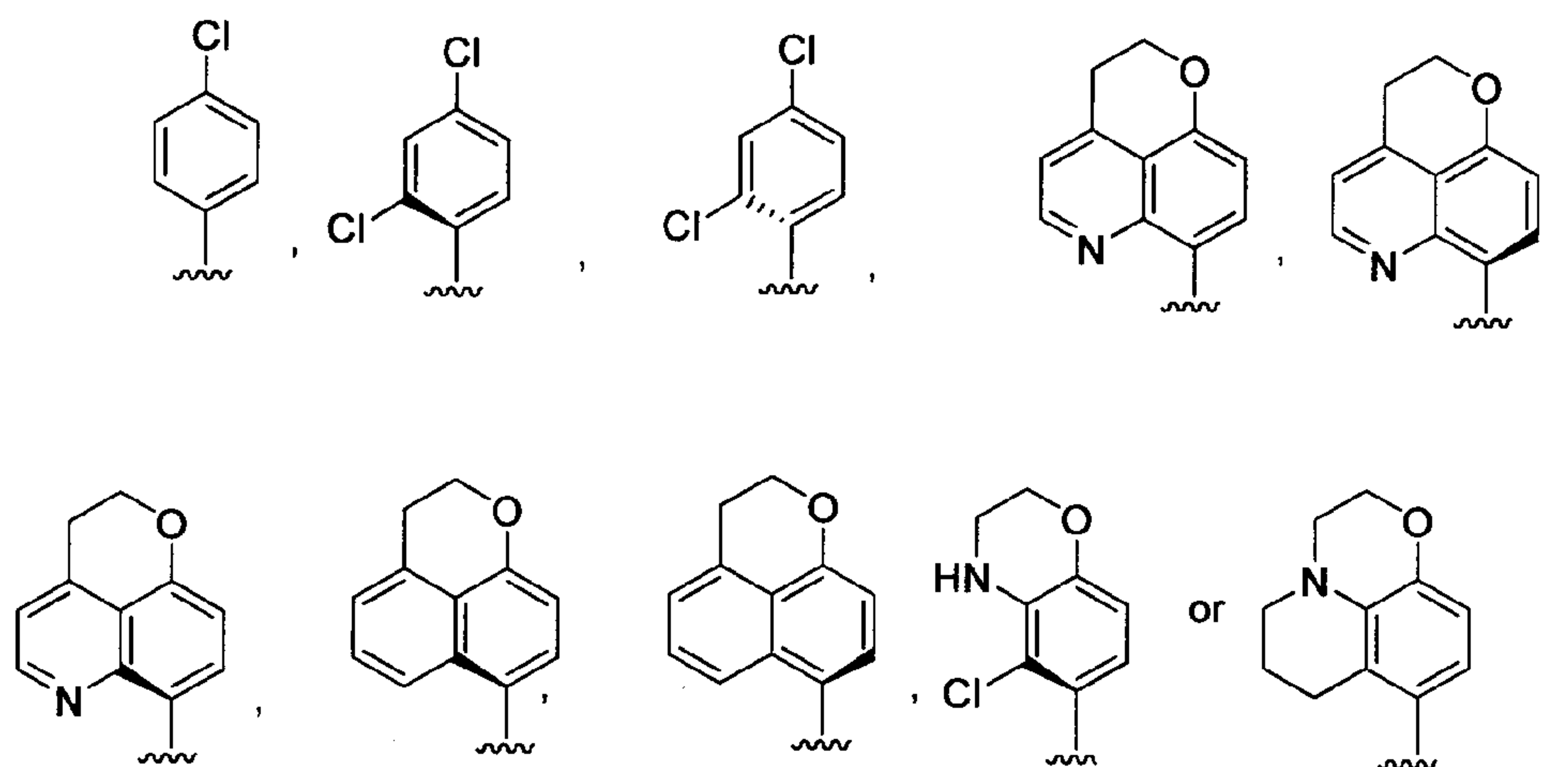
Another specific value for Z^{10} is halo.

Another specific value for R^4 is:

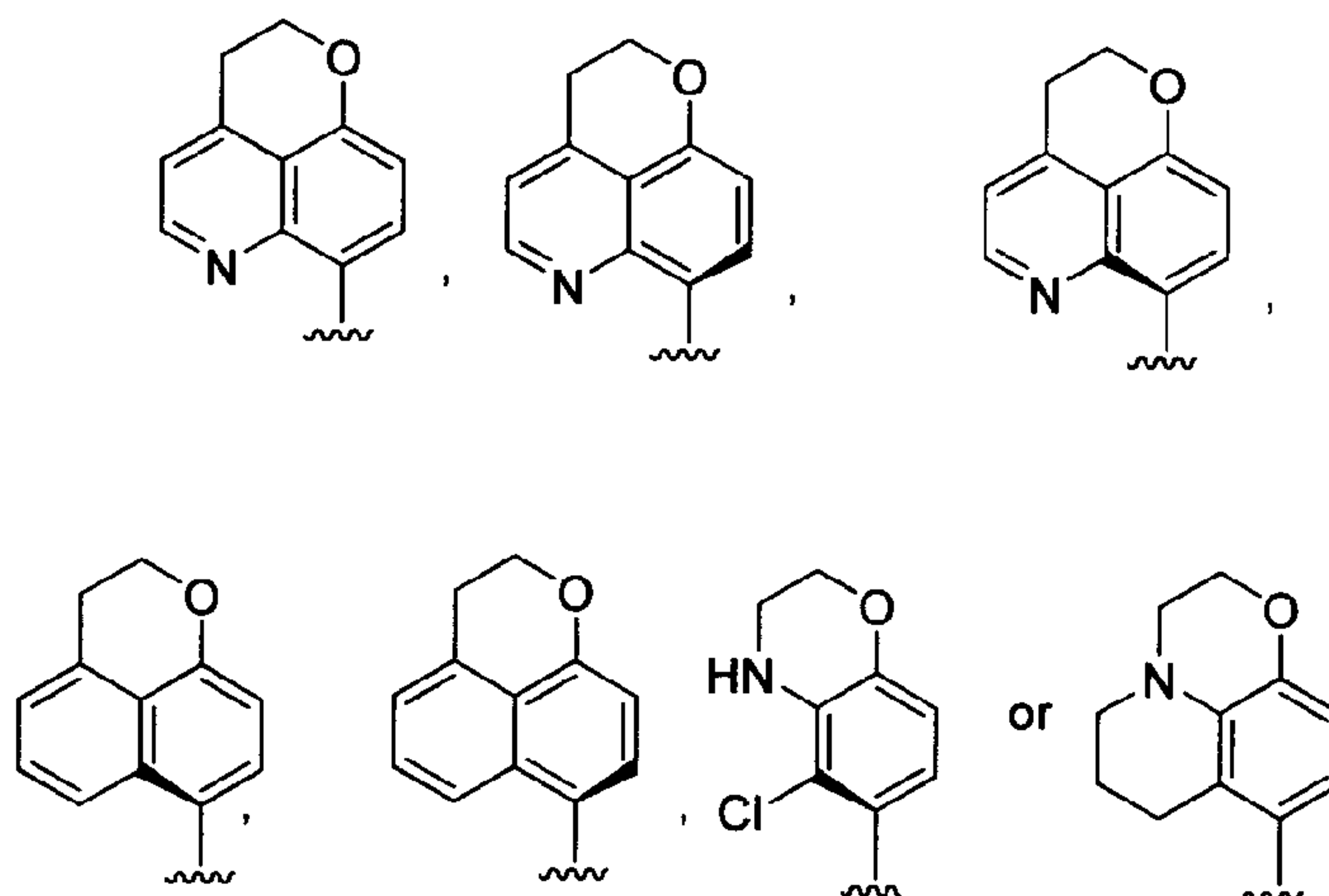




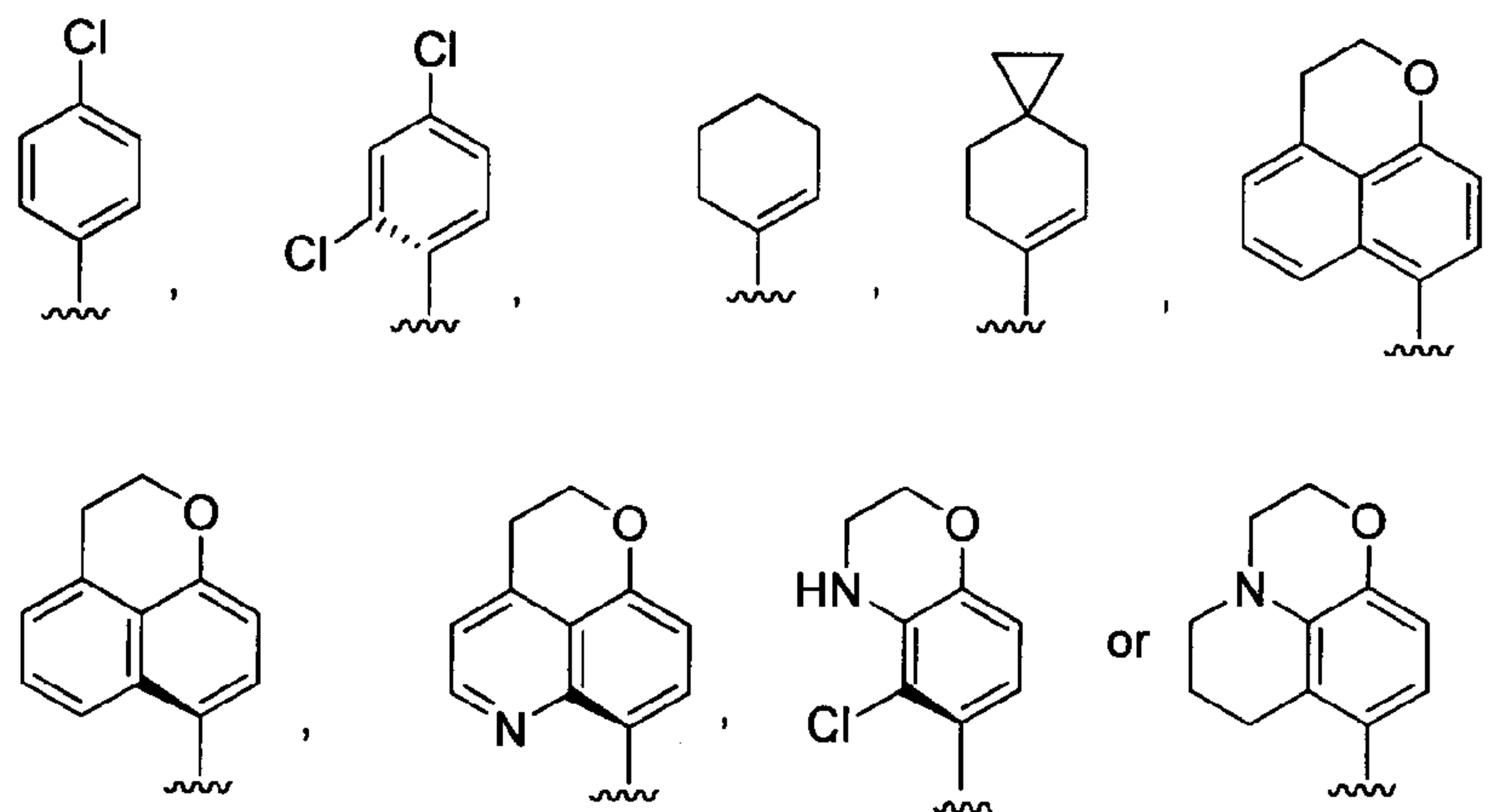
5



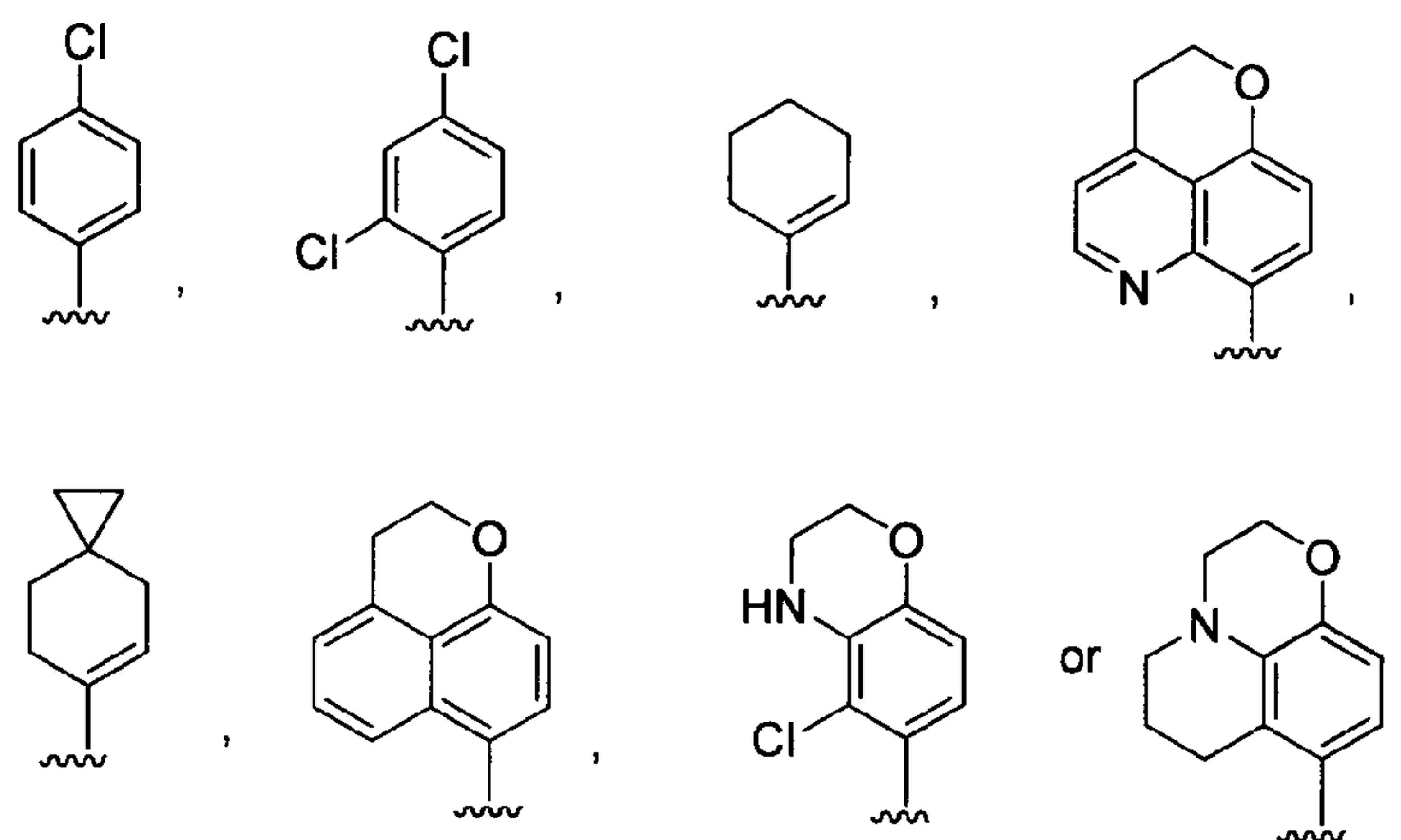
Another specific value for R^4 is:



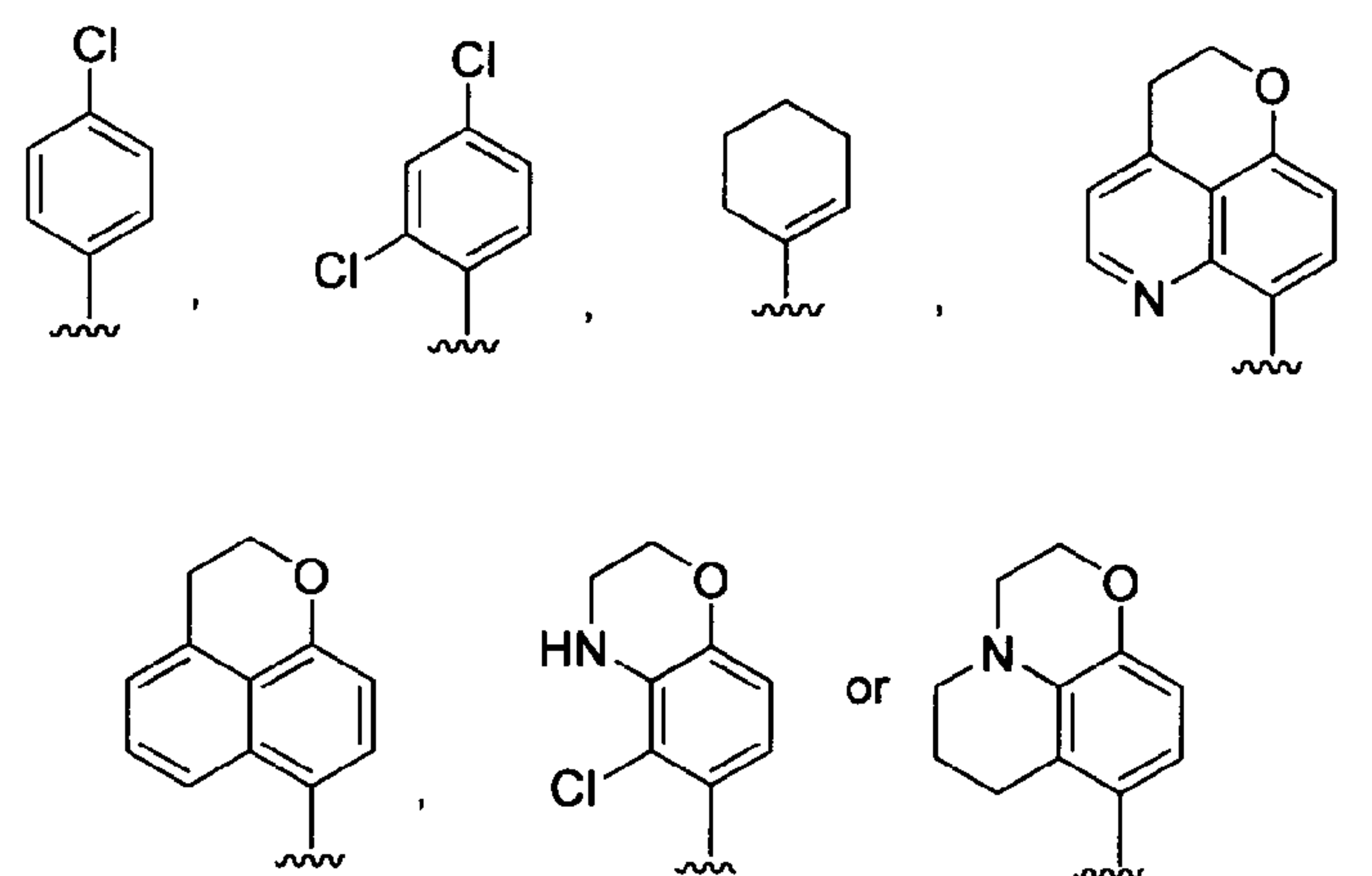
Another specific value for R^4 is:



Another specific value for R^4 is:

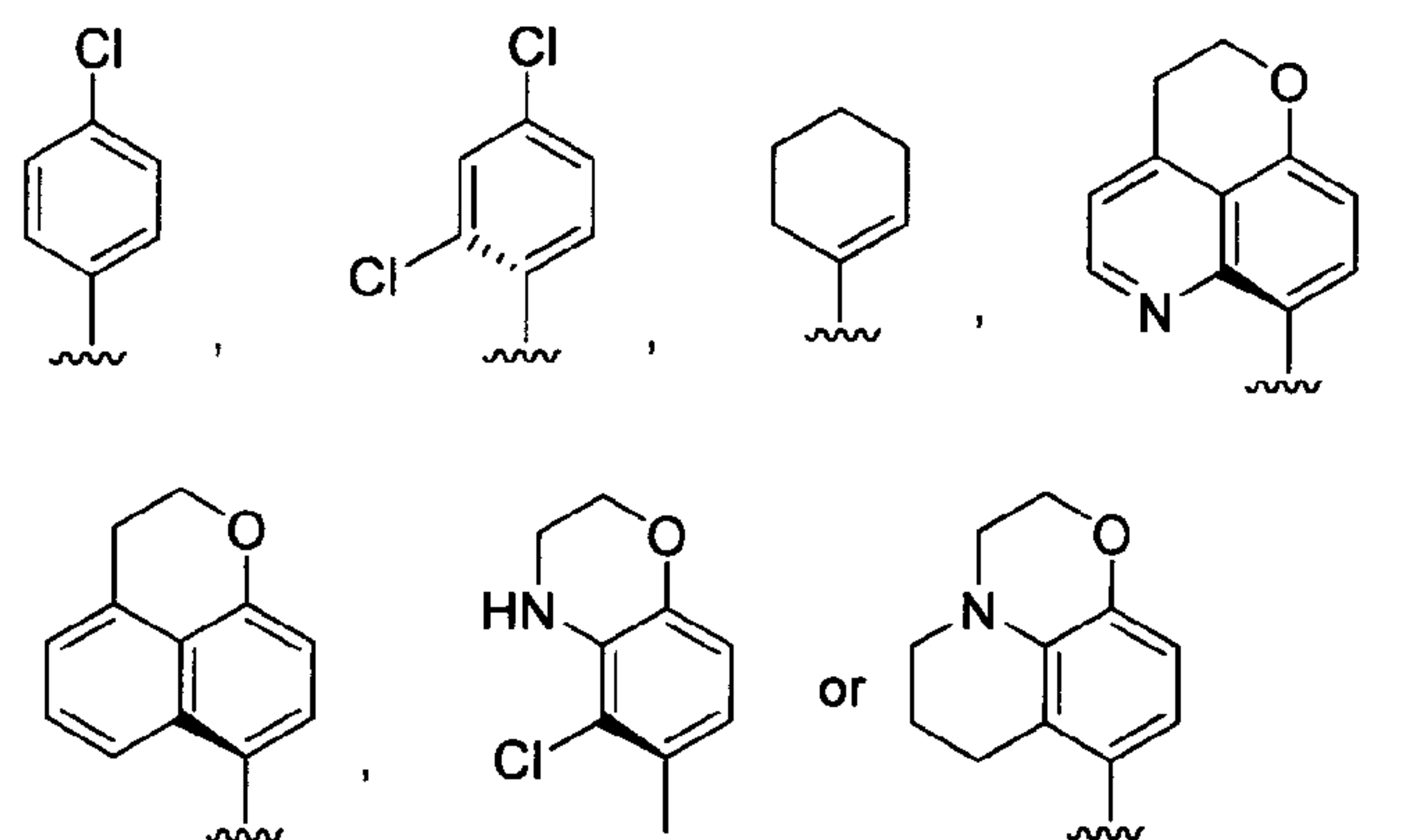


Another specific value for R^4 is:

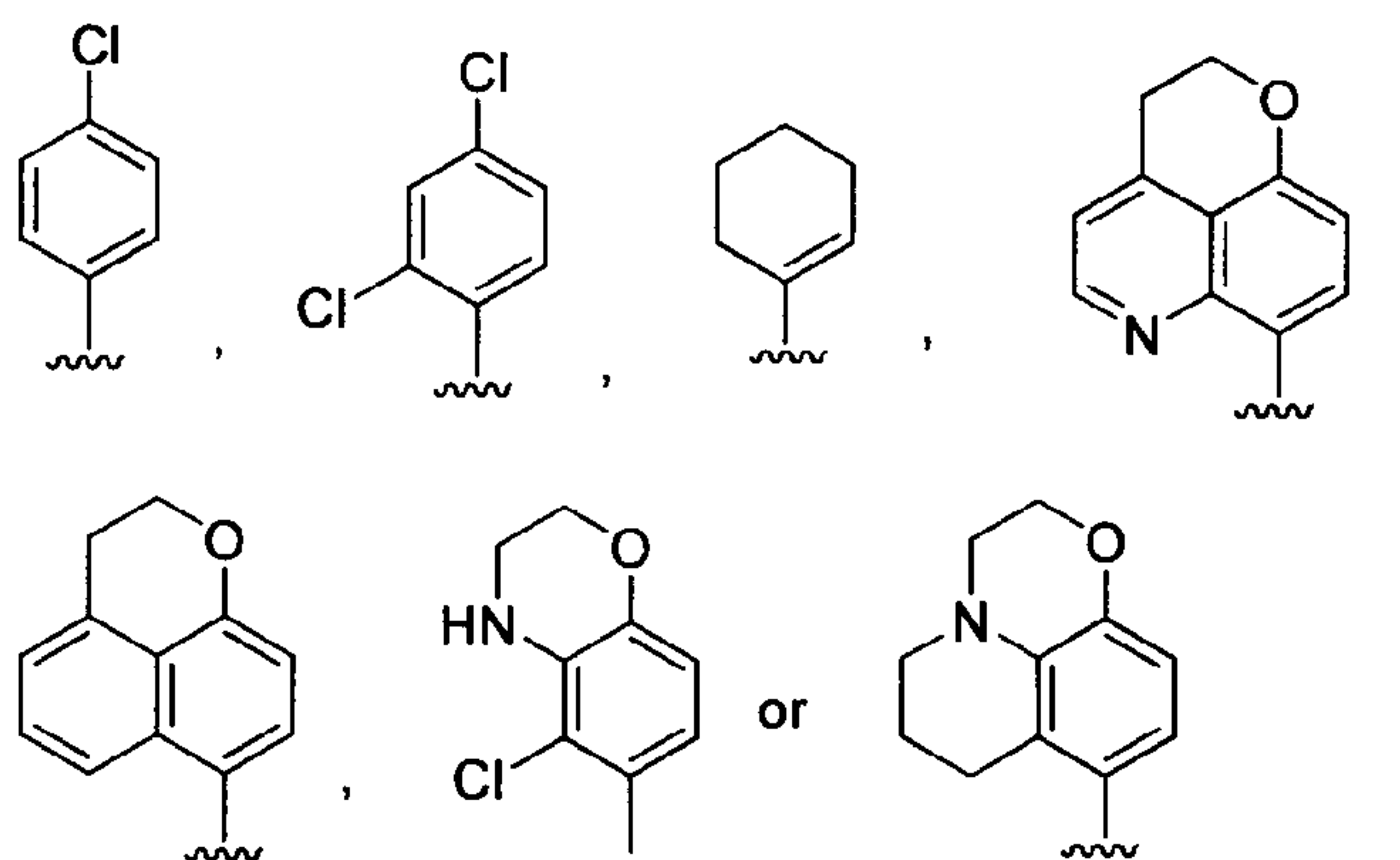


5

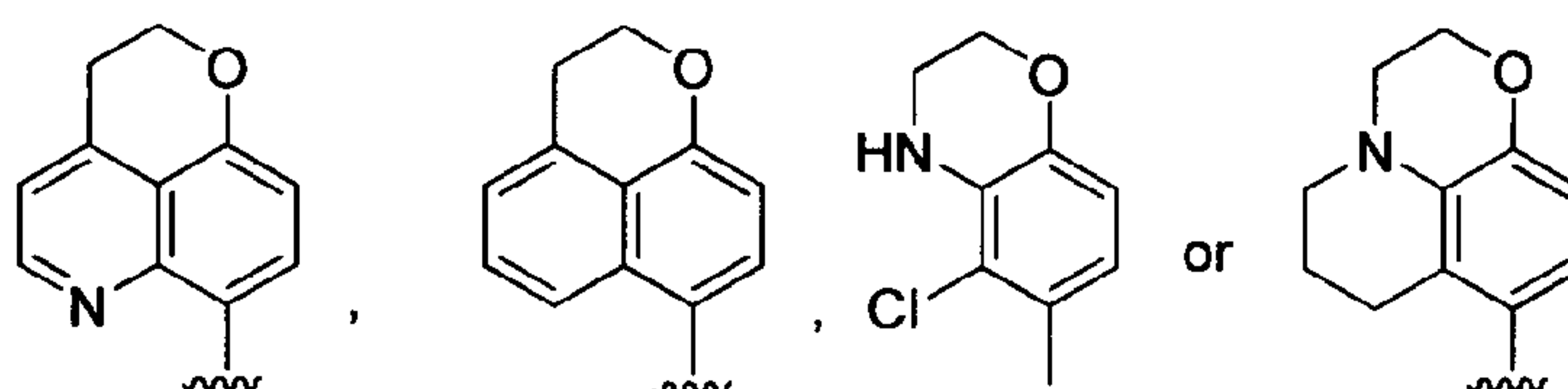
Another specific value for R^4 is:



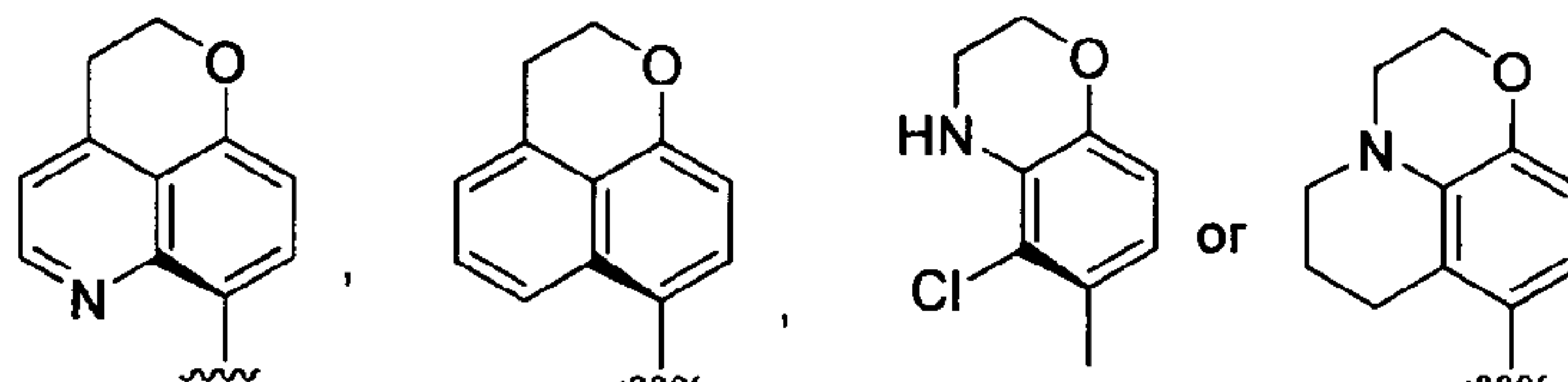
Another specific value for R^4 is:



Another specific value for R^4 is:

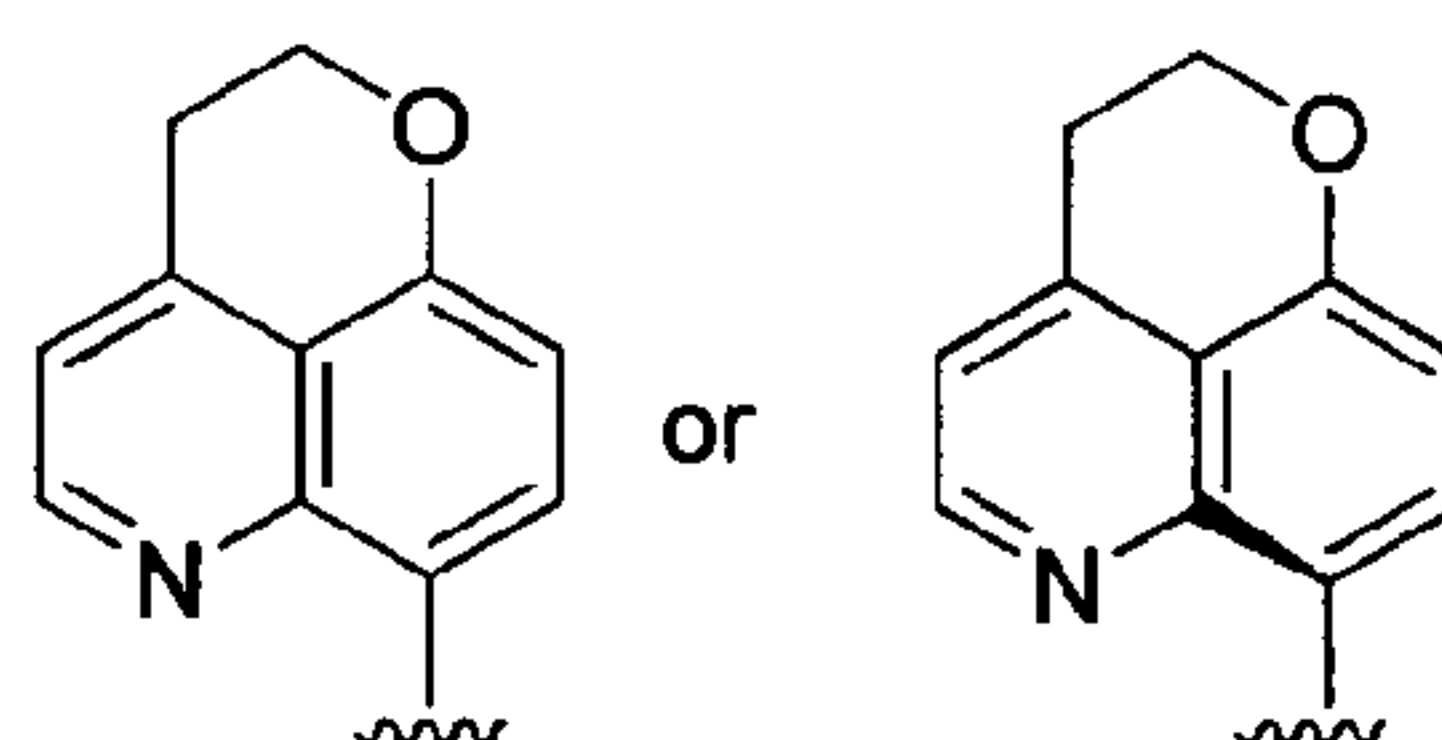


Another specific value for R^4 is:

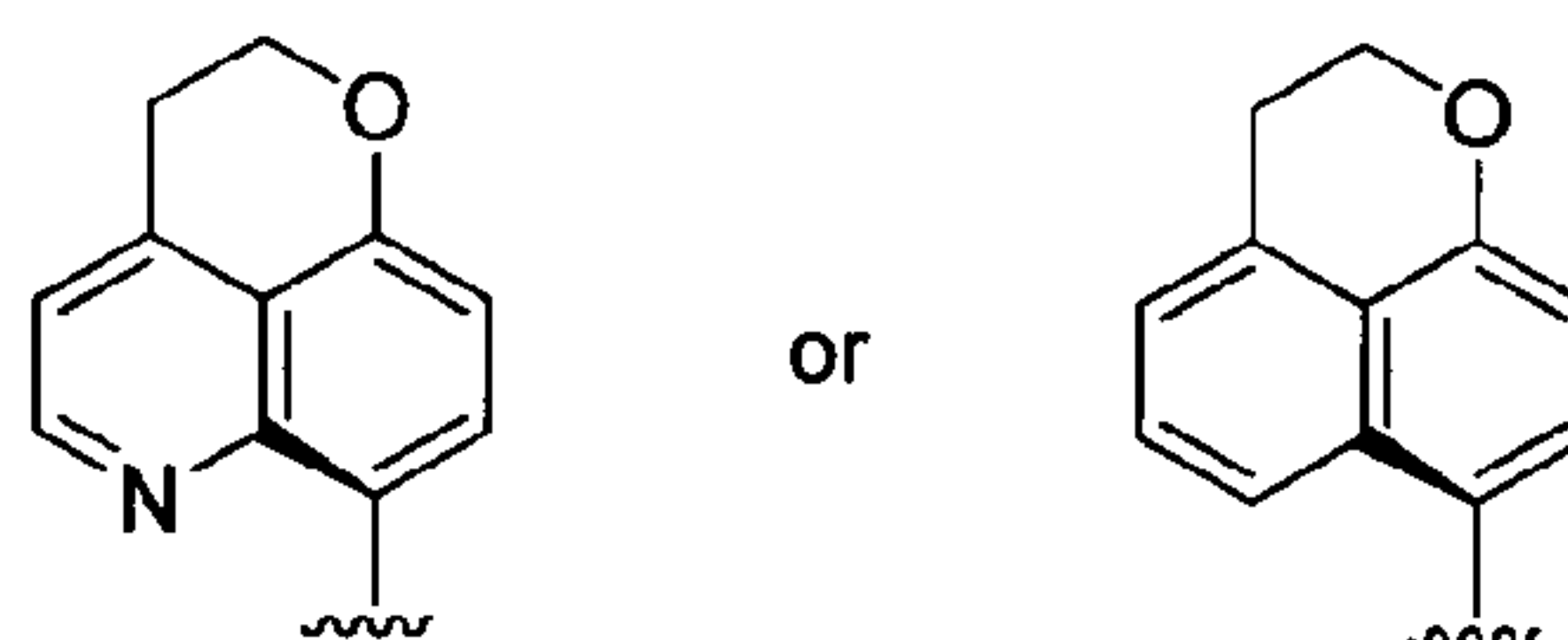


5

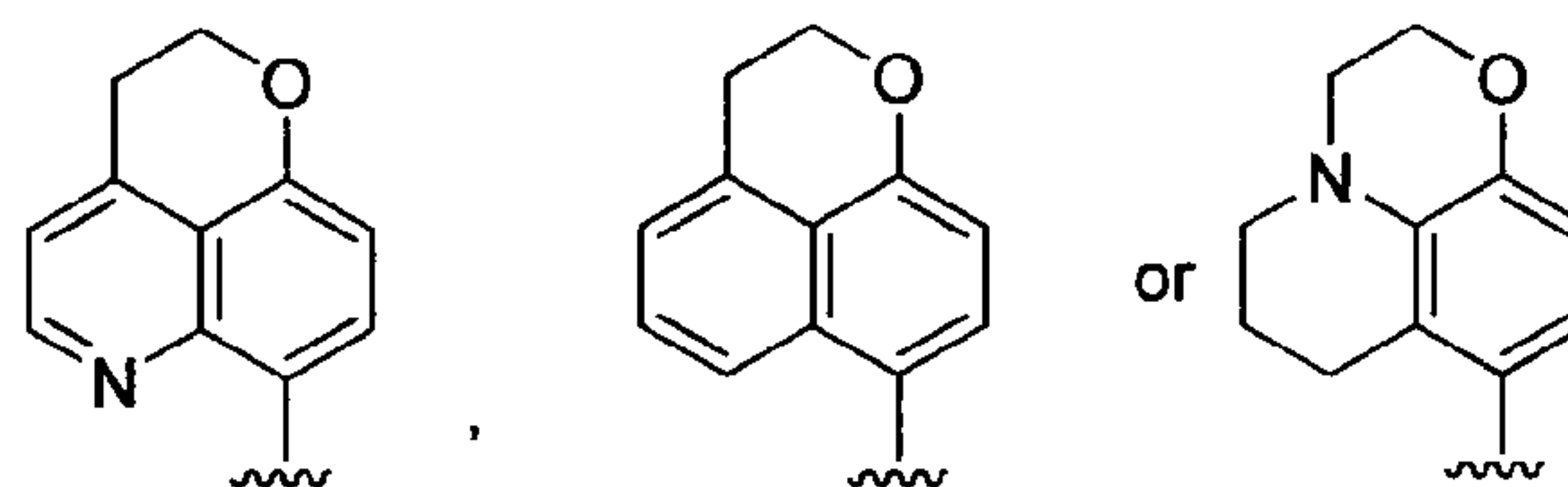
Another specific value for R^4 is:



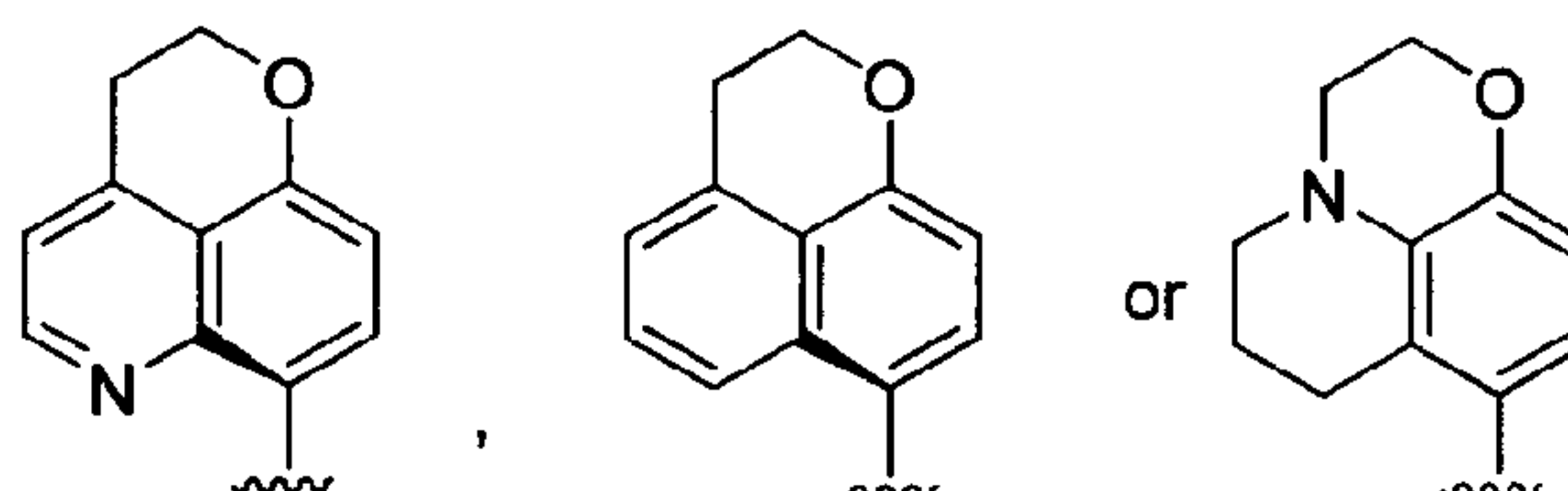
Another specific value for R^4 is:



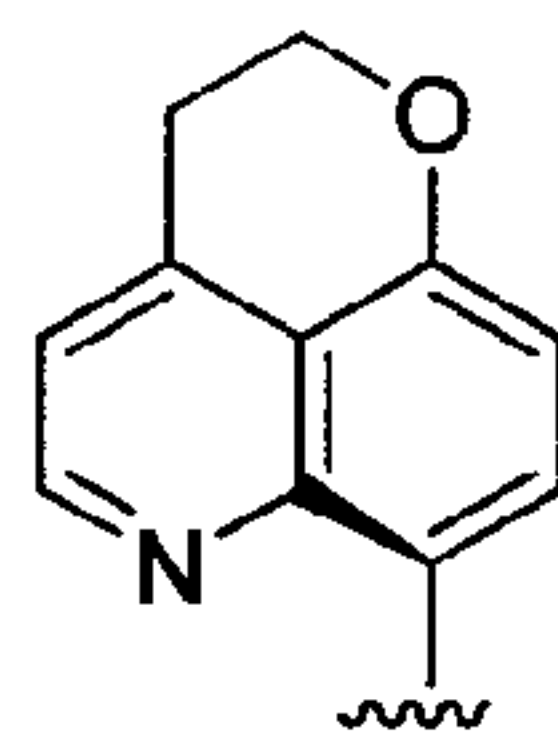
Another specific value for R^4 is:



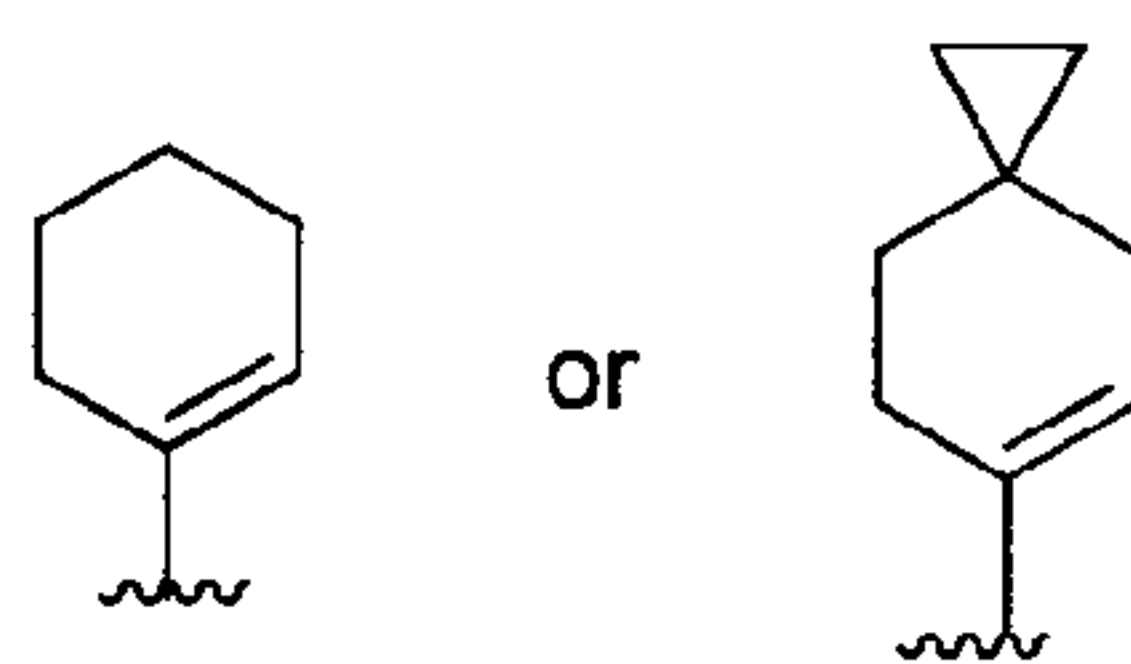
Another specific value for R^4 is:



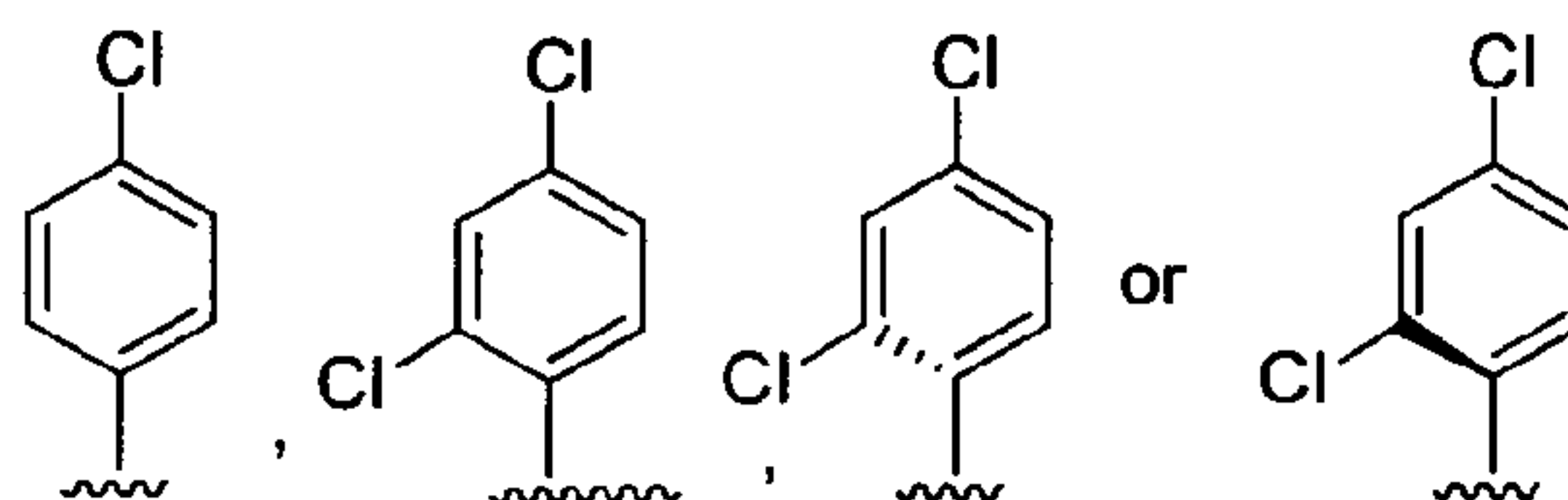
5 Another specific value for R^4 is:



Another specific value for R^4 is:



Another specific value for R^4 is:



10

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein the stereochemistry of the R^4 substituent relative to the carbon of formula I to which it is attached is the (R) stereochemistry.

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein the stereochemistry of the R^4 substituent relative to the carbon of formula I to which it is attached is the (S) stereochemistry.

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R^7 is
5 selected from:

- a) H, halo, (C_1-C_6) alkyl and (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl;
- b) (C_2-C_6) alkenyl, (C_2-C_6) alkynyl, (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl, nitro, cyano, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, wherein any aryl, heterocycle or heteroaryl is optionally substituted with one or more Z^{10} groups;
- 10 c) $-C(=O)-R^{11}$, $-C(=O)-O-R^{11}$, $-O-R^{11}$, $-S-R^{11}$, $-S(O)-R^{11}$, $-SO_2-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-C(=O)-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-C(=O)-O-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S(O)-R^{11}$ and $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-SO_2-R^{11}$, wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from H, (C_1-C_6) alkyl, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl, (C_2-C_6) alkynyl, (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl, (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl,
- 15 wherein any aryl, heterocycle or heteroaryl is optionally substituted with one or more Z^{10} groups;
- d) $-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-C(=O)-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-O-C(=O)-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-SO_2-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-C(=O)-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-C(=O)-N(R^9)R^{10}$ and $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-SO_2-N(R^9)R^{10}$, wherein each R^9 is independently selected
- 20 from H, (C_1-C_6) alkyl and (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl, and each R^{10} is independently selected from R^{11} , $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-R^{11}$, $-SO_2-R^{11}$, $-C(=O)-R^{11}$, $-C(=O)OR^{11}$ and $-C(=O)N(R^9)R^{11}$, wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from H, (C_1-C_6) alkyl, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl, (C_2-C_6) alkynyl, (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl, (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, wherein any aryl, heterocycle or heteroaryl is optionally substituted with one or more
- 25 Z^{10} groups;
- e) $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-SO_2-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-C(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-O-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-S-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-S(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-SO_2-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{14}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-C(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-C(O)-O(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-SO_2-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $-(C_2-$
- 30

C₆)alkynyl-(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -NR_aSO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -NR_aSO₂Oaryl, -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl-(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl-aryl, -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl-heteroaryl, -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl-heterocycle, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-aryl, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-heteroaryl, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-heterocycle, -(C₃-C₇)carbocycle-Z¹ and -halo(C₁-C₆)alkyl-Z³, wherein any (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, either alone or as part of a group, is optionally substituted with one or more Z¹ groups;

f) -X(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -X(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -X(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -X(C₂-C₆)alkynyl and -X(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, wherein any -X(C₁-C₆)alkyl and -X(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl is substituted with one or more Z³ groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z¹ groups, and wherein any -X(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -X(C₂-C₆)alkynyl and -X(C₃-C₇)carbocycle is substituted with one or more Z⁴ groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z¹ groups;

g) (C₁-C₆)alkyl, wherein (C₁-C₆)alkyl is substituted with one or more Z² groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z¹ groups;

h) aryl, heteroaryl, heterocycle, -Xaryl, -Xheteroaryl and -Xheterocycle, wherein any aryl, heteroaryl and heterocycle, either alone or as part of a group, is substituted with one or more Z⁵ groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z¹ groups;

i) (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl and (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, wherein (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl and (C₂-C₆)alkynyl are each substituted with one or more Z⁶ groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z¹ groups; and

j) -NR_eR_f, -C(O)NR_eR_f, -OC(O)NR_eR_f, -SO₂NR_eR_f, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-NR_eR_f, -(C₁-C₆)alkylC(O)-NR_eR_f, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(O)-NR_eR_f and -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-SO₂NR_eR_f, wherein each (C₁-C₆)alkyl is optionally substituted with one or more Z¹ groups.

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R⁷ is selected from:

a) H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl and (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl;

- b) (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, wherein any aryl, heterocycle or heteroaryl is optionally substituted with one or more Z¹⁰ groups;
- c) -C(=O)-O-R¹¹, -O-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-R¹¹ and -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-R¹¹,
 5 wherein each R¹¹ is independently selected from H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, wherein any aryl, heterocycle or heteroaryl is optionally substituted with one or more Z¹⁰ groups;
- d) -N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -C(=O)-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, wherein each R⁹
 10 is independently selected from H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl and (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, and each R¹⁰ is independently selected from R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-R¹¹, -SO₂-R¹¹, -C(=O)-R¹¹, -C(=O)OR¹¹ and -C(=O)N(R⁹)R¹¹, wherein each R¹¹ is independently selected from H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, wherein any aryl, heterocycle or heteroaryl is optionally substituted
 15 with one or more Z¹⁰ groups;
- e) -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-(C₃-C₇)carbocycle and -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-aryl, wherein -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-(C₃-C₇)carbocycle and -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-aryl are each optionally substituted with one or more Z¹ groups;
- f) -X(C₁-C₆)alkyl, wherein -X(C₁-C₆)alkyl is substituted with one or more
 20 Z³ groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z¹ groups, and wherein X is O;
- g) (C₁-C₆)alkyl, wherein (C₁-C₆)alkyl is substituted with one or more Z² groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z¹ groups;
- h) aryl, heteroaryl and heterocycle, wherein aryl, heteroaryl and heterocycle are each substituted with one or more Z⁵ groups and optionally substituted
 25 with one or more Z¹ groups;
- i) (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl and (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, wherein (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl and (C₂-C₆)alkynyl are each substituted with one or more Z⁶ groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z¹ groups; and
- 30 j) -NR_eR_f, -C(O)NR_eR_f and -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-NR_eR_f, wherein each (C₁-C₆)alkyl is optionally substituted with one or more Z¹ groups.

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R^7 is selected from:

- a) H, (C_1-C_6) alkyl and (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl;
- b) (C_2-C_6) alkenyl, (C_2-C_6) alkynyl, (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, wherein any aryl, heterocycle or heteroaryl is optionally substituted with one or more Z^{10} groups;
- c) $-C(=O)-R^{11}$, $-C(=O)-O-R^{11}$, $-O-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- R^{11} and $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- $O-R^{11}$, wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from H, (C_1-C_6) alkyl, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl, (C_2-C_6) alkynyl, (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl, (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, wherein any aryl, heterocycle or heteroaryl is optionally substituted with one or more Z^{10} groups;
- d) $-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-C(=O)-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- $N(R^9)R^{10}$, wherein each R^9 is independently selected from H, (C_1-C_6) alkyl and (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl, and each R^{10} is independently selected from R^{11} , $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- R^{11} , $-SO_2-R^{11}$, $-C(=O)-R^{11}$, $-C(=O)OR^{11}$ and $-C(=O)N(R^9)R^{11}$, wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from H, (C_1-C_6) alkyl, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl, (C_2-C_6) alkynyl, (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl, (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, wherein any aryl, heterocycle or heteroaryl is optionally substituted with one or more Z^{10} groups;
- e) $-(C_2-C_6)$ alkynyl- (C_3-C_7) carbocycle and $-(C_2-C_6)$ alkynyl-aryl, wherein $-(C_2-C_6)$ alkynyl- (C_3-C_7) carbocycle and $-(C_2-C_6)$ alkynyl-aryl are each optionally substituted with one or more Z^1 groups;
- f) $-X(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl, wherein $-X(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl is substituted with one or more Z^3 groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z^1 groups, and wherein X is O;
- g) (C_1-C_6) alkyl, wherein (C_1-C_6) alkyl is substituted with one or more Z^2 groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z^1 groups;
- h) aryl, heteroaryl and heterocycle, wherein aryl, heteroaryl and heterocycle are each substituted with one or more Z^5 groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z^1 groups;
- i) (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl, (C_3-C_7) carbocycle, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl and (C_2-C_6) alkynyl, wherein (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl, (C_3-C_7) carbocycle, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl and (C_2-C_6) alkynyl are each substituted with one or more Z^6 groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z^1 groups; and

j) $-NR_eR_f$, $-C(O)NR_eR_f$ and $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_eR_f$, wherein each $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$ is optionally substituted with one or more Z^1 groups.

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R^7 is selected from:

- 5 a) H, $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$ and $(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$;
- b) $(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$, $(C_3-C_7)cycloalkyl$, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, wherein any aryl, heterocycle or heteroaryl is optionally substituted with one or more Z^{10} groups;
- c) $-C(=O)-R^{11}$, $-C(=O)-O-R^{11}$, $-O-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-R^{11}$ and $-(C_1-$
10 $C_6)alkyl-O-R^{11}$, wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from H, $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$, $(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $(C_3-C_7)cycloalkyl$, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, wherein any aryl, heterocycle or heteroaryl is optionally substituted with one or more Z^{10} groups;
- d) $-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-C(=O)-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-N(R^9)R^{10}$, wherein each R^9
15 is independently selected from H, $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$ and $(C_3-C_7)cycloalkyl$, and each R^{10} is independently selected from R^{11} , $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-R^{11}$, $-SO_2-R^{11}$, $-C(=O)-R^{11}$, $-C(=O)OR^{11}$ and $-C(=O)N(R^9)R^{11}$, wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from H, $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$, $(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $(C_3-C_7)cycloalkyl$, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, wherein any aryl, heterocycle or heteroaryl is optionally substituted
20 with one or more Z^{10} groups;
- e) $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$ and $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-aryl$, wherein $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$ and $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-aryl$ are each optionally substituted with one or more Z^1 groups;
- f) $-X(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, wherein $-X(C_1-C_6)alkyl$ is substituted with one or more
25 Z^3 groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z^1 groups, and wherein X is O;
and
- g) $-NR_eR_f$.

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R^7 is selected from:

- 30 a) $(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$; and
- b) $(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, wherein $(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$ is substituted with one or more Z^6 groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z^1 groups.

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R^7 is selected from:

- a) (C_1-C_6) alkyl and (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl;
- b) (C_2-C_6) alkynyl, (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl and aryl, wherein any aryl is
5 optionally substituted with one or more Z^{10} groups;
- c) $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- R^{11} , wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from H, (C_1-C_6) alkyl, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl, (C_2-C_6) alkynyl, (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl, (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl and aryl, wherein aryl is optionally substituted with one or more Z^{10} groups;
- d) $-(C_2-C_6)$ alkynyl- (C_3-C_7) carbocycle and $-(C_2-C_6)$ alkynyl-aryl, wherein
10 $-(C_2-C_6)$ alkynyl- (C_3-C_7) carbocycle and $-(C_2-C_6)$ alkynyl-aryl are each optionally substituted with one or more Z^1 groups;
- e) (C_1-C_6) alkyl, wherein (C_1-C_6) alkyl is substituted with one or more Z^2 groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z^1 groups;
- f) aryl, wherein aryl is substituted with one or more Z^5 groups and
15 optionally substituted with one or more Z^1 groups; and
- g) (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl, (C_3-C_7) carbocycle and (C_2-C_6) alkynyl, wherein (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl, (C_3-C_7) carbocycle and (C_2-C_6) alkynyl are each substituted with one or more Z^6 groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z^1 groups.

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R^7 is
20 selected from:

- a) (C_1-C_6) alkyl and (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl;
- b) (C_2-C_6) alkynyl and aryl, wherein any aryl is optionally substituted with
one or more Z^{10} groups;
- c) $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- R^{11} , wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from
25 (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl and aryl, wherein any aryl is optionally substituted with one or more Z^{10} groups;
- d) $-(C_2-C_6)$ alkynyl- (C_3-C_7) carbocycle and $-(C_2-C_6)$ alkynyl-aryl, wherein
 $-(C_2-C_6)$ alkynyl- (C_3-C_7) carbocycle and $-(C_2-C_6)$ alkynyl-aryl are each optionally substituted with one or more Z^1 groups;
- 30 e) (C_1-C_6) alkyl, wherein (C_1-C_6) alkyl is substituted with one or more Z^2 groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z^1 groups;

f) aryl, wherein aryl is substituted with one or more Z^5 groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z^1 groups; and

g) (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl and (C_2-C_6) alkynyl, wherein (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl and (C_2-C_6) alkynyl are each substituted with one or more Z^6 groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z^1 groups.

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R^7 is selected from:

- a) (C_1-C_6) alkyl and (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl;
- b) (C_2-C_6) alkynyl and aryl, wherein any aryl is optionally substituted with one or more Z^{10} groups;
- c) (C_1-C_6) alkyl, wherein (C_1-C_6) alkyl is substituted with one or more Z^2 groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z^1 groups; and
- d) aryl, wherein aryl is substituted with one or more Z^5 groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z^1 groups.

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R^7 is selected from:

- a) (C_1-C_6) alkyl and (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl; and
- b) (C_2-C_6) alkynyl and aryl, wherein any aryl is optionally substituted with one or more (C_1-C_6) alkyl groups.

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R^7 is selected from (C_1-C_6) alkyl, (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl and (C_2-C_6) alkynyl.

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R^7 is selected from:

- a) $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- SO_2 -(C_1-C_6)alkyl- Z^{13} , $-C(O)$ -(C_1-C_6)alkyl- Z^{13} , $-O$ -(C_1-C_6)alkyl- Z^{13} , $-S$ -(C_1-C_6)alkyl- Z^{13} , $-S(O)$ -(C_1-C_6)alkyl- Z^{13} , $-SO_2$ -(C_1-C_6)alkyl- Z^{13} , $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- Z^{14} , $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- $C(O)$ -(C_1-C_6)alkyl- Z^{13} , $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- $C(O)$ - O -(C_1-C_6)alkyl- Z^{13} , $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- O -(C_1-C_6)alkyl- Z^{13} , $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- S -(C_1-C_6)alkyl- Z^{13} , $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- O -(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle, $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- S -(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle, $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- $S(O)$ -(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle, $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- SO_2 -(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle, $-(C_2-C_6)$ alkenyl-(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl, $-(C_2-C_6)$ alkynyl-(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl, $-(C_3-C_7)$ halocarbocycle, $-NR_aSO_2NR_cR_d$, $-NR_aSO_2O$ -(C_3-C_7)carbocycle, $-NR_aSO_2O$ aryl, $-(C_2-C_6)$ alkenyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle, $-(C_2-C_6)$ alkenyl-

aryl, -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl-heteroaryl, -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl-heterocycle,
 -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-aryl, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-heteroaryl,
 -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-heterocycle, -(C₃-C₇)carbocycle-Z¹ and -halo(C₁-C₆)alkyl-Z³, wherein
 5 any (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl,
 aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, either alone or as part of a group, are each optionally
 substituted with one or more Z¹ groups;

b) -X(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -X(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -X(C₂-C₆)alkenyl,
 -X(C₂-C₆)alkynyl and -X(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, wherein -X(C₁-C₆)alkyl and -X(C₁-
 C₆)haloalkyl are each substituted with one or more Z³ groups and optionally substituted
 10 with one or more Z¹ groups, and wherein -X(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -X(C₂-C₆)alkynyl and
 -X(C₃-C₇)carbocycle are each substituted with one or more Z⁴ groups and optionally
 substituted with one or more Z¹ groups;

c) (C₁-C₆)alkyl, wherein (C₁-C₆)alkyl is substituted with one or more Z²
 groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z¹ groups;

15 d) aryl, heteroaryl, heterocycle, -Xaryl, -Xheteroaryl and -Xheterocycle,
 wherein any aryl, heteroaryl and heterocycle, either alone or as part of a group, is
 substituted with one or more Z⁵ groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z¹
 groups;

e) (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl and (C₂-C₆)alkynyl,
 20 wherein (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl and (C₂-C₆)alkynyl are
 each substituted with one or more Z⁶ groups and optionally substituted with one or
 more Z¹ groups; and

f) -NR_eR_f, -C(O)NR_eR_f, -OC(O)NR_eR_f, -SO₂NR_eR_f, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-NR_eR_f,
 -(C₁-C₆)alkylC(O)-NR_eR_f, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(O)-NR_eR_f and -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-SO₂NR_eR_f,
 25 wherein each (C₁-C₆)alkyl is optionally substituted with one or more Z¹ groups.

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R⁷ is
 selected from:

a) -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-(C₃-C₇)carbocycle and -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-aryl, wherein
 -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-(C₃-C₇)carbocycle and -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-aryl are each optionally
 30 substituted with one or more Z¹ groups;

b) -X(C₁-C₆)alkyl, wherein -X(C₁-C₆)alkyl is substituted with one or more
 Z³ groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z¹ groups, and wherein X is O;

c) (C₁-C₆)alkyl, wherein (C₁-C₆)alkyl is substituted with one or more Z² groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z¹ groups;

d) aryl, heteroaryl and heterocycle, wherein aryl, heteroaryl and heterocycle are each substituted with one or more Z⁵ groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z¹ groups;

e) (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl and (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, wherein (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl and (C₂-C₆)alkynyl are each substituted with one or more Z⁶ groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z¹ groups; and

f) -NR_eR_f, -C(O)NR_eR_f and -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-NR_eR_f, wherein (C₁-C₆)alkyl is optionally substituted with one or more Z¹ groups.

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R⁷ is (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, wherein (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl is substituted with one or more Z⁶ groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z¹ groups.

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R⁷ is selected from:

a) -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-(C₃-C₇)carbocycle and-(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-aryl, wherein -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-(C₃-C₇)carbocycle and-(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-aryl are each optionally substituted with one or more Z¹ groups;

b) (C₁-C₆)alkyl, wherein (C₁-C₆)alkyl is substituted with one or more Z² groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z¹ groups;

c) aryl, wherein aryl is substituted with one or more Z⁵ groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z¹ groups; and

d) (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle and (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, wherein (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle and (C₂-C₆)alkynyl are each substituted with one or more Z⁶ groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z¹ groups.

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R⁷ is selected from:

a) -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-(C₃-C₇)carbocycle and-(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-aryl, wherein -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-(C₃-C₇)carbocycle and-(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-aryl are each optionally substituted with one or more Z¹ groups;

b) (C₁-C₆)alkyl, wherein (C₁-C₆)alkyl is substituted with one or more Z² groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z¹ groups;

c) aryl, wherein aryl is substituted with one or more Z⁵ groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z¹ groups; and

5 d) (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl and (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, wherein (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl and (C₂-C₆)alkynyl are each substituted with one or more Z⁶ groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z¹ groups.

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R⁷ is selected from:

10 a) (C₁-C₆)alkyl, wherein (C₁-C₆)alkyl is substituted with one or more Z² groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z¹ groups; and

b) aryl, wherein aryl is substituted with one or more Z⁵ groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z¹ groups.

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R^{7a} is selected from:

15 a) H, halo, (C₁-C₆)alkyl and (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl;

b) (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, nitro, cyano, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl;

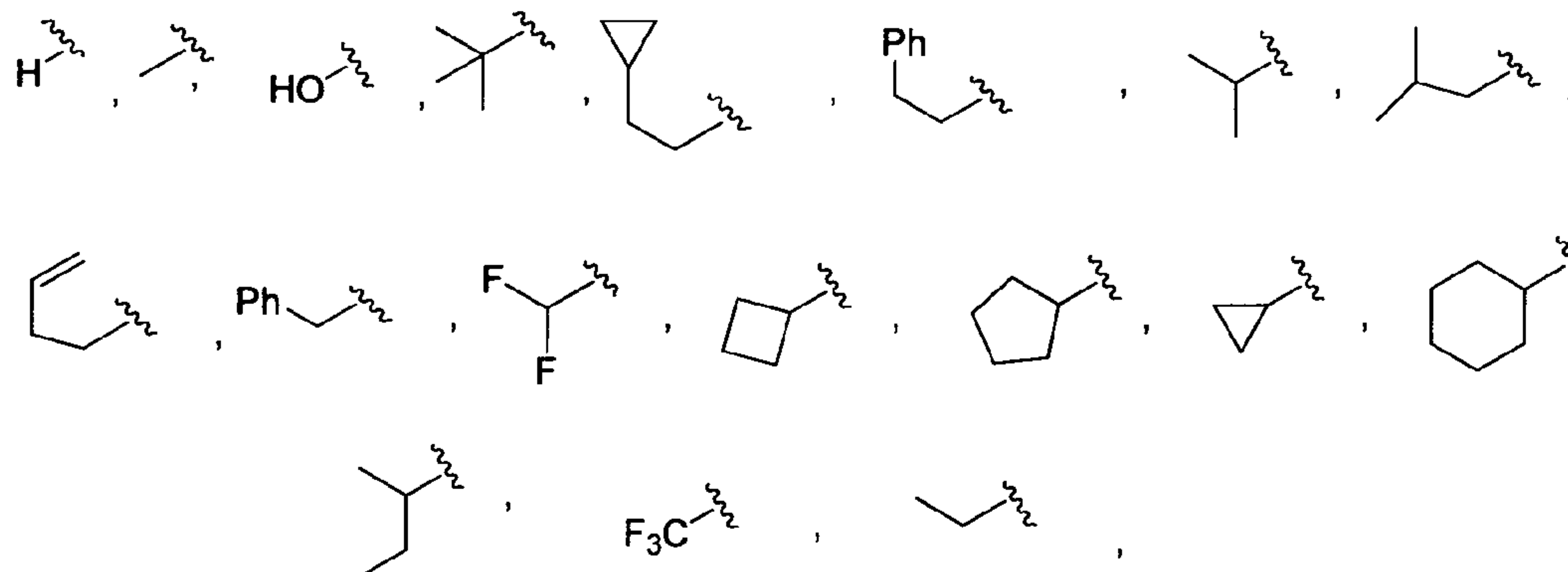
20 c) -C(=O)-R¹¹, -C(=O)-O-R¹¹, -O-R¹¹, -S-R¹¹, -S(O)-R¹¹, -SO₂-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-O-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-S-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-S(O)-R¹¹ and -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-SO₂-R¹¹, wherein each R¹¹ is independently selected from H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl; and

25 d) -N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -C(=O)-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -O-C(=O)-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -SO₂-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(=O)-N(R⁹)R¹⁰ and -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-SO₂-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, wherein each R⁹ is independently selected from H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl and (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, and each R¹⁰ is independently selected from R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-R¹¹, -SO₂-R¹¹, -C(=O)-R¹¹, -C(=O)OR¹¹ and -C(=O)N(R⁹)R¹¹, wherein each R¹¹ is independently selected from H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl,

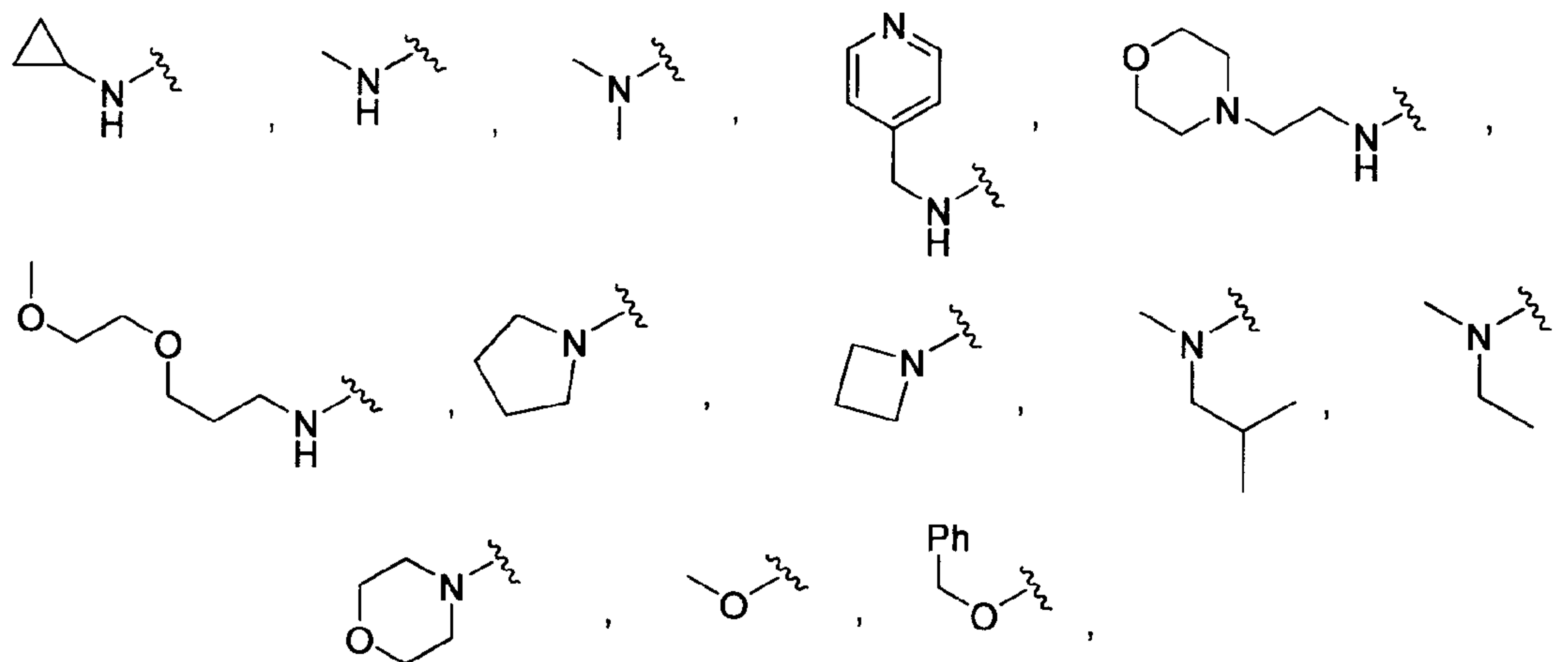
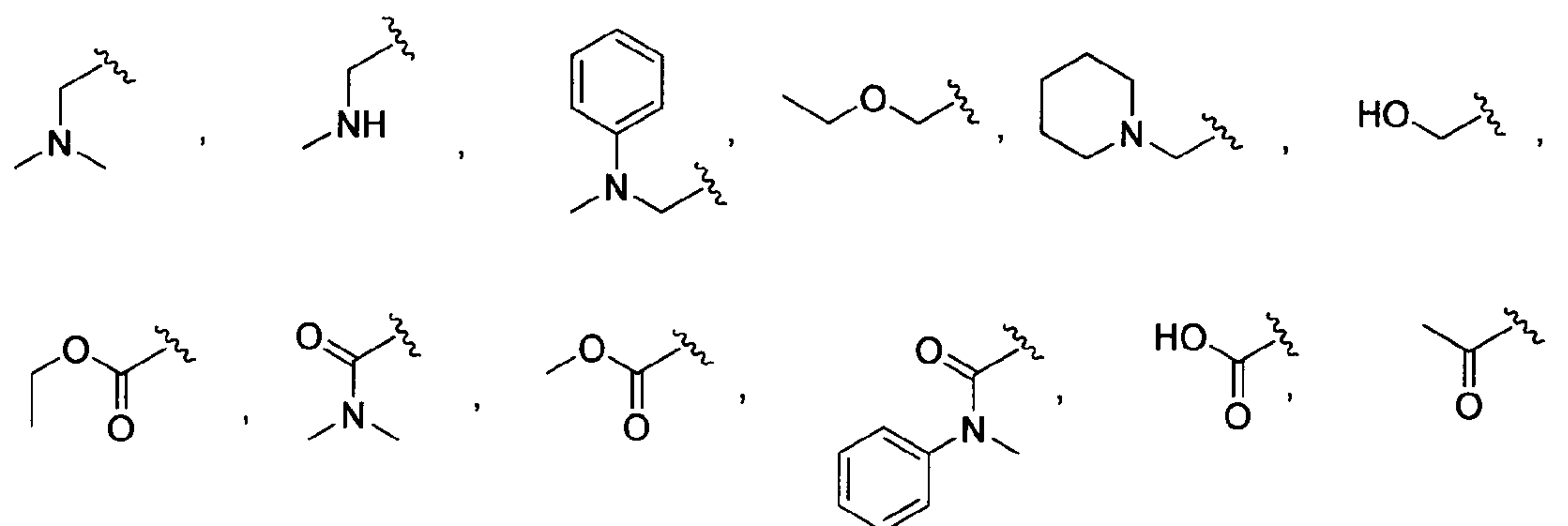
30 and wherein any aryl, heterocycle or heteroaryl of R^{7a} is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2 or 3) Z¹⁰ groups, and wherein R^{7a} is not OH.

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R^7 has any of the above recited values for R^7 provided R^7 is not OH.

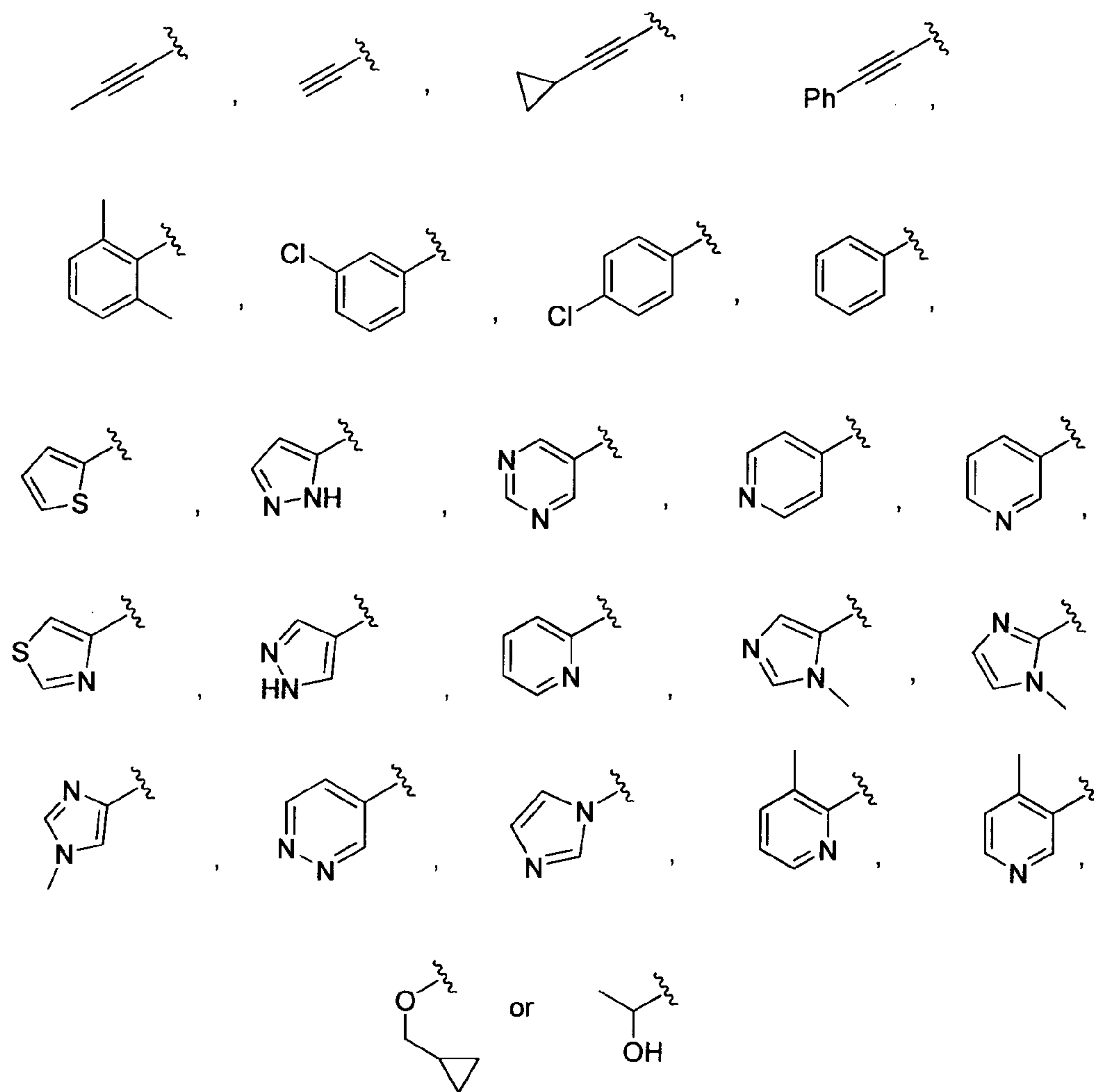
Another specific value for R^7 is:



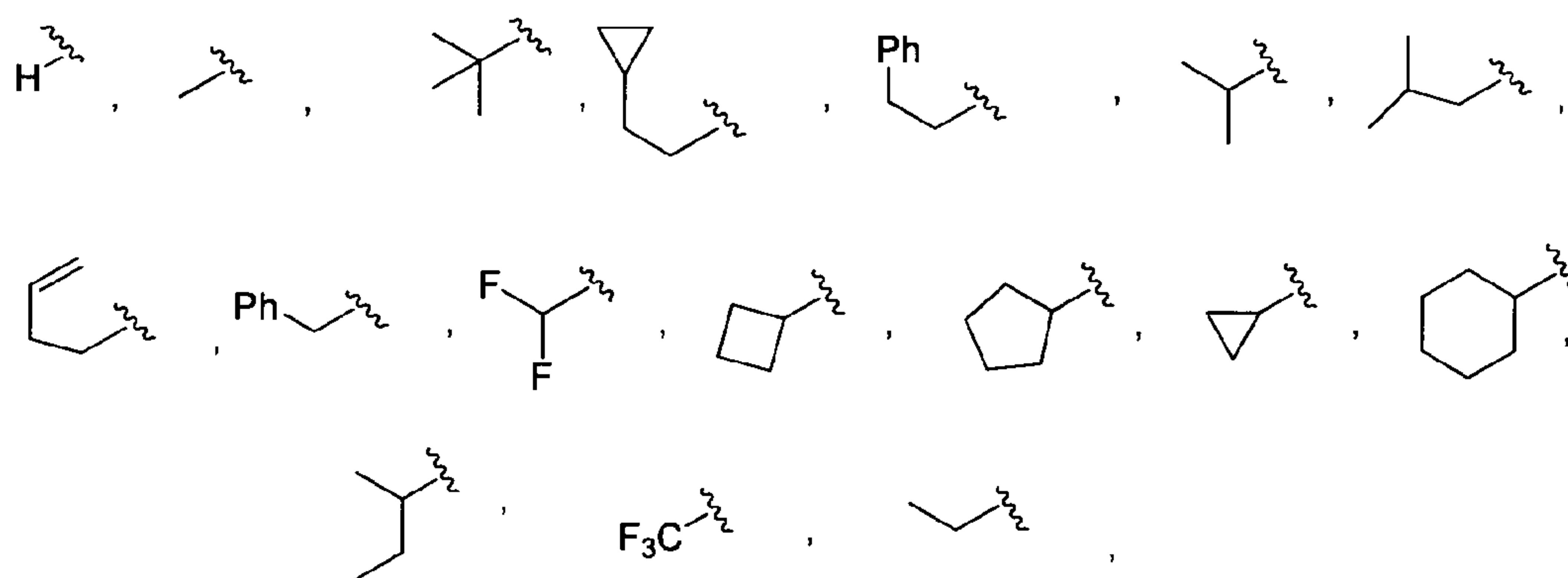
5

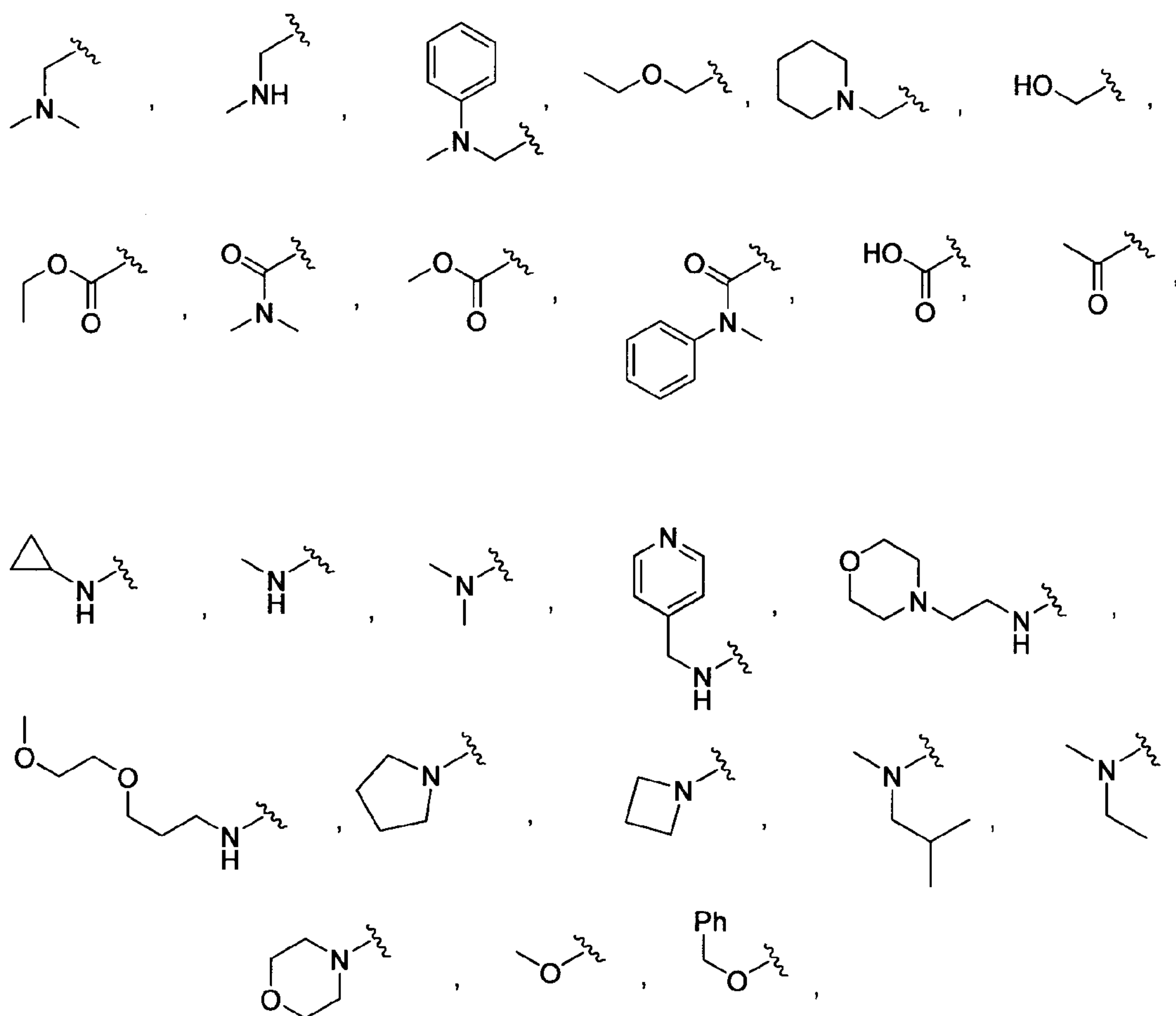


10

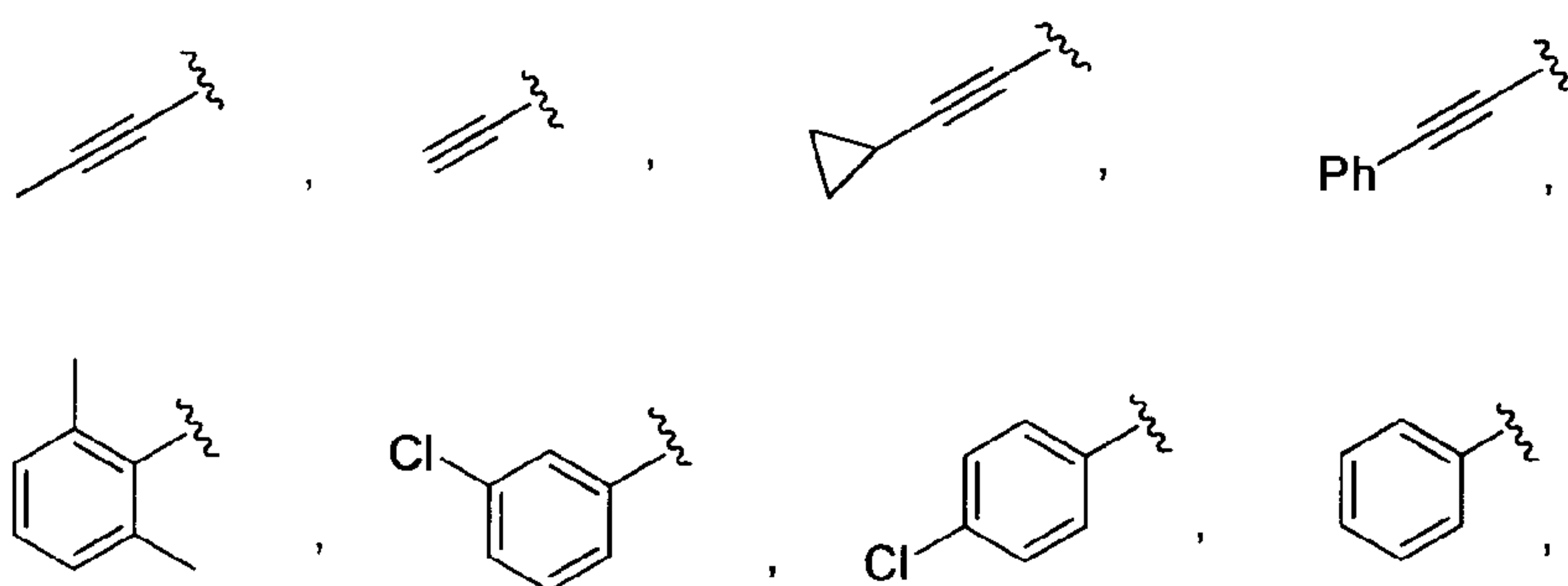


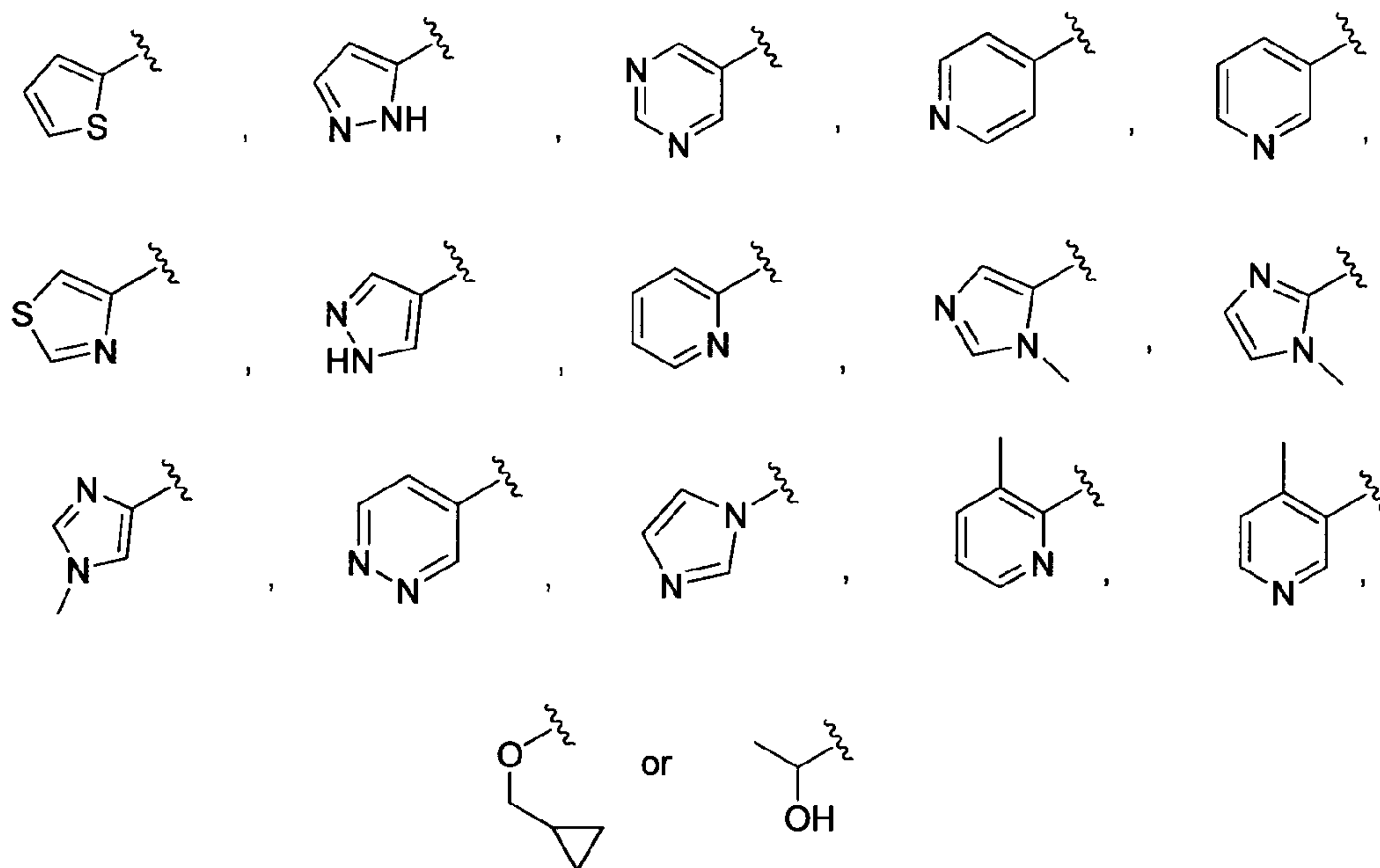
Another specific value for R^7 is:



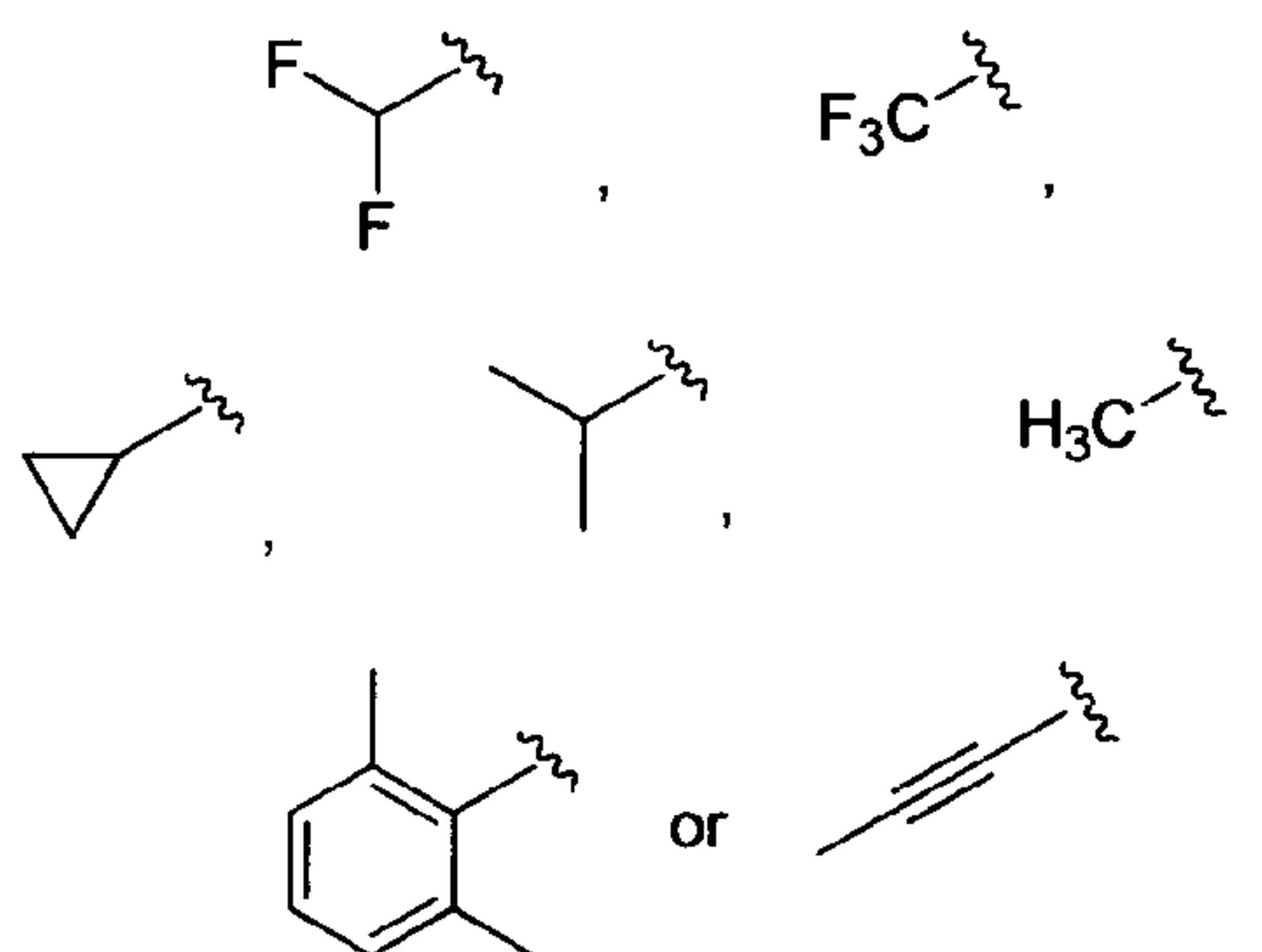


5

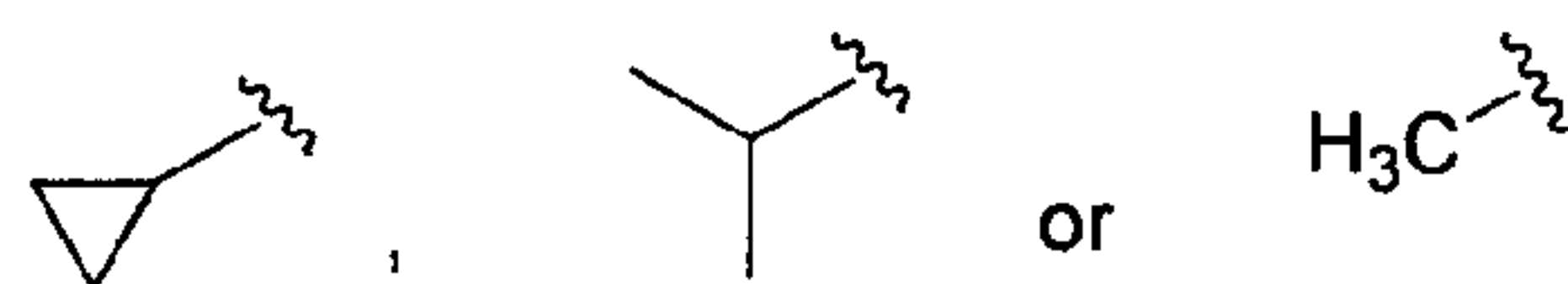




Another specific value for R^7 is:

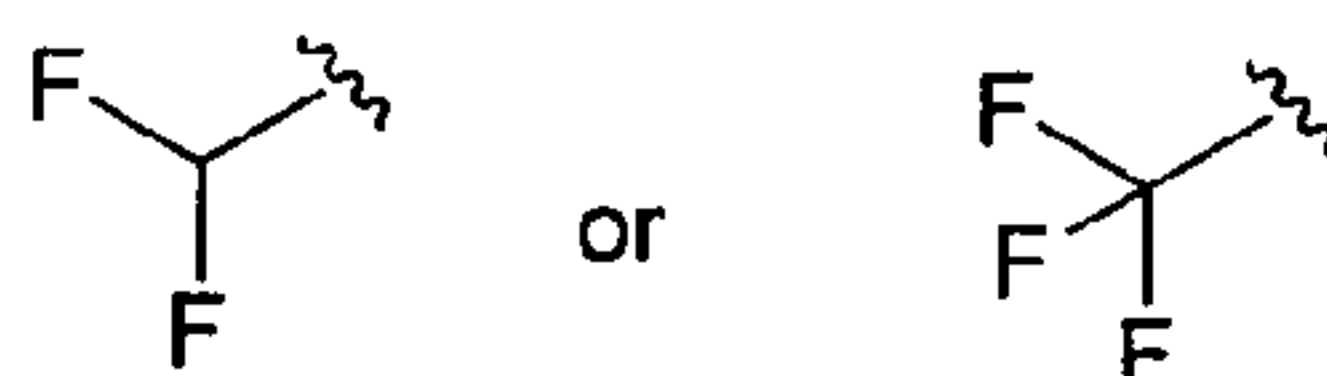


Another specific value for R^7 is:

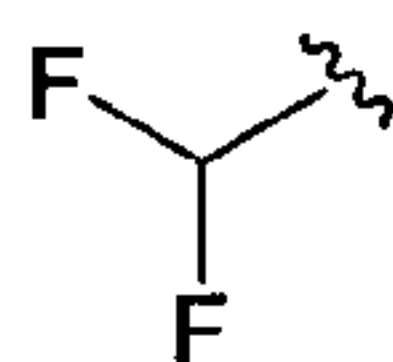


5

Another specific value for R^7 is:



Another specific value for R^7 is:



Another specific group of compounds of formula In, Io, Ip and Iq are compounds wherein W is a five-membered heteroaryl optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups.

5 Another specific group of compounds of formula In, Io, Ip and Iq are compounds wherein W is imidazolyl, triazolyl, or tetrazolyl each optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups.

A specific value for Z^1 is $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl or -aryl, wherein any (C_1-C_6) alkyl, or aryl of Z^1 is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) halogen, -OH,
 10 -OR_b, -CN, -NR_aC(O)₂R_b, -heteroaryl, -heterocycle, -Oheteroaryl, -Oheterocycle, -NHheteroaryl, -NHheterocycle, or -S(O)₂NR_cR_d.

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R^{13a} is selected from:

a) R^{11} , -C(=O)- R^{11} , -C(=O)-O- R^{11} , -O- R^{11} , -S- R^{11} , -S(O)- R^{11} , -SO₂- R^{11} , -
 15 (C_1-C_6) alkyl- R^{11} , $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl-C(=O)- R^{11} , $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl-C(=O)-O- R^{11} , $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl-O- R^{11} , $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl-S- R^{11} , $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl-S(O)- R^{11} and $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl-SO₂- R^{11} , wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from H, (C_1-C_6) alkyl, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl, (C_2-C_6) alkynyl, (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl, (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, wherein aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl are each optionally substituted with one or
 20 more (e.g. 1, 2 or 3) Z^{11} groups; and

b) -C(=O)-N(R^9) R^{10} , -SO₂-N(R^9) R^{10} , $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl-N(R^9) R^{10} , $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl-C(=O)-N(R^9) R^{10} , $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl-O-C(=O)-N(R^9) R^{10} and $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl-SO₂-N(R^9) R^{10} , wherein each R^9 is independently selected from H, (C_1-C_6) alkyl and (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl, and each R^{10} is independently selected from R^{11} , $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- R^{11} , -
 25 SO₂- R^{11} , -C(=O)- R^{11} , -C(=O)OR¹¹ and -C(=O)N(R^9) R^{11} , wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from H, (C_1-C_6) alkyl, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl, (C_2-C_6) alkynyl, (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl, (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, wherein aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl are each optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2 or 3) Z^{11} groups; provided R^{13a} is not H.

30 Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein

R^{13a} is selected from:

- a) R¹¹, -C(=O)-R¹¹, -C(=O)-O-R¹¹, -O-R¹¹, -S-R¹¹, -S(O)-R¹¹, -SO₂-R¹¹, -
(C₁-C₆)alkyl-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-O-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-
O-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-S-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-S(O)-R¹¹ and -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-SO₂-R¹¹, wherein
5 each R¹¹ is independently selected from (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl,
(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, wherein aryl,
heterocycle and heteroaryl are each optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2
or 3) Z¹¹ groups; and
- b) -C(=O)-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -SO₂-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -(C₁-
10 C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(=O)-N(R⁹)R¹⁰ and -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-SO₂-
N(R⁹)R¹⁰, wherein each R⁹ is independently selected from H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl and (C₃-
C₇)cycloalkyl, and each R¹⁰ is independently selected from R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-R¹¹, -
SO₂-R¹¹, -C(=O)-R¹¹, -C(=O)OR¹¹ and -C(=O)N(R⁹)R¹¹, wherein each R¹¹ is
independently selected from H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₁-
15 C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, wherein aryl,
heterocycle and heteroaryl are each optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2 or
3) Z¹¹ groups.

Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R¹³
is selected from:

- 20 a) R¹¹ and -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-R¹¹, wherein each R¹¹ is independently selected
from (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-
C₇)cycloalkyl, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, wherein aryl, heterocycle and
heteroaryl are each optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2 or 3) Z¹¹ groups;
- b) -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, wherein each R⁹ is independently selected from
25 H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl and (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, and each R¹⁰ is independently selected from
R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-R¹¹, -SO₂-R¹¹, -C(=O)-R¹¹, -C(=O)OR¹¹ and -C(=O)N(R⁹)R¹¹,
wherein each R¹¹ is independently selected from H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-
C₆)alkynyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl,
wherein aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl are each optionally substituted with one or
30 more (e.g. 1, 2 or 3) Z¹¹ groups;
- c) (C₁-C₆)alkyl, wherein (C₁-C₆)alkyl is substituted with one or more Z²
groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups;

d) aryl, heteroaryl, heterocycle, wherein aryl heteroaryl and heterocycle are each independently substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^5 groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;

e) (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl, (C_3-C_7) carbocycle, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl and (C_2-C_6) alkynyl, wherein (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl, (C_3-C_7) carbocycle, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl and (C_2-C_6) alkynyl are each independently substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^6 groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups; and

f) $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- NR_eR_f , wherein $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- NR_eR_f is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups.

10 Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R^{13} is selected from:

a) R^{11} and $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- R^{11} , wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from H, (C_1-C_6) alkyl, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl, (C_2-C_6) alkynyl, (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl, (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, wherein aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl are each optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2 or 3) Z^{11} groups;

b) $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- $N(R^9)R^{10}$, wherein each R^9 is independently selected from H, (C_1-C_6) alkyl and (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl, and each R^{10} is independently selected from R^{11} , $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- R^{11} , $-SO_2-R^{11}$, $-C(=O)-R^{11}$, $-C(=O)OR^{11}$ and $-C(=O)N(R^9)R^{11}$, wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from H, (C_1-C_6) alkyl, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl, (C_2-C_6) alkynyl, (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl, (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, wherein aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl are each optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2 or 3) Z^{11} groups;

c) (C_1-C_6) alkyl, wherein (C_1-C_6) alkyl is substituted with one or more Z^2 groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;

25 d) aryl, heteroaryl, heterocycle, wherein aryl heteroaryl and heterocycle are each independently substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^5 groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;

e) (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl, (C_3-C_7) carbocycle, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl and (C_2-C_6) alkynyl, wherein (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl, (C_3-C_7) carbocycle, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl and (C_2-C_6) alkynyl are each independently substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^6 groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups; and

f) $-(C_1-C_6)\text{alkyl}-NR_eR_f$, wherein each $(C_1-C_6)\text{alkyl}$ is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups.

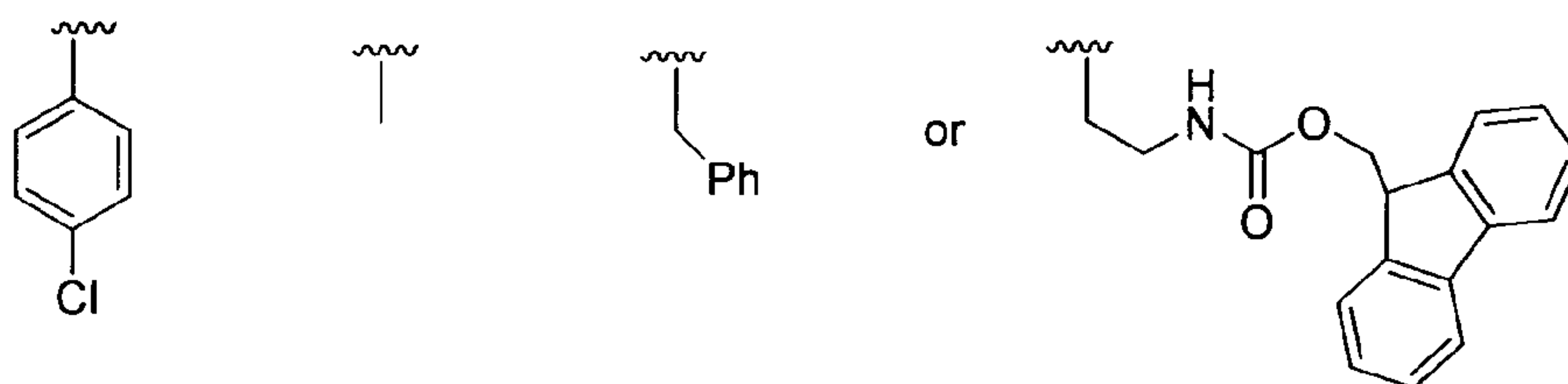
Another specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R^{13} is selected from:

5 a) R^{11} and $-(C_1-C_6)\text{alkyl}-R^{11}$, wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from $(C_1-C_6)\text{alkyl}$, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, wherein aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl are each optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2 or 3) Z^{11} groups; and

10 b) $-(C_1-C_6)\text{alkyl}-N(R^9)R^{10}$, wherein each R^9 is independently selected from H and $(C_1-C_6)\text{alkyl}$, and each R^{10} is independently selected from R^{11} , wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from H, $(C_1-C_6)\text{alkyl}$ and aryl, wherein aryl, is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2 or 3) Z^{11} groups.

Another specific value for R^{13} is H.

Another specific value for R^{13} is:



15

A specific group of compounds of formula I are compounds wherein R_g is independently selected from $-OR_a$, $(C_1-C_6)\text{alkyl}$, $(C_3-C_7)\text{carbocycle}$ $(C_1-C_6)\text{haloalkyl}$, $(C_2-C_6)\text{alkenyl}$, $(C_2-C_6)\text{alkynyl}$, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, wherein any $(C_1-C_6)\text{alkyl}$, $(C_3-C_7)\text{carbocycle}$ $-(C_1-C_6)\text{haloalkyl}$, $(C_2-C_6)\text{alkenyl}$, $(C_2-C_6)\text{alkynyl}$,
 20 aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl of R_g is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups.

In one embodiment, the invention provides a compound of the invention which is a compound of formula I:

wherein:

25 G^1 is N; G^2 is CR^8 ; and the dashed bond is a double bond; or
 G^1 is CR^5 ; G^2 is N; and the dashed bond is a double bond; or
 G^1 is CR^5 ; G^2 is NR^{13} ; the dashed bond is a single bond; and R^7 is an oxo ($=O$) group;

- R^2 is R^{2a} or R^{2b} ;
 R^3 is R^{3a} or R^{3b} ;
 $R^{3'}$ is $R^{3a'}$ or $R^{3b'}$;
 R^4 is R^{4a} or R^{4b} ;
5 R^5 is R^{5a} or R^{5b} ;
 R^6 is R^{6a} or R^{6b} ;
 R^7 is R^{7a} or R^{7b} ;
 R^8 is R^{8a} or R^{8b} ;
 R^{13} is R^{13a} or R^{13b} ;
10 R^{1a} is selected from:
a) H, halo, (C_1-C_6) alkyl and (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl;
b) (C_2-C_6) alkenyl, (C_2-C_6) alkynyl, (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl, nitro, cyano, aryl,
heterocycle and heteroaryl;
c) $-C(=O)-R^{11}$, $-C(=O)-O-R^{11}$, $-O-R^{11}$, $-S-R^{11}$, $-S(O)-R^{11}$, $-SO_2-R^{11}$,
15 $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- R^{11} , $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- $C(=O)-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- $C(=O)-O-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl-
 $O-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- $S-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- $S(O)-R^{11}$ and $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- SO_2-R^{11} ;
wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from H, (C_1-C_6) alkyl, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl, (C_2-C_6) alkynyl, (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl, (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl; and
d) $-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-C(=O)-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-O-C(=O)-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-SO_2-N(R^9)R^{10}$,
20 $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- $N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- $C(=O)-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- $O-C(=O)-$
 $N(R^9)R^{10}$ and $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- $SO_2-N(R^9)R^{10}$; wherein each R^9 is independently selected
from H, (C_1-C_6) alkyl and (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl; and
each R^{10} is independently selected from R^{11} , $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- R^{11} , $-SO_2-R^{11}$, $-C(=O)-R^{11}$, $-$
 $C(=O)OR^{11}$ and $-C(=O)N(R^9)R^{11}$; wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from H,
25 (C_1-C_6) alkyl, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl, (C_2-C_6) alkynyl, (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl, (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl, aryl,
heterocycle and heteroaryl; and
wherein any aryl, heterocycle or heteroaryl of R^{1a} is optionally substituted with
one or more (e.g. 1, 2 or 3) Z^{10} groups;
 R^{1b} is selected from:
30 a) $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- $O-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- (C_3-C_7) carbocycle, $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- $S-(C_1-$
 $C_6)$ alkyl- (C_3-C_7) carbocycle, $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- $S(O)-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- (C_3-C_6) carbocycle, $-(C_1-$
 $C_6)$ alkyl- $SO_2-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- (C_3-C_7) carbocycle, $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- $SO_2-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- Z^{13} , -

- $C(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-O-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-S-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-S(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-SO_2-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{14}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-C(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-C(O)-O(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $-(C_2-$
 5 $C_6)alkynyl-(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $-(C_3-C_7)halocarbocycle$, $-NR_aSO_2NR_cR_d$, $-NR_aSO_2O(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-NR_aSO_2Oaryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-aryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-heteroaryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-heterocycle$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-aryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-heteroaryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-heterocycle$, $-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle-Z^1$ or $-halo(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^3$; wherein $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$,
 10 $(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$, $aryl$ or $heteroaryl$ are each optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;
- b) spiro-bicyclic carbocycle, fused-bicyclic carbocycle and bridged-bicyclic carbocycle; wherein spiro-bicyclic carbocycle, fused-bicyclic carbocycle or bridged-bicyclic carbocycle are optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4
 15 or 5) Z^1 groups; wherein two Z^1 groups together with the atom or atoms to which they are attached optionally form a carbocycle or heterocycle wherein the carbocycle or heterocycle is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;
- c) $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$; wherein $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$ is substituted with one or more Z^2 groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;
- 20 d) $-X(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $-X(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $-X(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $-X(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$ and $-X(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$; wherein $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$ and $(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$ are each substituted with one or more Z^3 groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z^1 groups; and wherein $(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$ and $(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$ are each substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^4 groups and optionally
 25 substituted with one or more Z^1 groups;
- e) $aryl$, $heteroaryl$, $heterocycle$, $-Xaryl$, $-Xheteroaryl$ and $-Xheterocycle$; wherein $aryl$, $heteroaryl$ and $heterocycle$ are each substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^5 groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z^1 groups;
- 30 f) $(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, and $(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$; wherein $(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$ and $(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$ are each substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^6 groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z^1 groups; and

- C_6)alkyl- Z^{13} , $-(C_3-C_7)$ halocarbocycle, $-NR_aSO_2NR_cR_d$, $-NR_aSO_2O(C_3-C_7)$ carbocycle, $-NR_aSO_2Oaryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)$ alkenyl- (C_3-C_7) carbocycle, $-(C_2-C_6)$ alkenyl-aryl, $-(C_2-C_6)$ alkenyl-heteroaryl, $-(C_2-C_6)$ alkenyl-heterocycle, $-(C_2-C_6)$ alkynyl- (C_3-C_7) carbocycle, $-(C_2-C_6)$ alkynyl-aryl, $-(C_2-C_6)$ alkynyl-heteroaryl, $-(C_2-C_6)$ alkynyl-heterocycle, $-(C_3-C_7)$ carbocycle- Z^1 or $-\text{halo}(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- Z^3 ; wherein (C_1-C_6) alkyl, $-(C_1-C_6)$ haloalkyl, (C_3-C_7) carbocycle, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl, (C_2-C_6) alkynyl, aryl or heteroaryl are each optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;
- b) spiro-bicyclic carbocycle, fused-bicyclic carbocycle and bridged-bicyclic carbocycle; wherein spiro-bicyclic carbocycle, fused-bicyclic carbocycle or bridged-bicyclic carbocycle are optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups; wherein two Z^1 groups together with the atom or atoms to which they are attached optionally form a (C_3-C_7) carbocycle or heterocycle wherein the (C_3-C_6) carbocycle or heterocycle is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;
- c) (C_1-C_6) alkyl; wherein (C_1-C_6) alkyl is substituted with one or more Z^2 groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;
- d) $-X(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl, $X(C_1-C_6)$ haloalkyl, $X(C_2-C_6)$ alkenyl, $-X(C_2-C_6)$ alkynyl and $-X(C_3-C_7)$ carbocycle; wherein (C_1-C_6) alkyl and (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl are each substituted with one or more Z^3 groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups; and wherein (C_2-C_6) alkenyl, (C_2-C_6) alkynyl and (C_3-C_7) carbocycle are each substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^4 groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z^1 groups;
- e) aryl, heteroaryl, heterocycle, $-Xaryl$, $-Xheteroaryl$ and $-Xheterocycle$; wherein aryl heteroaryl and heterocycle are each substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^5 groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;
- f) (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl, (C_3-C_7) carbocycle, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl, and (C_2-C_6) alkynyl; wherein (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl, (C_3-C_7) carbocycle, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl and (C_2-C_6) alkynyl are each substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^6 groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups; and

g) $-NR_eR_f$, $-C(O)NR_eR_f$, $-OC(O)NR_eR_f$, $-SO_2NR_eR_f$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_eR_f$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkylC(O)-NR_eR_f$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-C(O)-NR_eR_f$ and $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-SO_2NR_eR_f$; wherein each $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$ is substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^6 groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;

- 5 R^{3a} is $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)cycloalkyl$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-aryl$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-heterocycle$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-heteroaryl$, $-O(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $-O(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $-O(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $-O(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$, $-O(C_3-C_7)cycloalkyl$, $-Oaryl$, $-O(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)cycloalkyl$, $-O(C_1-C_6)alkyl-aryl$, $-O(C_1-C_6)alkyl-heterocycle$ and $-O(C_1-C_6)alkyl-heteroaryl$;
- 10 wherein any $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$ or $(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$ of R^{3a} is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2 or 3) groups selected from $-O(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, halo, oxo and $-CN$; and wherein any $(C_3-C_7)cycloalkyl$, aryl, heterocycle, or heteroaryl of R^{3a} is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2 or 3) groups selected from $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $-O(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, halo, oxo and $-CN$; and $R^{3a'}$ is H;
- 15 R^{3b} is $-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, aryl, heteroaryl, heterocycle, $-(C_1-C_6)alkylOH$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{12}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-Z^{12}$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkyl-O-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-Z^{12}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{12}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-Z^{12}$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkyl-S-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-Z^{12}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{12}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S(O)-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-Z^{12}$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkyl-S(O)-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-Z^{12}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-SO_2-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{12}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-SO_2-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-Z^{12}$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkyl-SO_2-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-Z^{12}$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkyl-NR_aR_b$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkylOC(O)-NR_cR_d$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkyl-NR_a-C(O)-OR_b$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkyl-NR_a-C(O)-NR_aR_b$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-SO_2(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-SO_2NR_cR_d$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_aSO_2NR_cR_d$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_aSO_2O(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_aSO_2Oaryl$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_a-SO_2-(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_a-SO_2-halo(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_a-SO_2-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_a-SO_2-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_a-SO_2-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_a-SO_2-halo(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_a-SO_2-aryl$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_a-SO_2-heteroaryl$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_a-SO_2-heterocycle$, $-O(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_aR_b$, $-O(C_1-C_6)alkylOC(O)-NR_cR_d$, $-O(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_a-C(O)-OR_b$, $-O(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_a-C(O)-NR_aR_b$, $-O(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_a-SO_2-(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $-O(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_a-SO_2-halo(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $-O(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_a-SO_2-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $-O(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_a-SO_2-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$, $-O(C_1-C_6)alkyl-NR_a-SO_2-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$,
- 20
- 25
- 30

-O(C₁-C₆)alkyl-NR_a-SO₂-halo(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl-NR_a-SO₂-aryl,
 -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl-NR_a-SO₂-heteroaryl, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl-NR_a-SO₂-heterocycle,
 -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl-NR_a-SO₂-NR_aR_b, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl-NR_a-SO₂-(C₃-C₇)carbocycle,
 -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl-NR_a-SO₂-halo(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl-NR_a-SO₂-aryl, -O(C₁-
 5 C₆)alkyl-NR_aSO₂NR_cR_d, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl-NR_aSO₂O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl-
 NR_aSO₂Oaryl, -Oheteroaryl, -Oheterocycle, -Sheteroaryl, -Sheterocycle,
 -S(O)heteroaryl, -S(O)heterocycle, -SO₂heteroaryl or -SO₂heterocycle; wherein any
 (C₁-C₆)alkyl, aryl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, heteroaryl or heterocycle of R^{3b} is optionally
 substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups; and R^{3b'} is H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl
 10 or -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl; or R^{3b} and R^{3b'} together with the carbon to which they are attached
 form a heterocycle or (C₃-C₇)carbocycle which heterocycle or (C₃-C₇)carbocycle of R^{3b}
 and R^{3b'} together with the carbon to which they are attached is optionally substituted
 with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups;

R^{4a} is selected from aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, wherein any aryl,
 15 heterocycle and heteroaryl of R^{4a} is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2,
 3, 4 or 5) groups each independently selected from halo, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl,
 (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, -OH, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -SH, -S(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -NH₂, -
 NH(C₁-C₆)alkyl and -N((C₁-C₆)alkyl)₂; wherein (C₁-C₆)alkyl is optionally substituted
 with hydroxy, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl, cyano or oxo;

20 R^{4b} is selected from:

a) (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl and (C₂-C₆)alkynyl; wherein (C₁-C₆)alkyl,
 (C₂-C₆)alkenyl or (C₂-C₆)alkynyl are each optionally substituted with one or more (e.g.
 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups;

b) (C₃-C₁₄)carbocycle; wherein (C₃-C₁₄)carbocycle is optionally
 25 substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups; wherein two Z¹ groups
 together with the atom or atoms to which they are attached optionally form a (C₃-
 C₇)carbocycle or heterocycle;

c) Spiro-heterocycle or bridged-heterocycle; wherein spiro-heterocycle or
 bridged-heterocycle is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹
 30 groups; or wherein two Z¹ groups together with the atom or atoms to which they are
 attached optionally form a (C₃-C₇)carbocycle or heterocycle; and

d) aryl, heteroaryl, spiro-, fused-, or bridged-heterocycle; wherein aryl, heteroaryl, or spiro-, fused-, or bridged-heterocycle are each independently substituted with one or more Z^7 groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups; or

5 R^4 and R^3 together with the atoms to which they are attached form a macroheterocycle or a macrocarbocycle wherein any macroheterocycle or macrocarbocycle of R^4 and R^3 together with the atoms to which they are attached may be optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups; and $R^{3b'}$ is H or (C₁-C₆)alkyl, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl.

10 R^{5a} is selected from:

a) halo, nitro and cyano;

b) R^{11} , -C(=O)- R^{11} , -C(=O)-O- R^{11} , -O- R^{11} , -S- R^{11} , -S(O)- R^{11} , -SO₂- R^{11} , - (C₁-C₆)alkyl- R^{11} , -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)- R^{11} , -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-O- R^{11} , -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O- R^{11} , -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-S- R^{11} , -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-S(O)- R^{11} and -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-SO₂- R^{11} ; wherein
15 each R^{11} is independently selected from H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl; wherein aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl are each optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2 or 3) Z^{11} groups;

c) -N(R^9) R^{10} , -C(=O)-N(R^9) R^{10} , -O-C(=O)-N(R^9) R^{10} , -SO₂-N(R^9) R^{10} , -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-N(R^9) R^{10} , -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-N(R^9) R^{10} , -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(=O)-N(R^9) R^{10} ,
20 and -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-SO₂-N(R^9) R^{10} ; wherein each R^9 is independently selected from H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl and (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl; and each R^{10} is independently selected from R^{11} , -(C₁-C₆)alkyl- R^{11} , -SO₂- R^{11} , -C(=O)- R^{11} , -C(=O)OR¹¹ and -C(=O)N(R^9) R^{11} ; wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from H,
25 (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl;

R^{5b} is selected from:

a) -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-(C₃-C₇)carbocycle,
-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-S-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-(C₃-C₇)carbocycle,
30 -(C₁-C₆)alkylS(O)-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-(C₃-C₆)carbocycle,
-(C₁-C₆)alkylSO₂(C₁-C₆)alkyl-(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl-(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, - (C₂-C₆)alkynyl-(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, - (C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -NR_aSO₂NR_cR_d,

-NR_aSO₂O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -NR_aSO₂Oaryl, -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl-(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl-aryl, -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl-heteroaryl, -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl-heterocycle, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-aryl, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-heteroaryl, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-heterocycle, -(C₃-C₇)carbocycle-Z¹ or -halo(C₁-C₆)alkyl-Z³; wherein
 5 (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, aryl or heteroaryl are each optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups;

b) spiro-bicyclic carbocycle, fused-bicyclic carbocycle and bridged-bicyclic carbocycle; wherein spiro-bicyclic carbocycle, fused-bicyclic carbocycle or
 10 bridged-bicyclic carbocycle are optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups; wherein two Z¹ groups together with the atom or atoms to which they are attached optionally form a (C₃-C₇)carbocycle or heterocycle wherein the (C₃-C₇)carbocycle or heterocycle is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups;

15 c) (C₁-C₆)alkyl; wherein (C₁-C₆)alkyl is substituted with one or more Z² groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups;

d) -X(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -X(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -X(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -X(C₂-C₆)alkynyl and -X(C₃-C₇)carbocycle; wherein (C₁-C₆)alkyl or (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl are each substituted with one or more Z³ groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z¹
 20 groups; and wherein (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl and (C₃-C₇)carbocycle are each independently substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z⁴ groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups;

e) aryl, heteroaryl, heterocycle, -Xaryl, -Xheteroaryl and -Xheterocycle; wherein aryl heteroaryl are heterocycle are each independently substituted with one or
 25 more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z⁵ groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups;

f) (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, and (C₂-C₆)alkynyl; where (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl and (C₂-C₆)alkynyl are each independently substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5)
 30 Z⁶ groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups;
 and

g) $-\text{NR}_e\text{R}_f$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}_e\text{R}_f$, $-\text{OC}(\text{O})\text{NR}_e\text{R}_f$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NR}_e\text{R}_f$, $-(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl-NR}_e\text{R}_f$, $-(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkylC}(\text{O})\text{-NR}_e\text{R}_f$, $-(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl-O-C}(\text{O})\text{-NR}_e\text{R}_f$ and $-(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl-SO}_2\text{NR}_e\text{R}_f$; wherein each $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl}$ is independently substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^6 groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1

5 groups;

R^{6a} is selected from:

a) H, halo, $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl}$, and $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{haloalkyl}$

b) $(\text{C}_2\text{-C}_6)\text{alkenyl}$, $(\text{C}_2\text{-C}_6)\text{alkynyl}$, $(\text{C}_3\text{-C}_7)\text{cycloalkyl}$, nitro, cyano, aryl, heterocycle or heteroaryl;

10 c) $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{-R}^{11}$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{-O-R}^{11}$, $-\text{O-R}^{11}$, $-\text{S-R}^{11}$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})\text{-R}^{11}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{-R}^{11}$, $-(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl-R}^{11}$, $-(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl-C}(=\text{O})\text{-R}^{11}$, $-(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl-C}(=\text{O})\text{-O-R}^{11}$, $-(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl-O-R}^{11}$, $-(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl-S-R}^{11}$, $-(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl-S}(\text{O})\text{-R}^{11}$ and $-(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl-SO}_2\text{-R}^{11}$;

wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from H, $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl}$, $(\text{C}_2\text{-C}_6)\text{alkenyl}$, $(\text{C}_2\text{-C}_6)\text{alkynyl}$, $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{haloalkyl}$, $(\text{C}_3\text{-C}_7)\text{cycloalkyl}$, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl; and

15 d) $-\text{N}(\text{R}^9)\text{R}^{10}$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{-N}(\text{R}^9)\text{R}^{10}$, $-\text{O-C}(=\text{O})\text{-N}(\text{R}^9)\text{R}^{10}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{-N}(\text{R}^9)\text{R}^{10}$, $-(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl-N}(\text{R}^9)\text{R}^{10}$, $-(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl-C}(=\text{O})\text{-N}(\text{R}^9)\text{R}^{10}$, $-(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl-O-C}(=\text{O})\text{-N}(\text{R}^9)\text{R}^{10}$ and $-(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl-SO}_2\text{-N}(\text{R}^9)\text{R}^{10}$; wherein each R^9 is independently selected from H, $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl}$ and $(\text{C}_3\text{-C}_7)\text{cycloalkyl}$; and

each R^{10} is independently selected from R^{11} , $-(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl-R}^{11}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{-R}^{11}$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{-R}^{11}$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^{11}$ and $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^9)\text{R}^{11}$; wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from H, $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl}$, $(\text{C}_2\text{-C}_6)\text{alkenyl}$, $(\text{C}_2\text{-C}_6)\text{alkynyl}$, $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{haloalkyl}$, $(\text{C}_3\text{-C}_7)\text{cycloalkyl}$, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl; and

wherein any aryl, heterocycle or heteroaryl of R^{1a} is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2 or 3) Z^{10} groups;

25 R^{6b} is selected from:

a) $-(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl-O-(C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl-(C}_3\text{-C}_7)\text{carbocycle}$, $-(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl-S-(C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl-(C}_3\text{-C}_7)\text{carbocycle}$, $-(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl-S}(\text{O})\text{-(C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl-(C}_3\text{-C}_7)\text{carbocycle}$, $-(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl-SO}_2\text{-(C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl-(C}_3\text{-C}_7)\text{carbocycle}$, $-(\text{C}_2\text{-C}_6)\text{alkenyl-(C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{haloalkyl}$, $-(\text{C}_2\text{-C}_6)\text{alkynyl-(C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{haloalkyl}$, $-\text{halo(C}_3\text{-C}_7)\text{carbocycle}$, $-\text{NR}_a\text{SO}_2\text{NR}_c\text{R}_d$, $-\text{NR}_a\text{SO}_2\text{O(C}_3\text{-C}_7)\text{carbocycle}$, $-\text{NR}_a\text{SO}_2\text{Oaryl}$, $-(\text{C}_2\text{-C}_6)\text{alkenyl-(C}_3\text{-C}_7)\text{carbocycle}$, $-(\text{C}_2\text{-C}_6)\text{alkenyl-aryl}$, $-(\text{C}_2\text{-C}_6)\text{alkenyl-heteroaryl}$, $-(\text{C}_2\text{-C}_6)\text{alkenyl-heterocycle}$, $-(\text{C}_2\text{-C}_6)\text{alkynyl-(C}_3\text{-C}_7)\text{carbocycle}$, $-(\text{C}_2\text{-C}_6)\text{alkynyl-aryl}$, $-(\text{C}_2\text{-C}_6)\text{alkynyl-heteroaryl}$,

-(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-heterocycle, -(C₃-C₇)carbocycle-Z¹ or -halo(C₁-C₆)alkyl-Z³; wherein (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, aryl or heteroaryl are optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups;

b) spiro-bicyclic carbocycle, fused-bicyclic carbocycle and bridged-bicyclic carbocycle; wherein spiro-bicyclic carbocycle, fused-bicyclic carbocycle or bridged-bicyclic carbocycle are optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups; wherein two Z¹ groups together with the atom or atoms to which they are attached optionally form a carbocycle or heterocycle wherein the carbocycle or heterocycle is optionally substituted with one or more Z¹ groups;

c) (C₁-C₆)alkyl; wherein (C₁-C₆)alkyl is substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z² groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups;

d) -X(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -X(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -X(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -X(C₂-C₆)alkynyl and -X(C₃-C₇)carbocycle; wherein (C₁-C₆)alkyl or (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl are each independently substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z³ groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z¹ groups; and wherein (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl and (C₃-C₇)carbocycle are each independently substituted with one or more Z⁴ groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups;

e) aryl, heteroaryl, heterocycle, -Xaryl, -Xheteroaryl and -Xheterocycle wherein aryl heteroaryl and heterocycle are each independently substituted with one or more Z⁵ groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups;

f) (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, and (C₂-C₆)alkynyl; wherein (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl and (C₂-C₆)alkynyl are each independently substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z⁶ groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups; and

g) -NR_eR_f, -C(O)NR_eR_f, -OC(O)NR_eR_f, -SO₂NR_eR_f, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-NR_eR_f, -(C₁-C₆)alkylC(O)-NR_eR_f, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(O)-NR_eR_f and -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-SO₂NR_eR_f; wherein each (C₁-C₆)alkyl is independently substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4

or 5) Z^6 groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;

R^{7a} is selected from:

- a) H, halo, (C_1-C_6) alkyl and (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl;
- 5 b) (C_2-C_6) alkenyl, (C_2-C_6) alkynyl, (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl, nitro, cyano, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl;
- c) $-C(=O)-R^{11}$, $-C(=O)-O-R^{11}$, $-O-R^{11}$, $-S-R^{11}$, $-S(O)-R^{11}$, $-SO_2-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-C(=O)-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-C(=O)-O-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S(O)-R^{11}$ and $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-SO_2-R^{11}$;
- 10 wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from H, (C_1-C_6) alkyl, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl, (C_2-C_6) alkynyl, (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl, (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl; and
- d) $-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-C(=O)-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-O-C(=O)-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-SO_2-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-C(=O)-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-C(=O)-N(R^9)R^{10}$ and $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-SO_2-N(R^9)R^{10}$; wherein each R^9 is independently selected
- 15 from H, (C_1-C_6) alkyl and (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl; and
- each R^{10} is independently selected from R^{11} , $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-R^{11}$, $-SO_2-R^{11}$, $-C(=O)-R^{11}$, $-C(=O)OR^{11}$ and $-C(=O)N(R^9)R^{11}$; wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from H, (C_1-C_6) alkyl, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl, (C_2-C_6) alkynyl, (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl, (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl; and
- 20 wherein any aryl, heterocycle or heteroaryl of R^{1a} is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2 or 3) Z^{10} groups;

R^{7b} is selected from:

- a) $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-SO_2-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-C(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-O-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-S-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-S(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-SO_2-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{14}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-C(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-C(O)-O-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-SO_2-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $-(C_3-C_7)halocarbocycle$, $-NR_aSO_2NR_cR_d$, $-NR_aSO_2O(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-NR_aSO_2Oaryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-aryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-heteroaryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-heterocycle$,
- 25
- 30

-(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-aryl, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-heteroaryl, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-heterocycle, -(C₃-C₇)carbocycle-Z¹ or -halo(C₁-C₆)alkyl-Z³; wherein (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, aryl or heteroaryl are each optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹

5 groups;

b) spiro-bicyclic carbocycle, fused-bicyclic carbocycle and bridged-bicyclic carbocycle; wherein spiro-bicyclic carbocycle, fused-bicyclic carbocycle or bridged-bicyclic carbocycle are optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups; wherein two Z¹ groups together with the atom or atoms to which they are attached optionally form a (C₃-C₇)carbocycle or heterocycle wherein the (C₃-C₆)carbocycle or heterocycle is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups;

c) (C₁-C₆)alkyl; wherein (C₁-C₆)alkyl is substituted with one or more Z² groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups;

15 d) -X(C₁-C₆)alkyl, X(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, X(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -X(C₂-C₆)alkynyl and -X(C₃-C₇)carbocycle; wherein (C₁-C₆)alkyl and (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl are each substituted with one or more Z³ groups and optionally substituted with one or more Z¹ groups; and wherein (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl and (C₃-C₇)carbocycle are each substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z⁴ groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups;

20 e) aryl, heteroaryl, heterocycle, -Xaryl, -Xheteroaryl and -Xheterocycle; wherein aryl, heteroaryl and heterocycle are each substituted with one or more Z⁵ groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups;

f) (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl and (C₂-C₆)alkynyl; wherein (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl and (C₂-C₆)alkynyl are each substituted with one or more Z⁶ groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups; and

g) -NR_eR_f, -C(O)NR_eR_f, -OC(O)NR_eR_f, -SO₂NR_eR_f, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-NR_eR_f, -(C₁-C₆)alkylC(O)-NR_eR_f, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(O)-NR_eR_f and -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-SO₂NR_eR_f; wherein each (C₁-C₆)alkyl is substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z⁶ groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups;

R^{8a} is selected from:

- a) halo, nitro and cyano;
- b) R^{11} , $-C(=O)-R^{11}$, $-C(=O)-O-R^{11}$, $-O-R^{11}$, $-S-R^{11}$, $-S(O)-R^{11}$, $-SO_2-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-C(=O)-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-C(=O)-O-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S(O)-R^{11}$ and $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-SO_2-R^{11}$; wherein
 5 each R^{11} is independently selected from H, $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$, $(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $(C_3-C_7)cycloalkyl$, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl; wherein aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl are each optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2 or 3) Z^{11} groups;
- c) $-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-C(=O)-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-O-C(=O)-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-SO_2-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-C(=O)-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-C(=O)-N(R^9)R^{10}$
 10 and $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-SO_2-N(R^9)R^{10}$; wherein each R^9 is independently selected from H, $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$ and $(C_3-C_7)cycloalkyl$; and each R^{10} is independently selected from R^{11} , $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-R^{11}$, $-SO_2-R^{11}$, $-C(=O)-R^{11}$, $-C(=O)OR^{11}$ and $-C(=O)N(R^9)R^{11}$; wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from H,
 15 $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$, $(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $(C_3-C_7)cycloalkyl$, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl;
- R^{8b} is selected from:
- a) $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-SO_2-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-C(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-O-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-S-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-S(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-SO_2-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$,
 20 $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{14}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-C(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-C(O)-O(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-SO_2-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $-halo(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-NR_aSO_2NR_cR_d$, $-NR_aSO_2O(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-NR_aSO_2Oaryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$,
 25 $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-aryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-heteroaryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-heterocycle$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-aryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-heteroaryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-heterocycle$, $-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle-Z^1$ or $-halo(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^3$; wherein
 30 $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$, aryl or heteroaryl are each optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups:

- b) spiro-bicyclic carbocycle, fused-bicyclic carbocycle and bridged-bicyclic carbocycle; wherein spiro-bicyclic carbocycle, fused-bicyclic carbocycle or bridged-bicyclic carbocycle are optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups; wherein two Z^1 groups together with the atom or atoms to which they are attached optionally form a (C₃-C₇)carbocycle or heterocycle wherein the (C₃-C₇)carbocycle or heterocycle is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;
- c) (C₁-C₆)alkyl; wherein (C₁-C₆)alkyl is substituted with one or more Z^2 groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;
- d) -X(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -X(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -X(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -X(C₂-C₆)alkynyl and -X(C₃-C₇)carbocycle; wherein (C₁-C₆)alkyl and (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl are each independently substituted with one or more Z^3 groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups; and wherein any (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl and (C₃-C₇)carbocycle are each independently substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^4 groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;
- e) aryl, heteroaryl, heterocycle, -Xaryl, -Xheteroaryl and -Xheterocycle wherein any aryl heteroaryl and heterocycle are each independently substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^5 groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;
- f) (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl and (C₂-C₆)alkynyl; wherein (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl and (C₂-C₆)alkynyl are each independently substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^6 groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups; and
- g) -NR_eR_f, -C(O)NR_eR_f, -OC(O)NR_eR_f, -SO₂NR_eR_f, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-NR_eR_f, -(C₁-C₆)alkylC(O)-NR_eR_f, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(O)-NR_eR_f and -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-SO₂NR_eR_f; wherein each (C₁-C₆)alkyl is independently substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^6 groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z^1 groups;
- R^{13a} is selected from:
- a) R¹¹, -C(=O)-R¹¹, -C(=O)-O-R¹¹, -O-R¹¹, -S-R¹¹, -S(O)-R¹¹, -SO₂-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-O-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-

O-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-S-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-S(O)-R¹¹ and -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-SO₂-R¹¹; wherein each R¹¹ is independently selected from H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl; wherein aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl are each optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2 or 3) Z¹¹ groups; and

b) -C(=O)-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -SO₂-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(=O)-N(R⁹)R¹⁰ and -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-SO₂-N(R⁹)R¹⁰; wherein each R⁹ is independently selected from H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl and (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl; and each R¹⁰ is independently selected from R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-R¹¹, -SO₂-R¹¹, -C(=O)-R¹¹, -C(=O)OR¹¹ and -C(=O)N(R⁹)R¹¹; wherein each R¹¹ is independently selected from H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl;

R^{13b} is selected from:

a) -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-SO₂-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-Z¹³, -C(O)-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-Z¹³, -O-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-Z¹³, -S-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-Z¹³, -S(O)-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-Z¹³, -SO₂-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-Z¹³, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-Z¹⁴, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(O)-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-Z¹³, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(O)-O-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-Z¹³, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-Z¹³, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-S-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-Z¹³, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-S-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-S(O)-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-SO₂-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl-(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -halo(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl-(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl-aryl, -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl-heteroaryl, -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl-heterocycle, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-aryl, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-heteroaryl, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-heterocycle, -(C₃-C₇)carbocycle-Z¹ or -halo(C₁-C₆)alkyl-Z³, -NR_aSO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -NR_aSO₂Oaryl; wherein (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, aryl or heteroaryl are each optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups:

b) spiro-bicyclic carbocycle, fused-bicyclic carbocycle and bridged-bicyclic carbocycle; wherein spiro-bicyclic carbocycle, fused-bicyclic carbocycle or bridged-bicyclic carbocycle are optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups; wherein two Z¹ groups together with the atom or atoms to which they

are attached optionally form a (C₃-C₇)carbocycle or heterocycle wherein the (C₃-C₇)carbocycle or heterocycle is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups;

c) (C₁-C₆)alkyl; wherein (C₁-C₆)alkyl is substituted with one or more Z² groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups;

d) -X(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -X(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -X(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -X(C₂-C₆)alkynyl and -X(C₃-C₇)carbocycle; wherein (C₁-C₆)alkyl and (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl are each independently substituted with one or more Z³ groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups; and wherein any (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl and (C₃-C₇)carbocycle are each independently substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z⁴ groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups;

e) aryl, heteroaryl, heterocycle, -Xaryl, -Xheteroaryl and -Xheterocycle wherein any aryl heteroaryl and heterocycle are each independently substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z⁵ groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups;

f) (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl and (C₂-C₆)alkynyl; wherein (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl and (C₂-C₆)alkynyl are each independently substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z⁶ groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups; and

g) -C(O)NR_eR_f, -SO₂NR_eR_f, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-NR_eR_f, -(C₁-C₆)alkylC(O)-NR_eR_f, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(O)-NR_eR_f and -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-SO₂NR_eR_f; wherein each (C₁-C₆)alkyl is independently substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z⁶ groups and optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) Z¹ groups; or any of R^{5a} and R^{6a}, R^{6a} and R^{7a}, R^{7a} and R^{8a}, R¹ and R⁸, R¹ and R² or R¹ and R¹³ together with the atoms to which they are attached form a 5 or 6-membered carbocycle or a 4, 5, 6 or 7-membered heterocycle; wherein the 5 or 6-membered carbocycle or a 4, 5, 6 or 7-membered heterocycle is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2 or 3) substituents each independently selected from halo, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, -OH, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -SH, -S(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -NH₂, -NH(C₁-C₆)alkyl and -N((C₁-C₆)alkyl)₂;

or any of R^5 and R^6 , R^6 and R^7 or R^7 and R^8 , together with the atoms to which they are attached form a 5 or 6-membered carbocycle or a 4, 5, 6 or 7-membered heterocycle; wherein the 5 or 6-membered carbocycle or a 4, 5, 6 or 7-membered heterocycle are each independently substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2 or 3) Z^7 or Z^8 groups; wherein when two Z^7 groups are on same atom the two Z^7 groups together with the atom to which they are attached optionally form a (C₃-C₇)carbocycle or 4, 5 or 6-membered heterocycle;

or any of R^1 and R^8 , R^1 and R^2 or R^1 and R^{13} together with the atoms to which they are attached form a 5 or 6-membered carbocycle or a 4, 5, 6 or 7-membered heterocycle; wherein the 5 or 6-membered carbocycle or a 4, 5, 6 or 7-membered heterocycle are each independently substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2 or 3) Z^7 or Z^8 groups; wherein when two Z^7 groups are on same atom the two Z^7 groups together with the atom to which they are attached optionally form a (C₃-C₇)carbocycle or 4, 5 or 6-membered heterocycle;

X is independently selected from O, -C(O)-, -C(O)O-, -S-, -S(O)-, -SO₂-, -(C₁-C₆)alkylO-, -(C₁-C₆)alkylC(O)-, -(C₁-C₆)alkylC(O)O-, -(C₁-C₆)alkylS-, -(C₁-C₆)alkylS(O)-, -(C₁-C₆)alkylSO₂-;

each Z^1 is independently selected from halo, -NO₂, -OH, =NOR_a, -SH, -CN, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, -(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -aryl, -heteroaryl, -heterocycle, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -O(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -O(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, -O(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -O(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -Oaryl, -Oheteroaryl, -Oheterocycle, -S(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -S(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, -S(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -S(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -S(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -Saryl, -Sheteroaryl, -Sheterocycle, -S(O)(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(O)(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -S(O)(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, -S(O)(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -S(O)(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -S(O)(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -SO₂(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(O)aryl, -S(O)carbocycle, -S(O)heteroaryl, -S(O)heterocycle, -SO₂(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -SO₂(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, -SO₂(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -SO₂(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -SO₂(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -SO₂aryl, -SO₂heteroaryl, -SO₂heterocycle, -SO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_cR_d, -NR_aC(O)R_a, -NR_aC(O)OR_a, -NR_aC(O)NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂R_b, -NR_aSO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -NR_aSO₂Oaryl, -OS(O)₂R_a, -C(O)R_a, -C(O)OR_b, -C(O)NR_cR_d, and -OC(O)NR_cR_d, wherein any (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, -(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, (C₃-

C₇)carbocycle, (C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, aryl, heteroaryl or heterocycle of Z¹ is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) halogen, -OH, -OR_b, -CN, -NR_aC(O)₂R_b, -heteroaryl, -heterocycle, -Oheteroaryl, -Oheterocycle, -NHheteroaryl, -NHheterocycle, or -S(O)₂NR_cR_d;

5 each Z² is independently selected from -NO₂, -CN, spiro- heterocycle, bridge-heterocycle, spiro-bicyclic carbocycle, bridged-bicyclic carbocycle, NR_aSO₂(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -NR_aSO₂aryl, -NR_aSO₂heteroaryl, -NR_aSO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle and -NR_aSO₂Oaryl;

each Z³ is independently selected from -NO₂, -CN, -OH, oxo, =NOR_a, thioxo, -
 10 aryl, -heterocycle, -heteroaryl, -(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -Ohalo(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -Oaryl, -Oheterocycle, -Oheteroaryl, -S(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -S(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -Saryl, -Sheterocycle, -Sheteroaryl, -S(O)(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(O)(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -S(O)(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -S(O)aryl, -S(O)heterocycle, -S(O)heteroaryl, -SO₂(C₁-C₆)alkyl,
 15 -SO₂(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -SO₂(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, SO₂aryl, -SO₂heterocycle, -SO₂heteroaryl, -NR_aR_b, -NR_aC(O)R_b, -C(O)NR_cR_d, -SO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle and -NR_aSO₂Oaryl;

each Z⁴ is independently selected from halogen, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -halo(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -NO₂, -CN, -OH, oxo, =NOR_a, thioxo, -aryl,
 20 -heterocycle, -heteroaryl, -(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -O(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -Oaryl, -Oheterocycle, -Oheteroaryl, -S(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -S(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -Saryl, -Sheterocycle, -Sheteroaryl, -S(O)(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(O)(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -S(O)(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -S(O)aryl, -S(O)heterocycle, -S(O)heteroaryl, -SO₂(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -SO₂(C₃-C₇)carbocycle,
 25 -SO₂(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, SO₂aryl, -SO₂heterocycle, -SO₂heteroaryl, -NR_aR_b, -NR_aC(O)R_a, -C(O)NR_cR_d, -SO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle and -NR_aSO₂Oaryl;

each Z⁵ is independently selected from -NO₂, -CN, -NR_aSO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -NR_aSO₂Oaryl, -NR_aSO₂(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -NR_aSO₂(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -NR_aSO₂(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, -NR_aSO₂(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -NR_aSO₂(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -NR_aSO₂aryl, -NR_aSO₂heteraryl, -NR_aSO₂heteroaryl,
 30 -NR_aSO₂heterocycle, -NR_aC(O)alkyl, -NR_aC(O)alkenyl, -NR_aC(O)alkynyl, -NR_aC(O)

(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -NR_aC(O)(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -NR_aC(O)aryl,
-NR_aC(O)heteroaryl, -NR_aC(O)heterocycle, NR_aC(O)NR_cR_d and NR_aC(O)OR_b;

each Z⁶ is independently selected from -NO₂, -CN, -NR_aR_a, NR_aC(O)R_b, -
C(O)NR_cR_d, -(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -aryl, -heteroaryl, -heterocycle, -Oaryl, -
5 Oheteroaryl, -Oheterocycle, -O(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -O(C₃-
C₇)carbocycle, -Ohalo(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -Saryl, -Sheteroaryl, -Sheterocycle, -S(C₃-
C₇)halocarbocycle, -S(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -S(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -S(O)aryl,
-S(O)heteroaryl, -S(O)heterocycle, -S(O)(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -S(O)(C₁-C₆)alkyl,
-S(O)(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -S(O)halo(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -SO₂aryl, -SO₂heteroaryl,
10 -SO₂heterocycle, -SO₂(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -SO₂halo(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -SO₂(C₃-C₇)carbocycle,
-SO₂(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -SO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle,
-NR_aSO₂aryl, -NR_aSO₂heteraryl, -NR_aSO₂heteroaryl, -NR_aSO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂O(C₃-
C₇)carbocycle and -NR_aSO₂Oaryl;

each Z⁷ is independently selected from -NO₂, =NOR_a, -CN, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-Z¹²,
15 -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl-Z¹², -(C₂-C₆)alkenylOH, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-Z¹², -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-OH,
-(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl-Z¹², -(C₁-C₆)haloalkylOH, -(C₃-C₇)carbocycle-Z¹², -(C₃-
C₇)carbocycleOH, -(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -(C₁-C₆)alkylNR_cR_d, -(C₁-
C₆)alkylNR_aC(O)R_a, -(C₁-C₆)alkylNR_aSO₂R_a, -aryl, -heteroaryl, -heterocycle, -O(C₁-
C₆)alkyl-Z¹², -O(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -O(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, -O(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -O(C₃-
20 C₇)carbocycle, -O(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -Oaryl, -O(C₁-C₆)alkylNR_cR_d, -O(C₁-
C₆)alkylNR_aC(O)R_a, -O(C₁-C₆)alkylNR_aSO₂R_a, -Oheteroaryl, -Oheterocycle, -S(C₁-
C₆)alkyl-Z¹², -S(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -S(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, -S(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -S(C₃-
C₇)carbocycle, -S(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -S(C₁-C₆)alkylNR_cR_d, -S(C₁-
C₆)alkylNR_aC(O)R_a, -S(C₁-C₆)alkylNR_aSO₂R_a, -Saryl, -Sheteroaryl, -Sheterocycle,
25 -S(O)(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(O)(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -S(O)(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, -S(O)(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -
S(O)(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -S(O)(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -SO₂(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(O)(C₁-
C₆)alkylNR_cR_d, -S(O)(C₁-C₆)alkylNR_aC(O)R_a, -S(O)(C₁-C₆)alkylNR_aSO₂R_a, -
S(O)aryl, -S(O)heteroaryl, -S(O)heterocycle, -SO₂(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -SO₂(C₂-C₆)alkenyl,
-SO₂(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, -SO₂(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -SO₂(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -SO₂(C₃-
30 C₇)halocarbocycle, -SO₂aryl, -SO₂heteroaryl, -SO₂heterocycle, -SO₂(C₁-
C₆)alkylNR_cR_d, -SO₂(C₁-C₆)alkylNR_aC(O)R_a, -SO₂(C₁-C₆)alkylNR_aSO₂R_a, -
SO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_aC(O)OR_b, -NR_aC(O)NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂R_b, -NR_aSO₂NR_cR_d, -

NR_aSO₂O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -NR_aSO₂Oaryl, -OS(O)₂R_a, -C(O)NR_cR_d, and -OC(O)NR_cR_d, wherein any (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, aryl, heteroaryl or heterocycle of Z⁷ is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) halogen, -OH, -OR_b, -CN, -NR_aC(O)₂R_b, -heteroaryl, -heterocycle, -Oheteroaryl, -Oheterocycle, -NHheteroaryl, -NHheterocycle, or -S(O)₂NR_cR_d;

each Z⁸ is independently selected from -NO₂ or -CN;

each Z⁹ is independently selected from -(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl;

each Z¹⁰ is independently selected from

10 i) halo, oxo, thioxo, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-, -OH, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -O(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -SH, -S(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -SO(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -SO₂(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -NH₂, -NH(C₁-C₆)alkyl and -N((C₁-C₆)alkyl)₂;

15 ii) (C₁-C₆)alkyl optionally substituted with -OH, -O-(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, or -O-(C₁-C₆)alkyl; and

iii) aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, which aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl is optionally substituted with halo, (C₁-C₆)alkyl or COOH;

each Z¹¹ is independently selected from Z¹⁰, -C(=O)-NH₂, -C(=O)-NH(C₁-C₄)alkyl, -C(=O)-N((C₁-C₄)alkyl)₂, -C(=O)-aryl, -C(=O)-heterocycle and -C(=O)-heteroaryl;

each Z¹² is independently selected from -NO₂, =NOR_a, thioxo, -aryl, -heterocycle, -heteroaryl, -(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -Ohalo(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -Oaryl, -Oheterocycle, -Oheteroaryl, -S(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -Shalo(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -Saryl, -Sheterocycle, -Sheteroaryl, -S(O)(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(O)(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -S(O)halo(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -S(O)aryl, -S(O)heterocycle, -S(O)heteroaryl, -SO₂(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -SO₂(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -SO₂(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, SO₂aryl, -SO₂heterocycle, -SO₂heteroaryl, -NR_aR_a, -NR_aC(O)R_b, -C(O)NR_cR_d, -SO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle and -NR_aSO₂Oaryl;

each Z¹³ is independently selected from -NO₂, -OH, =NOR_a, -SH, -CN, -(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -O(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -O(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, -O(C₁-

C₆)haloalkyl, -O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -O(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -Oaryl, -Oheteroaryl, -
 Oheterocycle, -S(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -S(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, -S(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl,
 -S(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -S(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -Saryl, -Sheteroaryl, -Sheterocycle,
 -S(O)(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(O)(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -S(O)(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, -S(O)(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -
 5 S(O)(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -S(O)(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -S(O)aryl, -S(O)heteroaryl, -
 S(O)heterocycle, -SO₂(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -SO₂(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -SO₂(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, -SO₂(C₁-
 C₆)haloalkyl, -SO₂(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -SO₂(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -SO₂aryl, -
 SO₂heteroaryl, -SO₂heterocycle, -SO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_cR_d, -NR_aC(O)R_a, -NR_aC(O)OR_b,
 -NR_aC(O)NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂R_b, -NR_aSO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -
 10 NR_aSO₂Oaryl, -OS(O)₂R_a, -C(O)R_a, -C(O)OR_b, -C(O)NR_cR_d, and -OC(O)NR_cR_d;
 wherein any (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, -(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, (C₃-
 C₇)carbocycle, (C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, aryl, heteroaryl or heterocycle of Z¹³ is
 optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) halogen, -OH, -OR_b, -CN,
 -NR_aC(O)₂R_b, -heteroaryl, -heterocycle, -Oheteroaryl, -Oheterocycle, -NHheteroaryl, -
 15 NHheterocycle, or -S(O)₂NR_cR_d;

each Z¹⁴ is independently selected from -NO₂, =NOR_a, -CN, -(C₃-
 C₇)halocarbocycle, -O(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -S(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -S(O)(C₃-
 C₇)halocarbocycle, -SO₂(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -NR_aSO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂O(C₃-
 C₇)carbocycle, -NR_aSO₂Oaryl, -OS(O)₂R_a; wherein any -(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle of Z¹⁴
 20 is optionally substituted with one or more (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) halogen, -OH, -OR_b,
 -CN, -NR_aC(O)₂R_b, -heteroaryl, -heterocycle, -Oheteroaryl, -Oheterocycle, -
 NHheteroaryl, -NHheterocycle, or -S(O)₂NR_cR_d;

each R_a is independently H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl,
 (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, heterocycle, aryl, aryl(C₁-C₆)alkyl-, heteroaryl or heteroaryl(C₁-
 25 C₆)alkyl-; wherein any (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl,
 (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, heterocycle, aryl, or heteroaryl of R_a is optionally substituted by
 halogen, OH and cyano;

each R_b is independently -(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl,
 (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, heterocycle, aryl, aryl(C₁-C₆)alkyl-, heteroaryl or heteroaryl(C₁-
 30 C₆)alkyl-; wherein any (C₁-C₆)alkyl, -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl,
 (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, heterocycle, aryl, or heteroaryl of R_b is optionally substituted by
 halogen, OH and cyano;

R_c and R_d are each independently selected from H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, aryl, aryl(C₁-C₆)alkyl-, heterocycle, heteroaryl or heteroaryl(C₁-C₆)alkyl- wherein any (C₁-C₆)alkyl, -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, heterocycle, aryl, or heteroaryl of R_c or R_d is optionally substituted
 5 by halogen, OH and cyano; or R_c and R_d together with the nitrogen to which they are attached form a heterocycle; wherein any heterocycle of R_c and R_d together with the nitrogen to which they are attached is optionally substituted by halogen, OH or cyano;

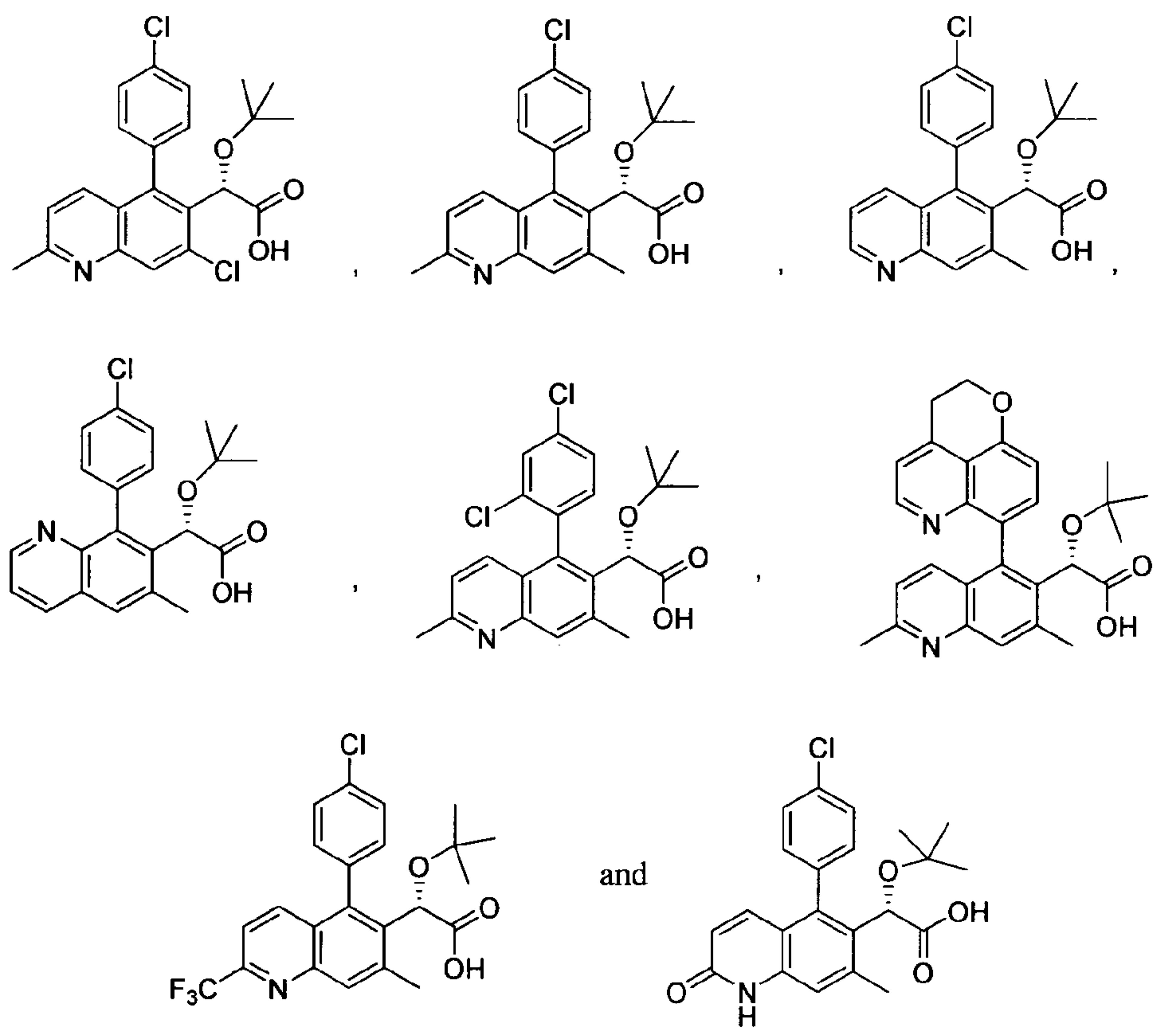
each R_e is independently selected from -OR_a, (C₁-C₆)alkyl or (C₃-C₇)carbocycle wherein (C₁-C₆)alkyl or (C₃-C₇)carbocycle is substituted by one or more Z_d and
 10 optionally substituted with one or more Z₁; -(C₂-C₆)haloalkyl, -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, or -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl wherein any haloalkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl is optionally substituted with one or more Z₁; aryl, heterocycle or heteroaryl wherein aryl, heterocycle or heteroaryl is substituted by one or more Z_c;

each R_f is independently selected from -R_g, -OR_a, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-Z⁶, -SO₂R_g, -
 15 C(O)R_g, C(O)OR_g, or -C(O)NR_eR_g; and

each R_g is independently selected from -OR_a, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, aryl, heterocycle or heteroaryl wherein any (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle -(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, aryl, heterocycle or heteroaryl of R_g is optionally substituted with one
 20 or more Z₁ groups;

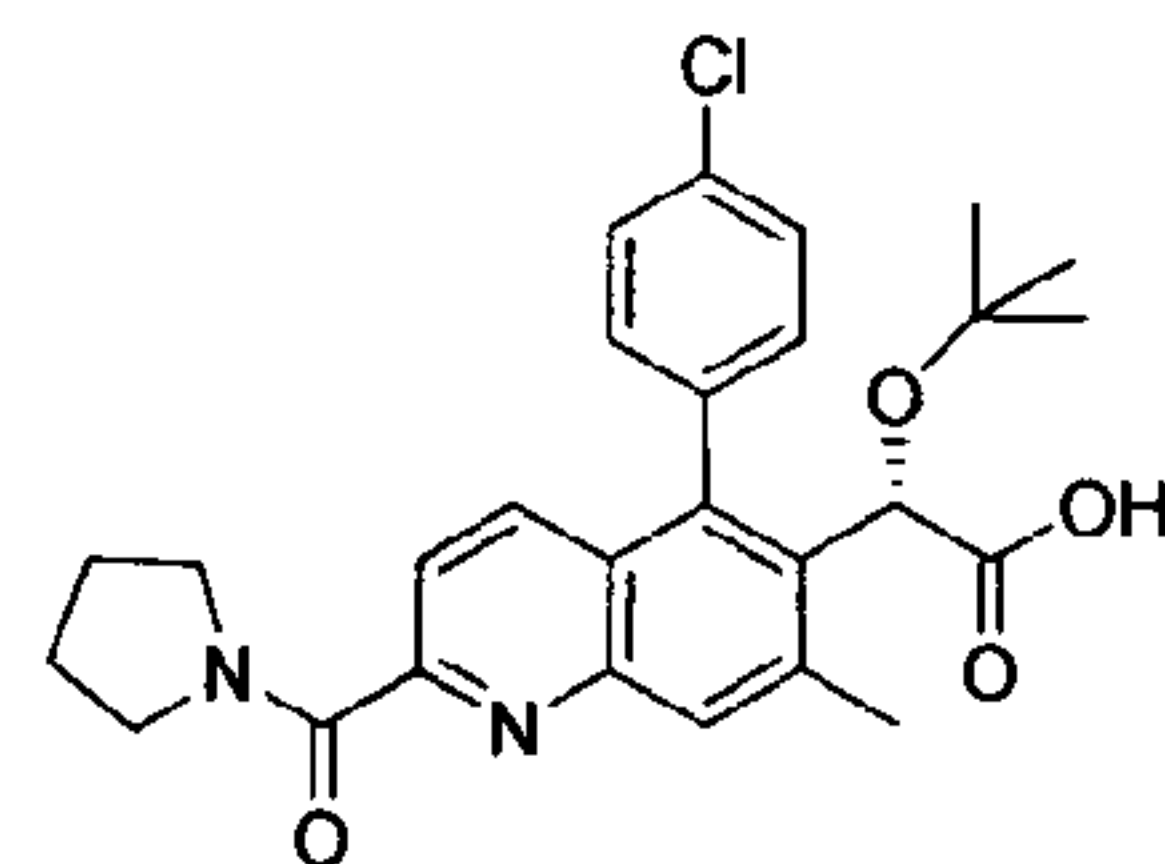
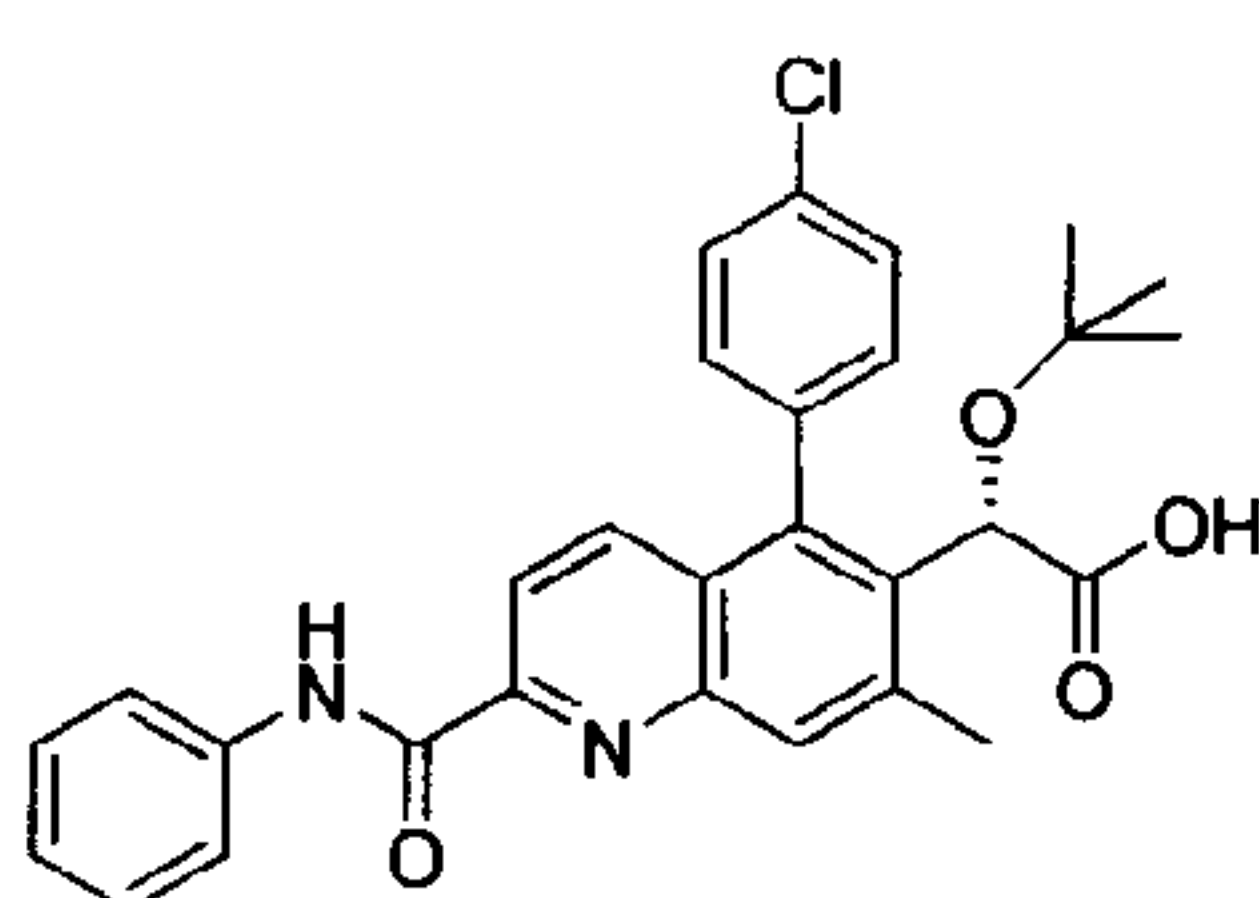
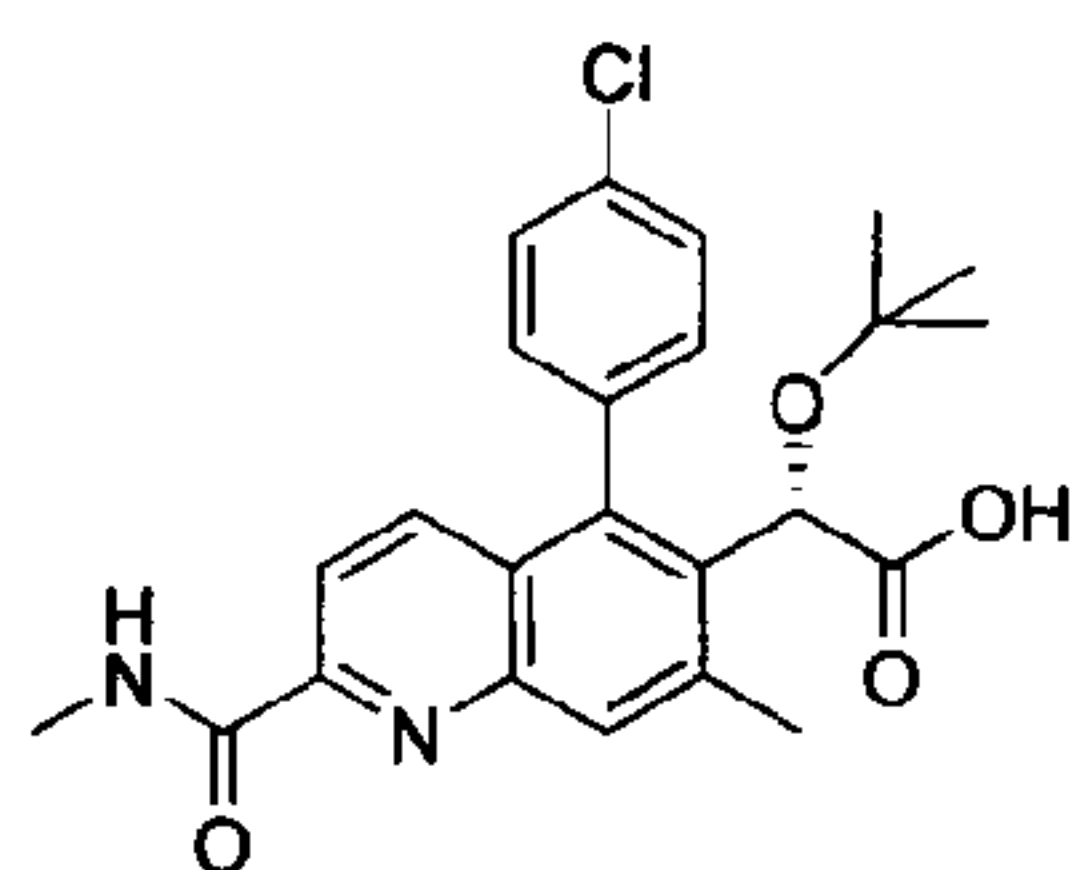
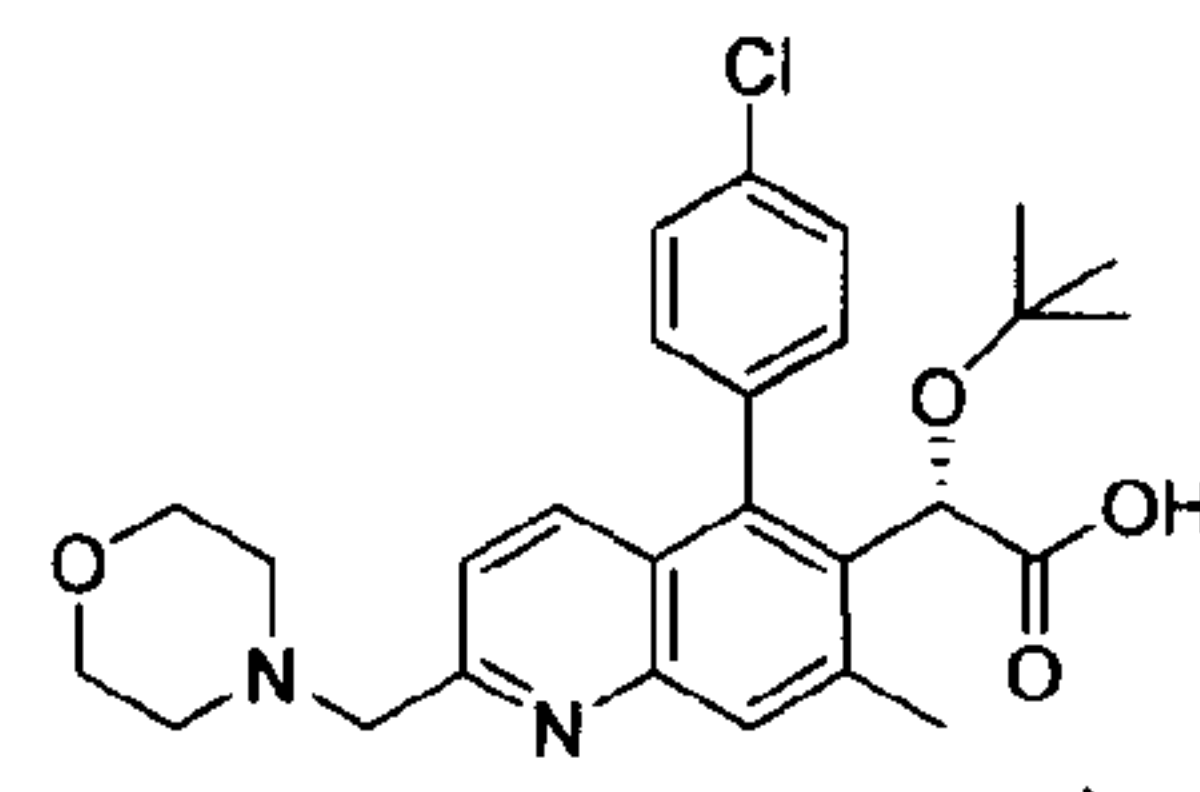
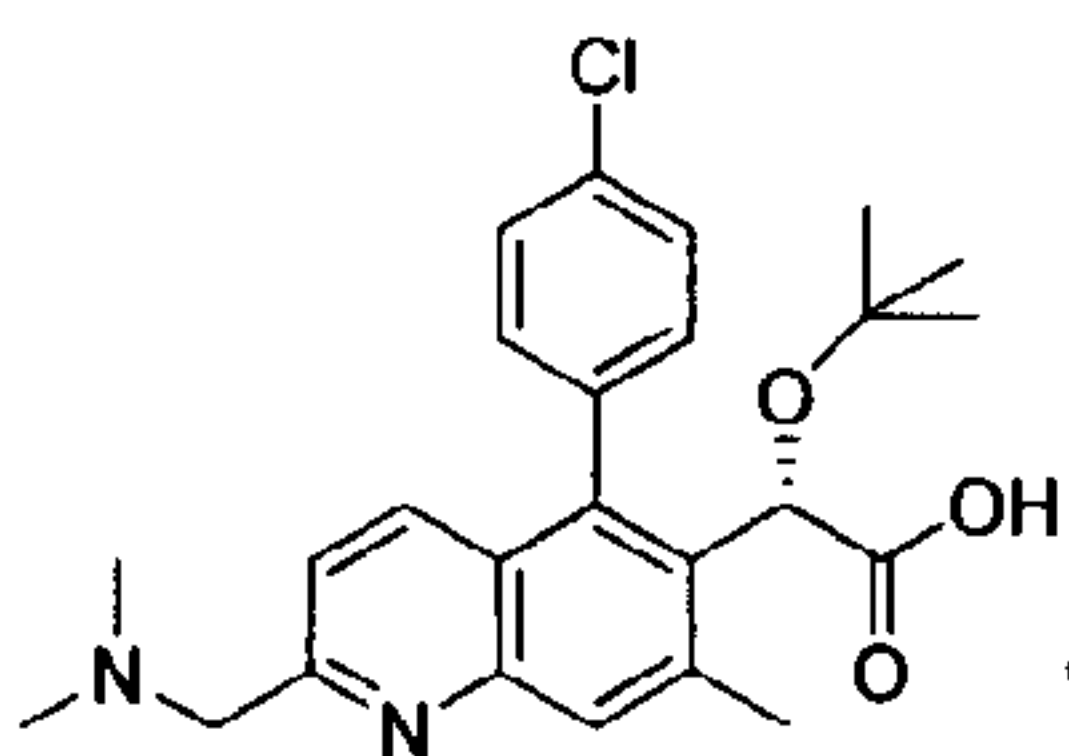
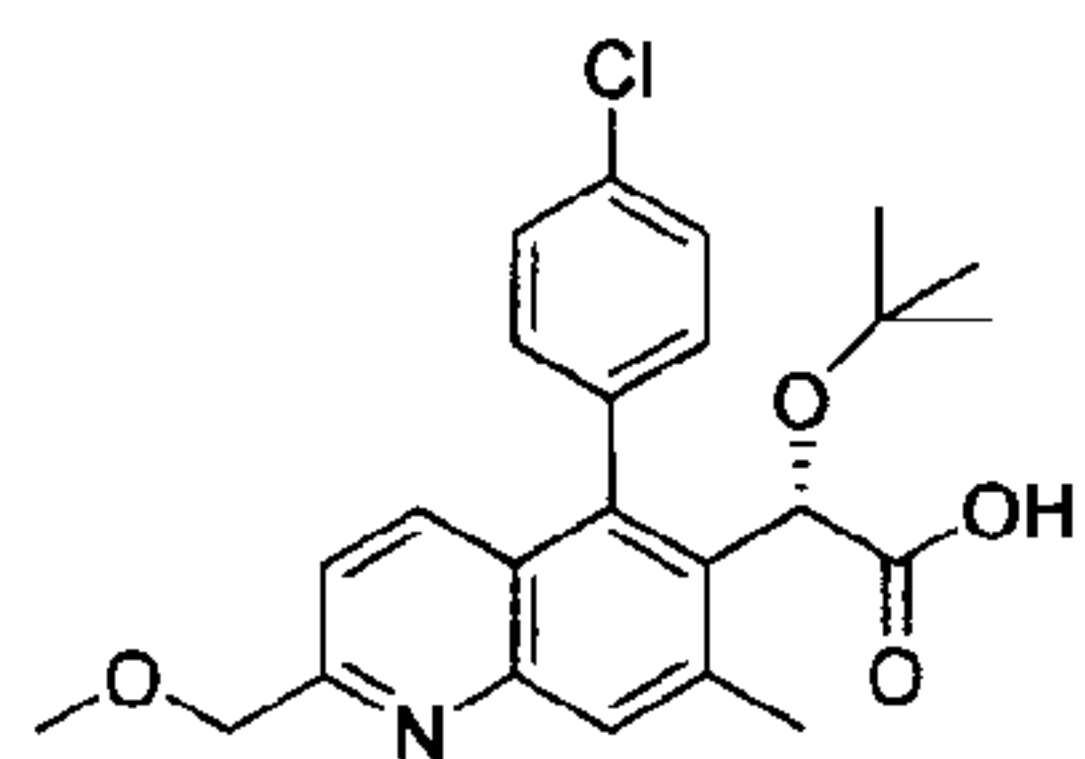
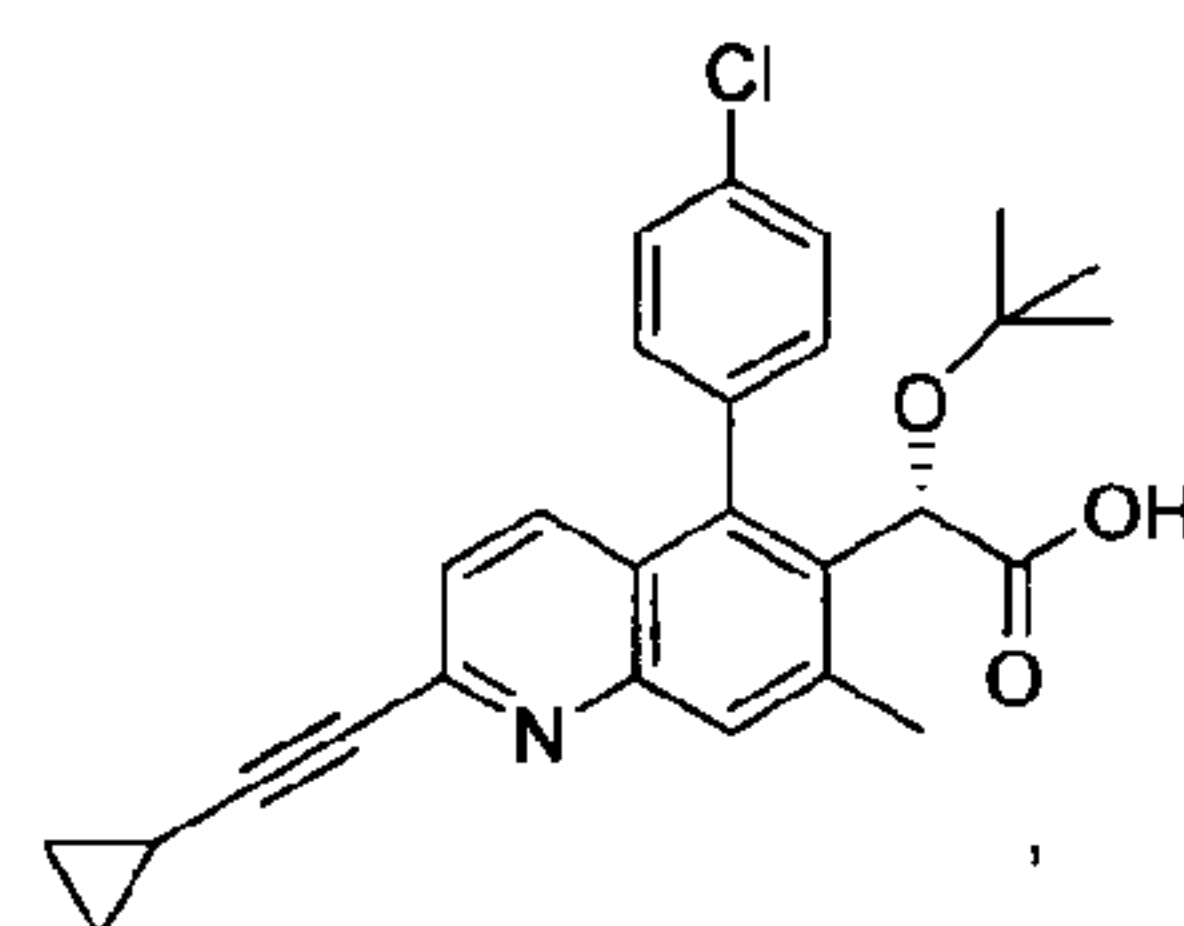
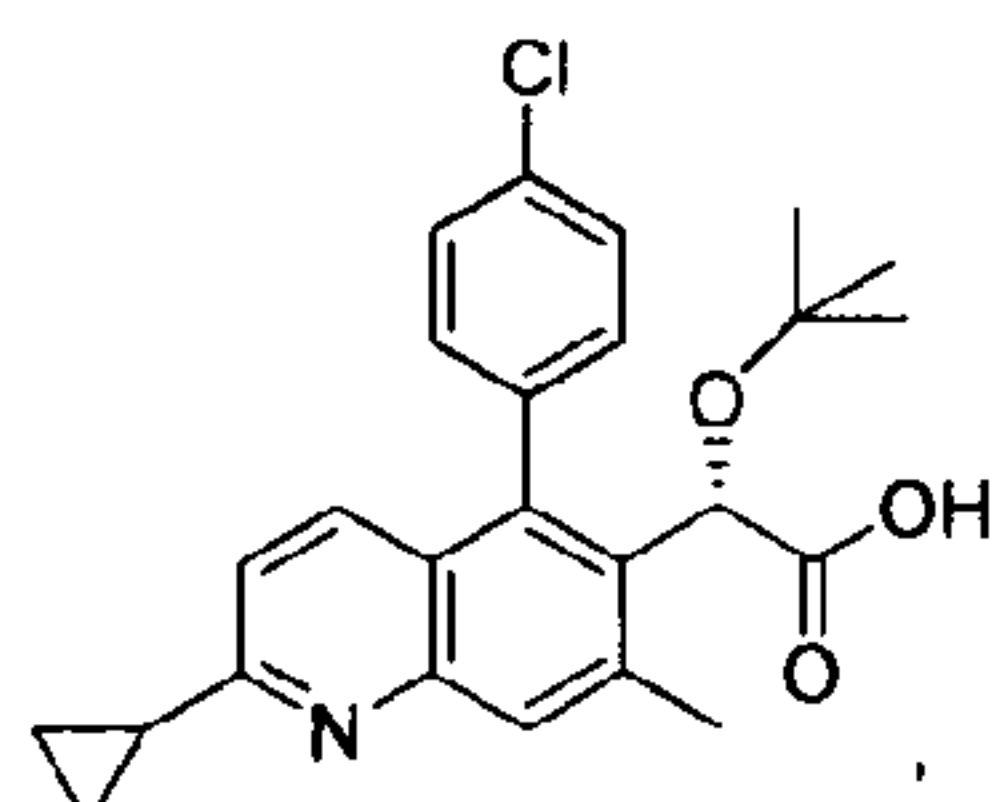
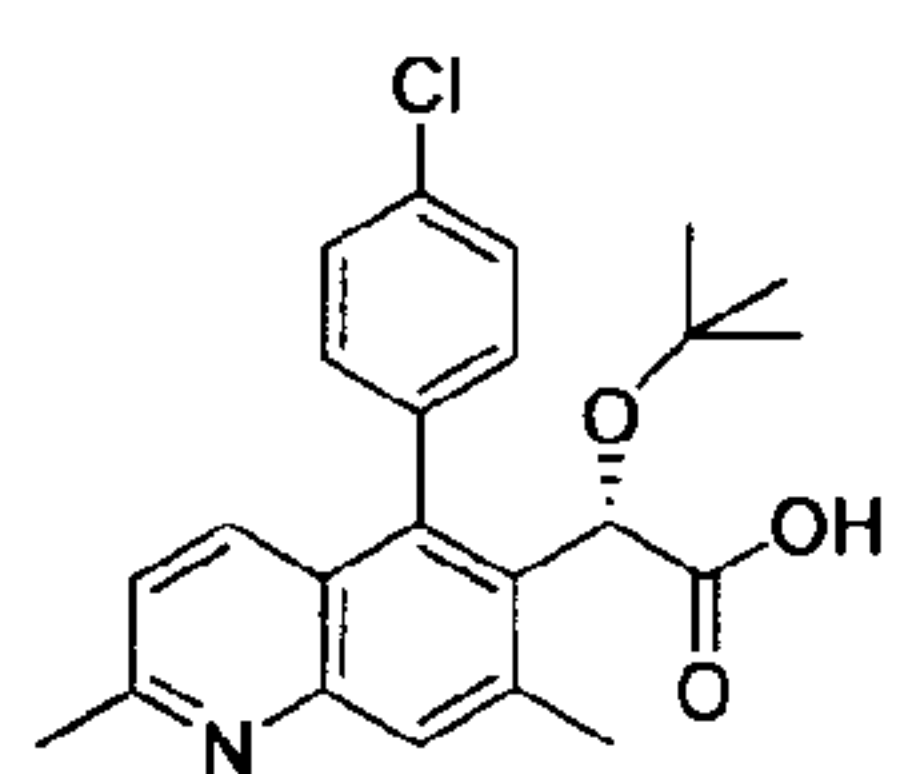
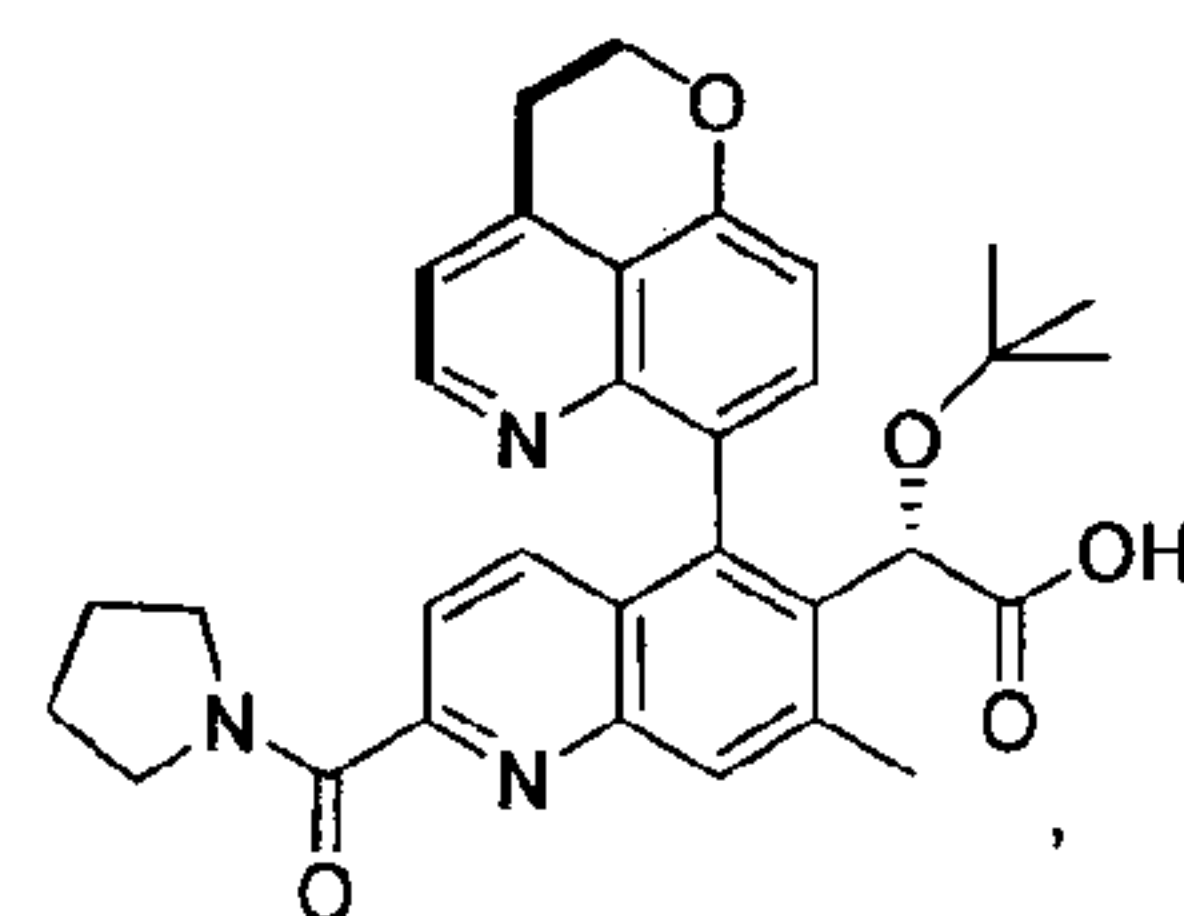
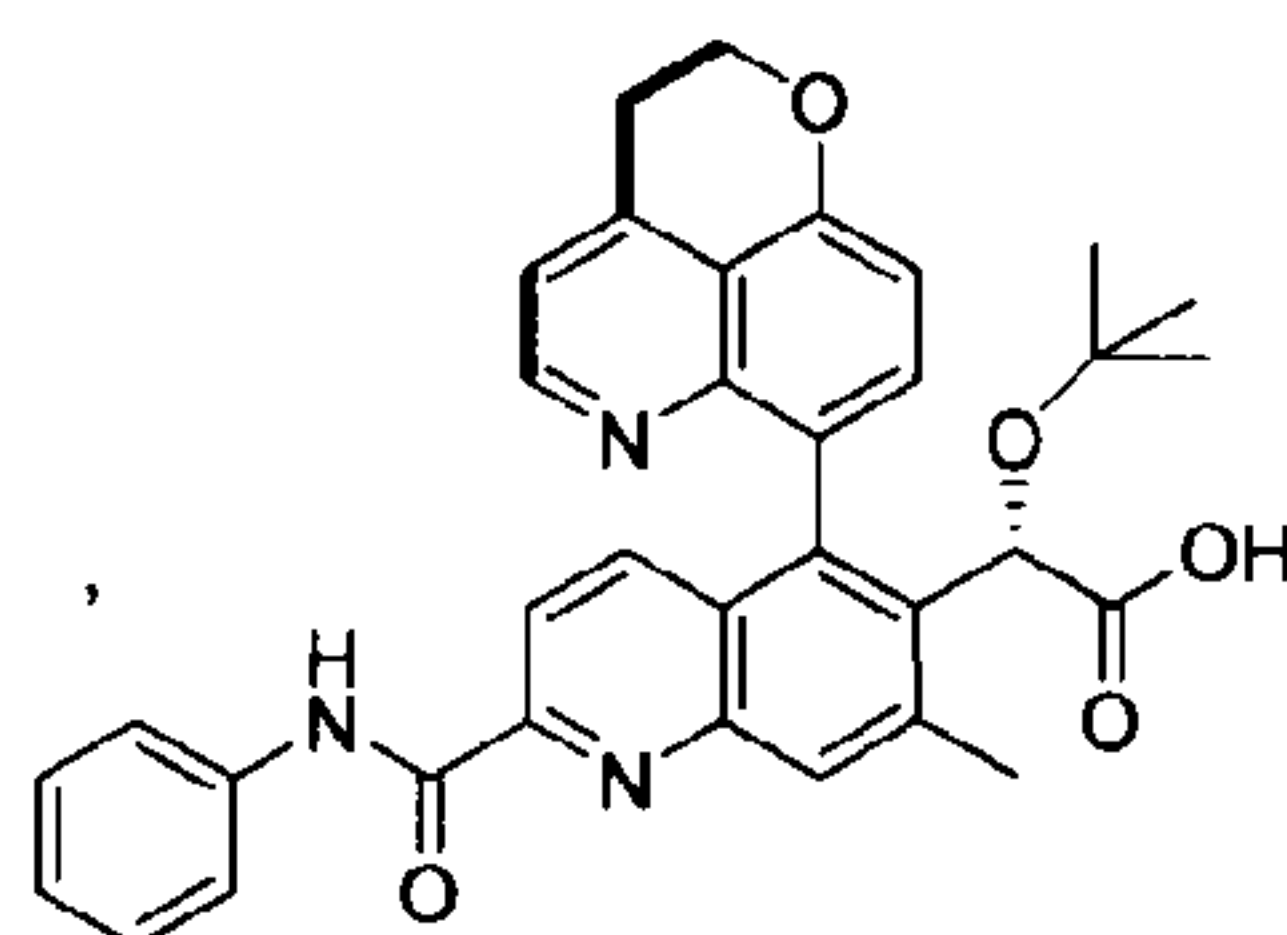
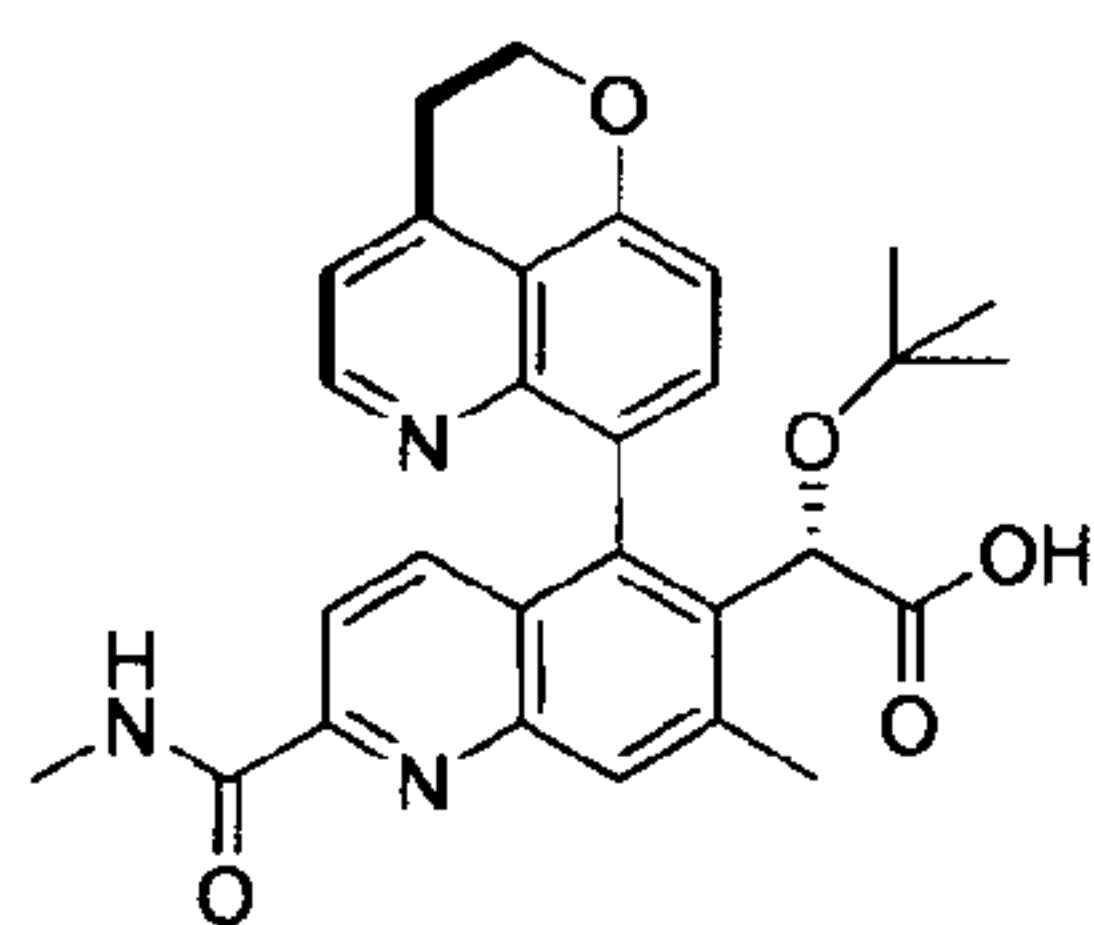
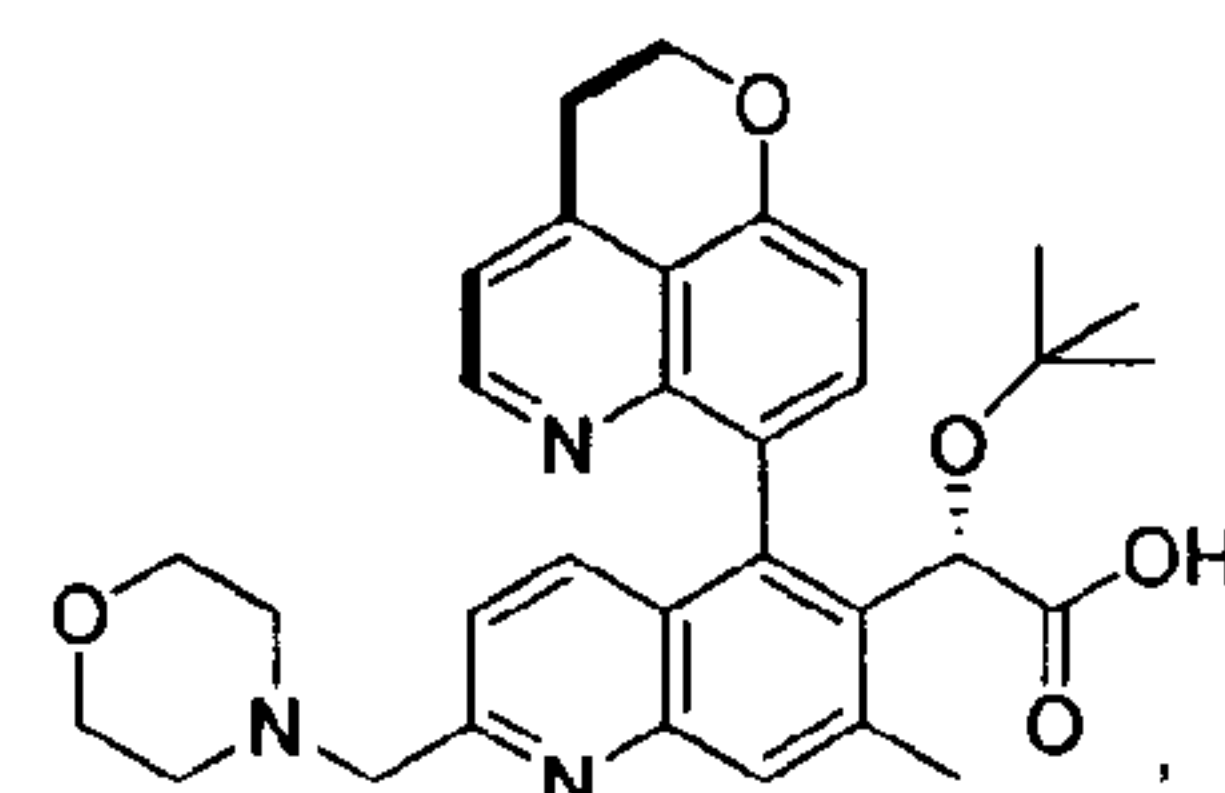
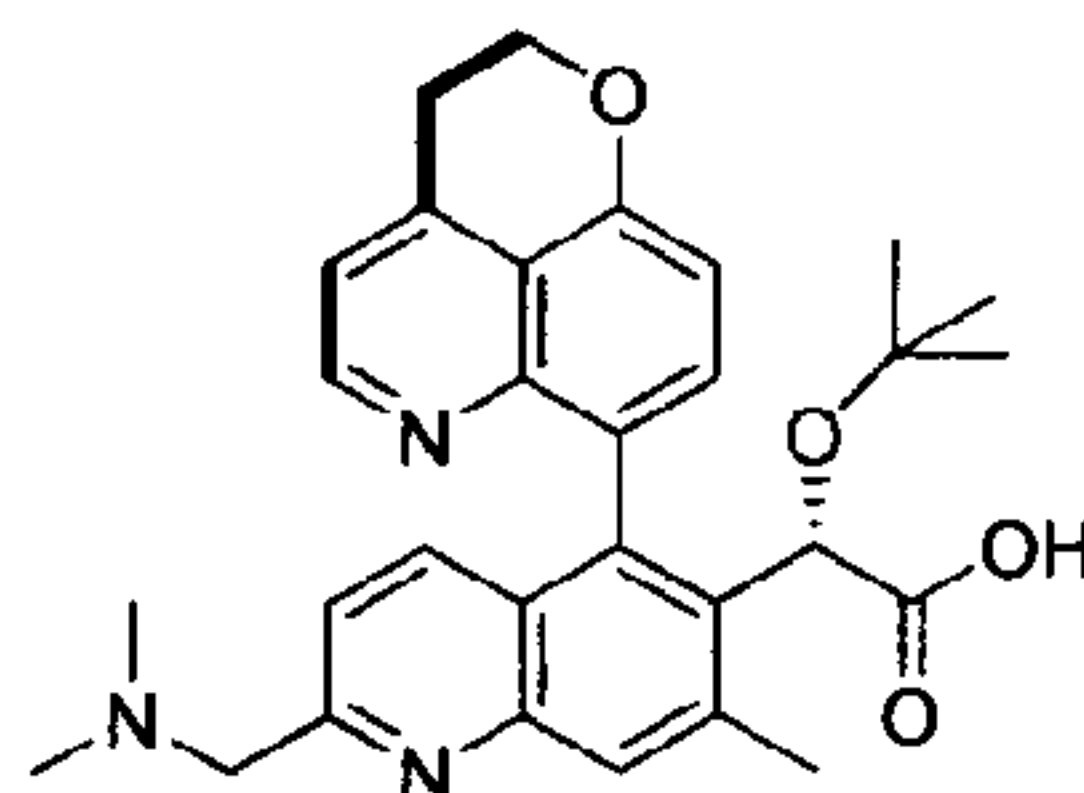
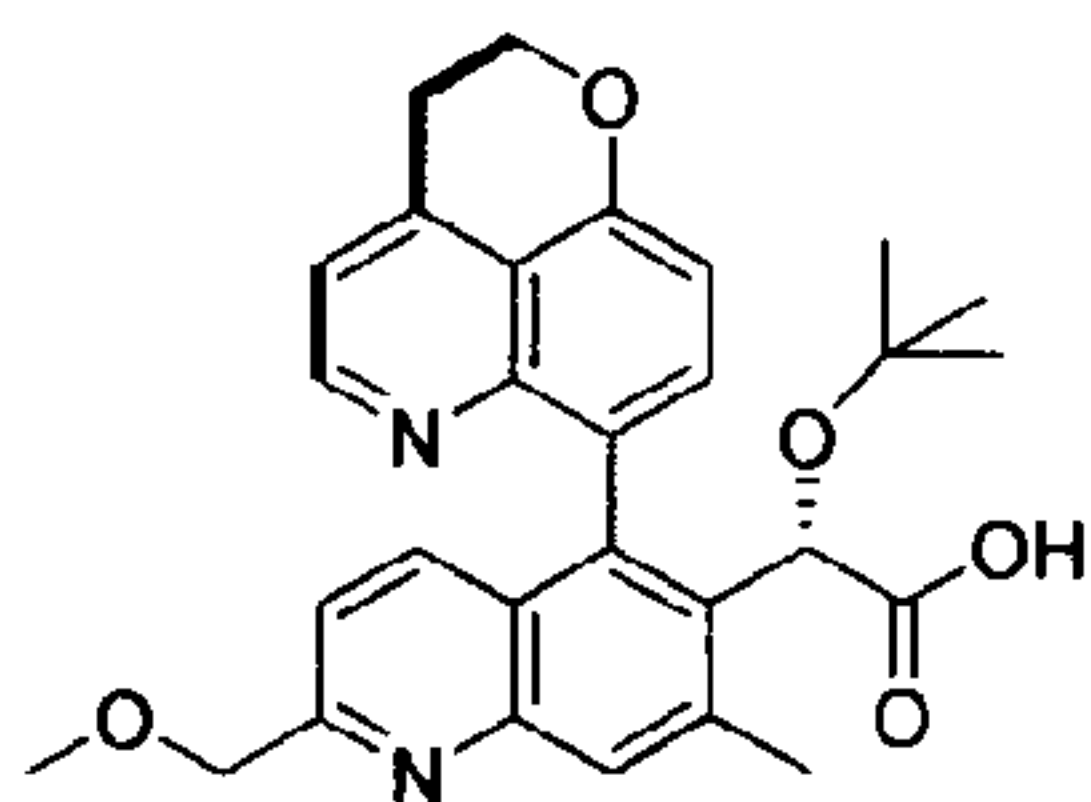
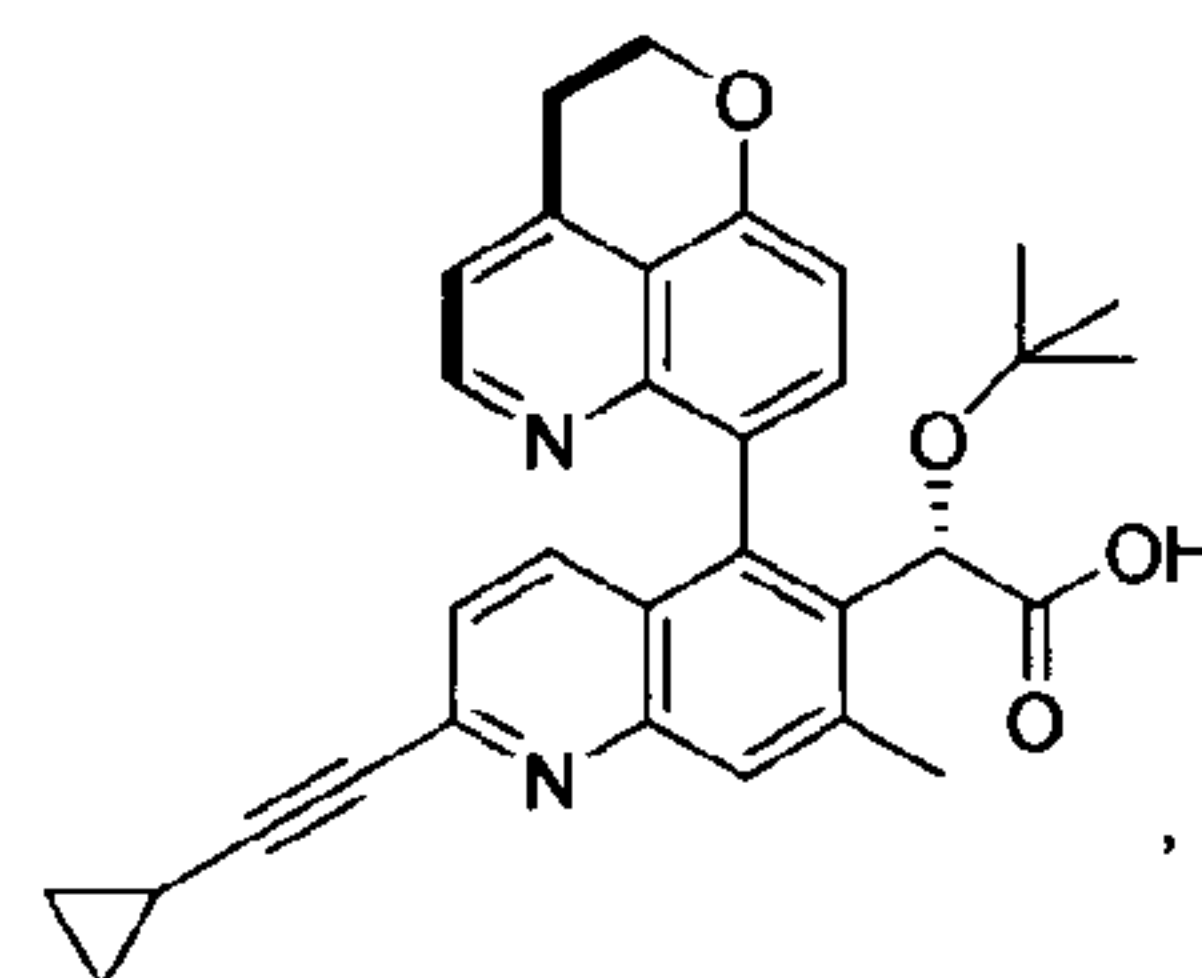
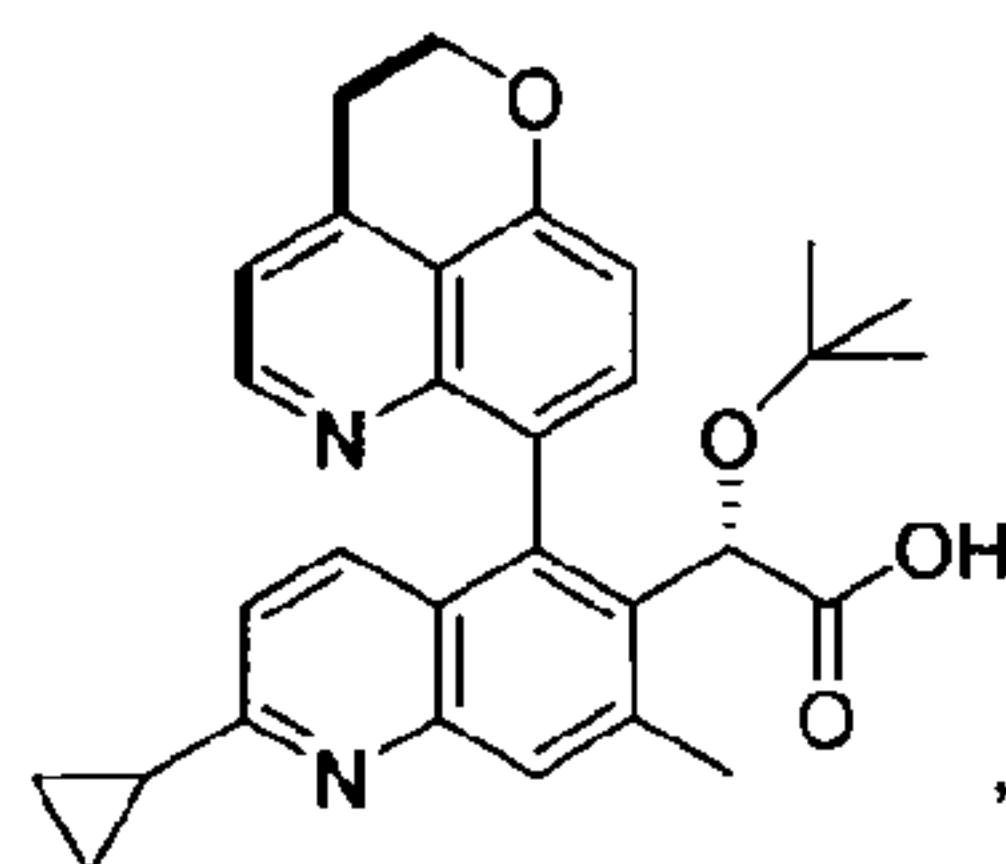
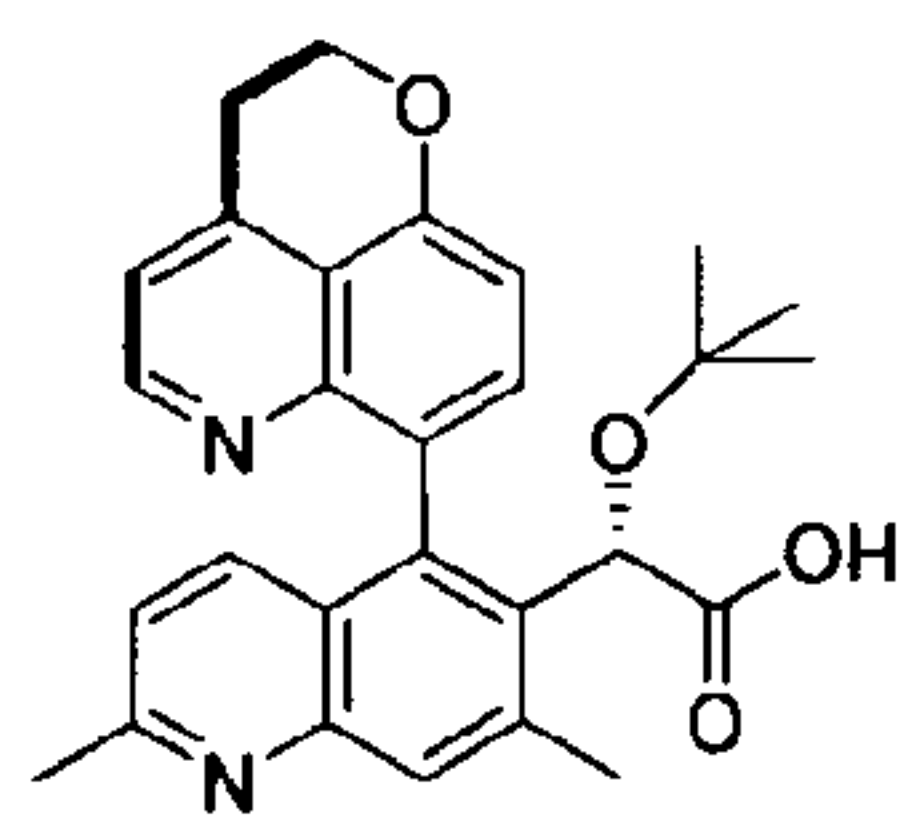
or a salt thereof.

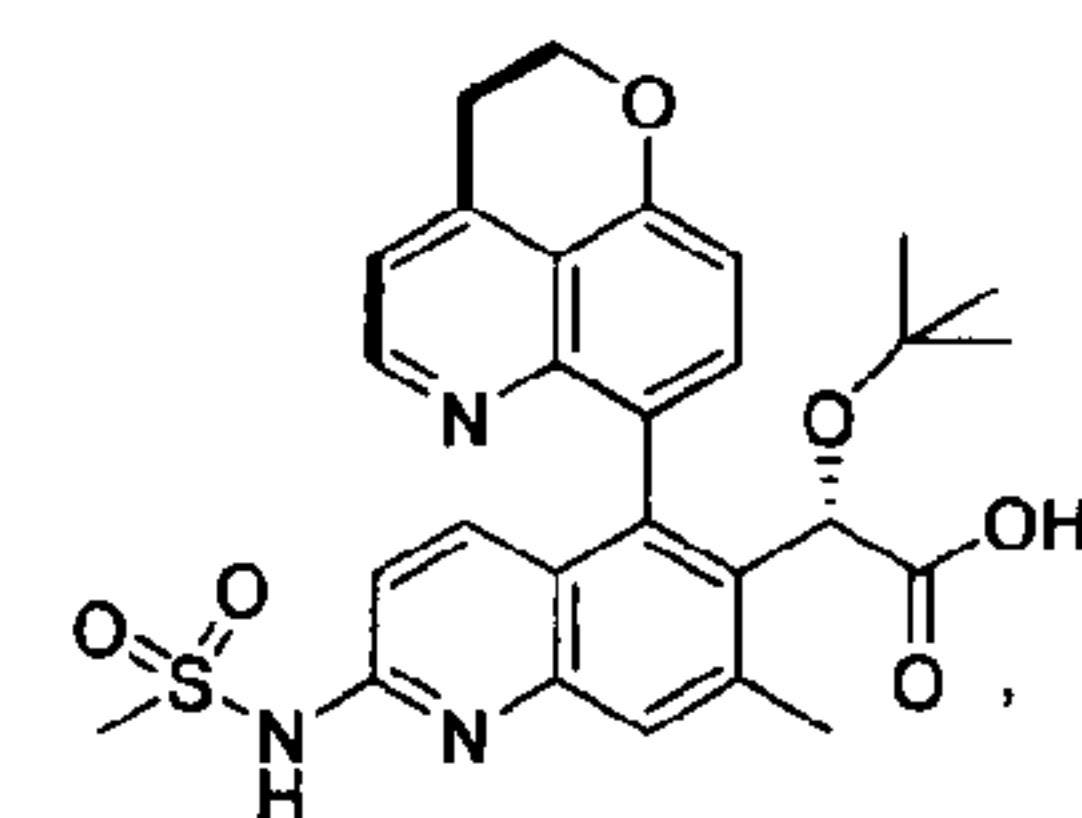
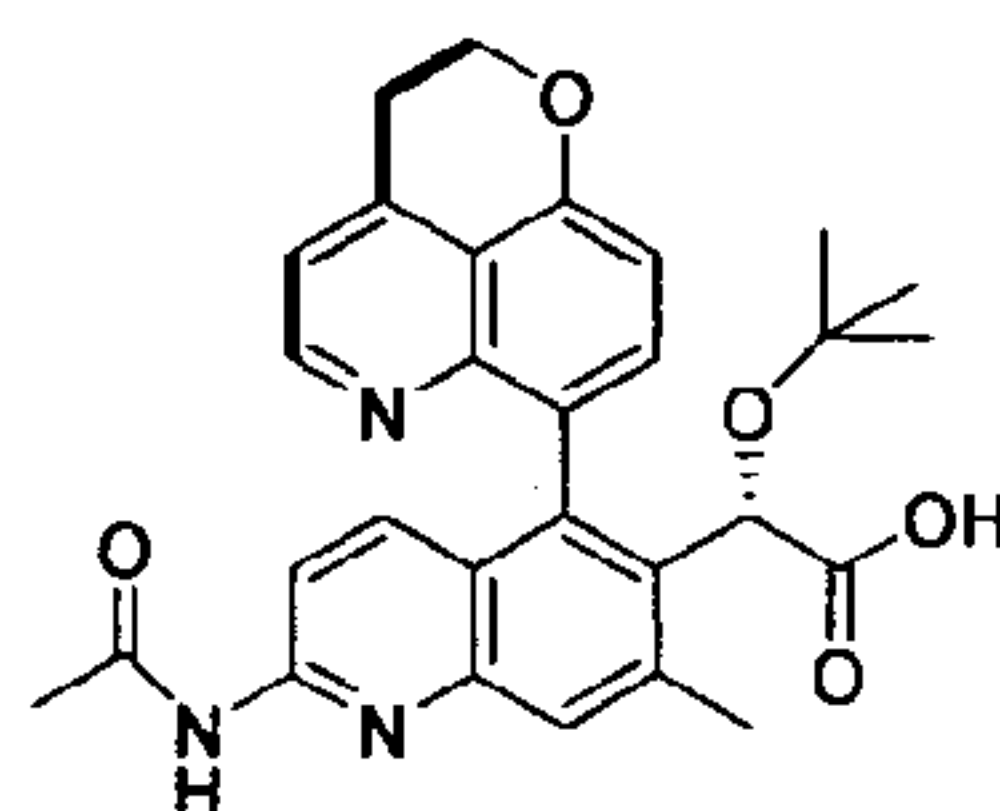
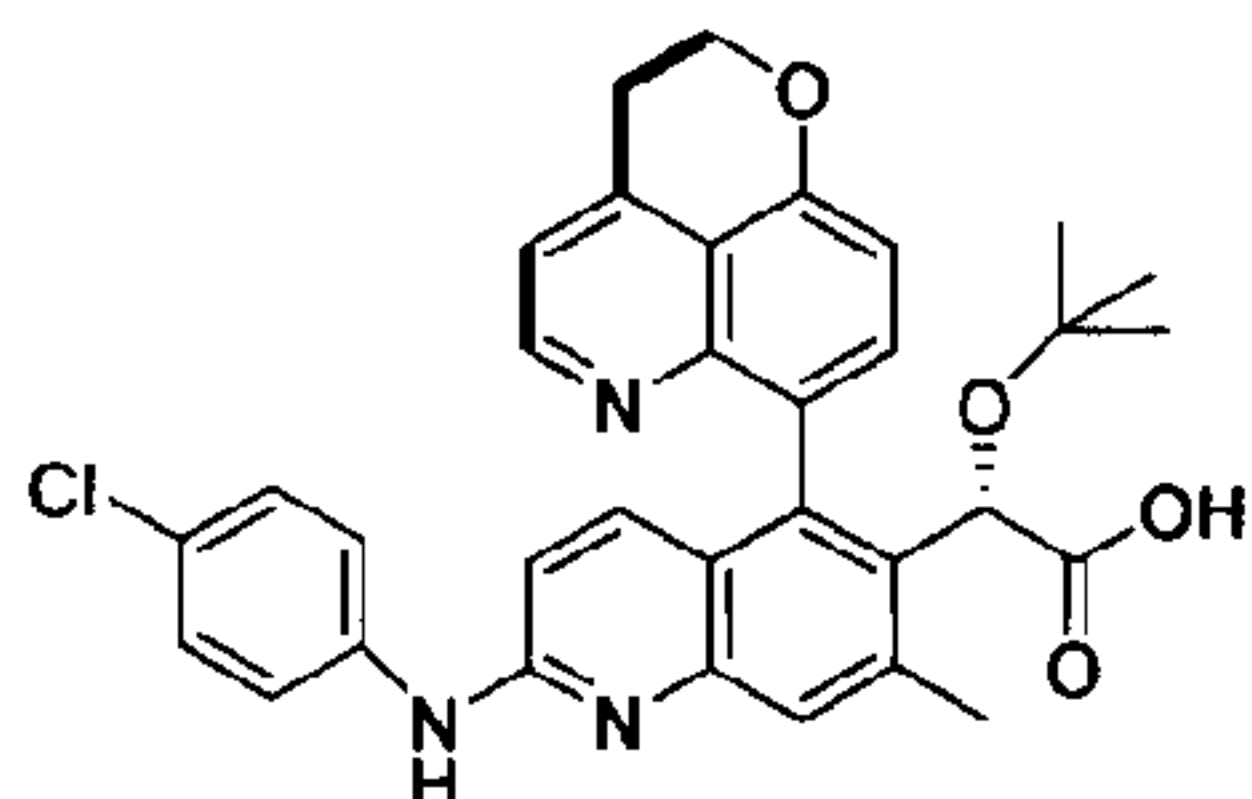
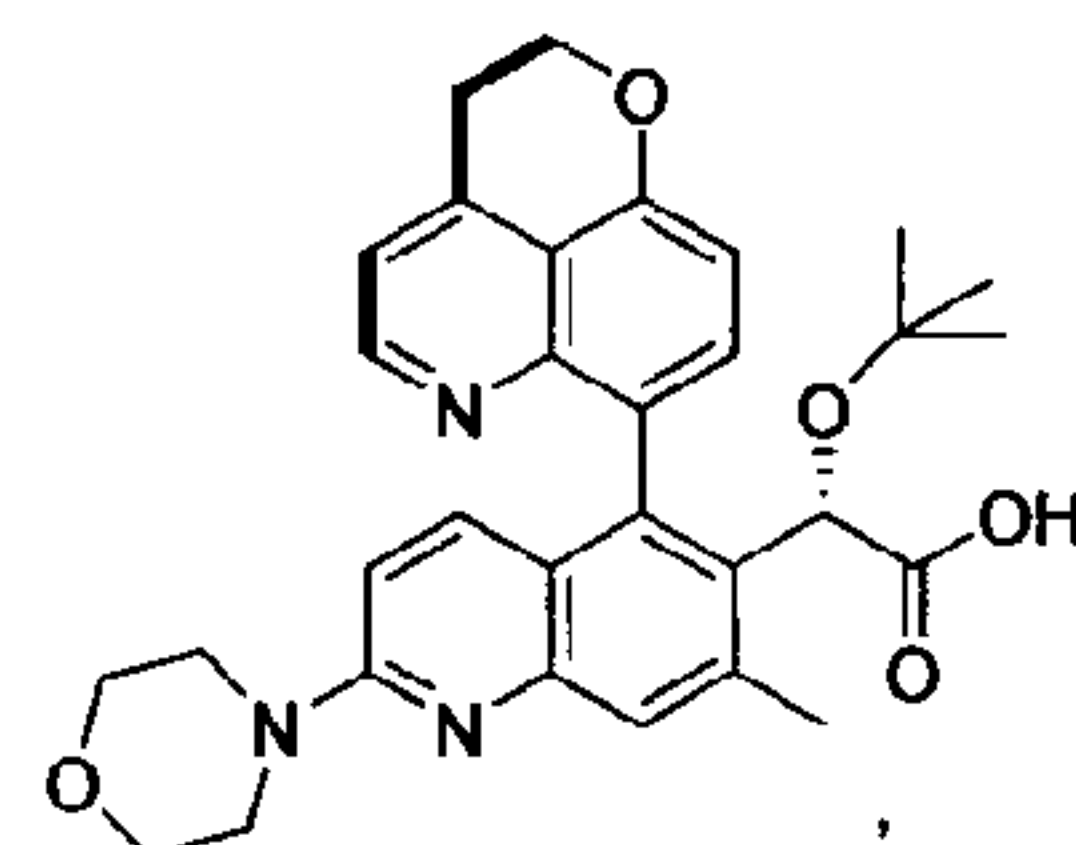
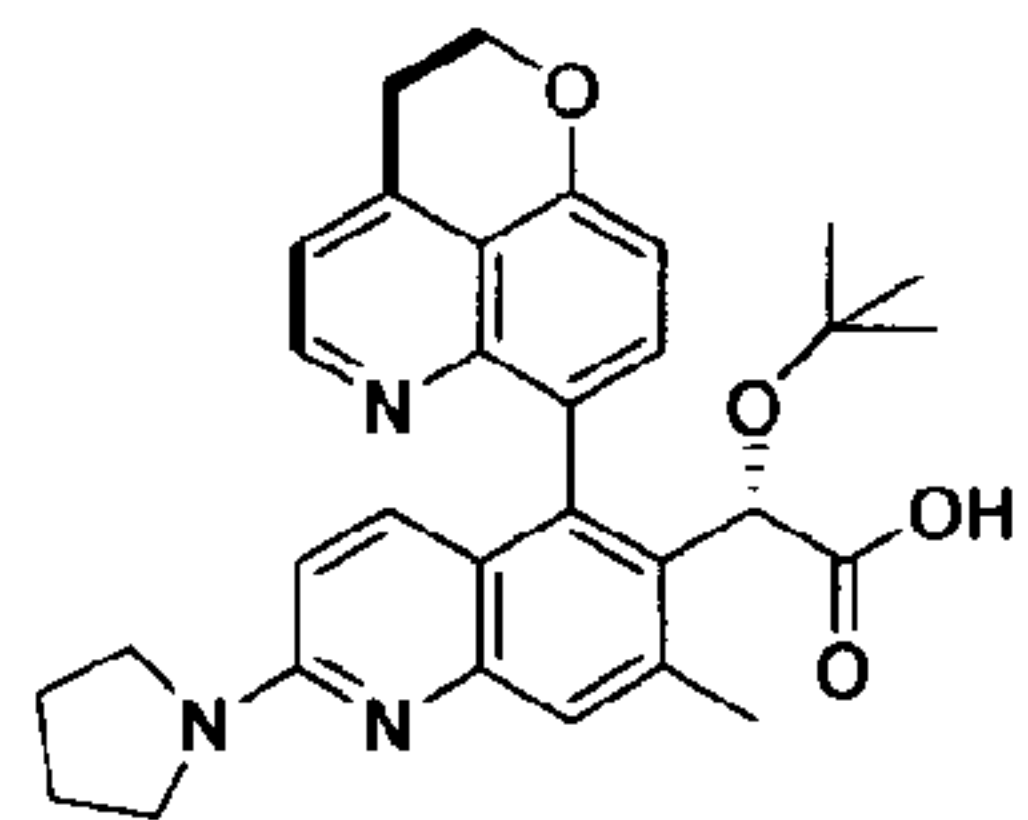
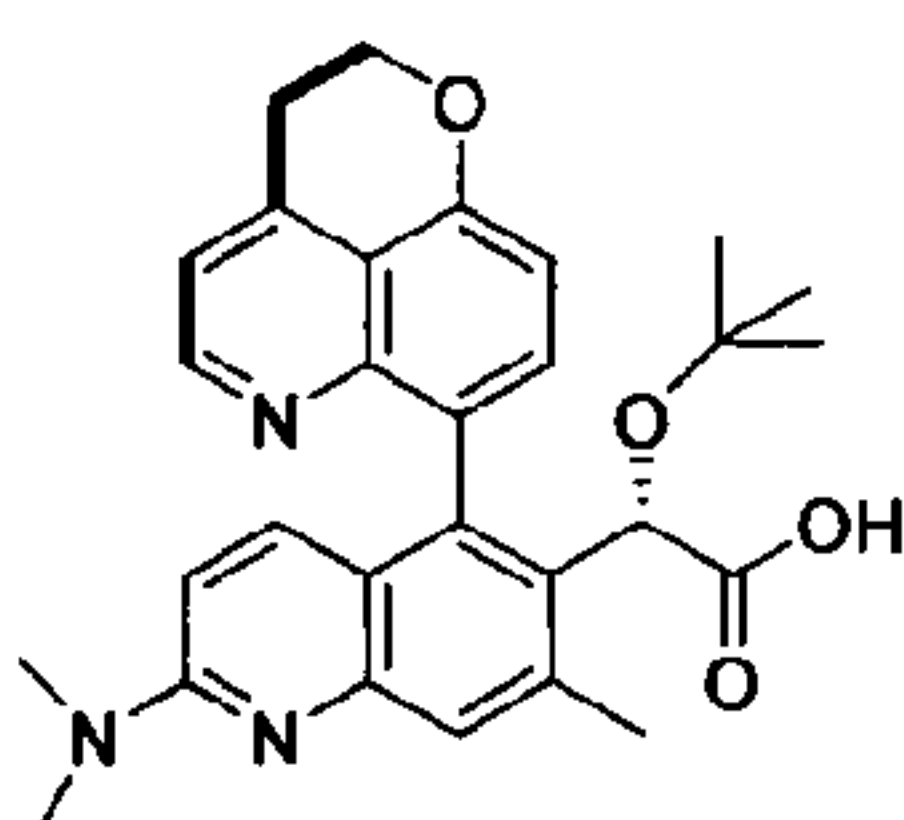
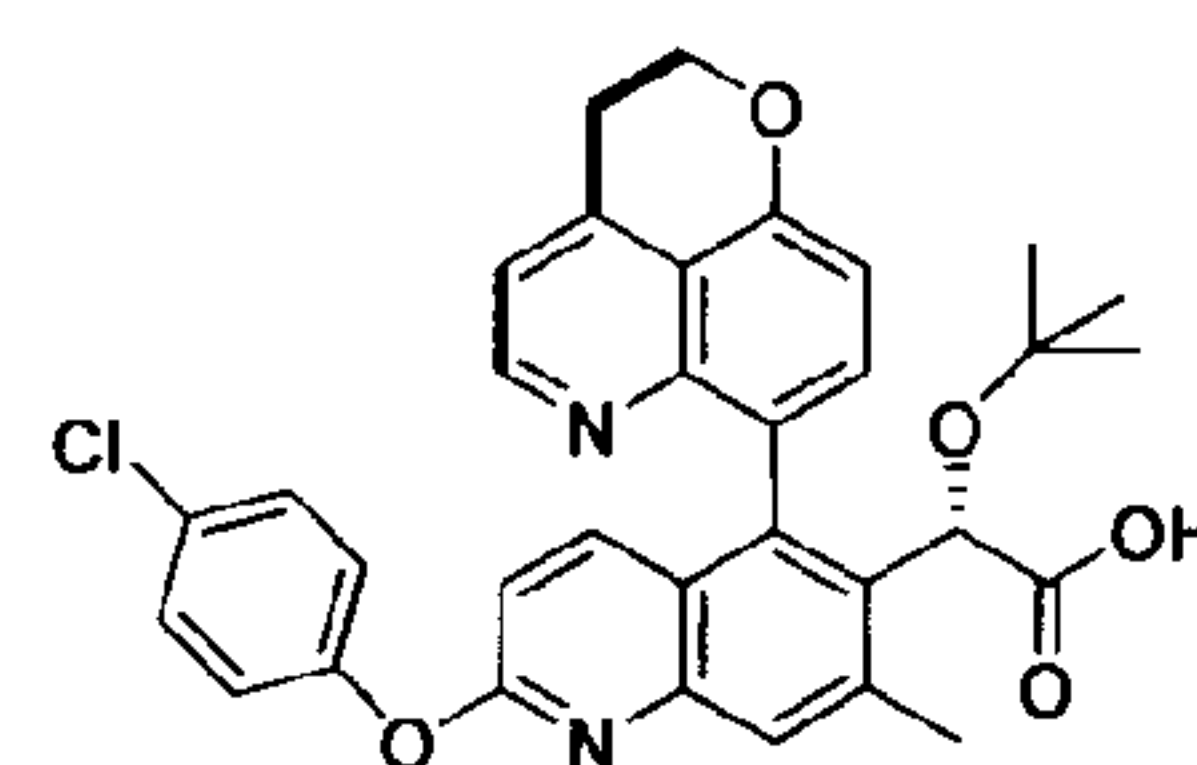
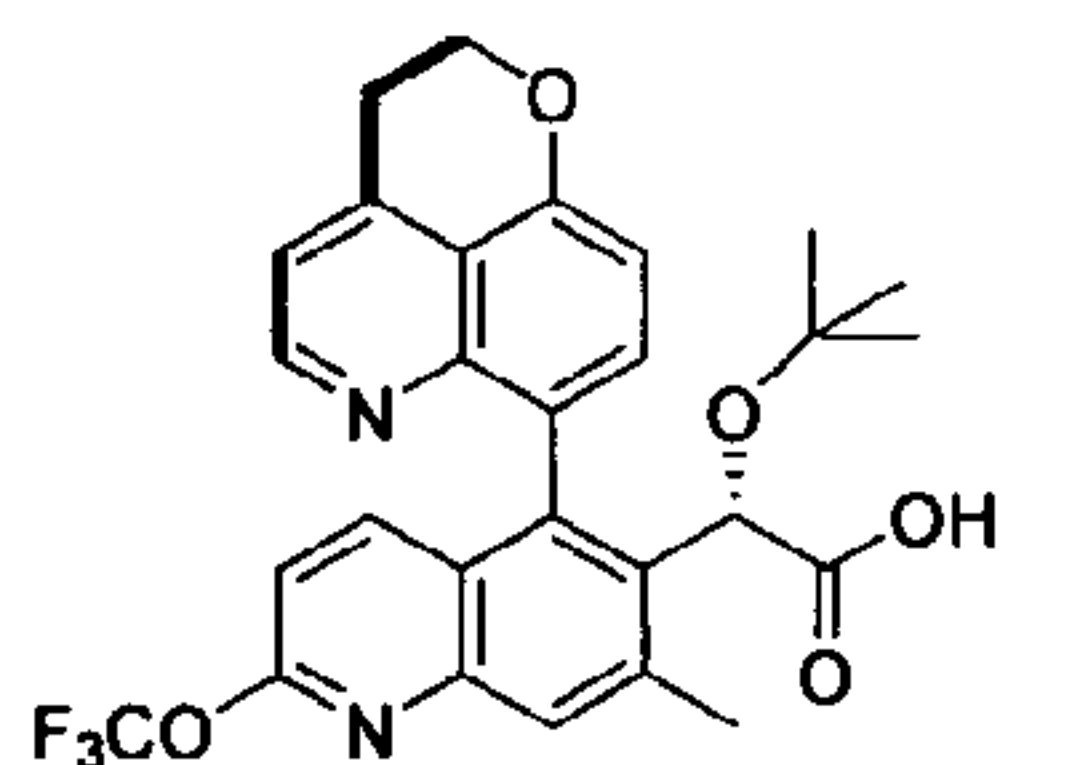
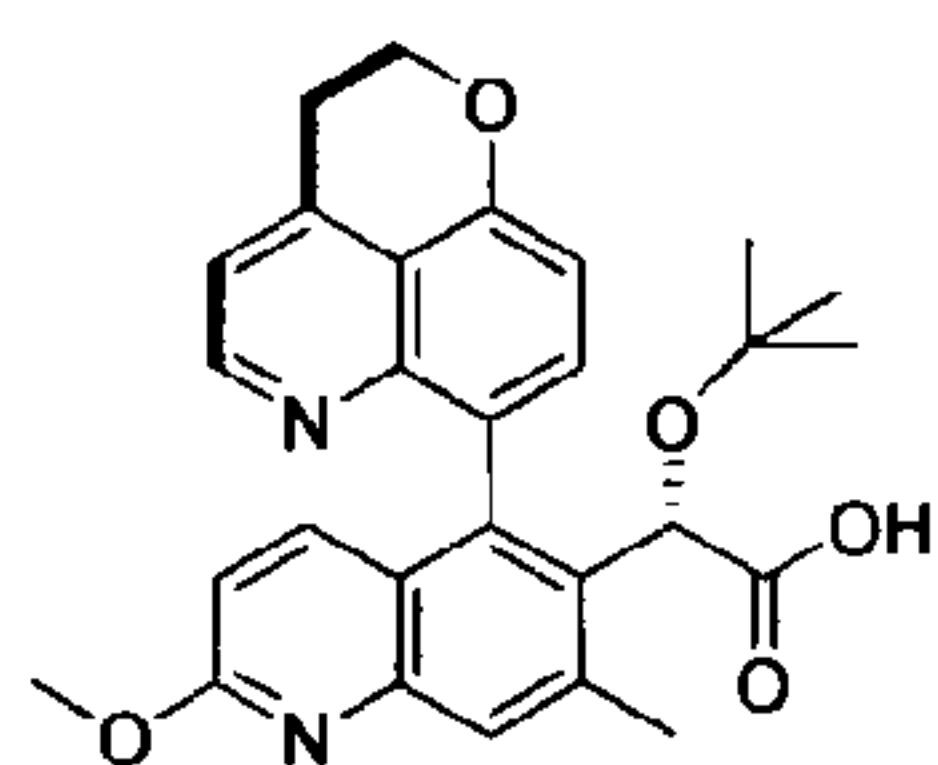
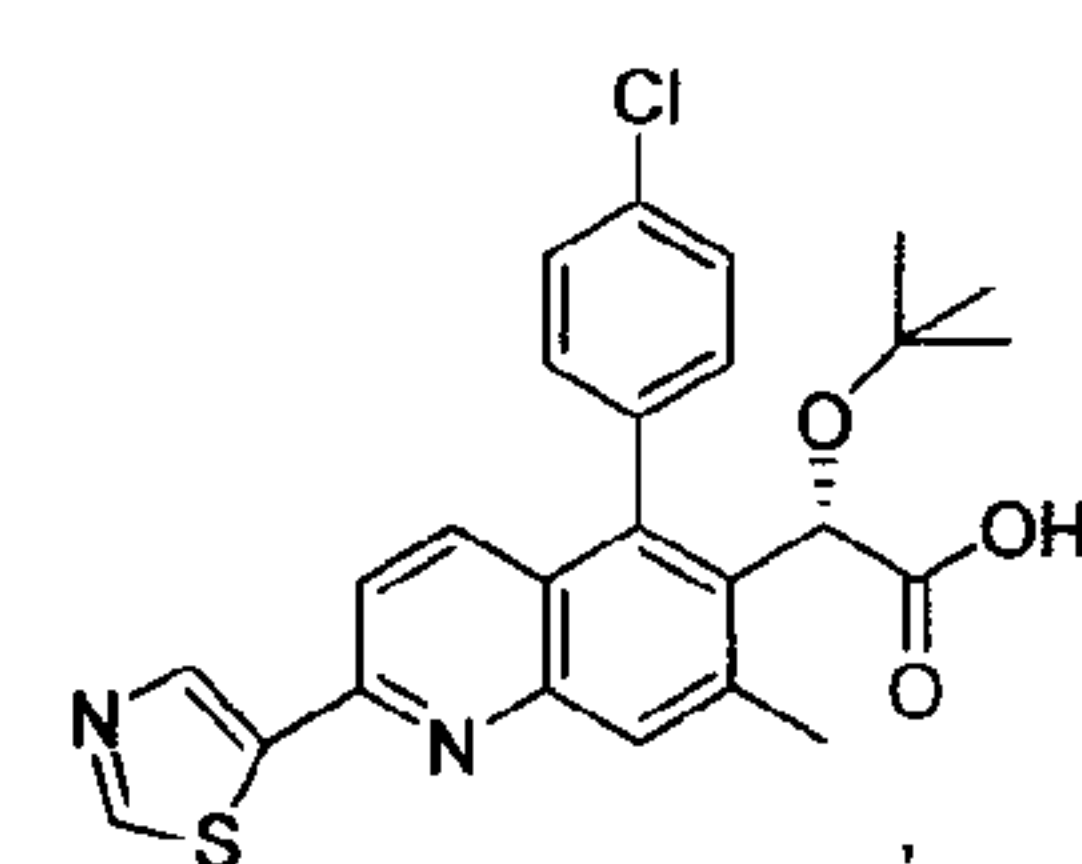
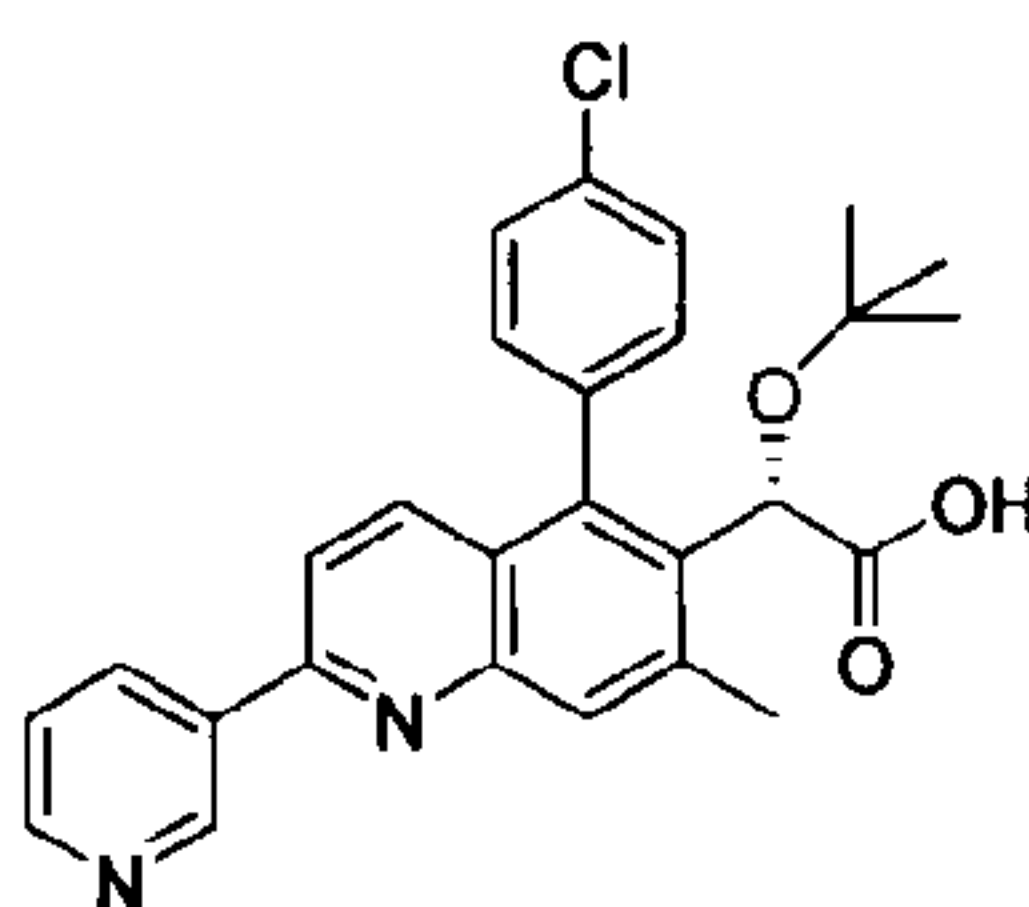
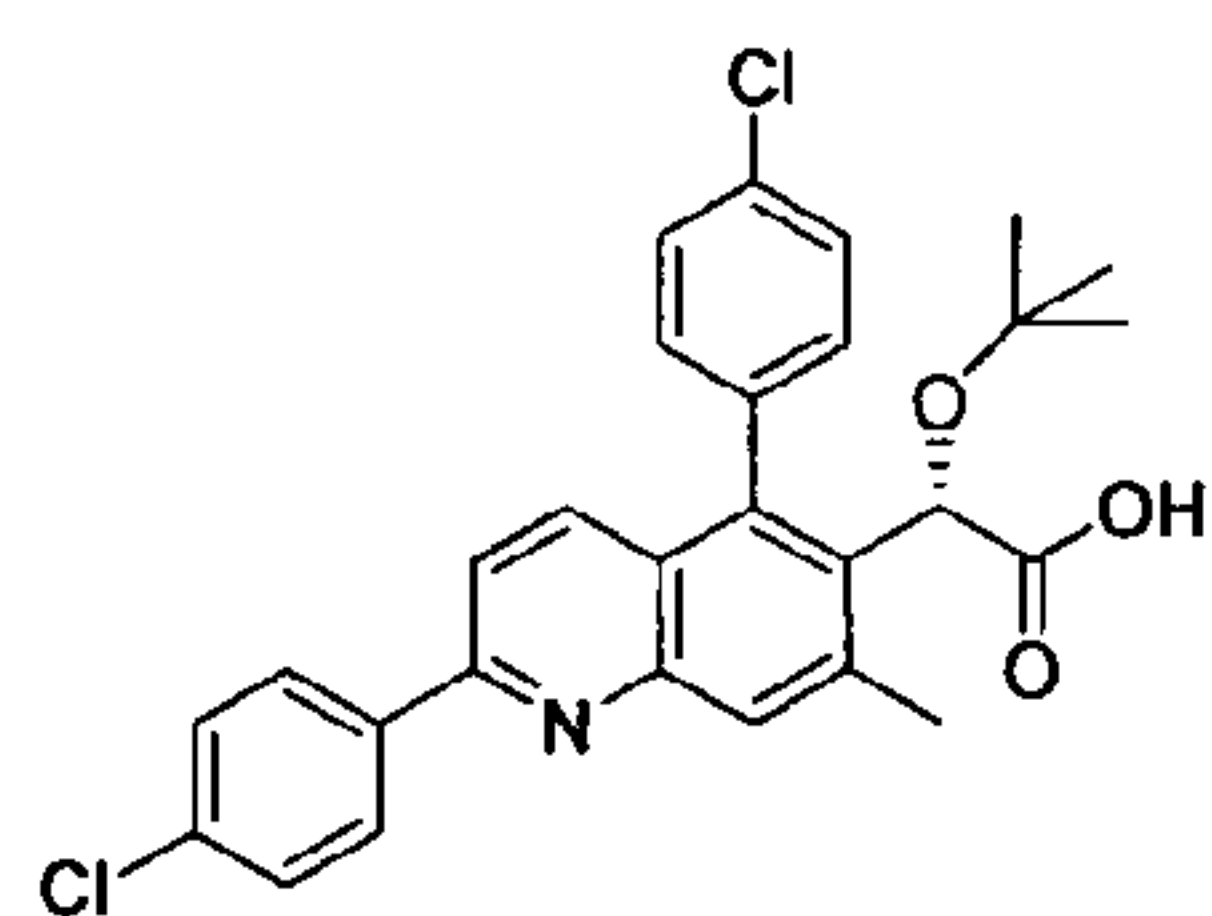
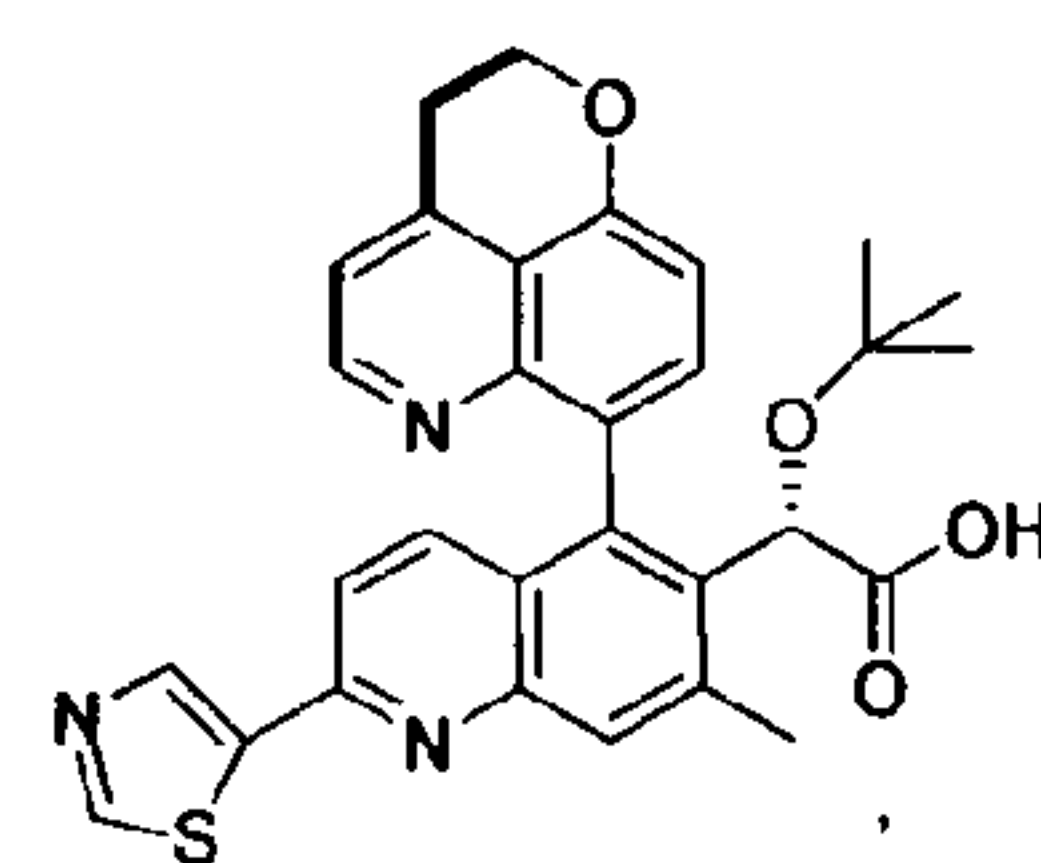
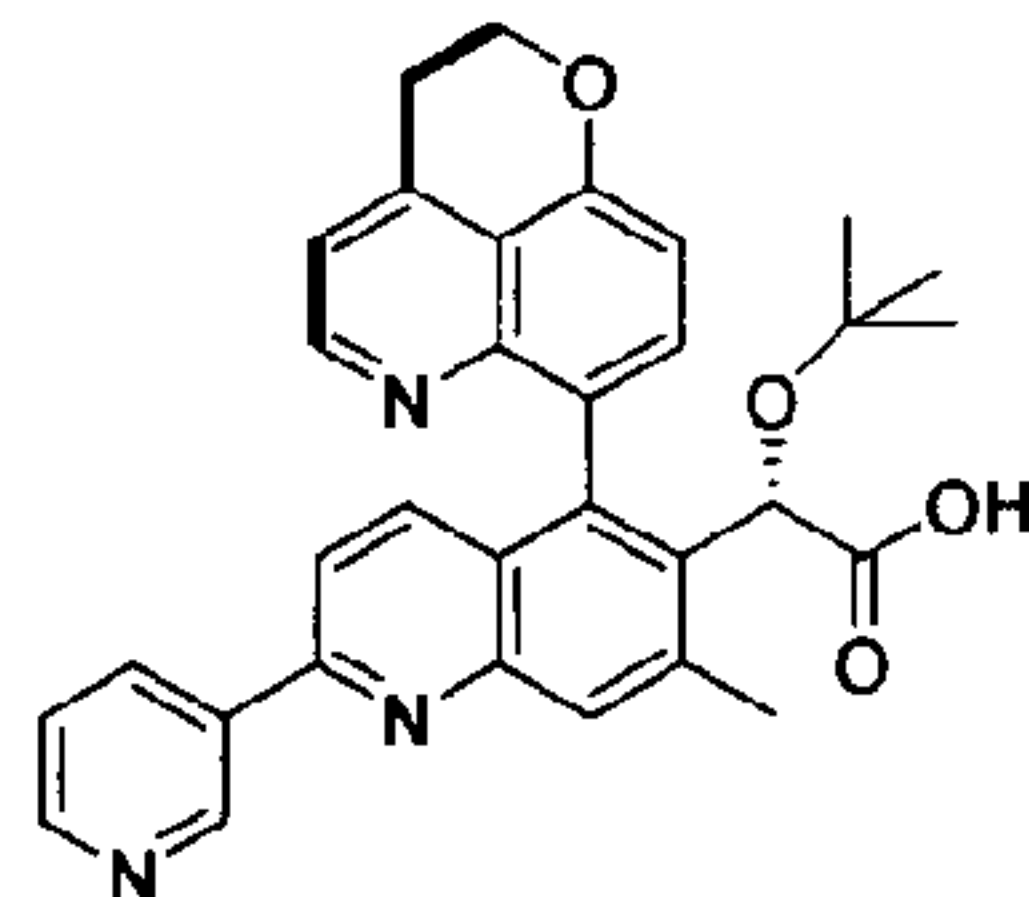
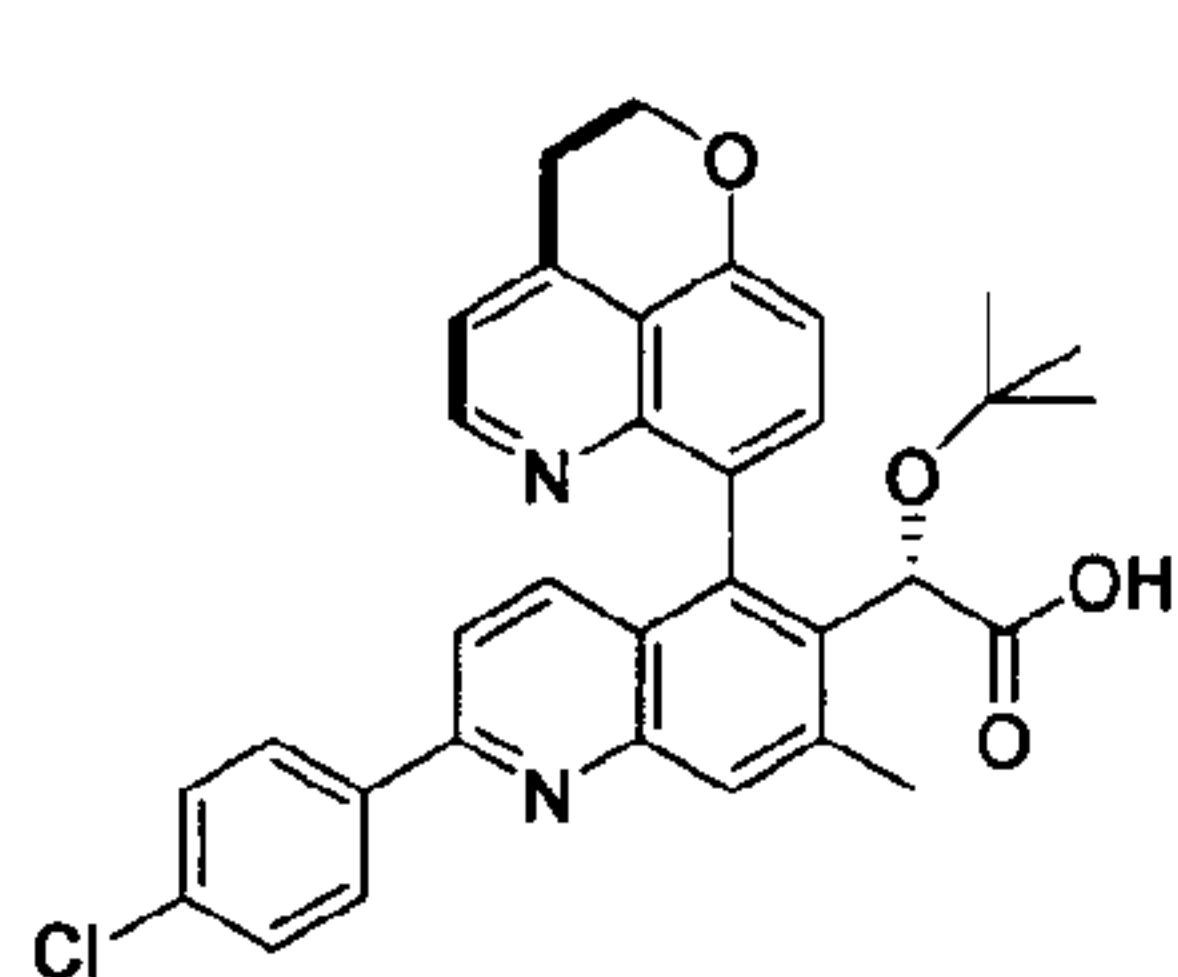
In one embodiment, the compounds of formula I include:

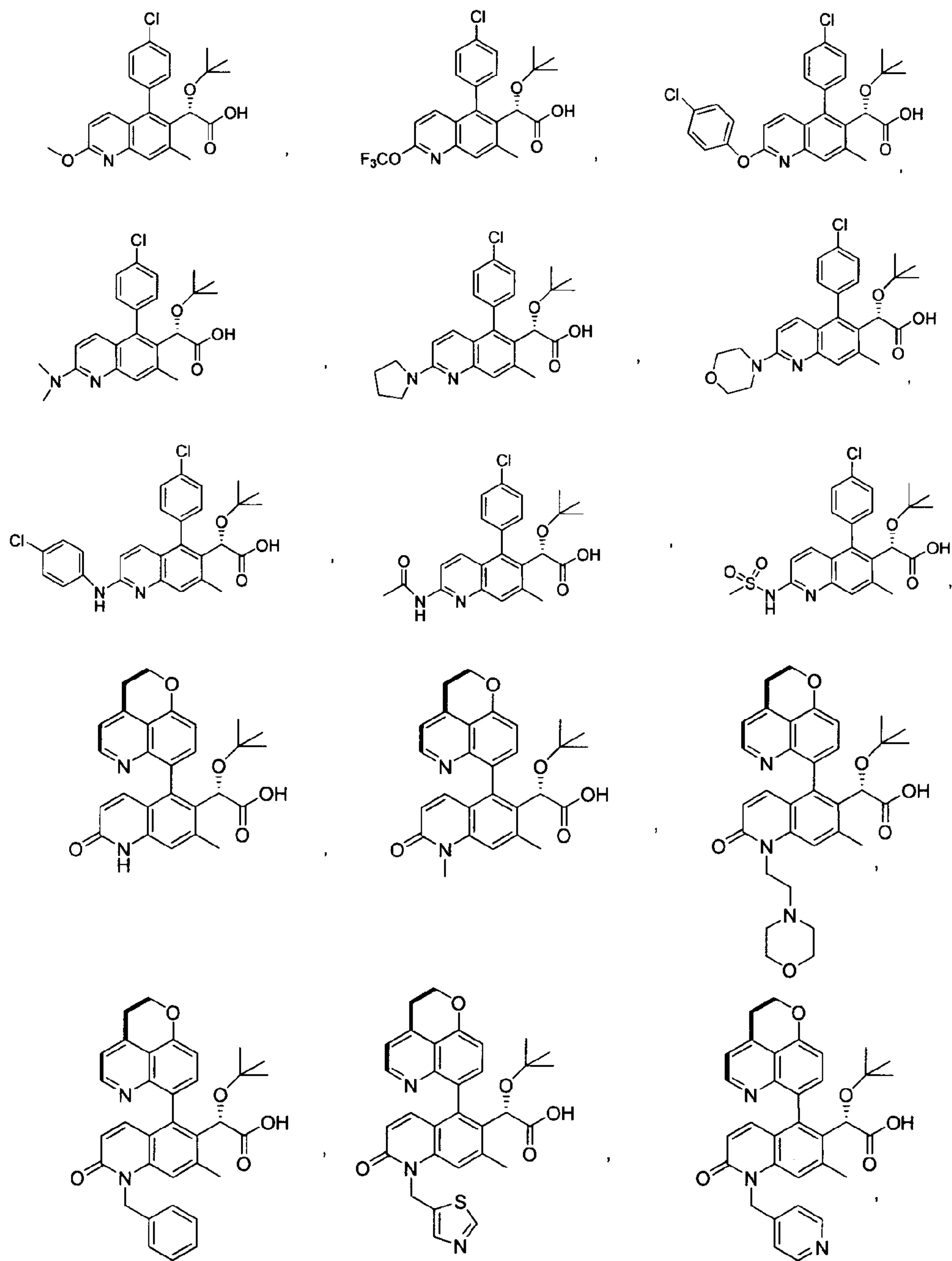


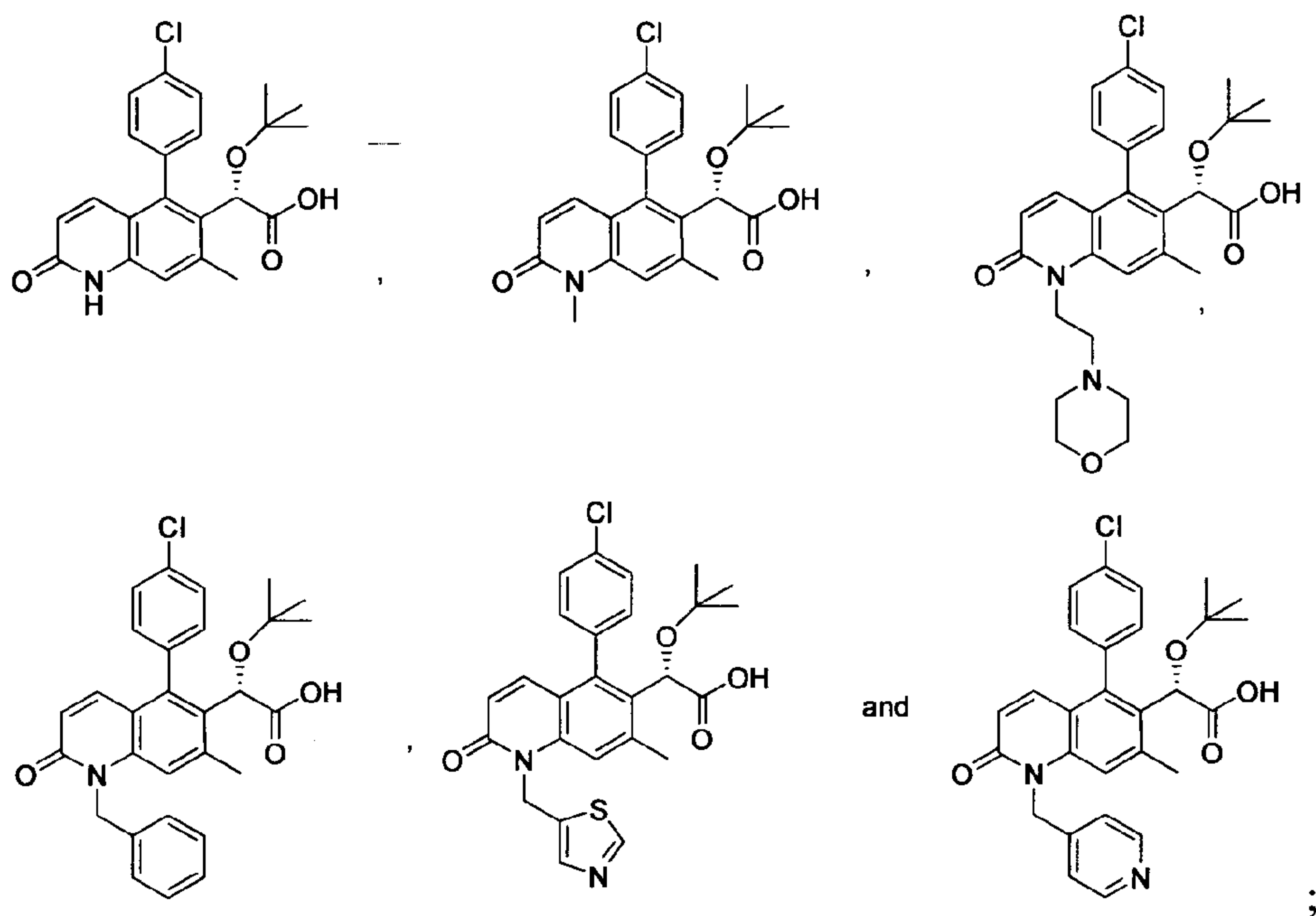
and salts thereof.

In another embodiment, the compounds of formula I include:



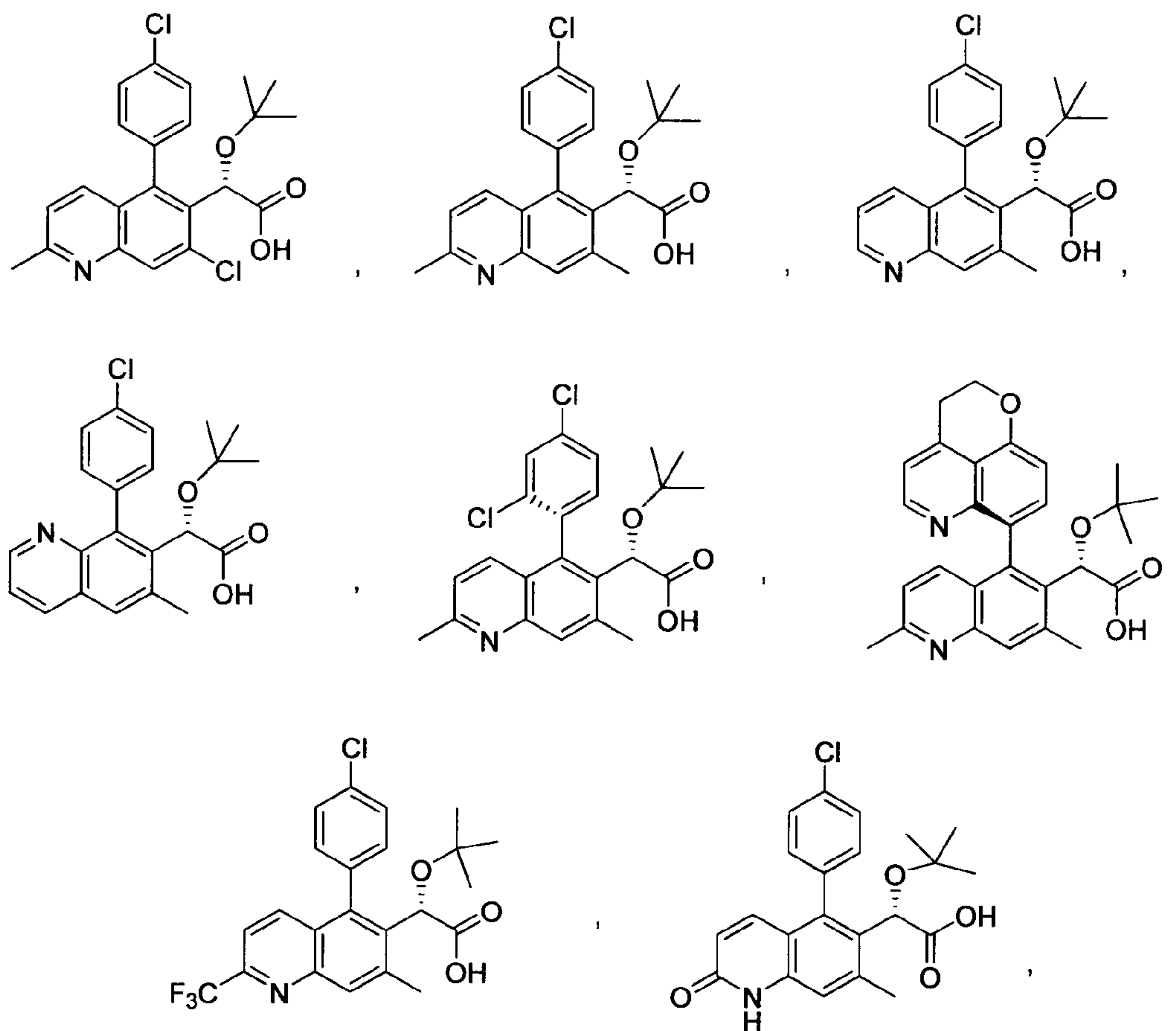


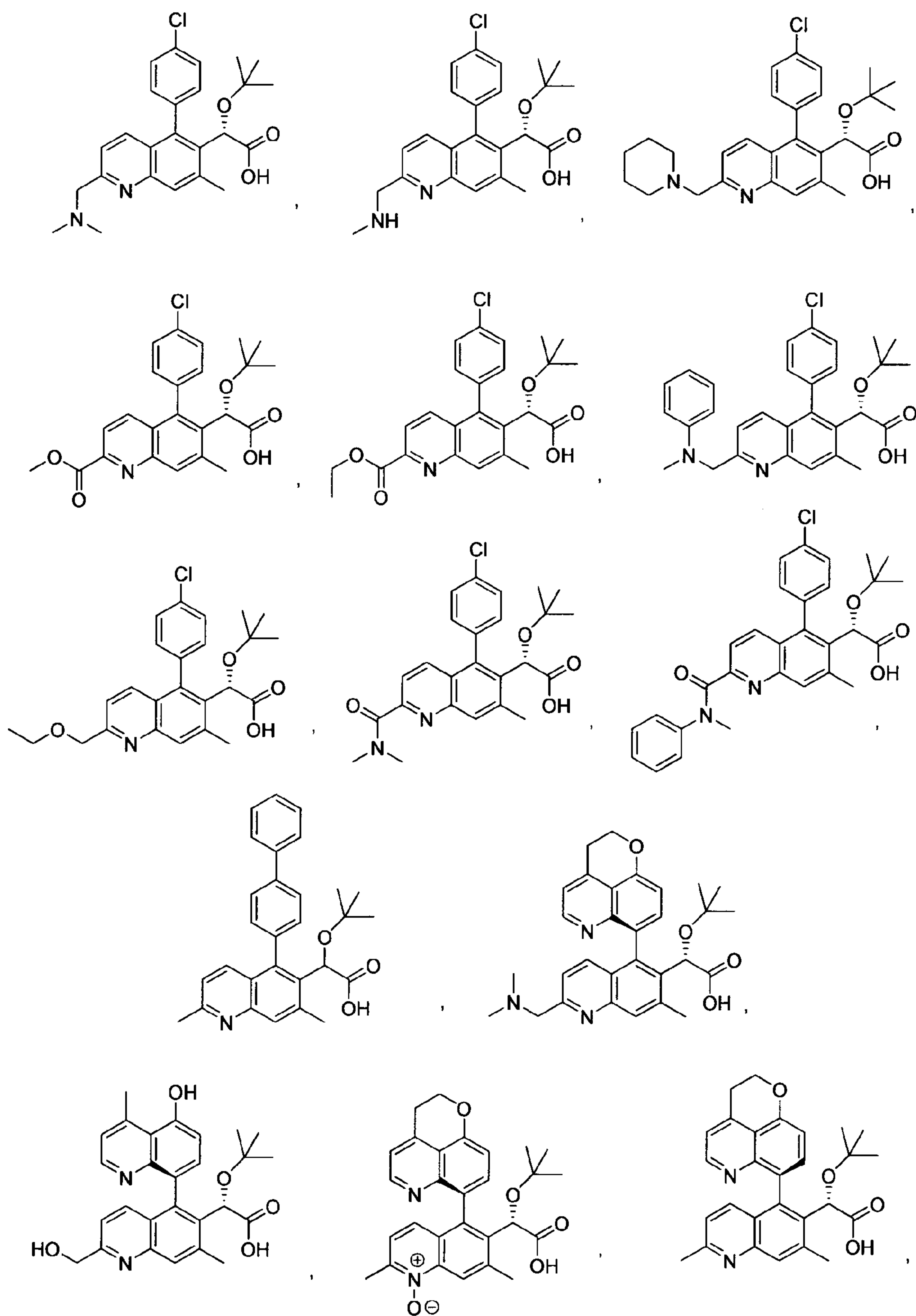


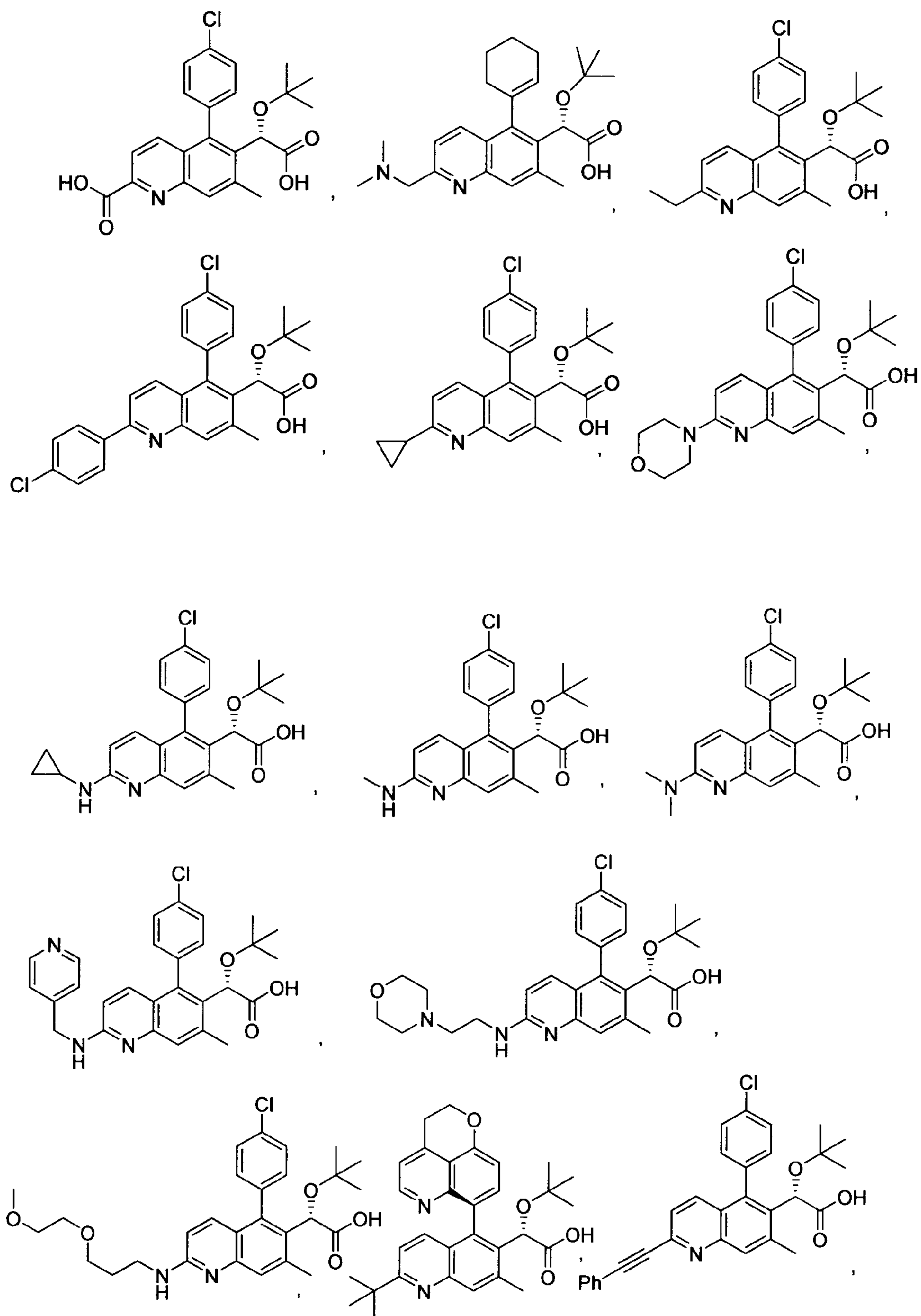


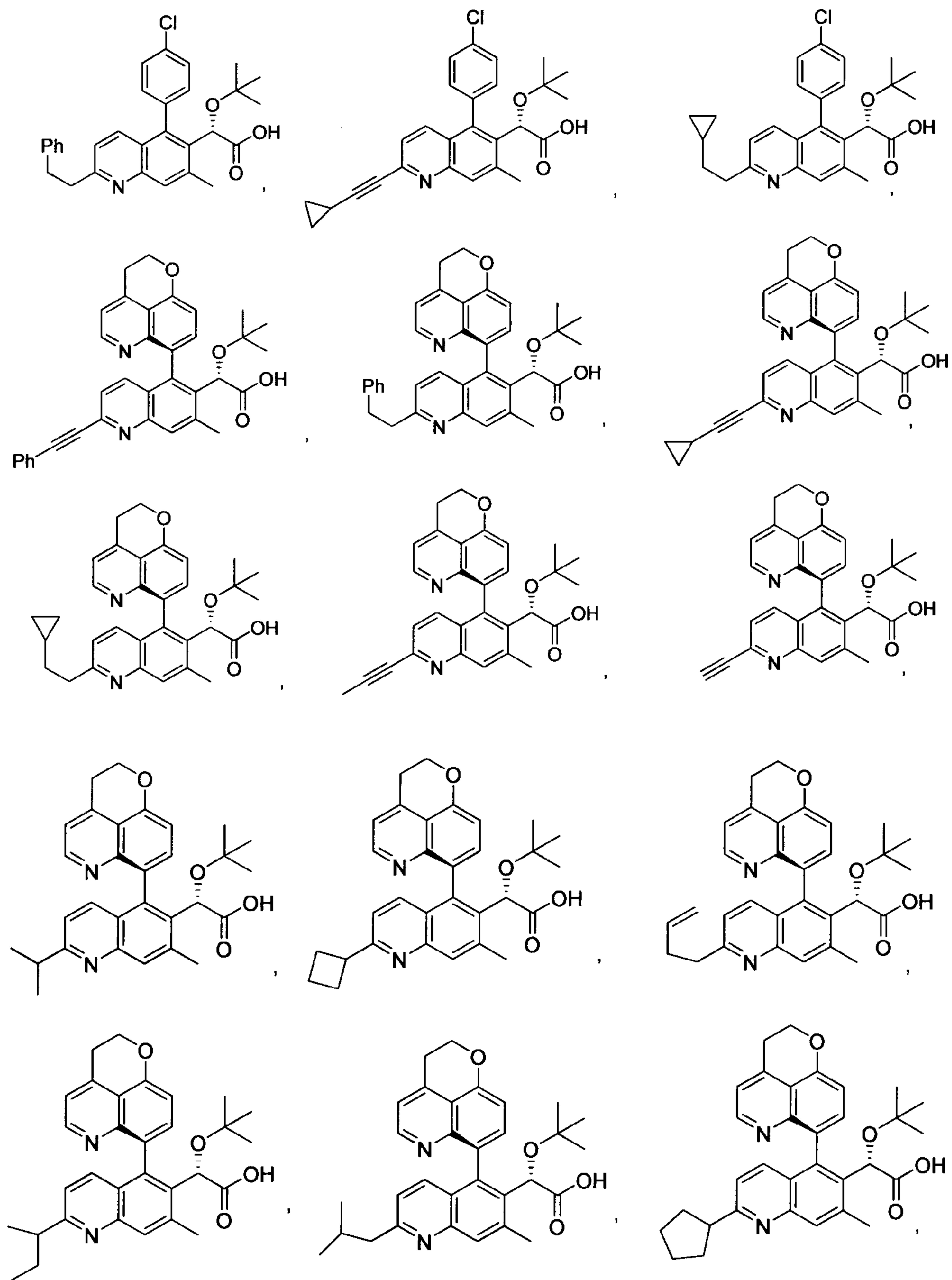
and salts thereof.

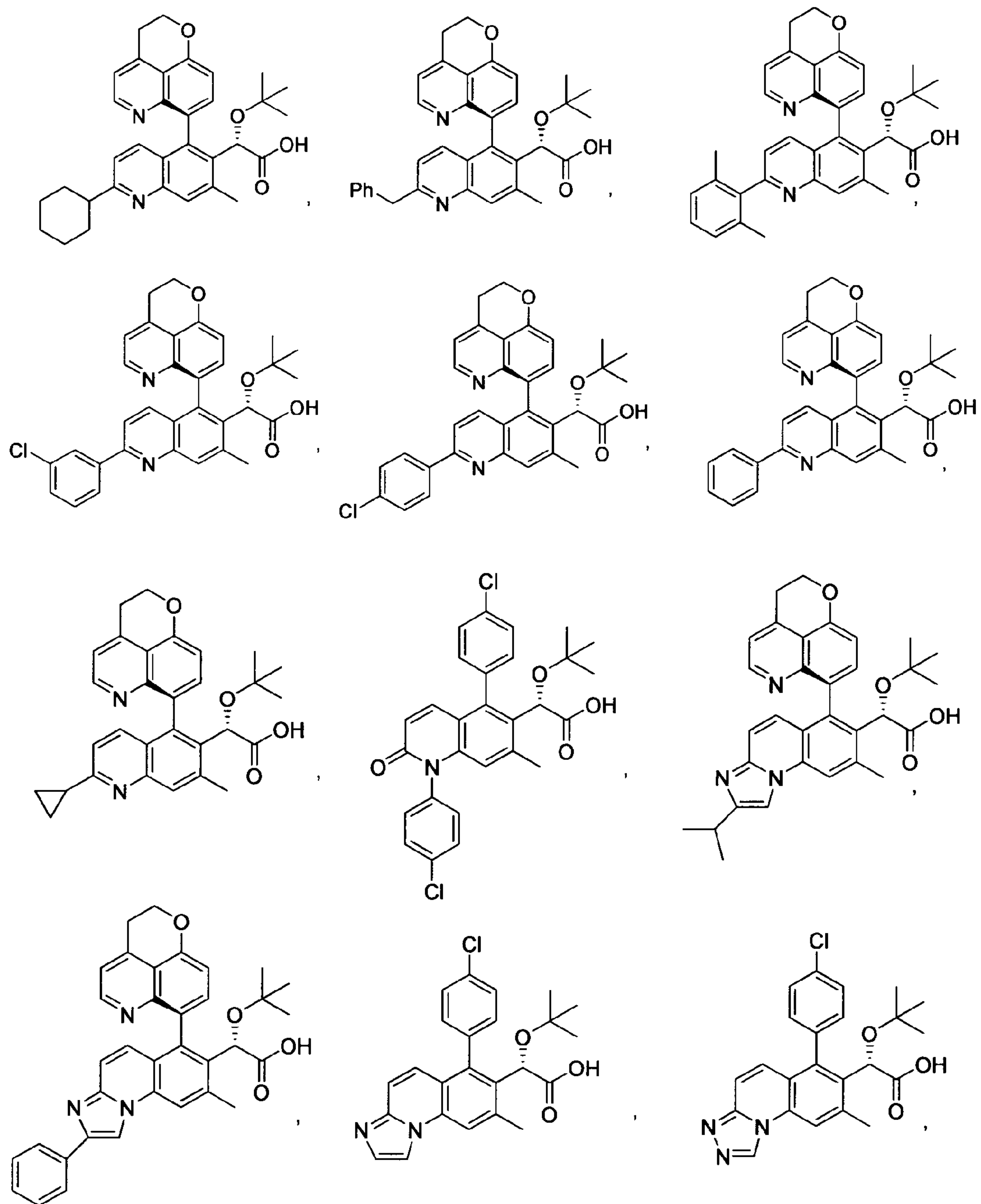
In one embodiment, the compounds of formula I include:

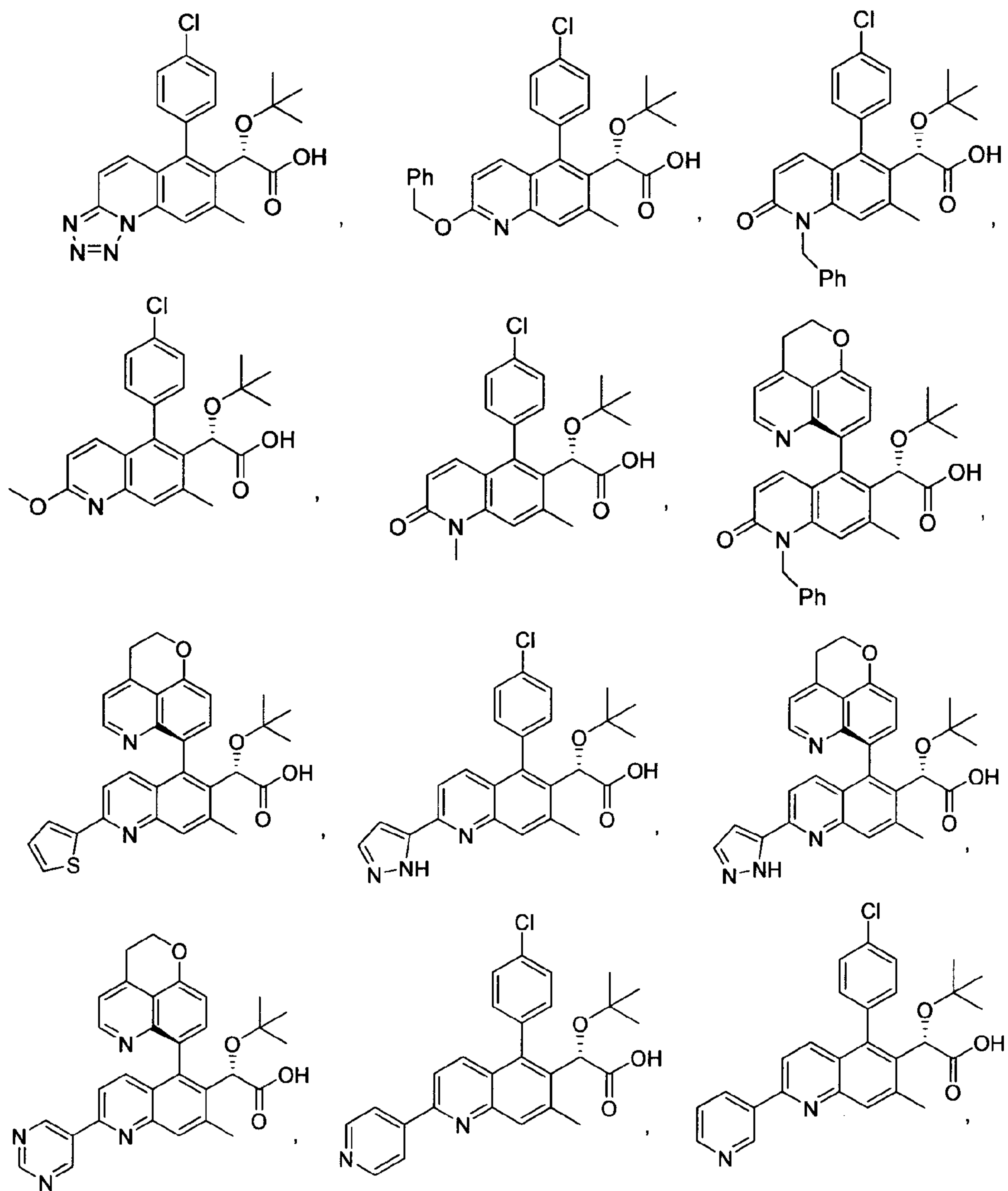


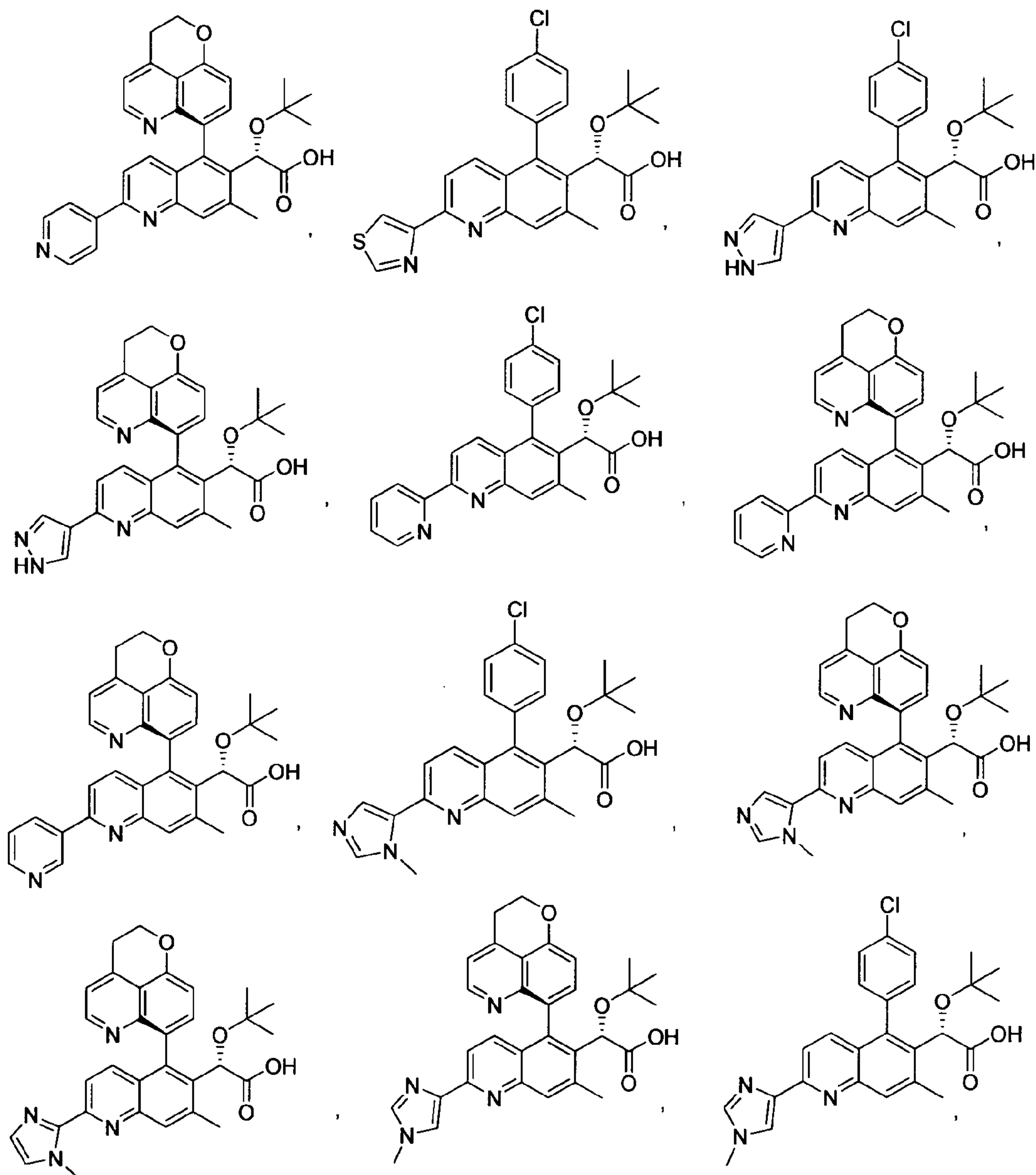


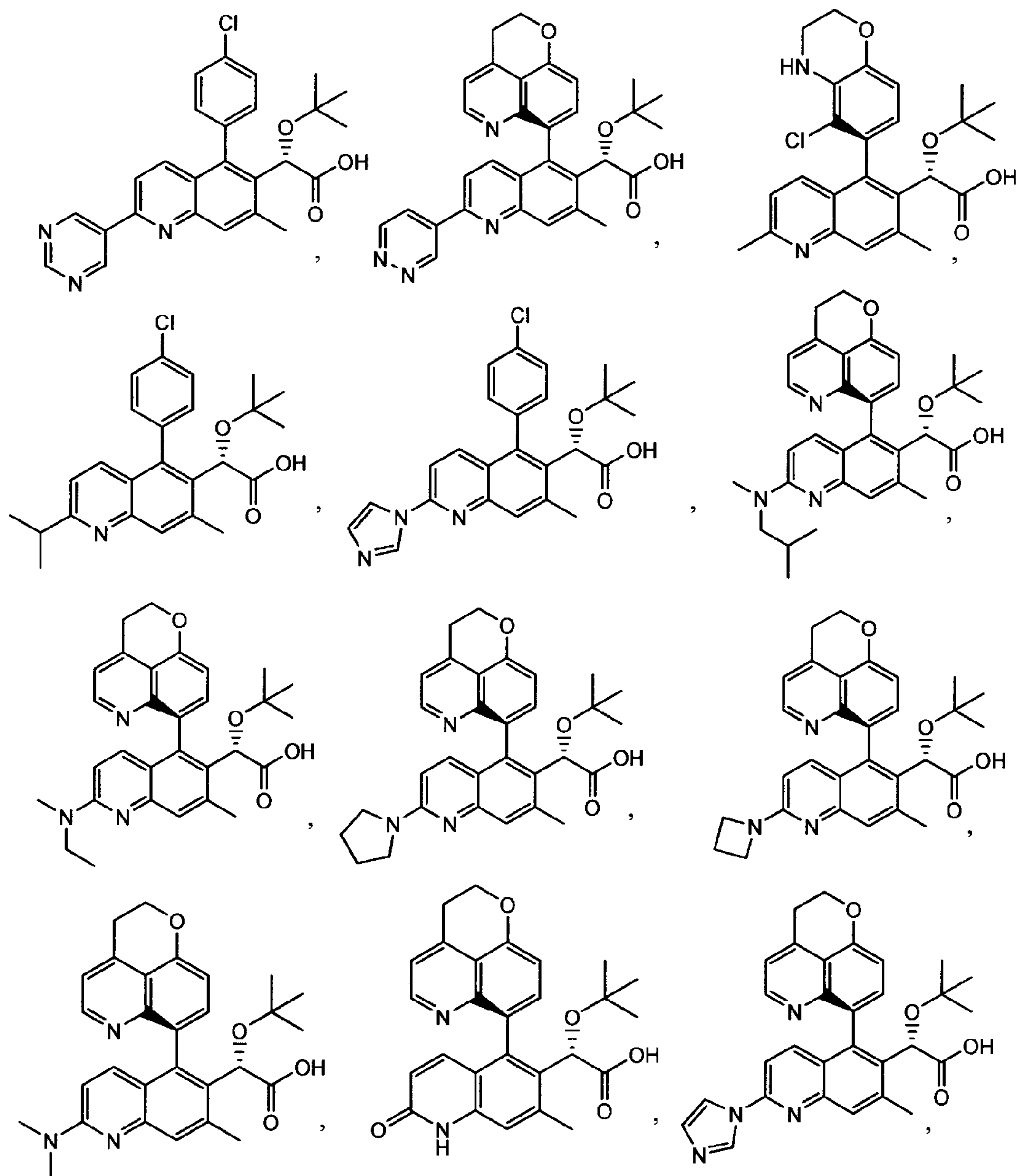




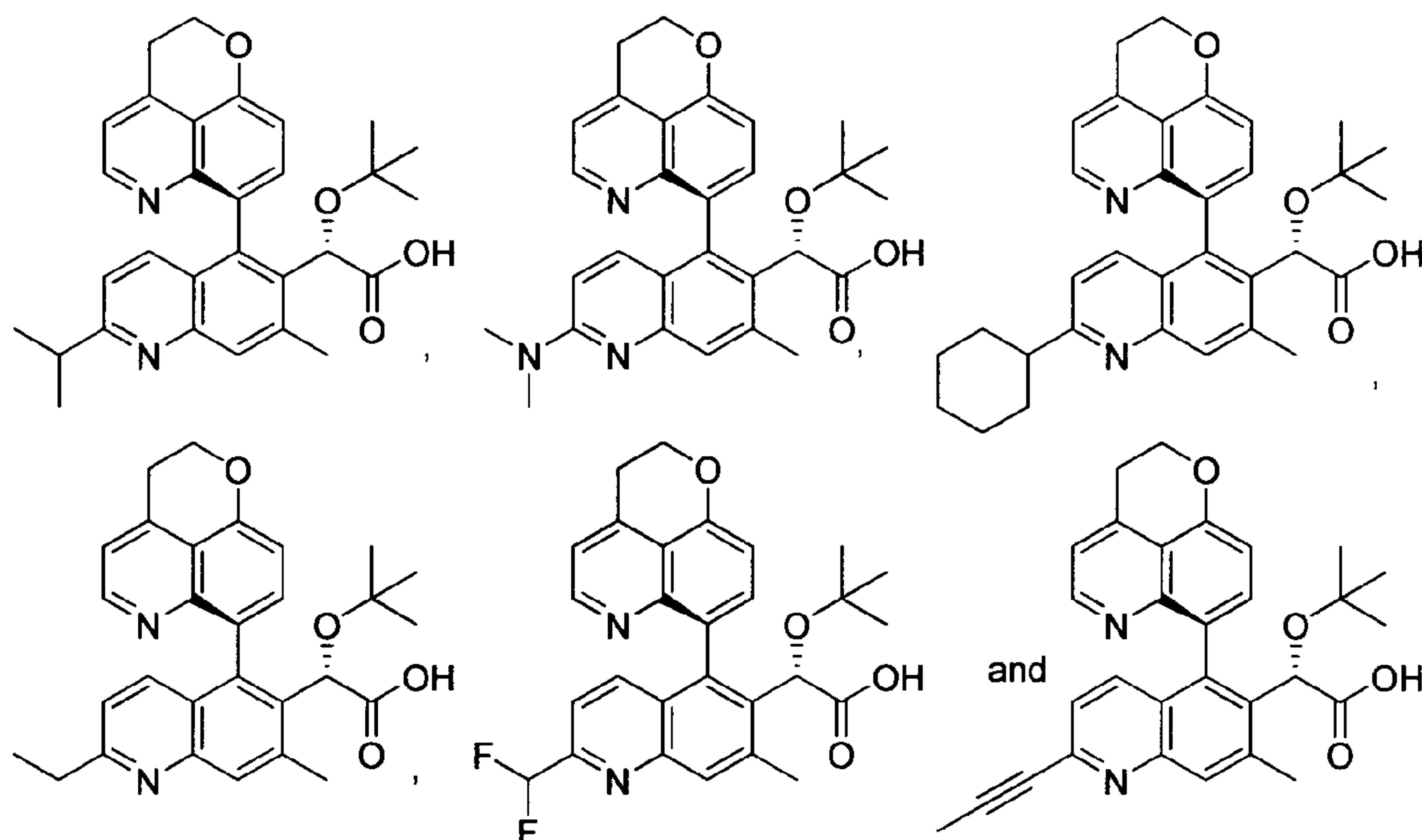








In one embodiment, the compounds of formula I include:

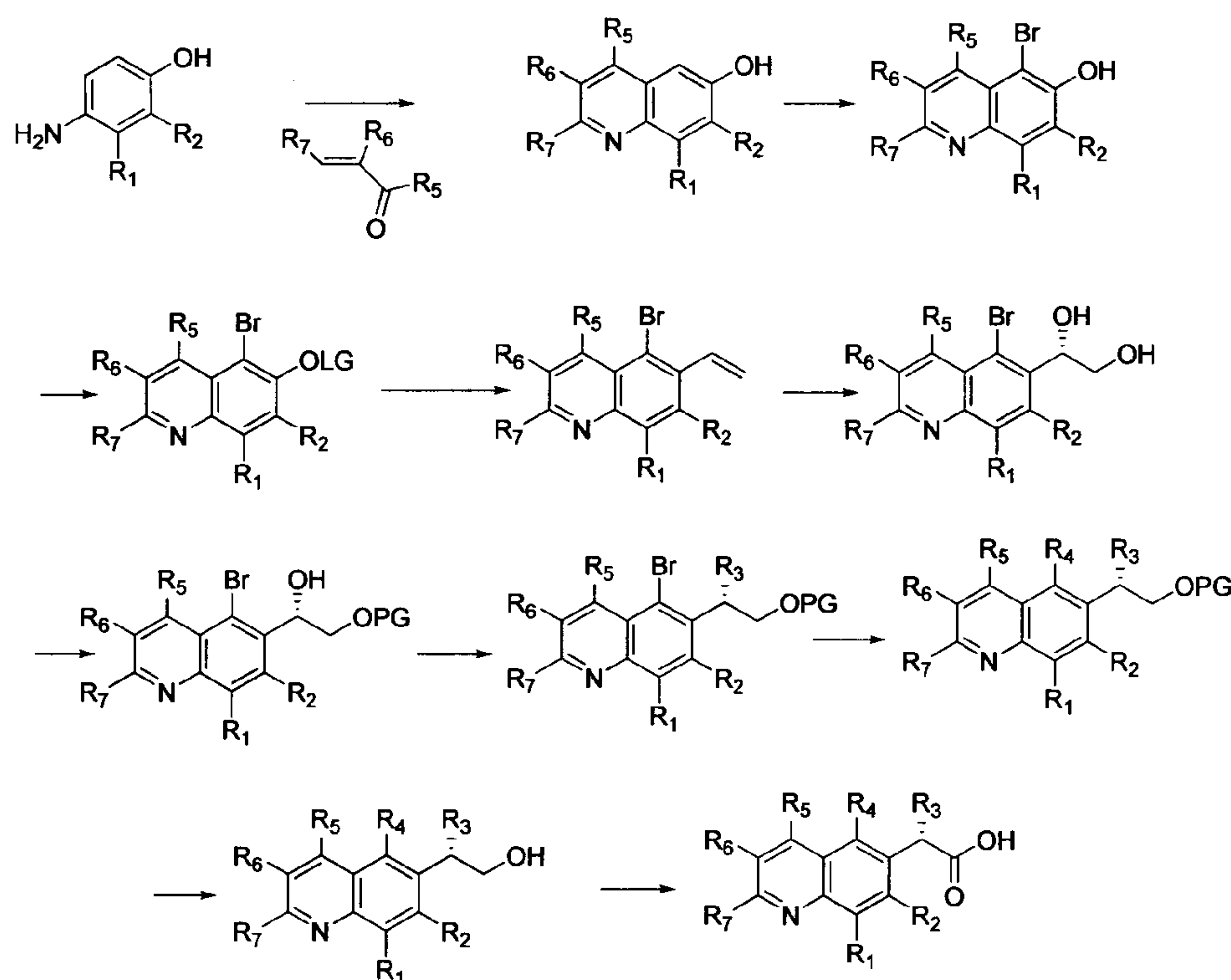


and salts thereof.

General Synthetic Procedures

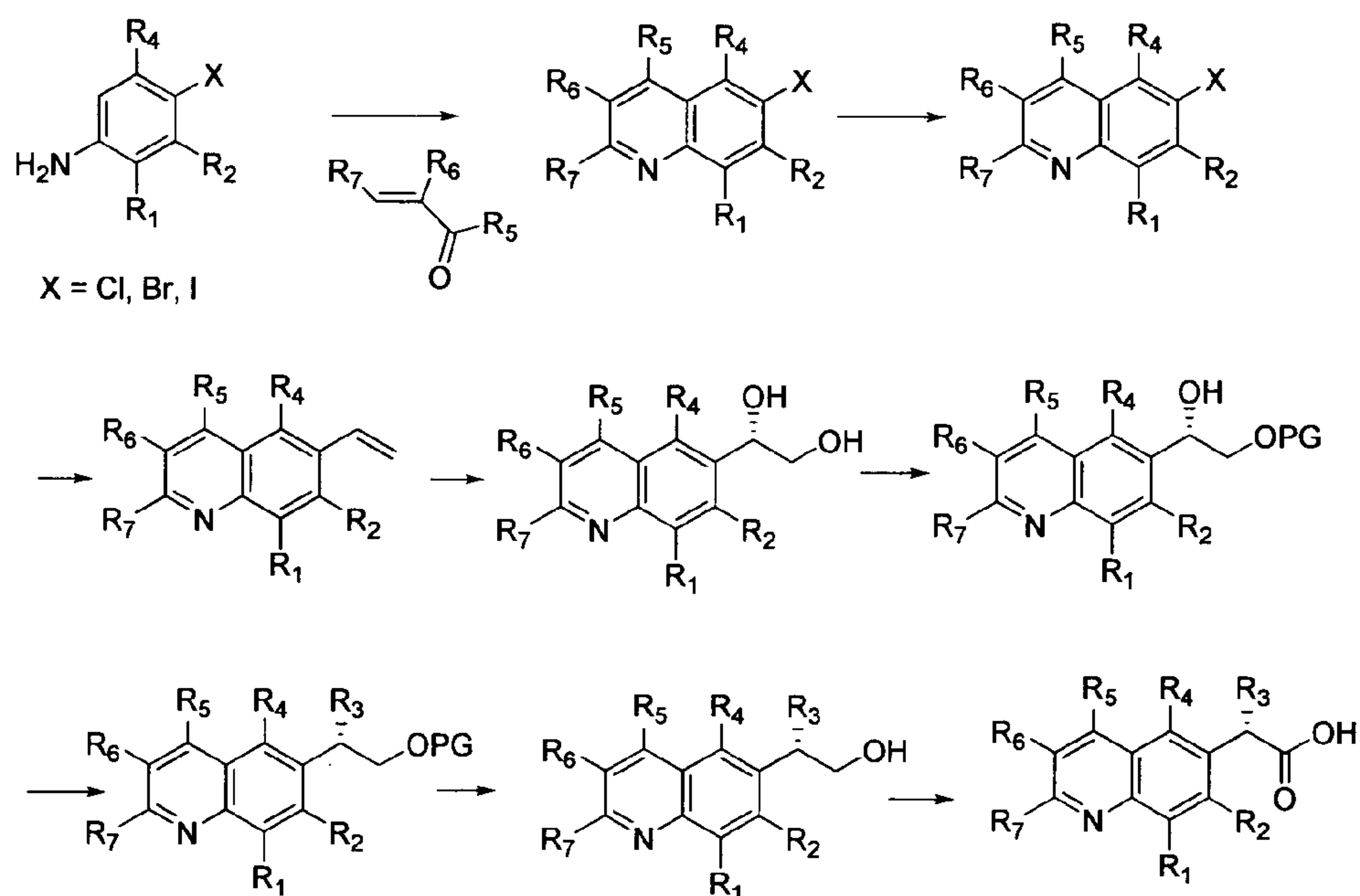
- 5 Schemes 1, 2 and 3 are provided as further embodiments of the invention and illustrate general methods which were used to prepare compounds of formula I and which can be used to prepare additional compounds of formula I. Schemes 4-11 outline methods that were used or can be used to prepare compounds of formula I.

Scheme 1



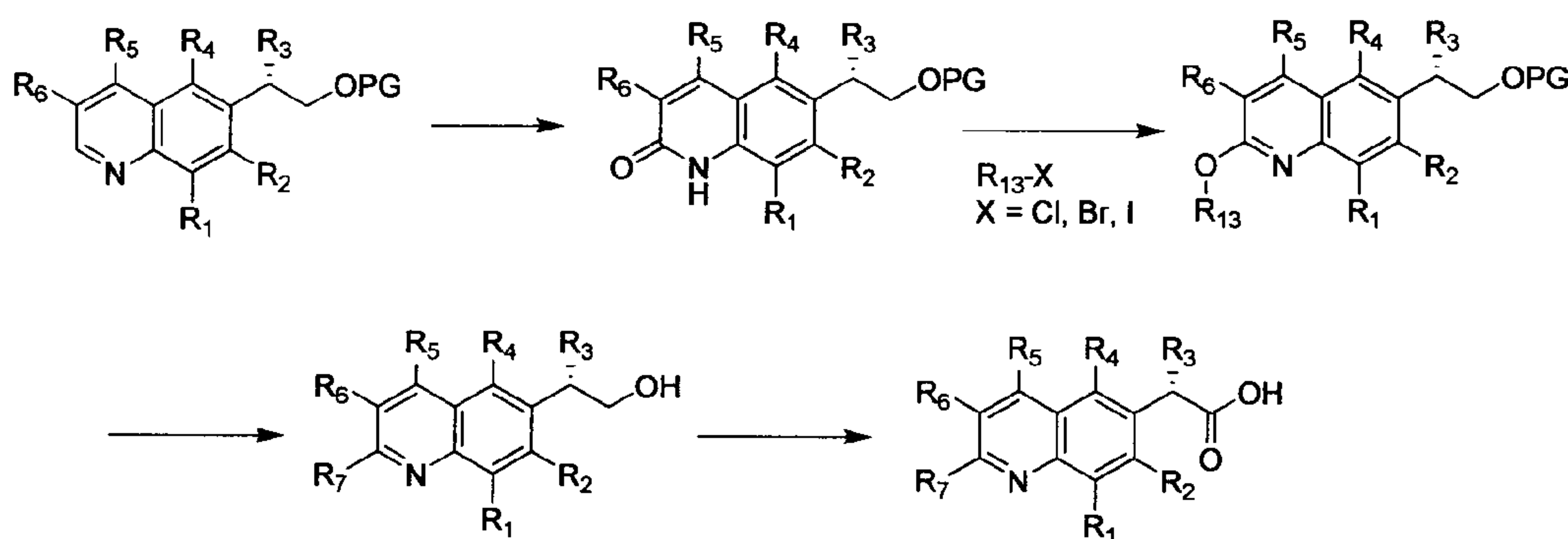
- Cyclocondensation of a substituted hydroxyaniline with a substituted, unsaturated aldehyde leads to quinolinols. Bromination can be achieved using
- 5 electrophilic sources of bromine such as NBS. The phenol can be activated by transforming to a leaving group such as trifluoromethanesulfonate by treatment with trifluoromethanesulfonic anhydride and an appropriate base such as 2,6-lutidine. Regioselective palladium catalysed cross-coupling reactions (e.g. Suzuki or Stille) can be used to alkylate the quinoline with a vinyl group which can then be asymmetrically
- 10 di-hydroxylated using reagent mixtures such as AD-mix- α . Selective protection of the primary hydroxyl can be achieved with bulky protecting groups, such as pivaloyl chloride. Formation of the R^3 group can be achieved by alkylation of the secondary alcohol by various methods. Palladium catalysed cross coupling reactions (e.g. Suzuki or Stille) can be used to install the R^4 group. Following hydrolysis of the protecting
- 15 group, the primary alcohol may then be oxidized to produce desired compounds.

Scheme 2



Alternatively, cyclocondensation of a halogenated aniline starting material that is substituted at R⁴ can undergo cyclocondensation with a substituted, unsaturated aldehyde can deliver R⁴ substituted, R³ halogenated quinolines directly. These can be further elaborated similarly to the methods described for Scheme 1 to produce desired compounds.

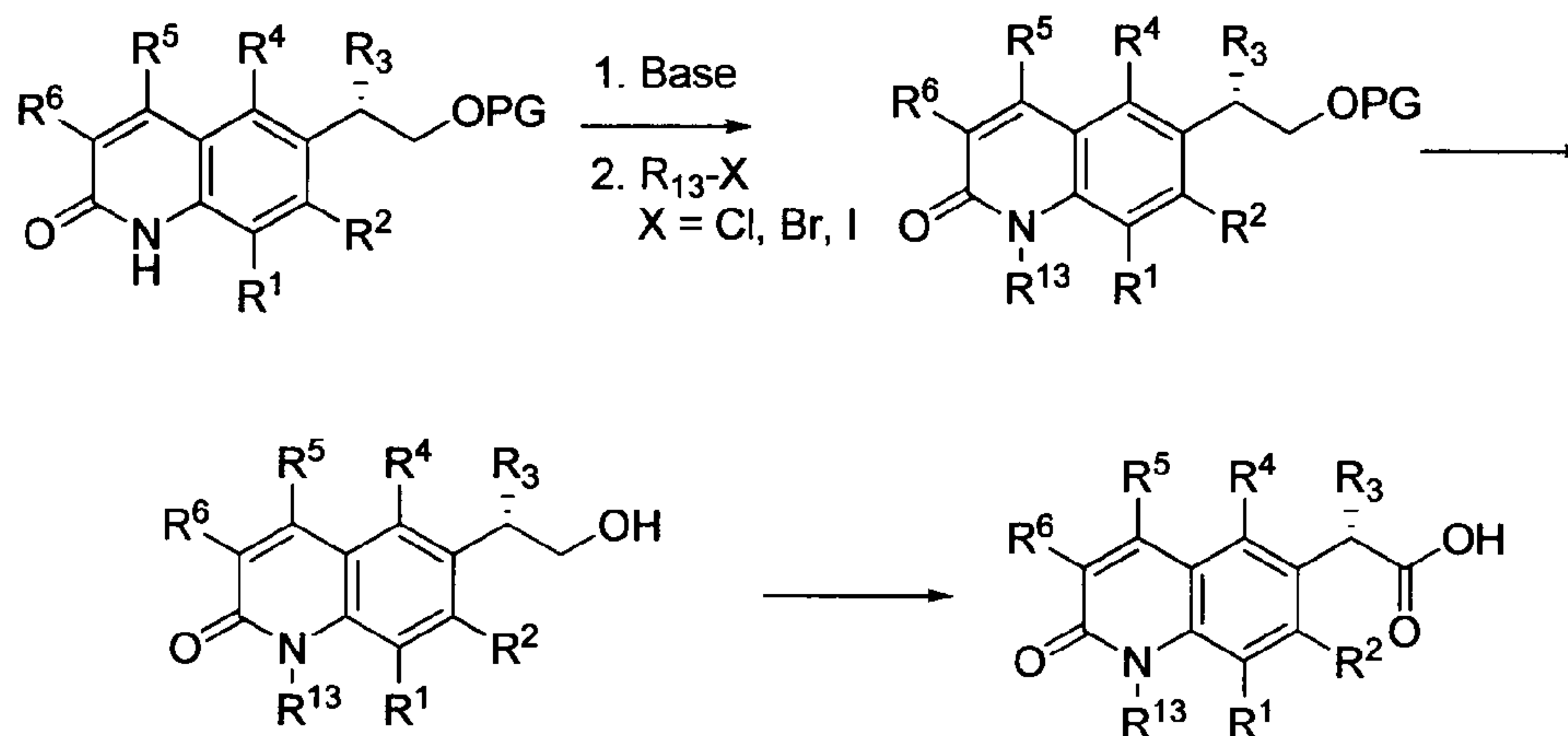
Scheme 3



Generation of a quinolinone intermediate is achieved by *N*-oxidation of the quinoline with a reagent such as mCPBA, followed by acylation, thermal rearrangement, and selective removal of the acetate. Deprotonation of the quinolinone followed by methods to favor O-alkylation when treated with an appropriate electrophile allow for substituents at R⁷ to be produced wherein the R⁷ group is an

ether. Subsequent hydrolysis and oxidation can provide compounds of formula 1 with R^7 ether groups.

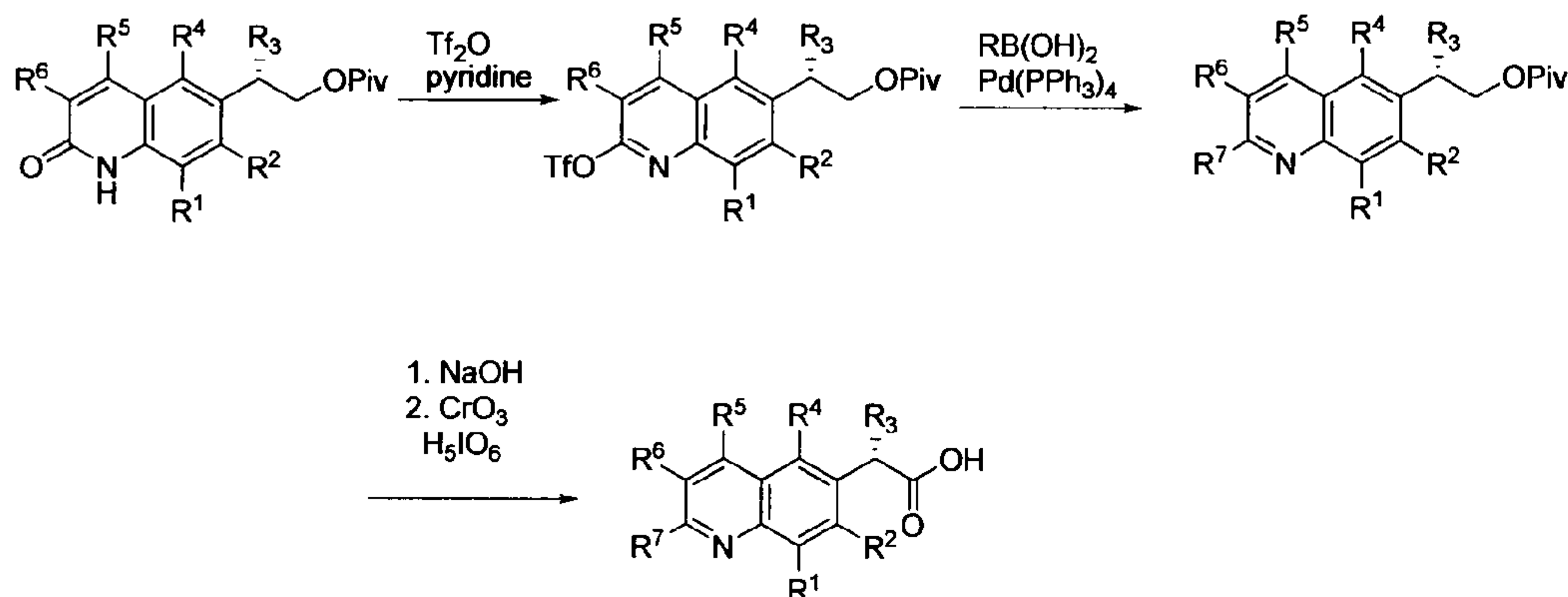
Scheme 4



Deprotonation of the quinolinone followed by methods to favor N-alkylation when treated with an appropriate electrophile can yield desired alkylated quinolinone analogues with R^{13} modifications. Subsequent hydrolysis and oxidation produces desired compounds.

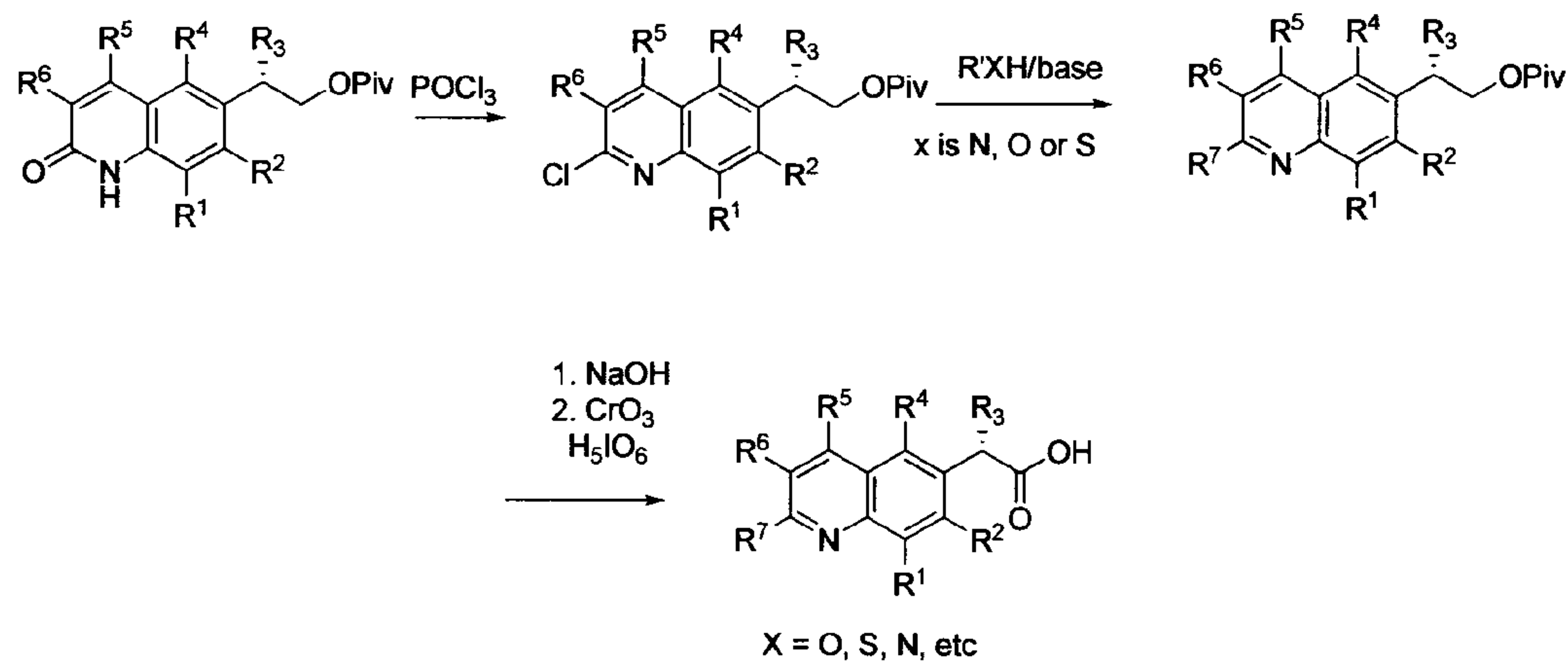
10

Scheme 5



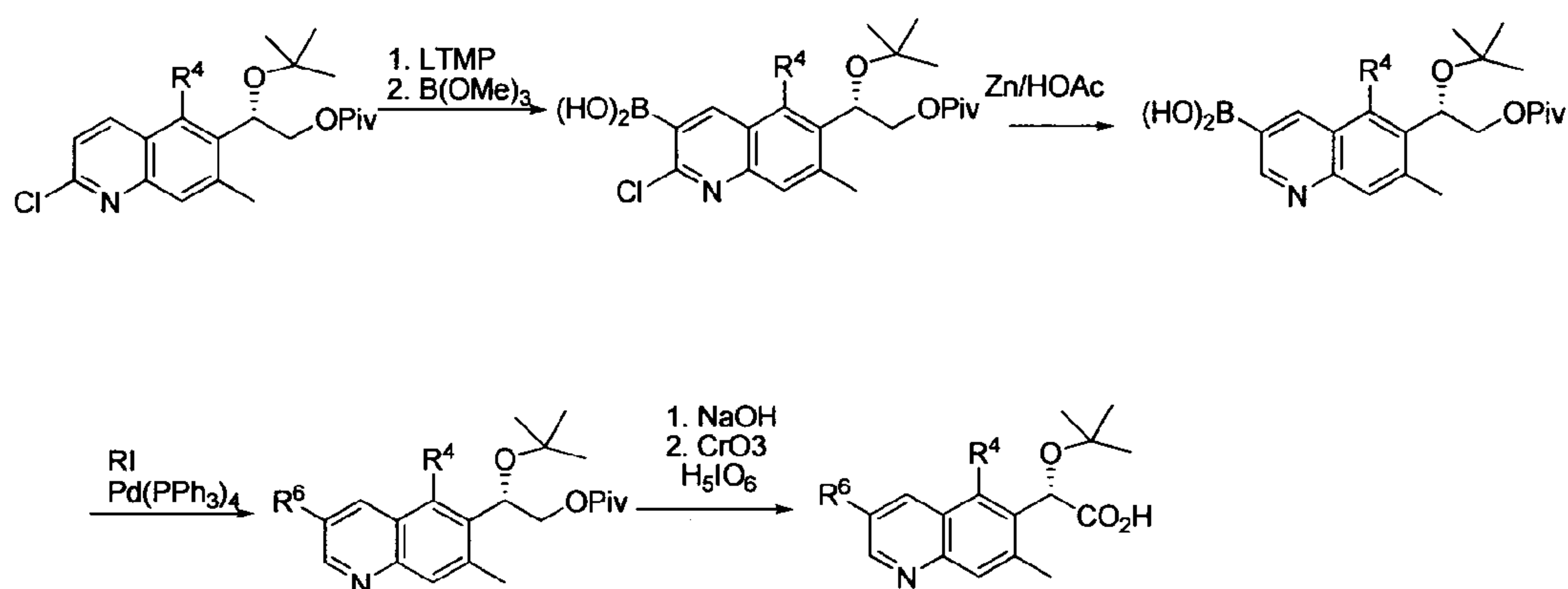
The quinolinyl triflate can be made from the quinolinone. Cross coupling reactions with the triflate (e.g. Suzuki and Sonagashira reaction) can introduce different R^7 moieties. Hydrolysis and oxidation can yield the desired compounds.

Scheme 6



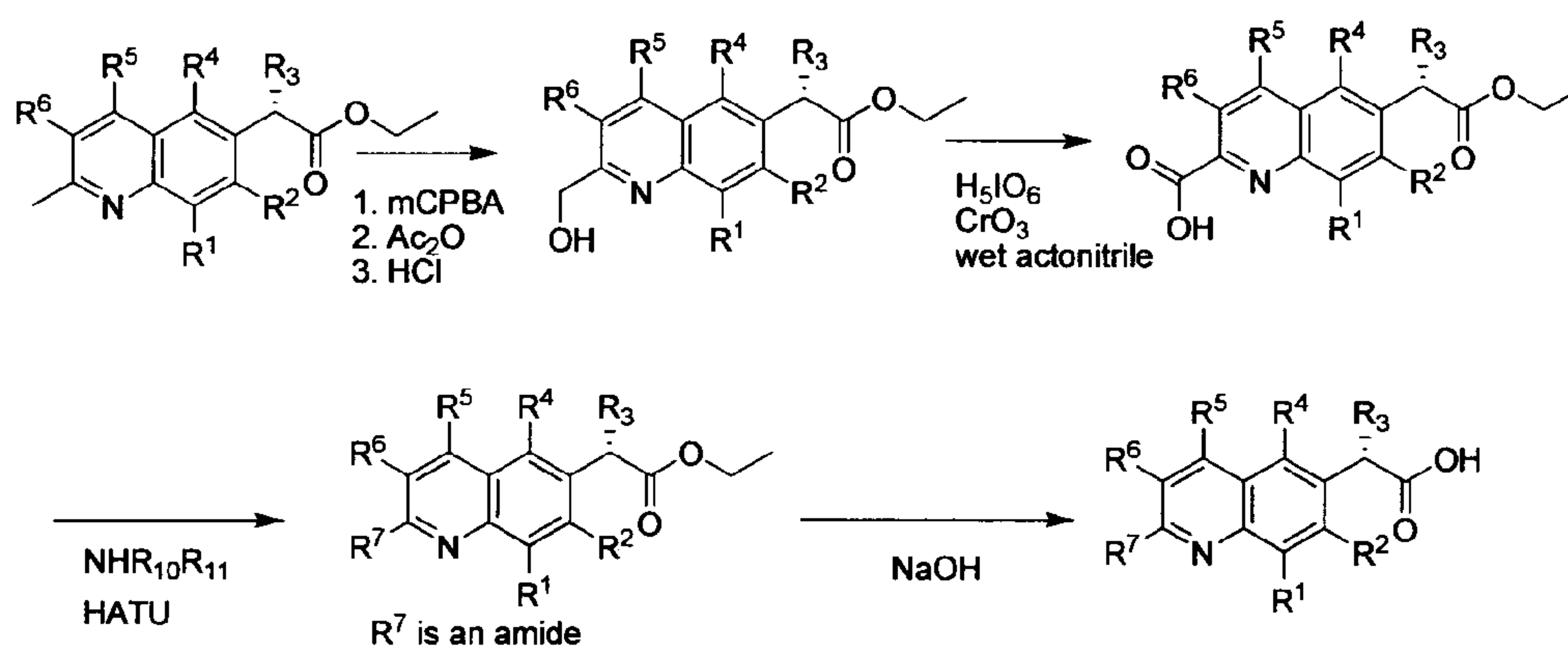
- The quinolinone can be converted to 2-chloroquinoline by treatment with reagents such as phosphorous oxychloride. Nucleophilic aromatic substitution can introduce different R^7 groups wherein the R^7 is linked through a heteroatom. Hydrolysis and oxidation can produce the desired analogs.

Scheme 7



Deprotonation of 2-chloroquinoline, followed by reaction with trimethyl borate can generate the boronic acid. Zinc and acetic acid can be used to reduce the substituted chloroquinoline to the quinoline. Cross coupling and subsequent hydrolysis and oxidation can provide analogs with different R⁶ moieties.

Scheme 8

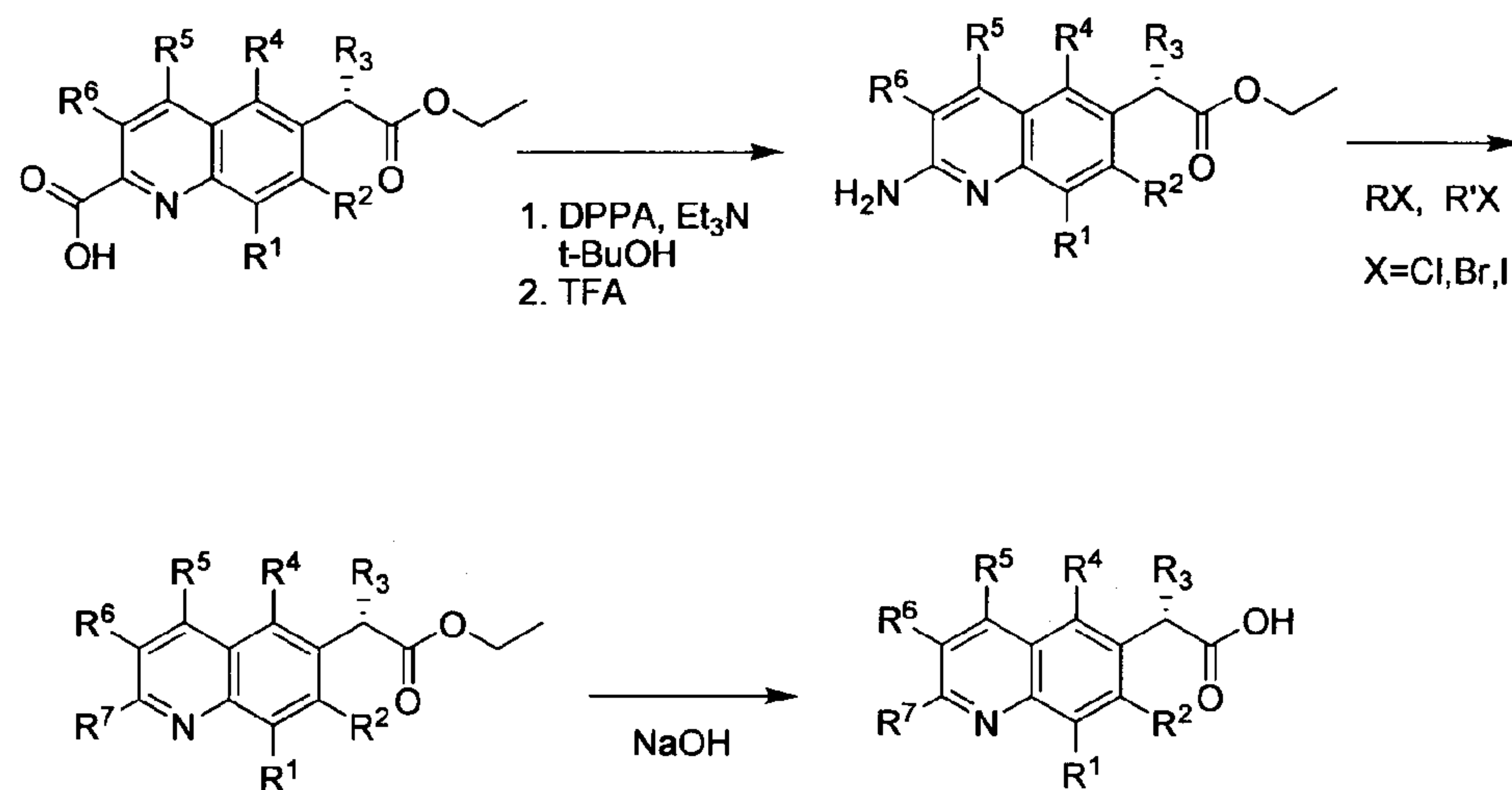


10

The methylquinoline can be oxidized with mCPBA to give the N-oxide, which can react with acetic anhydride and rearrange to yield the hydroxymethylquinoline. Oxidation of the alcohol can provide the carboxylic acid. Coupling with different amines can provide R⁷ amide moieties. Subsequent hydrolysis can generate compounds of formula I with R⁷ amides.

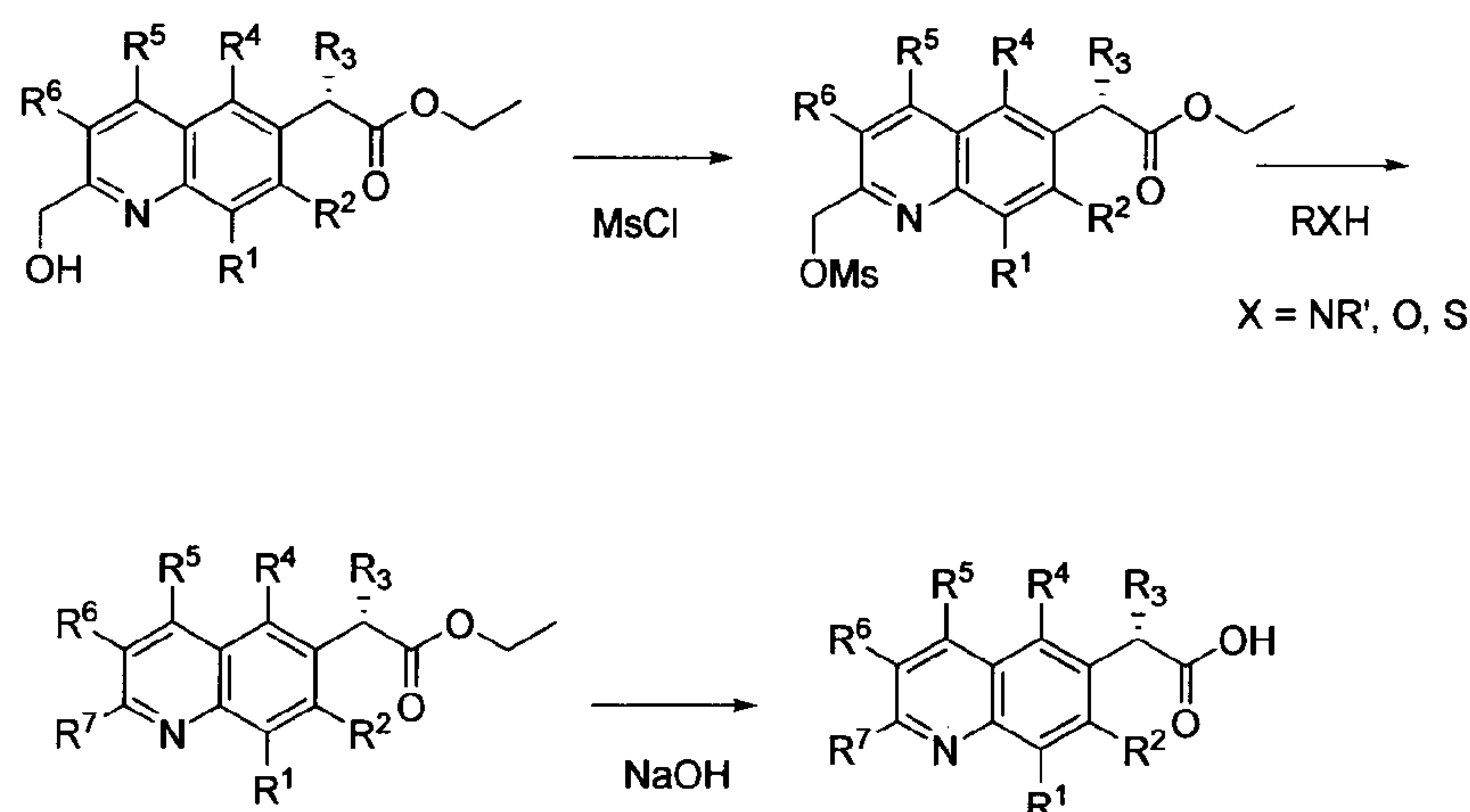
15

Scheme 9



- 5 The quinoline carboxylic acid can be converted to a primary amine via a Curtius rearrangement which can be converted to additional R^7 groups wherein the R^7 group is an amine. Subsequent hydrolysis can provide compounds of formula 1 with R^7 amine groups.

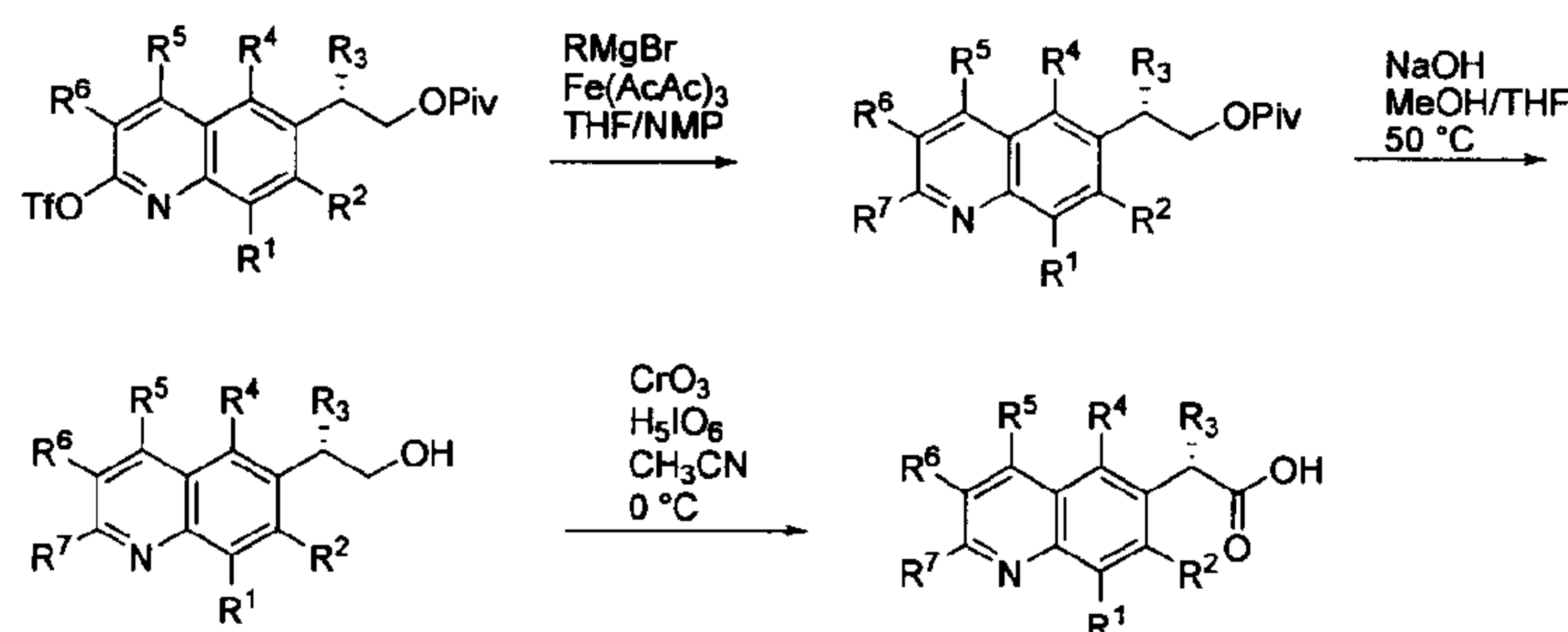
Scheme 10



The hydroxymethylquinoline can be converted to mesylate, which can be
 5 reacted with different nucleophiles to provide R^7 groups wherein the R^7 group is
 represented by the general formula “ $-CH_2XR$ ” wherein X is O , S or NR' . Subsequent
 hydrolysis can generate compounds of formula I.

Scheme 11

10



The quinolinyl triflate can react with Grignard or alkyl-lithium reagents in the
 presence of a catalyst such as $Fe(AcAc)_3$ to give the corresponding quinoline.
 Subsequent deprotection and oxidation can generate compounds of formula I.

15

Prodrugs

In one embodiment, the invention provides for a prodrug of a compound of the invention. The term “prodrug” as used herein refers to any compound that when administered to a biological system generates a compound of the invention that inhibits the replication of HIV (“the active inhibitory compound”). The compound may be
 5 formed from the prodrug as a result of: (i) spontaneous chemical reaction(s), (ii) enzyme catalyzed chemical reaction(s), (iii) photolysis, and/or (iv) metabolic chemical reaction(s).

“Prodrug moiety” refers to a labile functional group which separates from the active inhibitory compound during metabolism, systemically, inside a cell, by
 10 hydrolysis, enzymatic cleavage, or by some other process (Bundgaard, Hans, “Design and Application of Prodrugs” in A Textbook of Drug Design and Development (1991), P. Krogsgaard-Larsen and H. Bundgaard, Eds. Harwood Academic Publishers, pp. 113-191). Enzymes which are capable of an enzymatic activation mechanism with the prodrug compounds of the invention include, but are not limited to, amidases, esterases,
 15 microbial enzymes, phospholipases, cholinesterases, and phosphatases. Prodrug moieties can serve to enhance solubility, absorption and lipophilicity to optimize drug delivery, bioavailability and efficacy. A prodrug moiety may include an active metabolite or drug itself.

Exemplary prodrug moieties include the hydrolytically sensitive or labile
 20 acyloxymethyl esters $-\text{CH}_2\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{R}^{99}$ and acyloxymethyl carbonates $-\text{CH}_2\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^{99}$ where R^{99} is C_1 – C_6 alkyl, C_1 – C_6 substituted alkyl, C_6 – C_{20} aryl or C_6 – C_{20} substituted aryl. The acyloxyalkyl ester was first used as a prodrug strategy for carboxylic acids and then applied to phosphates and phosphonates by Farquhar et al. (1983) *J. Pharm. Sci.* 72: 324; also US Patent Nos. 4816570, 4968788, 5663159 and
 25 5792756. Subsequently, the acyloxyalkyl ester was used to deliver phosphonic acids across cell membranes and to enhance oral bioavailability. A close variant of the acyloxyalkyl ester, the alkoxycarbonyloxyalkyl ester (carbonate), may also enhance oral bioavailability as a prodrug moiety in the compounds of the combinations of the invention. An exemplary acyloxymethyl ester is pivaloyloxymethoxy, (POM)
 30 $-\text{CH}_2\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_3$. An exemplary acyloxymethyl carbonate prodrug moiety is pivaloyloxymethylcarbonate (POC) $-\text{CH}_2\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{OC}(\text{CH}_3)_3$.

Aryl esters of phosphorus groups, especially phenyl esters, are reported to

enhance oral bioavailability (De Lombaert et al. (1994) *J. Med. Chem.* 37: 498). Phenyl esters containing a carboxylic ester ortho to a phosphate have also been described (Khamnei and Torrence, (1996) *J. Med. Chem.* 39:4109-4115). Benzyl esters are reported to generate parent phosphonic acids. In some cases, substituents at the *ortho*- or *para*- position may accelerate the hydrolysis. Benzyl analogs with an acylated phenol or an alkylated phenol may generate the phenolic compound through the action of enzymes, *e.g.*, esterases, oxidases, etc., which in turn undergoes cleavage at the benzylic C–O bond to generate phosphoric acid and a quinone methide intermediate. Examples of this class of prodrugs are described by Mitchell et al. (1992) *J. Chem. Soc. Perkin Trans. II* 2345; Glazier WO 91/19721. Still other benzylic prodrugs have been described containing a carboxylic ester-containing group attached to the benzylic methylene (Glazier WO 91/19721). Thio-containing prodrugs are reported to be useful for the intracellular delivery of phosphonate drugs. These proesters contain an ethylthio group in which the thiol group is either esterified with an acyl group or combined with another thiol group to form a disulfide. De-esterification or reduction of the disulfide generates the free thio intermediate which subsequently breaks down to the phosphoric acid and episulfide (Puech et al. (1993) *Antiviral Res.*, 22: 155-174; Benzaria et al. (1996) *J. Med. Chem.* 39: 4958).

Pharmaceutical Formulations

The compounds of this invention are formulated with conventional carriers and excipients, which will be selected in accord with ordinary practice. Tablets will contain excipients, glidants, fillers, binders and the like. Aqueous formulations are prepared in sterile form, and when intended for delivery by other than oral administration generally will be isotonic. All formulations will optionally contain excipients such as those set forth in the Handbook of Pharmaceutical Excipients (1986). Excipients include ascorbic acid and other antioxidants, chelating agents such as EDTA, carbohydrates such as dextrin, hydroxyalkylcellulose, hydroxyalkylmethylcellulose, stearic acid and the like. The pH of the formulations ranges from about 3 to about 11, but is ordinarily about 7 to 10.

While it is possible for the active ingredients to be administered alone it may be preferable to present them as pharmaceutical formulations. The formulations, both for veterinary and for human use, of the invention comprise at least one active ingredient,

as above defined, together with one or more acceptable carriers and optionally other therapeutic ingredients. The carrier(s) must be "acceptable" in the sense of being compatible with the other ingredients of the formulation and physiologically innocuous to the recipient thereof.

5 The formulations include those suitable for the foregoing administration routes. The formulations may conveniently be presented in unit dosage form and may be prepared by any of the methods well known in the art of pharmacy. Techniques and formulations generally are found in Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences (Mack Publishing Co., Easton, PA). Such methods include the step of bringing into
10 association the active ingredient with the carrier which constitutes one or more accessory ingredients. In general the formulations are prepared by uniformly and intimately bringing into association the active ingredient with liquid carriers or finely divided solid carriers or both, and then, if necessary, shaping the product.

 Formulations of the present invention suitable for oral administration may be
15 presented as discrete units such as capsules, cachets or tablets each containing a predetermined amount of the active ingredient; as a powder or granules; as a solution or a suspension in an aqueous or non-aqueous liquid; or as an oil-in-water liquid emulsion or a water-in-oil liquid emulsion. The active ingredient may also be administered as a bolus, electuary or paste.

20 A tablet is made by compression or molding, optionally with one or more accessory ingredients. Compressed tablets may be prepared by compressing in a suitable machine the active ingredient in a free-flowing form such as a powder or granules, optionally mixed with a binder, lubricant, inert diluent, preservative, surface active or dispersing agent. Molded tablets may be made by molding in a suitable
25 machine a mixture of the powdered active ingredient moistened with an inert liquid diluent. The tablets may optionally be coated or scored and optionally are formulated so as to provide slow or controlled release of the active ingredient therefrom.

 For administration to the eye or other external tissues *e.g.*, mouth and skin, the formulations are preferably applied as a topical ointment or cream containing the active
30 ingredient(s) in an amount of, for example, 0.075 to 20% w/w (including active ingredient(s) in a range between 0.1% and 20% in increments of 0.1% w/w such as 0.6% w/w, 0.7% w/w, etc.), preferably 0.2 to 15% w/w and most preferably 0.5 to 10%

w/w. When formulated in an ointment, the active ingredients may be employed with either a paraffinic or a water-miscible ointment base. Alternatively, the active ingredients may be formulated in a cream with an oil-in-water cream base.

If desired, the aqueous phase of the cream base may include, for example, at least 30% w/w of a polyhydric alcohol, *i.e.* an alcohol having two or more hydroxyl groups such as propylene glycol, butane 1,3-diol, mannitol, sorbitol, glycerol and polyethylene glycol (including PEG 400) and mixtures thereof. The topical formulations may desirably include a compound which enhances absorption or penetration of the active ingredient through the skin or other affected areas. Examples of such dermal penetration enhancers include dimethyl sulfoxide and related analogs.

The oily phase of the emulsions of this invention may be constituted from known ingredients in a known manner. While the phase may comprise merely an emulsifier (otherwise known as an emulgent), it desirably comprises a mixture of at least one emulsifier with a fat or an oil or with both a fat and an oil. Preferably, a hydrophilic emulsifier is included together with a lipophilic emulsifier which acts as a stabilizer. It is also preferred to include both an oil and a fat. Together, the emulsifier(s) with or without stabilizer(s) make up the so-called emulsifying wax, and the wax together with the oil and fat make up the so-called emulsifying ointment base which forms the oily dispersed phase of the cream formulations.

Emulgents and emulsion stabilizers suitable for use in the formulation of the invention include Tween[®] 60, Span[®] 80, cetostearyl alcohol, benzyl alcohol, myristyl alcohol, glyceryl mono-stearate and sodium lauryl sulfate.

The choice of suitable oils or fats for the formulation is based on achieving the desired cosmetic properties. The cream should preferably be a non-greasy, non-staining and washable product with suitable consistency to avoid leakage from tubes or other containers. Straight or branched chain, mono- or dibasic alkyl esters such as diisoadipate, isocetyl stearate, propylene glycol diester of coconut fatty acids, isopropyl myristate, decyl oleate, isopropyl palmitate, butyl stearate, 2-ethylhexyl palmitate or a blend of branched chain esters known as Crodamol CAP may be used, the last three being preferred esters. These may be used alone or in combination depending on the properties required. Alternatively, high melting point lipids such as white soft paraffin and/or liquid paraffin or other mineral oils are used.

Pharmaceutical formulations according to the present invention comprise one or more compounds of the invention together with one or more pharmaceutically acceptable carriers or excipients and optionally other therapeutic agents.

Pharmaceutical formulations containing the active ingredient may be in any form

5 suitable for the intended method of administration. When used for oral use for example, tablets, troches, lozenges, aqueous or oil suspensions, dispersible powders or granules, emulsions, hard or soft capsules, syrups or elixirs may be prepared.

Compositions intended for oral use may be prepared according to any method known to the art for the manufacture of pharmaceutical compositions and such compositions may

10 contain one or more agents including sweetening agents, flavoring agents, coloring agents and preserving agents, in order to provide a palatable preparation. Tablets containing the active ingredient in admixture with non-toxic pharmaceutically acceptable excipient which are suitable for manufacture of tablets are acceptable.

These excipients may be, for example, inert diluents, such as calcium or sodium

15 carbonate, lactose, lactose monohydrate, croscarmellose sodium, povidone, calcium or sodium phosphate; granulating and disintegrating agents, such as maize starch, or alginic acid; binding agents, such as cellulose, microcrystalline cellulose, starch, gelatin or acacia; and lubricating agents, such as magnesium stearate, stearic acid or talc.

Tablets may be uncoated or may be coated by known techniques including

20 microencapsulation to delay disintegration and adsorption in the gastrointestinal tract and thereby provide a sustained action over a longer period. For example, a time delay material such as glyceryl monostearate or glyceryl distearate alone or with a wax may be employed.

Formulations for oral use may be also presented as hard gelatin capsules where

25 the active ingredient is mixed with an inert solid diluent, for example calcium phosphate or kaolin, or as soft gelatin capsules wherein the active ingredient is mixed with water or an oil medium, such as peanut oil, liquid paraffin or olive oil.

Aqueous suspensions of the invention contain the active materials in admixture with excipients suitable for the manufacture of aqueous suspensions. Such excipients

30 include a suspending agent, such as sodium carboxymethylcellulose, methylcellulose, hydroxypropyl methylcellulose, sodium alginate, polyvinylpyrrolidone, gum tragacanth and gum acacia, and dispersing or wetting agents such as a naturally occurring

phosphatide (*e.g.*, lecithin), a condensation product of an alkylene oxide with a fatty acid (*e.g.*, polyoxyethylene stearate), a condensation product of ethylene oxide with a long chain aliphatic alcohol (*e.g.*, heptadecaethyleneoxycetanol), a condensation product of ethylene oxide with a partial ester derived from a fatty acid and a hexitol anhydride (*e.g.*, polyoxyethylene sorbitan monooleate). The aqueous suspension may also contain one or more preservatives such as ethyl or n-propyl p-hydroxy-benzoate, one or more coloring agents, one or more flavoring agents and one or more sweetening agents, such as sucrose or saccharin.

Oil suspensions may be formulated by suspending the active ingredient in a vegetable oil, such as arachis oil, olive oil, sesame oil or coconut oil, or in a mineral oil such as liquid paraffin. The oral suspensions may contain a thickening agent, such as beeswax, hard paraffin or cetyl alcohol. Sweetening agents, such as those set forth above, and flavoring agents may be added to provide a palatable oral preparation. These compositions may be preserved by the addition of an antioxidant such as ascorbic acid.

Dispersible powders and granules of the invention suitable for preparation of an aqueous suspension by the addition of water provide the active ingredient in admixture with a dispersing or wetting agent, a suspending agent, and one or more preservatives. Suitable dispersing or wetting agents and suspending agents are exemplified by those disclosed above. Additional excipients, for example sweetening, flavoring and coloring agents, may also be present.

The pharmaceutical compositions of the invention may also be in the form of oil-in-water emulsions. The oily phase may be a vegetable oil, such as olive oil or arachis oil, a mineral oil, such as liquid paraffin, or a mixture of these. Suitable emulsifying agents include naturally-occurring gums, such as gum acacia and gum tragacanth, naturally occurring phosphatides, such as soybean lecithin, esters or partial esters derived from fatty acids and hexitol anhydrides, such as sorbitan monooleate, and condensation products of these partial esters with ethylene oxide, such as polyoxyethylene sorbitan monooleate. The emulsion may also contain sweetening and flavoring agents. Syrups and elixirs may be formulated with sweetening agents, such as glycerol, sorbitol or sucrose. Such formulations may also contain a demulcent, a preservative, a flavoring or a coloring agent.

The pharmaceutical compositions of the invention may be in the form of a sterile injectable preparation, such as a sterile injectable aqueous or oleaginous suspension. This suspension may be formulated according to the known art using those suitable dispersing or wetting agents and suspending agents which have been
5 mentioned above. The sterile injectable preparation may also be a sterile injectable solution or suspension in a non-toxic parenterally acceptable diluent or solvent, such as a solution in 1,3-butane-diol or prepared as a lyophilized powder. Among the acceptable vehicles and solvents that may be employed are water, Ringer's solution and isotonic sodium chloride solution. In addition, sterile fixed oils may conventionally be
10 employed as a solvent or suspending medium. For this purpose any bland fixed oil may be employed including synthetic mono- or diglycerides. In addition, fatty acids such as oleic acid may likewise be used in the preparation of injectables.

The amount of active ingredient that may be combined with the carrier material to produce a single dosage form will vary depending upon the host treated and the
15 particular mode of administration. For example, a time-release formulation intended for oral administration to humans may contain approximately 1 to 1000 mg of active material compounded with an appropriate and convenient amount of carrier material which may vary from about 5 to about 95% of the total compositions (weight:weight). The pharmaceutical composition can be prepared to provide easily measurable amounts
20 for administration. For example, an aqueous solution intended for intravenous infusion may contain from about 3 to 500 μg of the active ingredient per milliliter of solution in order that infusion of a suitable volume at a rate of about 30 mL/hr can occur.

Formulations suitable for administration to the eye include eye drops wherein the active ingredient is dissolved or suspended in a suitable carrier, especially an
25 aqueous solvent for the active ingredient. The active ingredient is preferably present in such formulations in a concentration of 0.5 to 20%, advantageously 0.5 to 10% particularly about 1.5% w/w.

Formulations suitable for topical administration in the mouth include lozenges comprising the active ingredient in a flavored basis, usually sucrose and acacia or
30 tragacanth; pastilles comprising the active ingredient in an inert basis such as gelatin and glycerin, or sucrose and acacia; and mouthwashes comprising the active ingredient in a suitable liquid carrier.

Formulations for rectal administration may be presented as a suppository with a suitable base comprising for example cocoa butter or a salicylate.

Formulations suitable for intrapulmonary or nasal administration have a particle size for example in the range of 0.1 to 500 microns (including particle sizes in a range
5 between 0.1 and 500 microns in increments microns such as 0.5, 1, 30 microns, 35 microns, etc.), which is administered by rapid inhalation through the nasal passage or by inhalation through the mouth so as to reach the alveolar sacs. Suitable formulations include aqueous or oily solutions of the active ingredient. Formulations suitable for aerosol or dry powder administration may be prepared according to conventional
10 methods and may be delivered with other therapeutic agents.

Formulations suitable for vaginal administration may be presented as pessaries, tampons, creams, gels, pastes, foams or spray formulations containing in addition to the active ingredient such carriers as are known in the art to be appropriate.

Formulations suitable for parenteral administration include aqueous and non-
15 aqueous sterile injection solutions which may contain anti-oxidants, buffers, bacteriostats and solutes which render the formulation isotonic with the blood of the intended recipient; and aqueous and non-aqueous sterile suspensions which may include suspending agents and thickening agents.

The formulations are presented in unit-dose or multi-dose containers, for
20 example sealed ampoules and vials, and may be stored in a freeze-dried (lyophilized) condition requiring only the addition of the sterile liquid carrier, for example water for injection, immediately prior to use. Extemporaneous injection solutions and suspensions are prepared from sterile powders, granules and tablets of the kind previously described. Preferred unit dosage formulations are those containing a daily
25 dose or unit daily sub-dose, as herein above recited, or an appropriate fraction thereof, of the active ingredient.

It should be understood that in addition to the ingredients particularly mentioned above the formulations of this invention may include other agents conventional in the art having regard to the type of formulation in question, for
30 example those suitable for oral administration may include flavoring agents.

The invention further provides veterinary compositions comprising at least one active ingredient as above defined together with a veterinary carrier.

Veterinary carriers are materials useful for the purpose of administering the composition and may be solid, liquid or gaseous materials which are otherwise inert or acceptable in the veterinary art and are compatible with the active ingredient. These veterinary compositions may be administered orally, parenterally or by any other
5 desired route.

Compounds of the invention can also be formulated to provide controlled release of the active ingredient to allow less frequent dosing or to improve the pharmacokinetic or toxicity profile of the active ingredient. Accordingly, the invention also provides compositions comprising one or more compounds of the invention
10 formulated for sustained or controlled release.

Effective dose of active ingredient depends at least on the nature of the condition being treated, toxicity, whether the compound is being used prophylactically (lower doses), the method of delivery, and the pharmaceutical formulation, and will be determined by the clinician using conventional dose escalation studies.

15 Routes of Administration

One or more compounds of the invention (herein referred to as the active ingredients) are administered by any route appropriate to the condition to be treated. Suitable routes include oral, rectal, nasal, topical (including buccal and sublingual), vaginal and parenteral (including subcutaneous, intramuscular, intravenous,
20 intradermal, intrathecal and epidural), and the like. It will be appreciated that the preferred route may vary with for example the condition of the recipient. An advantage of the compounds of this invention is that they are orally bioavailable and can be dosed orally.

25 The antiviral properties of a compound of the invention may be determined using Test A described below.

Test A: Antiviral Assays in MT4 Cells

For the antiviral assay utilizing MT-4 cells, 0.4 μ L of 189X test concentration
30 of 3-fold serially diluted compound in DMSO was added to 40 μ L of cell growth medium (RPMI 1640, 10%FBS, 1% penicillin/Streptomycin, 1% L-Glutamine, 1% HEPES) in each well of 384-well assay plates (10 concentrations) in quadruplicate.

1 mL aliquots of 2×10^6 MT-4 cells are pre-infected for 1 and 3 hrs respectively, @ 37°C with 25 μ L (MT4) or of either cell growth medium (mock-infected) or a fresh 1:250 dilution of an HIV-IIIb concentrated ABI stock (0.004 m.o.i. for MT4 cells). Infected and uninfected cells are diluted in cell growth medium and 35
5 μ L of 2000 (for MT4) cells is added to each well of the assay plates.

Assay plates were then incubated in a 37 °C incubator . After 5 days of incubation, 25 μ l of 2X concentrated CellTiter-Glo™ Reagent (catalog # G7573, Promega Biosciences, Inc., Madison, WI) was added to each well of the assay plate. Cell lysis was carried out by incubating at room temperature for 2-3 min and then
10 chemiluminescence was read using the Envision reader (PerkinElmer).

Compounds of the present invention demonstrate antiviral activity in this assay (Test A) as depicted in the table below.

Compound Number	EC50 (nM)
1L	170
2K	55
3L	1059
4J	543
5J	19
6D	20
7J	160
8L	559
9	173
10	897
11	479
12	210
13	150
14	983
15	334
16	220
17	359

19	53000
20	1744
21	231
22	1075
23	26185
24	29783
25	346
26	45
27	23
28	43
29	939
30	153
31	105
32	108
33	95
34	266
35	157
36	20
37A	36
37B	46
38	68
39	11
40	51
41	26
42	46
43	27
44	18
45	29150
46	20
47	14
48	26

49	27
50	24
51	30
52	25
53	360
54	87
55	41
56	40
57	20
58	14
59	321
60	305
61	119
62	72
63	183
64	290
65A	85
65B	55
66	297
67	273
68	29150
69	82
70	206
71	118
72	194
73	247
74	92
75	38
76	267
77	135
78	163

79	86
80	52
81	69
82	171
83	42
84	330
85	131
86	78
87	175
88	514
89	42
90	67
91	73
92	300
93	94
94	149
95	54
96	37
97	898
98	251
99	12
100	75
101	367
102A	13
102B	110
103	25
104	720
105	105
106	25
107	n.d.
108	n.d.

109	n.d
110	n.d.
111	352
112	n.d.

n.d.(not determined)

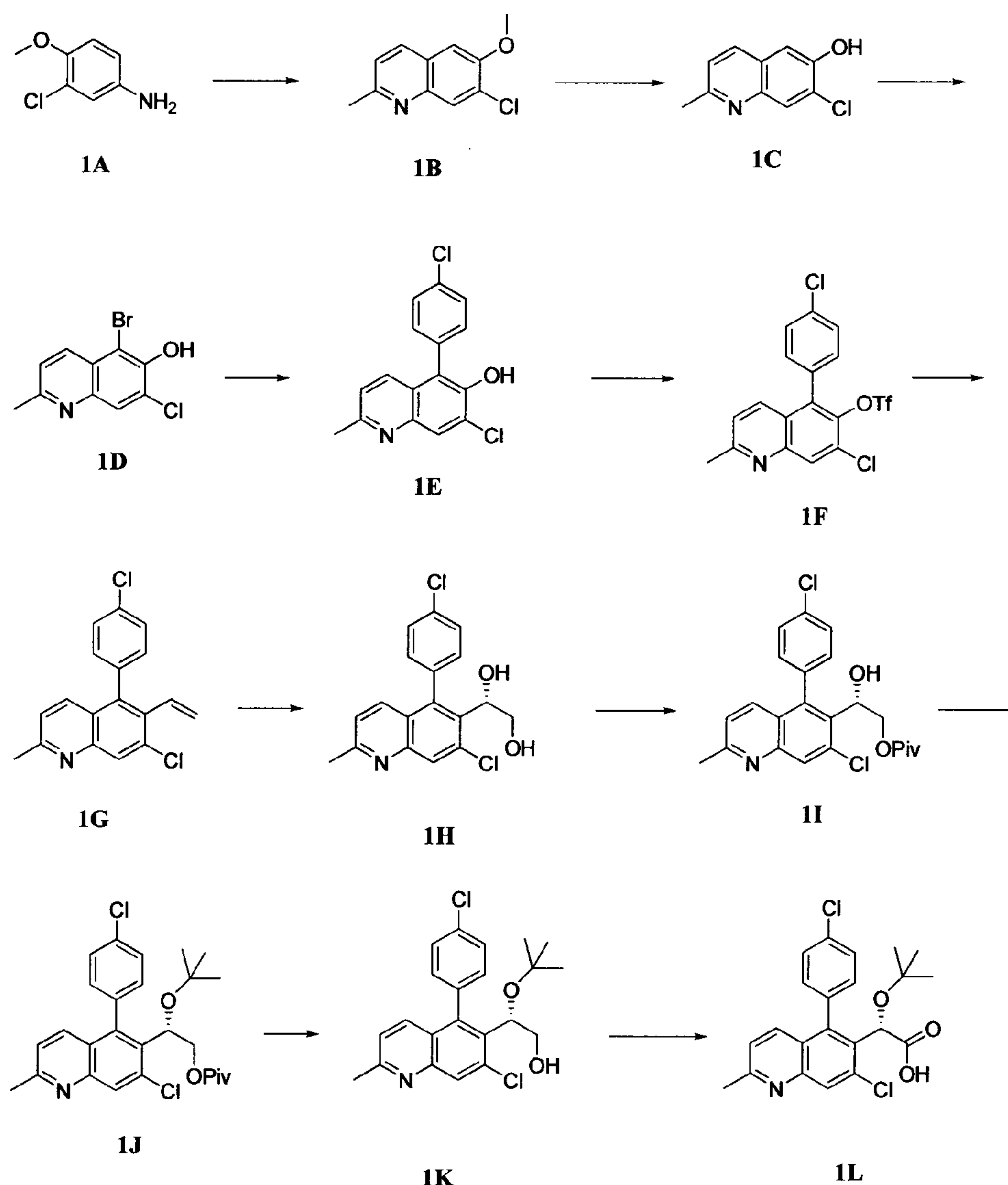
In certain embodiments, the compounds demonstrate an EC50 of < 50 μ M. In certain embodiments, the compounds demonstrate an EC50 of < 30 μ M. In certain
5 embodiments, the compounds demonstrate an EC50 of < 10 μ M. In certain
embodiments, the compounds demonstrate an EC50 of < 1 μ M.

The specific pharmacological responses observed may vary according to and
depending on the particular active compound selected or whether there are present
pharmaceutical carriers, as well as the type of formulation and mode of administration
10 employed, and such expected variations or differences in the results are contemplated
in accordance with practice of the present invention.

The invention has been described with reference to various specific and
preferred embodiments and techniques. However, it should be understood that many
variations and modifications may be made while remaining within the spirit and scope
15 of the invention.

The invention will now be illustrated by the following non-limiting Examples.

Example 1: Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(7-chloro-5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**1L**):



A stock solution of periodic acid/chromium trioxide was prepared according to WO 99/52850 by dissolving periodic acid (11.4 g, 50.0 mmol) and chromium trioxide (23 mg, 1.2 mol %) in wet acetonitrile (0.75% H₂O) to a volume of 114 mL. This stock solution (0.80 mL) was added to a solution of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(7-chloro-5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethanol (**1K**) (11 mg, 0.027 mmol) in wet acetonitrile (3.0 mL), 0.75% H₂O) at 0 °C. The reaction mixture was stirred for 30 minutes at 0 °C and quenched with 1.5 M K₂HPO₄ solution. Ethyl acetate was added and the organic layer separated and washed with 1:1 brine/H₂O (2x) and saturated NaHSO₃/brine. The organic layer was dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated and purified

by prep-HPLC to give **1L** as a TFA salt (8 mg, 57%). ¹H-NMR 300 MHz, (CD₃OD) δ 8.19 (s, 1H), 8.17 (d, 1H), 7.70-7.52 (m, 4H), 7.40-7.30 (m, 1H), 2.89 (s, 3H), 1.01 (s, 9H); LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₂₂H₂₂Cl₂NO₃: 419.3; Found: 418.1, 420.1, 422.1.

5

Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(7-chloro-5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethanol (**1K**).

Step 1.

Preparation of 7-chloro-6-methoxy-2-methylquinoline (**1B**): To 3-chloro-4-methoxyaniline (**1A**) (5.0 g, 31.7 mmol) was added 6 M HCl (100 mL) and the reaction was heated to 100 °C with stirring. Toluene (30 mL) was added followed by the slow addition of crotonaldehyde (5.3 mL, 63.5 mmol) at 100 °C. The mixture was stirred at 100 °C for 2 hours and cooled to room temperature. The water layer was separated and neutralized with 2 M NaOH solution to pH ~ 8. The solid that formed was filtered and collected. The crude product was purified by flash column chromatography to give **1B** as white solid (3.3 g, 50%). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 208.2, 210.2 (M+H)⁺.

15

Step 2.

Preparation of 7-chloro-2-methylquinolin-6-ol (**1C**): To a stirred solution of 7-chloro-6-methoxy-2-methylquinoline (**1B**) (1.22 g, 5.9 mmol) in dichloromethane (15 mL) was added BBr₃ (23.6 mL 1 M DCM solution, 23.6 mmol) at 0 °C. The mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 2 hours and quenched by the slow addition of a NaHCO₃ solution. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with brine, dried and concentrated. The residue was purified by column chromatography to give the pure product **1C** (0.91 g, 80%). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 194.1, 196.1 (M+H)⁺.

20

25

Step 3.

Preparation of 5-bromo-7-chloro-2-methylquinolin-6-ol (**1D**): To a stirred solution of 7-chloro-2-methylquinolin-6-ol (**1C**) (450 mg, 2.3 mmol) in acetic acid (15 mL) was added Br₂ (0.13 mL, 2.4 mmol) at ambient temperature. The mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for 2 hours. The solid that formed was filtered and collected to give **1D** as an off-white solid as the HBr salt (847 mg, 100%). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 281.1, 283.1 (M+H)⁺.

30

Step 4.

Preparation of 7-chloro-5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-methylquinolin-6-ol (**1E**):

Pd(PPh₃)₄ (120 mg, 0.1 mmol) was added to a mixture of 5-bromo-7-chloro-2-methylquinolin-6-ol (**1D**) (345 mg, 1.04 mmol), 4-chlorophenylboronic acid (326 mg, 2.09 mmol) and K₂CO₃ (2.3 mL 2 M in water, 4.7 mmol) in 1,2-dimethoxyethane (10 mL). The reaction mixture was flushed with nitrogen, heated at 80 °C for 16 hours, and then the volatile component was removed *in vacuo*. The residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate (100 mL), washed with a NaHCO₃ solution, water and brine, dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The obtained residue was purified by flash chromatography to provide **1E** as a white solid (147 mg, 47%). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 304.2, 306.2 (M+H)⁺.

Step 5.

Preparation of 7-chloro-5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-methylquinolin-6-yl

trifluoromethanesulfonate (**1F**): To a stirred solution of 7-chloro-5-(4-chloro-phenyl)-2-methylquinolin-6-ol (**1E**) (138 mg, 0.46 mmol) in dichloromethane (4 mL) and pyridine (1.5 mL) was added Tf₂O (0.16 mL, 0.92 mmol) at 0 °C. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours and quenched by the slow addition of a NaHCO₃ solution. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with brine, dried and concentrated to get a brown solid (194 mg, 97%). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 436.0, 437.9 (M+H)⁺. The crude product **1F** was used on next step reaction without further purification.

Step 6.

Preparation of 7-chloro-5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-methyl-6-vinylquinoline (**1G**):

Pd(PPh₃)₄ (52 mg, 0.045 mmol) and PdCl₂(PPh₃)₂ (32 mg, 0.045 mmol) were added to a mixture 7-chloro-5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-methylquinolin-6-yl trifluoromethanesulfonate (**1F**) (194 mg, 0.45 mmol), tributyl(vinyl)stannane (0.17 mL, 0.58 mmol), lithium chloride (57 mg, 1.4 mmol) and 2,6-di-*tert*-butyl-4-methylphenol (cat. amount) in 1,4-dioxane (8 mL). The reaction mixture was flushed with nitrogen, heated at 80 °C for 16 hours, and then the volatile component was removed *in vacuo*. The residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate (100 mL), washed with a NaHCO₃ solution, water and brine, dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The obtained

residue was purified by flash chromatography to provide the desired product **1G** (50 mg, 35%). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 314.2, 316.2 (M+H)⁺.

Step 7.

Preparation of (S)-1-(7-chloro-5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethane-1,2-diol (**1H**): AD-mix- α (1 g, excess) was added to a mixed solvent of *t*-butanol and water (4 mL /4 mL) and stirred at room temperature for 5 min and cooled to 0 °C. The mixture was transferred to another flask containing 7-chloro-5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-methyl-6-vinylquinoline (**1G**) (30 mg, 0.096 mmol) and stirred at 0 °C for 16 hours. The mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate, washed with NaHCO₃ solution, water and brine, dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The obtained residue was purified by flash chromatography to provide the desired product **1H** (28 mg, 84%). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 348.2, 350.2 (M+H)⁺.

Step 8.

Preparation of (S)-2-(7-chloro-5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-methylquinolin-6-yl)-2-hydroxyethyl pivalate (**1I**): To a stirred solution of (S)-1-(7-chloro-5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethane-1,2-diol (**1H**) (28 mg, 0.081 mmol) in dichloromethane (2 mL) and pyridine (0.5 mL) was added trimethyl acetylchloride (0.020 mL, 0.16 mmol) at 0 °C. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours and quenched by the slow addition of a NaHCO₃ solution. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with brine, dried and concentrated *in vacuo*. The obtained residue was purified by flash chromatography to provide the desired product **1I** (25 mg, 72%). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 432.2, 434.2 (M+H)⁺.

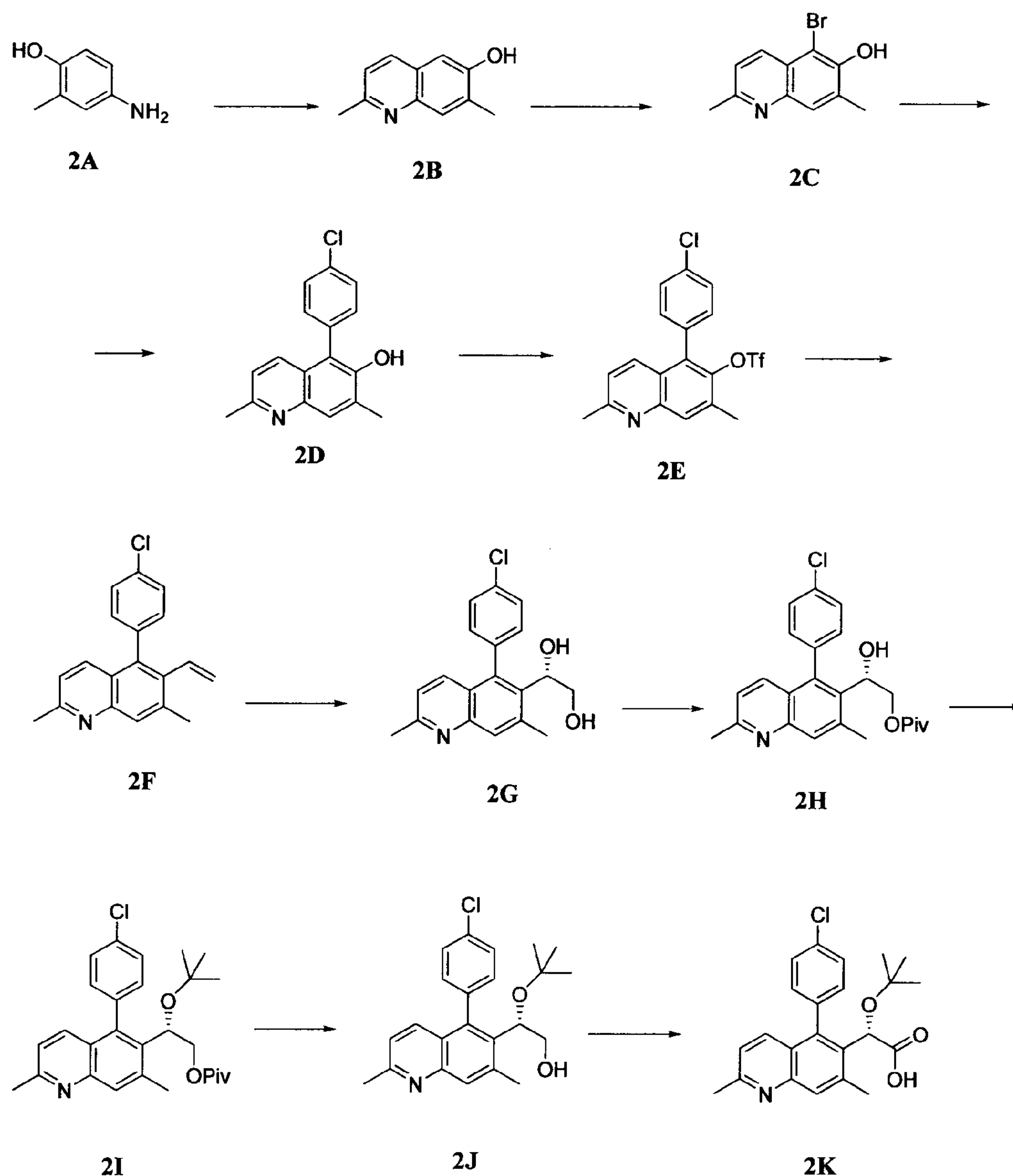
Step 9.

Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(7-chloro-5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate (**1J**): To a stirred solution of (S)-2-(7-chloro-5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-methylquinolin-6-yl)-2-hydroxyethyl pivalate (**1I**) (25 mg, 0.058 mmol) in *t*-butylacetate (3 mL) was added 70% perchloric acid (0.02 mL, 0.23 mmol) at 0 °C. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours and quenched by the slow addition of a NaHCO₃ solution. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with brine, dried and concentrated *in vacuo*. The obtained residue was purified by flash chromatography to provide the desired product **1J** (22 mg, 78%). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 488.2, 490.2 (M+H)⁺.

Step 10.

Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(7-chloro-5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethanol (**1K**): To a stirred solution of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(7-chloro-5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate (**1J**) (22 mg, 0.045 mmol) in THF and methanol (3 mL/1 mL) was added 1 M NaOH solution (1 mL, excess) at 0 °C. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 16 hours and diluted with water. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with brine, dried and concentrated *in vacuo*. The obtained residue was purified by flash chromatography to provide the desired product **1K** (11 mg, 61%). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 404.2, 406.2 (M+H)⁺.

Example 2: Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**2K**)



(S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**2K**) was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound **1L** of Example 1, except that (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)ethanol (**2J**) was used instead of compound **1K**. ¹H-NMR 300 MHz, (CD₃OD) δ 8.31 (d, 1H), 7.97 (s, 1H), 7.73 (d, 1H), 7.70-7.60 (m, 3H), 7.42-7.38 (m, 1H), 5.25 (s, 1H), 2.96 (s, 3H), 2.78 (s, 3H), 0.98 (s, 9H); LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₂₃H₂₅ClNO₃: 398.9; Found: 398.2, 400.1.

Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)ethanol (**2J**):

Step 1.

Preparation of 2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-ol (**2B**): Compound **2B** was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound **1B** of Example 1, except that 4-amino-2-methylphenol (**2A**) was used instead of compound **1A**. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 174.2 (M+H)⁺.

Step 2.

Preparation of 5-bromo-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-ol (**2C**): Compound **2C** was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound **1D** of Example 1, except that 2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-ol (**2B**) was used instead of compound **1C**. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 252.2, 254.2 (M+H)⁺.

Step 3.

Preparation of 5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-ol (**2D**): Compound **2D** was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound **1E** of Example 1, except that 5-bromo-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-ol (**2C**) was used instead of compound **1D**. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 284.2, 286.2 (M+H)⁺.

Step 4.

Preparation of 5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl trifluoromethanesulfonate (**2E**): Compound **2E** was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound **1F** of Example 1, except that 5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-ol (**2D**) was used instead of compound **1E**. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 416.0, 418.0 (M+H)⁺.

Step 5.

Preparation of 5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2,7-dimethyl-6-vinylquinoline (**2F**): Compound **2F** was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound **1G** of Example 1, except that 5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl trifluoromethanesulfonate (**2E**) was used instead of compound **1F**. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 294.3, 296.3 (M+H)⁺.

Step 6.

Preparation of (S)-1-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)ethane-1,2-diol (**2G**): Compound **2G** was prepared following the procedure used to prepare

compound **1H** of Example 1, except that 5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2,7-dimethyl-6-vinylquinoline (**2F**) was used instead of compound **1G**. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 328.2, 330.2 (M+H)⁺.

Step 7.

5 Preparation of (S)-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)-2-hydroxyethyl pivalate (**2H**): Compound **2H** was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound **1I** of Example 1, except that (S)-1-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)ethane-1,2-diol (**2G**) was used instead of compound **1H**. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 412.3, 414.3 (M+H)⁺.

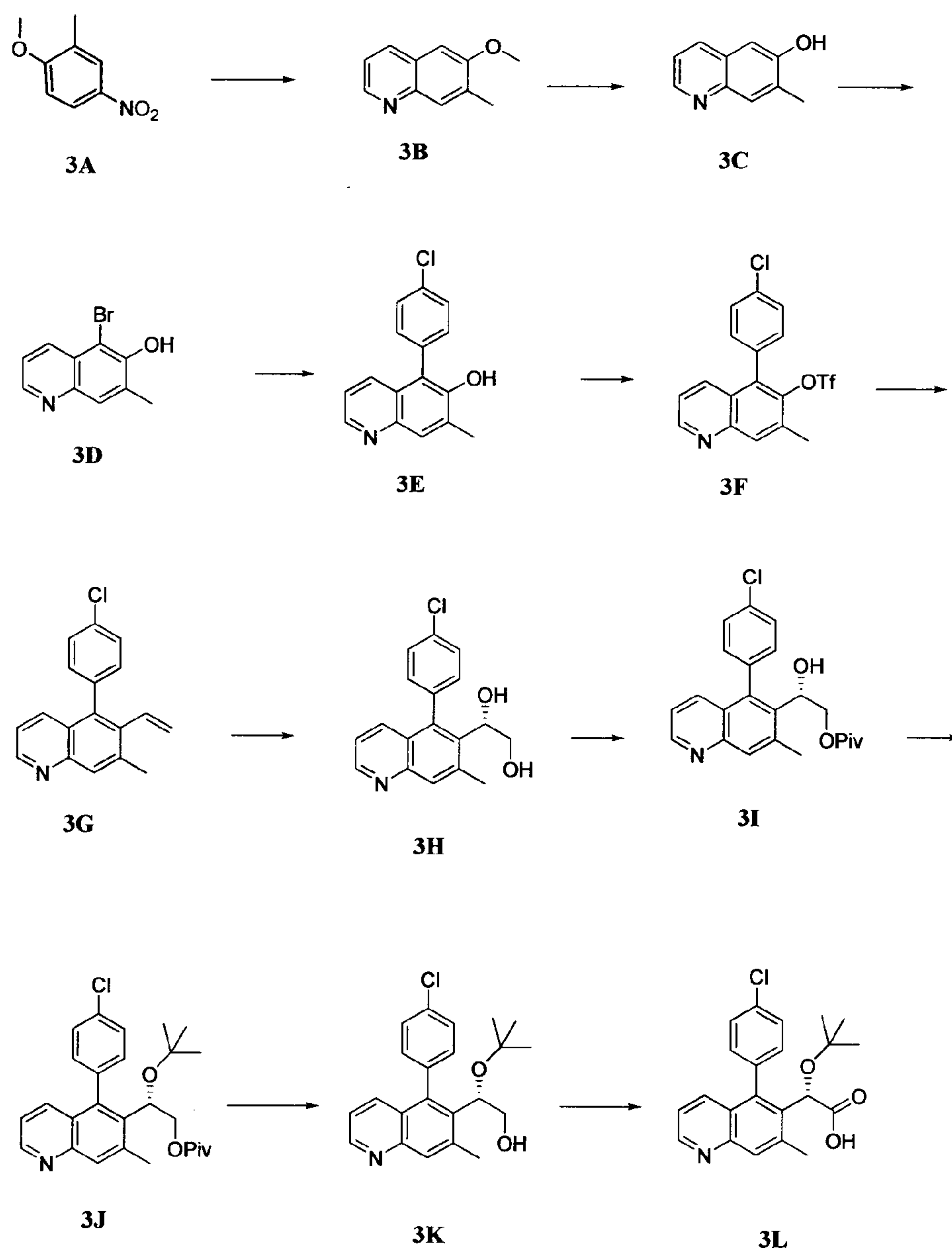
10 Step 8.

Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate (**2I**): Compound **2I** was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound **1J** of Example 1, except that (S)-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)-2-hydroxyethyl pivalate (**2H**) was used instead of compound **1I**.
15 LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 468.3, 470.3 (M+H)⁺.

Step 9.

Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)ethanol (**2J**): Compound **2J** was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound **1K** of Example 1, except that (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate (**2I**) was used instead of compound **1J**. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 384.2, 386.2 (M+H)⁺.
20

Example 3: Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**3L**).



(S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**3L**)
 5 was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound **1L** of Example 1, except that (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethanol (**3K**) was used instead of compound **1L**. ¹H-NMR 300 MHz, (CDCl₃) δ 8.89-8.86 (m, 1H), 7.98 (s, 1H), 7.75-7.65 (m, 2H), 7.58-7.50 (m, 2H), 7.30-7.20 (m, 2H), 5.30 (s,

1H), 2.66 (s, 3H), 1.02 (s, 9H); LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₂₂H₂₃ClNO₃: 384.9; Found: 384.1, 386.1.

Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethanol (**3K**):

5 Step 1.

Preparation of 6-methoxy-7-methylquinoline (**3B**): 1-methoxy-2-methyl-4-nitrobenzene (**3A**) (5 g, 30.0 mmol), 3-amino-1-propanol (0.57 mL, 7.5 mmol), isopropanol (3.43 mL, 4.5 mmol), ruthenium(III) chloride hydrate (156 mg, 0.75 mmol), triphenylphosphine (588 mg, 2.24 mmol), and tin(II) chloride dihydrate (1.69 g, 7.5 mmol) in dioxane/H₂O (67 mL/7 mL) were placed in a stainless steel pressure vessel. After the system was flushed with argon, the mixture was stirred at 180 °C for 20 hours. The reaction mixture was filtered through a short silica gel column (ethyl acetate/chloroform mixture) to eliminate inorganic compounds and concentrated under reduced pressure. The organic layer was poured into saturated brine, extracted with

10 7.5 mmol) in dioxane/H₂O (67 mL/7 mL) were placed in a stainless steel pressure vessel. After the system was flushed with argon, the mixture was stirred at 180 °C for 20 hours. The reaction mixture was filtered through a short silica gel column (ethyl acetate/chloroform mixture) to eliminate inorganic compounds and concentrated under reduced pressure. The organic layer was poured into saturated brine, extracted with

15 chloroform, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and evaporated under reduced pressure. The residual oily material was separated by column chromatography to give the product **3B** (200 mg, 15%). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 174.2 (M+H)⁺.

Step 2.

Preparation of 7-methylquinolin-6-ol (**3C**): Compound **3C** was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound **1C** of Example 1, except that 6-methoxy-7-methylquinoline (**3B**) was used instead of compound **1B**. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 160.2 (M+H)⁺.

20 following the procedure used to prepare compound **1C** of Example 1, except that 6-methoxy-7-methylquinoline (**3B**) was used instead of compound **1B**. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 160.2 (M+H)⁺.

Step 3.

Preparation of 5-bromo-7-methylquinolin-6-ol (**3D**): Compound **3D** was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound **1D** of Example 1, except that 7-methylquinolin-6-ol (**3C**) was used instead of compound **1C**. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 238.1, 240.1 (M+H)⁺.

25 prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound **1D** of Example 1, except that 7-methylquinolin-6-ol (**3C**) was used instead of compound **1C**. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 238.1, 240.1 (M+H)⁺.

Step 4.

Preparation of 5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-ol (**3E**): Compound **3E** was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound **1E** of Example 1, except that 5-bromo-7-methylquinolin-6-ol (**3D**) was used instead of compound **1D**. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 270.2, 272.2 (M+H)⁺.

30 was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound **1E** of Example 1, except that 5-bromo-7-methylquinolin-6-ol (**3D**) was used instead of compound **1D**. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 270.2, 272.2 (M+H)⁺.

Step 5.

Preparation of 5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl trifluoromethanesulfonate (**3F**): Compound **3F** was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound **1F** of Example 1, except that 5-(4-chloro-phenyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-ol (**3E**) was used instead of compound **1E**. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 402.0, 404.0 (M+H)⁺.

Step 6.

Preparation of 5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-6-vinylquinoline (**3G**): Compound **3G** was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound **1G** of Example 1, except that 5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl trifluoromethanesulfonate (**3F**) was used instead of **1F**. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 280.2, 282.2 (M+H)⁺.

Step 7.

Preparation of (S)-1-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethane-1,2-diol (**3H**): Compound **3H** was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound **1H** of Example 1, except that 5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-6-vinyl-quinoline (**3G**) was used instead of compound **1G**. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 314.2, 316.2 (M+H)⁺.

Step 8.

Preparation of (S)-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)-2-hydroxyethyl pivalate (**3I**): Compound **3I** was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound **1I** of Example 1, except that (S)-1-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethane-1,2-diol (**3H**) was used instead of compound **1H**. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 398.2, 400.2 (M+H)⁺.

Step 9.

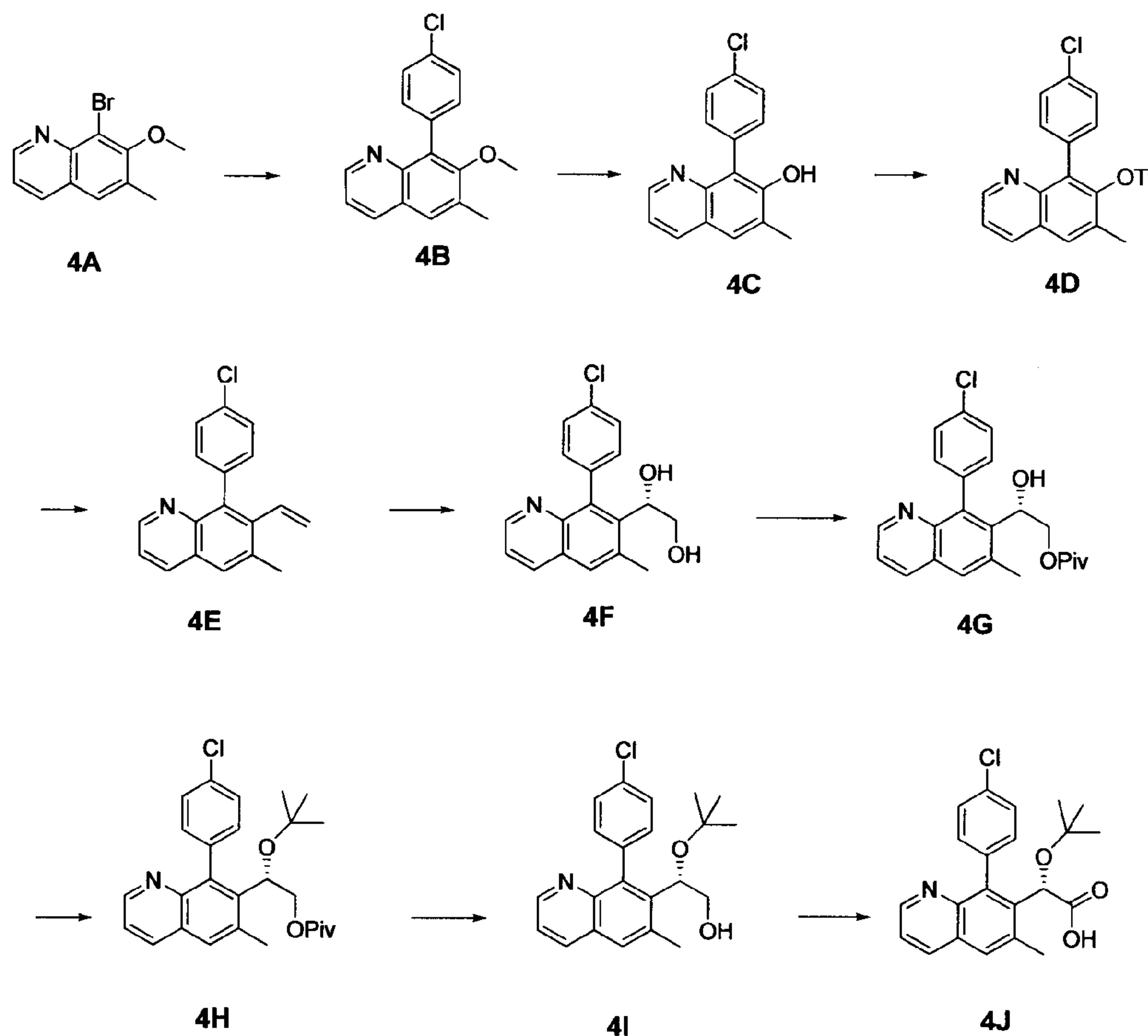
Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate (**3J**): Compound **3J** was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound **1J** of Example 1, except that (S)-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)-2-hydroxyethyl pivalate (**3I**) was used instead of compound **1I**. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 454.3, 456.3 (M+H)⁺.

Step 10.

Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethanol (**3K**): Compound **3K** was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound **1K** of example 1, except that (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-

methylquinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate (**3J**) was used instead of compound **1J**. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 370.2, 372.2 (M+H)⁺.

Example 4: Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(8-(4-chlorophenyl)-6-methylquinolin-7-yl)acetic acid (**4J**).



(S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(8-(4-chlorophenyl)-6-methylquinolin-7-yl)acetic acid (**4J**) was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound **1L** of Example 1, except that (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(8-(4-chlorophenyl)-6-methylquinolin-7-yl)ethanol (**4I**) was used instead of compound **1K**. ¹H-NMR 300 MHz, (CD₃OD) δ 8.97-8.91 (m, 1H), 8.86-8.82 (m, 1H), 8.11 (s, 1H), 7.95-7.90 (m, 1H), 7.72-7.65 (m, 3H), 7.50-7.45 (m, 1H), 5.23 (s, 1H), 2.73 (s, 3H), 0.99 (s, 9H); LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₂₂H₂₃ClNO₃: 384.9; Found: 384.1, 386.1.

Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(8-(4-chlorophenyl)-6-methylquinolin-7-yl)ethanol (**4I**):

Step 1.

Preparation of 8-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methoxy-6-methylquinoline (**4B**):

- 5 Compound **4B** was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound **1E** of Example 1, except that 8-bromo-7-methoxy-6-methylquinoline (**4A**) was used instead of compound **1D**. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 284.2, 286.2 (M+H)⁺.

Step 2.

- 10 Preparation of 8-(4-chlorophenyl)-6-methylquinolin-7-ol (**4C**): Compound **4C** was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound **1C** of Example 1, except that 8-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methoxy-6-methylquinoline (**4B**) was used instead of compound **1B**. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 270.2, 272.2 (M+H)⁺.

Step 3.

- 15 Preparation of 8-(4-chlorophenyl)-6-methylquinolin-7-yl trifluoromethanesulfonate (**4D**): Compound **4D** was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound **1F** of example 1, except that 8-(4-chloro-phenyl)-6-methylquinolin-7-ol (**4C**) was used instead of compound **1E**. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 402.0, 403.9 (M+H)⁺.

Step 4.

- 20 Preparation of 8-(4-chlorophenyl)-6-methyl-7-vinylquinoline (**4E**): Compound **4E** was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound **1G** of Example 1, except that 8-(4-chlorophenyl)-6-methylquinolin-7-yl trifluoromethanesulfonate (**4D**) was used instead of compound **1F**. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 280.2, 282.2 (M+H)⁺.

Step 5.

- 25 Preparation of (S)-1-(8-(4-chlorophenyl)-6-methylquinolin-7-yl)ethane-1,2-diol (**4F**): Compound **4F** was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound **1H** of Example 1, except that 8-(4-chlorophenyl)-6-methyl-7-vinyl-quinoline (**4E**) was used instead of compound **1G**. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 314.1, 316.1 (M+H)⁺.

Step 6.

- 30 Preparation of (S)-2-(8-(4-chlorophenyl)-6-methylquinolin-7-yl)-2-hydroxyethyl pivalate (**4G**): Compound **4G** was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound **1I** of example 1, except that (S)-1-(8-(4-chlorophenyl)-6-

methylquinolin-7-yl)ethane-1,2-diol (**4F**) was used instead of compound **1H**. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 398.2, 400.2 (M+H)⁺.

Step 7.

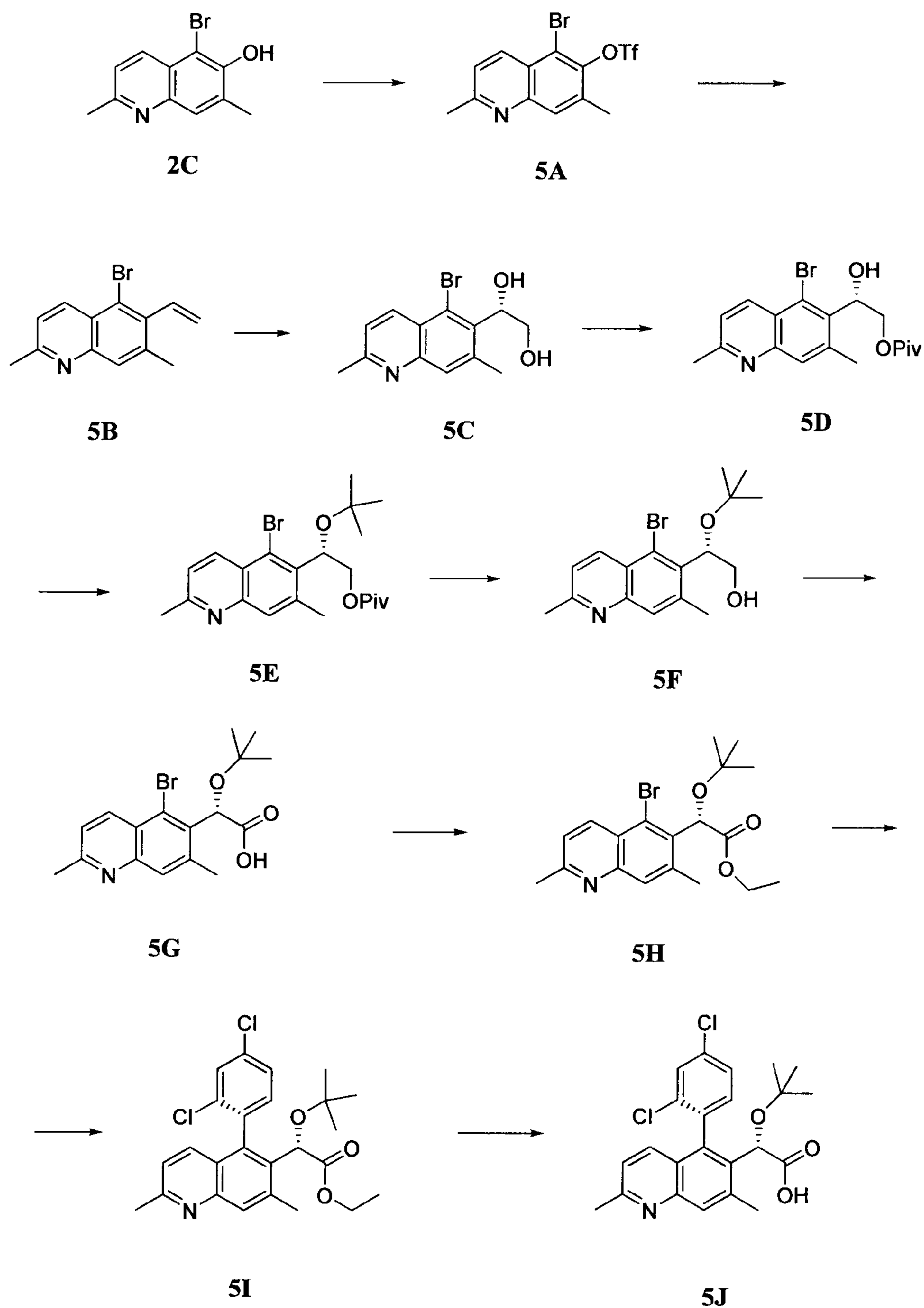
Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(8-(4-chlorophenyl)-6-methylquinolin-7-yl)ethyl pivalate (**4H**): Compound **4H** was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound **IJ** of example 1, except that (S)-2-(8-(4-chlorophenyl)-6-methylquinolin-7-yl)-2-hydroxyethyl pivalate (**4G**) was used instead of compound **1I**. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 454.3, 456.3 (M+H)⁺.

Step 8.

Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(8-(4-chlorophenyl)-6-methylquinolin-7-yl)ethanol (**4I**): Compound **4I** was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound **1K** of Example 1, except that (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(8-(4-chlorophenyl)-6-methylquinolin-7-yl)ethyl pivalate (**4H**) was used instead of compound **1J**. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 370.2, 372.1 (M+H)⁺.

15

Example 5: Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-((S)-5-(2,4-dichlorophenyl)-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**5J**).



To a stirred solution of (S)-ethyl 2-tert-butoxy-2-((S)-5-(2,4-dichlorophenyl)-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)acetate (**5I**) (15 mg as TFA salt, 0.027 mmol) in THF and methanol (3 mL/1 mL) was added 1 M NaOH solution (1 mL, excess) at 0 °C. The mixture was stirred at 50 °C for 4 hours and diluted with water. The mixture was

extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with brine, dried and concentrated *in vacuo*. The obtained residue was purified by Prep-HPLC to provide the desired isomer of **5J** as a TFA salt (11 mg, 77%). ¹H-NMR 300 MHz, (CD₃OD) δ 8.14 (d, 1H), 8.03 (s, 1H), 7.74 (d, 1H), 7.72 (d, 1H), 7.52 (dd, 1H), 7.25 (d, 1H), 5.36 (s, 1H), 2.96 (s, 3H), 2.90 (s, 3H), 1.11 (s, 9H); LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₂₃H₂₄Cl₂NO₃: 433.3; Found: 432.1, 434.1.

The (S,R) isomer of **5J** was obtained using the same procedure described above except that the (S,R) isomer of **5I** was used in the reaction. ¹H-NMR 300 MHz, (CD₃OD) δ 8.18 (d, 1H), 7.99 (s, 1H), 7.80 (d, 1H), 7.77 (d, 1H), 7.73 (d, 1H), 7.66-7.62 (m 1H), 5.17 (s, 1H), 2.95 (s, 3H), 2.80 (s, 3H), 1.05 (s, 9H); LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₂₃H₂₄Cl₂NO₃: 433.3; Found: 432.1, 434.1

Preparation of (S)-ethyl 2-tert-butoxy-2-((S)-5-(2,4-dichlorophenyl)-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)acetate (**5I**):

Step 1.

Preparation of 5-bromo-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl trifluoromethanesulfonate (**5A**): Compound **5A** was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound **1F** of Example 1, except that 5-bromo-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-ol (**2C**) was used instead of compound **1E**. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 383.9, 385.9 (M+H)⁺.

Step 2.

Preparation of 5-bromo-2,7-dimethyl-6-vinylquinoline (**5B**): PdCl₂(PPh₃)₂ (207 mg, 0.30 mmol) was added to a mixture of 5-bromo-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl trifluoromethanesulfonate (**5A**) (1.13 g, 2.95 mmol), tributyl(vinyl)stannane (0.95 mL, 3.25 mmol) and lithium chloride (375 mg, 8.85 mmol) in DMF (30 mL). The reaction mixture was flushed with argon, heated at 80 °C for 4 hours, and then the volatile component was removed *in vacuo*. The residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate (200 mL), washed with NaHCO₃ solution, water and brine, dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The obtained residue was purified by flash chromatography to provide **5B** (678 mg, 88%). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 262.1, 264.1 (M+H)⁺.

Step 3.

Preparation of (S)-1-(5-bromo-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)ethane-1,2-diol (**5C**): Compound **5C** was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound **1H** of

Example 1, except that 5-bromo-2,7-dimethyl-6-vinylquinoline (**5B**) was used instead of compound **1G**. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 296.1, 298.1 (M+H)⁺.

Step 4.

Preparation of (S)-2-(5-bromo-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)-2-hydroxyethyl pivalate (**5D**): Compound **5D** was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound **1I** of Example 1, except that (S)-1-(5-bromo-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)ethane-1,2-diol (**5C**) was used instead of compound **1H**. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 380.2, 382.2 (M+H)⁺.

Step 5.

Preparation of (S)-2-(5-bromo-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyethyl pivalate (**5E**): Compound **5E** was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound **1J** of Example 1, except that (S)-2-(5-bromo-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)-2-hydroxyethyl pivalate (**5D**) was used instead compound **1I**. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 436.2, 438.2 (M+H)⁺.

Step 6.

Preparation of (S)-2-(5-bromo-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyethanol (**5F**): Compound **5F** was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound **1K** of Example 1, except that (S)-2-(5-bromo-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyethyl pivalate (**5E**) was used instead of compound **1J**. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 352.2, 354.2 (M+H)⁺.

Step 7.

Preparation of (S)-2-(5-bromo-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyacetic acid (**5G**): Compound **5G** was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound **1L** of Example 1, except that (S)-2-(5-bromo-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyethanol (**5F**) was used instead of compound **1K**. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 366.1, 368.1 (M+H)⁺.

Step 8.

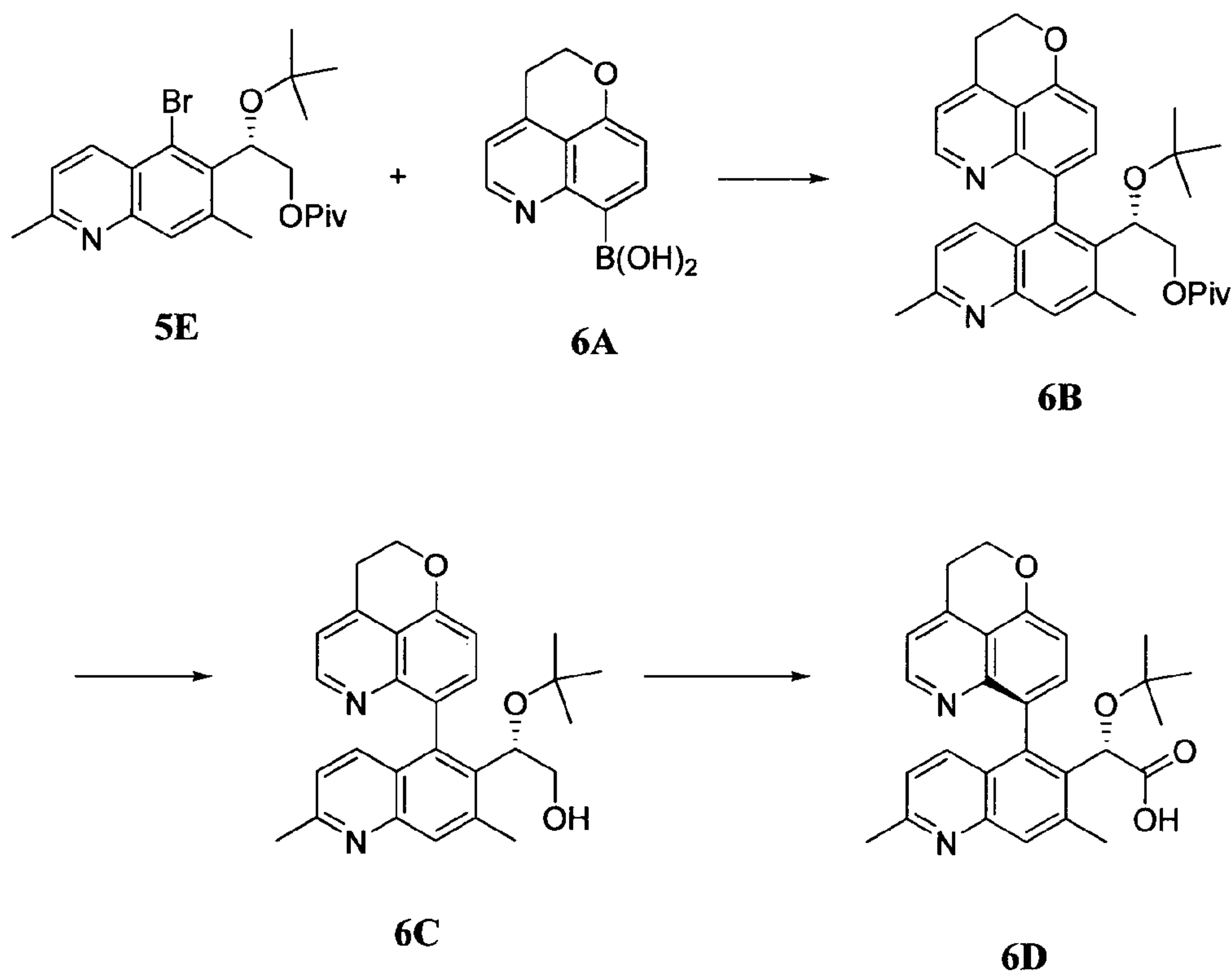
Preparation of (S)-ethyl 2-(5-bromo-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyacetate (**5H**): To a stirred solution of (S)-2-(5-bromo-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyacetic acid (**5G**) (180 mg, 0.49 mmol) in DMF (15 mL) was added cesium carbonate (321 mg, 0.98 mmol) at 0 °C. After being stirred for 10 min iodoethane (0.059 mL, 0.74 mmol) was added. The mixture was stirred at room

temperature for 2 hours and quenched by the slow addition of a NaHCO₃ solution. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with brine, dried and concentrated. The residue was purified by column chromatography to give the pure product **5H** (168 mg, 87%). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 394.1, 396.1 (M+H)⁺.

5 Step 9.

Preparation of (S)-ethyl 2-tert-butoxy-2-((S)-5-(2,4-dichlorophenyl)-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)acetate (**5I**): Pd₂(dba)₃ (3.5 mg, 0.006 mmol) was added to a mixture of (S)-ethyl 2-(5-bromo-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyacetate (**5H**) (24 mg, 0.061 mmol), 2,4-dichlorophenylboronic acid (23 mg, 0.12 mmol), 2-
10 dicyclohexylphosphino-2',6'-dimethoxybiphenyl ("Sphos", 5 mg, 0.012 mmol) and K₃PO₄ (39 mg, 0.18 mmol) in toluene (1.5 mL). The reaction mixture was flushed with argon, heated at 110 °C for 16 hours, and then the volatile component was removed *in vacuo*. The residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate (100 mL), washed with NaHCO₃ solution, water and brine, dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The
15 obtained residue was purified by prep-HPLC to provide two isomers of **5I** as white solids. Each was obtained as a TFA salt (desired (S,R) enantiomer: 18 mg, 53%). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 460.2, 462.2 (M+H)⁺.

20 Example 6: Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**6D**).



(S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**6D**) was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound **1L** of Example 1 except that (2S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)ethanol (**6C**) was used instead of compound **1K**. ¹H-NMR 300 MHz, (CD₃OD) δ 8.59 (d, 1H), 8.05 (s, 1H), 7.94 (d, 1H), 7.65 (d, 1H), 7.54 (d, 1H), 7.48 (d, 1H), 7.27 (d, 1H), 5.25 (s, 1H), 4.70-4.55 (m, 2H), 3.52-3.45 (m, 2H), 2.90 (s, 3H), 0.91 (s, 9H); LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₂₈H₂₉N₂O₄: 457.5; Found: 457.1.

10

Preparation of (2S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)ethanol (**6C**):

Step 1.

Preparation of (2S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate (**6B**): Pd(PPh₃)₄ (4 mg, 0.0037 mmol) was added to a mixture (S)-2-(5-bromo-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyethyl pivalate (**5E**) (16 mg, 0.037 mmol), 2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-ylboronic acid hydrochloride (**6A**) (23 mg, 0.073 mmol) and K₂CO₃ (0.083 mL 2 M in water,

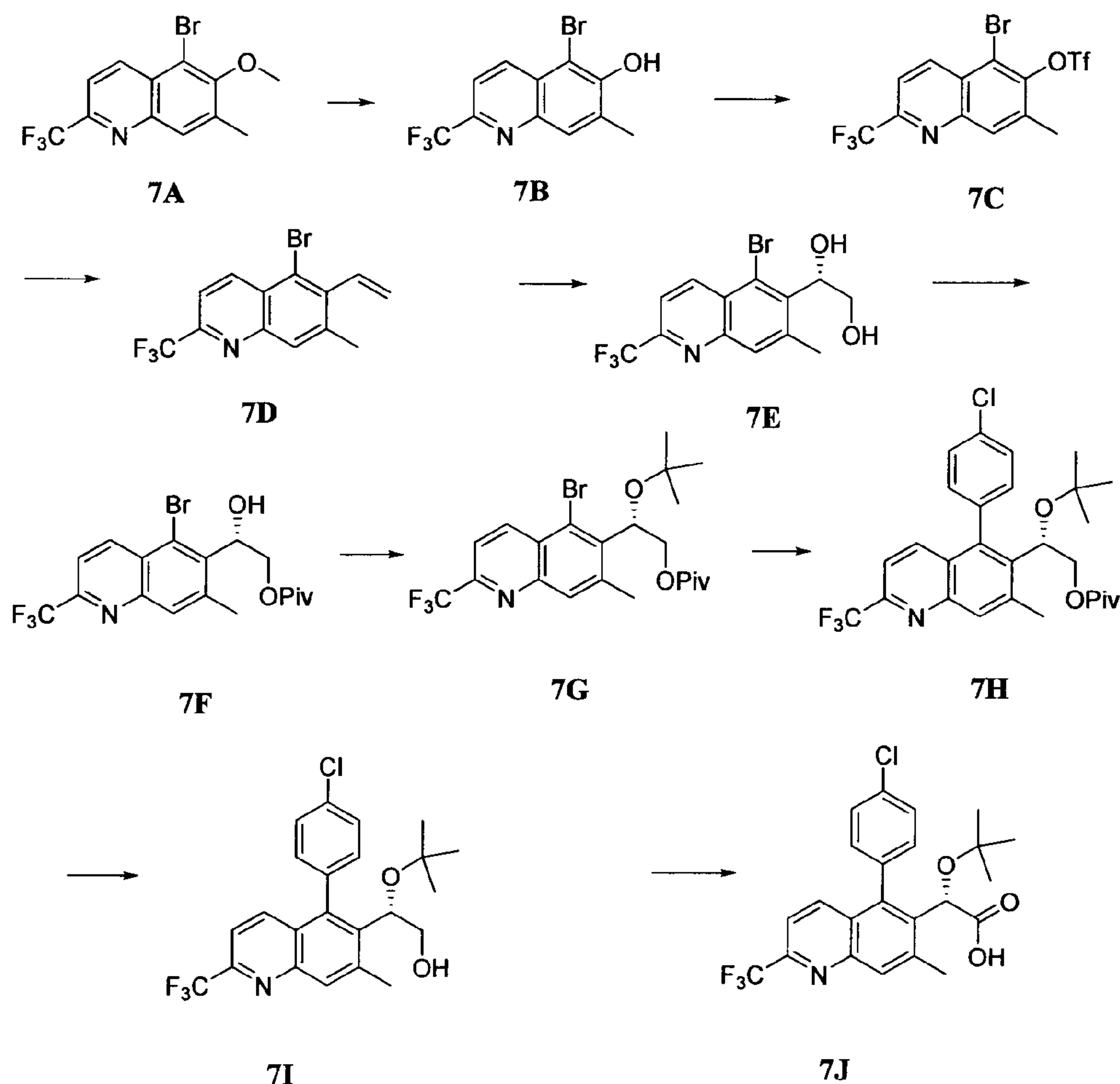
15

1.66 mmol) in 1,2-dimethoxyethane (2 mL). The reaction mixture was flushed with nitrogen, microwaved at 120 °C for 90 min and the volatile component was removed *in vacuo*. The residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate (50 mL), washed with NaHCO₃ solution, water and brine, dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The
5 obtained residue was purified by prep-HPLC to provide **6B** as a white solid (4 mg as TFA salt, 18%). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 527.3 (M+H)⁺.

Step 2.

Preparation of (2S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)ethanol (**6C**): Compound **6C** was prepared following the
10 procedure used to prepare compound **1K** of Example 1 except that (2S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate (**6B**) was used instead of compound **1J**. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 433.3 (M+H)⁺.

Example 7: Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(trifluoromethyl)quinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**7J**).
15



(S)-2-tert-Butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(trifluoromethyl)quinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**7J**) was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound **1L** of Example 1 except that (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(trifluoromethyl)quinolin-6-yl)ethanol (**7I**) was used instead of compound **1K**. ¹H-NMR 300 MHz, (CD₃OD) δ 8.01(s, 1H), 7.95 (d, 1H), 7.71 (d, 1H), 7.65-7.55 (m, 2H), 7.35 (d, 1H), 5.24 (s, 1H), 2.71 (s, 3H), 0.99 (s, 9H); LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₂₃H₂₂ClF₃NO₃: 452.9; Found: 452.1, 454.1.

10 Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(trifluoromethyl)quinolin-6-yl)ethanol (**7I**):

Step 1.

Preparation of 5-bromo-7-methyl-2-(trifluoromethyl)quinolin-6-ol (**7B**):

Compound **7B** was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound **1C** of

Example 1, except that 5-bromo-6-methoxy-7-methyl-2-(trifluoromethyl)quinoline (7A) was used instead of compound 1B. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 306.1, 308.1 (M+H)⁺.

Step 2.

Preparation of 5-bromo-7-methyl-2-(trifluoromethyl)quinolin-6-yl

5 trifluoromethanesulfonate (7C): Compound 7C was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound 1F of Example 1 except that 5-bromo-7-methyl-2-(trifluoromethyl)quinolin-6-ol (7B) was used instead of compound 1E. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 437.8, 439.8 (M+H)⁺.

Step 3.

10 Preparation of 5-bromo-7-methyl-2-(trifluoromethyl)-6-vinylquinoline (7D): Compound 7D was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound 5B of Example 5, except that 5-bromo-7-methyl-2-(trifluoromethyl)quinolin-6-yl trifluoromethanesulfonate (7C) was used instead of compound 5A. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 316.1, 318.1 (M+H)⁺.

15 Step 4.

Preparation of (S)-1-(5-bromo-7-methyl-2-(trifluoromethyl)quinolin-6-yl)ethane-1,2-diol (7E): Compound 7E was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound 1H of Example 1, except that 5-bromo-7-methyl-2-(trifluoromethyl)-6-vinylquinoline (7D) was used instead of compound 1G. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 350.1, 352.1 (M+H)⁺.

20 Step 5.

Preparation of (S)-2-(5-bromo-7-methyl-2-(trifluoromethyl)quinolin-6-yl)-2-hydroxyethyl pivalate (7F): Compound 7F was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound 1I of Example 1 except that (S)-1-(5-bromo-7-methyl-2-(trifluoromethyl)quinolin-6-yl)ethane-1,2-diol (7E) was used instead of compound 1H.

25 Step 6.

Preparation of (S)-2-(5-bromo-7-methyl-2-(trifluoromethyl)quinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyethyl pivalate (7G): Compound 7G was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound 1J of Example 1 except (S)-2-(5-bromo-7-methyl-2-(trifluoromethyl)quinolin-6-yl)-2-hydroxyethyl pivalate (7F) was used instead of compound 1I. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 490.2, 492.2 (M+H)⁺.

30 Step 7.

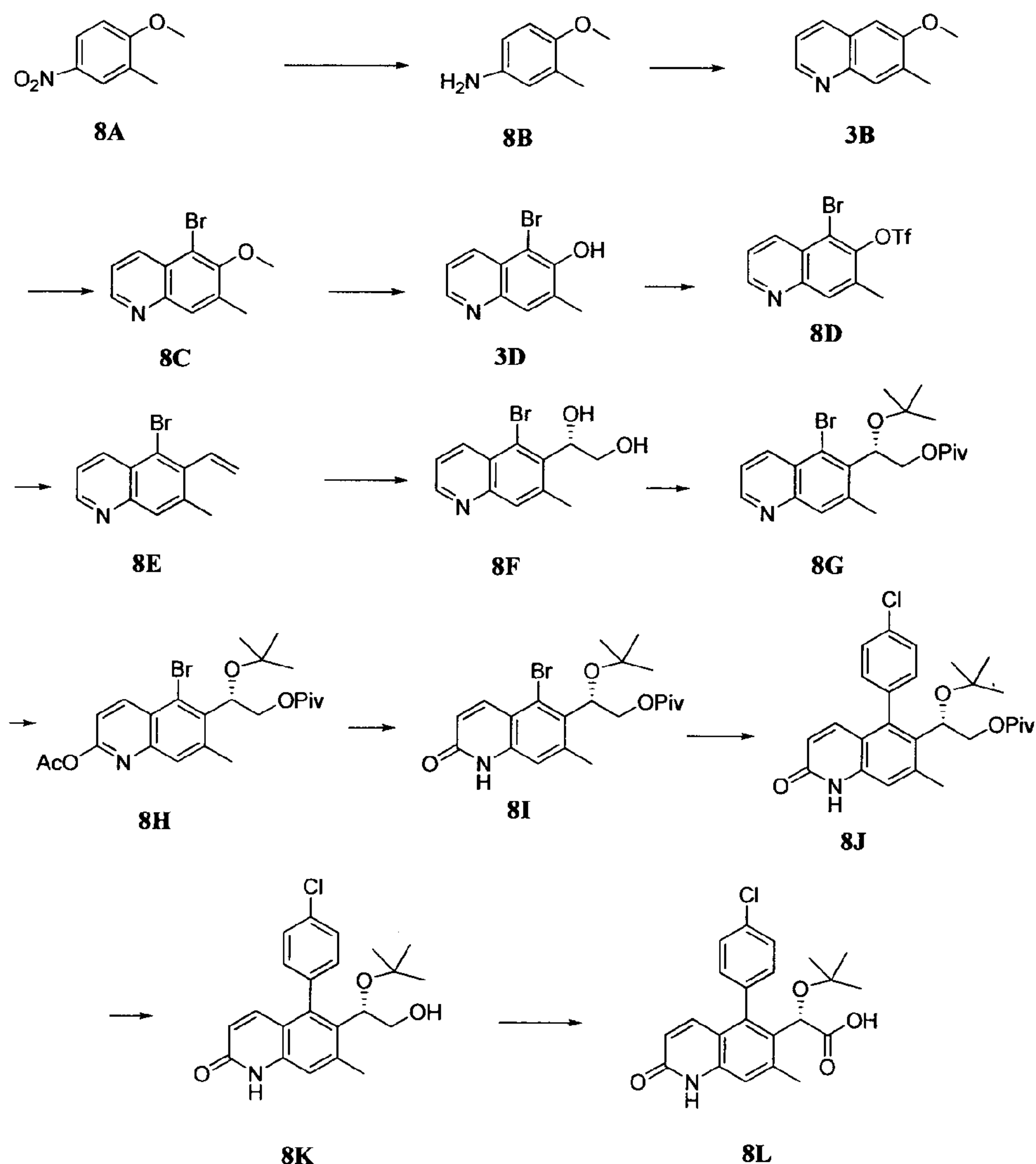
Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(trifluoromethyl)quinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate (**7H**): Compound **7H** was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound **1E** of Example 1 except that (S)-2-(5-bromo-7-methyl-2-(trifluoromethyl)quinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyethyl pivalate (**7G**)
5 was used instead of compound **1D**. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 522.2, 524.2 (M+H)⁺.

Step 8.

Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(trifluoromethyl)quinolin-6-yl)ethanol (**7I**): Following the procedure used to prepare compound **1K** of Example 1, except that (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(trifluoromethyl)quinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate (**7H**) was used instead of
10 compound **1J**. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 438.2, 440.2 (M+H)⁺.

Example 8: Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydroquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**8L**).

15



A stock solution of periodic acid/chromium trioxide was prepared according to WO 99/52850 by dissolving periodic acid (11.4 g, 50.0 mmol) and chromium trioxide (23 mg, 1.2 mol %) in wet acetonitrile (0.75% H₂O) to a volume of 114 mL. This stock solution (0.40 mL) was added to a solution of (S)-6-(1-tert-butoxy-2-hydroxyethyl)-5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methylquinolin-2(1H)-one (**8K**, 4.4 mg) in wet acetonitrile (1.5 mL, 0.75% H₂O) at 0 °C. After stirring for 60 min at 0 °C, the reaction was quenched with 1.5 M K₂HPO₄ solution and extracted with ethyl acetate (2x). The combined organic layer was washed with 1:1 brine/H₂O (2x), saturated NaHSO₃/brine, and was dried (MgSO₄). Concentration and purification by prep-HPLC gave (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-

(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydroquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**8L**) (2 mg). ¹H-NMR 300 MHz, (CD₃OD) δ 7.56-7.53 (3 H, m), 7.35 (1 H, d, J = 9.7 Hz), 7.28 (1 H, d, J = 8.2 Hz), 7.22 (1 H, s), 6.43 (1 H, d, J = 9.8 Hz), 5.06 (1 H, s), 2.55 (3 H, s), 0.95 (9 H, s). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₂₂H₂₃ClNO₄: 400.9; Found: 400.2; LCMS-ESI⁻ (*m/z*): [M-H]⁻ calcd for C₂₂H₂₁ClNO₄: 398.9; Found: 397.9.

Preparation of (S)-6-(1-tert-butoxy-2-hydroxyethyl)-5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methylquinolin-2(1H)-one (**8K**):

Step 1.

Preparation of 4-methoxy-3-methylaniline (**8B**): To the solution of 1-methoxy-2-methyl-4-nitrobenzene (10 g, 60 mmol) in EtOH and EtOAc (250 mL, 3:2) was added 10% Pd/C (2 g). The mixture was stirred for 24 h under one atmosphere of hydrogen. CeliteTM was added and the mixture was stirred for 10 min. The mixture was filtered through a pad of celiteTM. Concentration under reduced pressure gave 4-methoxy-3-methylaniline (**8B**) (8.2 g). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 138.2 (M+H)⁺.

Step 2.

Preparation of 6-methoxy-7-methylquinoline (**3B**): To 4-methoxy-3-methylaniline (6.7 g) was added concentrated H₂SO₄ (12.4 mL), followed by glycerin (21.1 g), m-nitrobenzenesulfonic acid (6.53 g), H₃BO₃ (3.4 g) and FeSO₄•7H₂O (3.2 g). The mixture was stirred at 140 °C for 1 h. The reaction was cooled to 25 °C, quenched with ice-water and neutralized with 30% KOH. The mixture was extracted with DCM (2x), and the combined extracts dried with Na₂SO₄ and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product was purified by column chromatography (EtOAc) to give 6-methoxy-7-methylquinoline (4.3 g) LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 174.1 (M+H)⁺.

Step 3.

Preparation of 5-bromo-6-methoxy-7-methylquinoline (**8C**): To the solution of 6-methoxy-7-methylquinoline (4.28 g, 24.6 mmol) in 50 mL of concentrated H₂SO₄ was added NBS (4.41 g, 14.6 mmol) at 15 °C, and the reaction was stirred at 15 °C for 3.5 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into ice-water (600 mL). The aqueous mixture was adjusted with a 50% KOH solution to pH ~10, and then extracted with

DCM (3X). The combined extract was dried with sodium sulfate. Concentration under reduced pressure gave 5-bromo-6-methoxy-7-methylquinoline (6.3 g). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 252.1, 254.1 (M+H)⁺.

Step 4.

5 Preparation of 5-bromo-7-methylquinolin-6-ol (**3D**): To the solution of 5-bromo-6-methoxy-7-methylquinoline (6.5 g, 25.8 mmol) in DCM (150 mL) was added BBr₃ slowly (77.3 mL, 1.0 M in DCM, 77.3 mmol). The mixture was stirred for 3 hours and cooled to 0 °C. Methanol (40 mL) was added slowly and the mixture was stirred for 20 minutes. The solvents were removed under reduced pressure. The solid
10 was dissolved in methanol (100 mL) and was treated with 1.0 N sodium hydroxide solution (50 mL) (pH ~ 12). The mixture was stirred for 12 hours and acetic acid was added to adjust pH to between 4-5. The mixture was filtered and washed with water. The gray solid was dried under reduced pressure to give 5-bromo-7-methylquinolin-6-ol (5.0 g). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 238.2, 240.1 (M+H)⁺, 236.1, 238.0 (M-H).

15 Step 5.

Preparation of 5-bromo-7-methylquinolin-6-yl trifluoromethanesulfonate (**8D**): To the solution of 5-bromo-7-methylquinolin-6-ol (238 mg, 1.0 mmol) in dichloromethane (10 mL) and pyridine (2 mL) was added Tf₂O (0.34 mL, 2.0 mmol) at -30 °C. The mixture was stirred and warmed to 0 °C over a period of 2 hours. The
20 reaction was quenched with slow addition of NaHCO₃ solution. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with brine, dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated to give 5-bromo-7-methylquinolin-6-yl trifluoromethanesulfonate. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 369.9, 371.9 (M+H)⁺.

Step 6.

25 Preparation of 5-bromo-7-methyl-6-vinylquinoline (**8E**): A mixture of 5-bromo-7-methylquinolin-6-yl trifluoromethanesulfonate (230 mg, 0.62 mmol), tributyl(vinyl)stannane (200 µL, 0.68 mmol), lithium chloride (78 mg, 1.86 mmol) and PdCl₂(PPh₃)₂ (43 mg) in DMF (10 mL) was heated at 80 °C for 16 hours, and then the volatile component was removed *in vacuo*. The residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate
30 (100 mL), washed with NaHCO₃ solution, water and brine, dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified by flash chromatography

(hexanes/EtOAc) to provide 5-bromo-7-methyl-6-vinylquinoline (120 mg). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 248.2, 250.2 (M+H)⁺.

Step 7.

Preparation of (S)-1-(5-bromo-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethane-1,2-diol (**8F**):

- 5 AD-mix- α (0.7 g) was added to a mixed solvent of *t*-butanol and water (2.5 mL/2.5 mL) and stirred at 25 °C for 5 min, cooled to 0 °C. The mixture was transferred to another flask containing 5-bromo-7-methyl-6-vinylquinoline (120 mg) and stirred at 0 °C for 48 hours. The mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate, washed with NaHCO₃ solution, water and brine, dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The
- 10 residue was purified by flash column chromatography (EtOAc) to provide (S)-1-(5-bromo-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethane-1,2-diol (118 mg). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 282.1, 284.1 (M+H)⁺.

Step 8.

Preparation of (S)-2-(5-bromo-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyethyl

- 15 pivalate (**8G**): To a stirred solution of (S)-1-(5-bromo-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethane-1,2-diol (118 mg, 0.42 mmol) in dichloromethane (5 mL) and pyridine (1 mL) was added trimethylacetyl chloride (100 μ L, 0.84 mmol) at 0 °C. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 12 hours, quenched with slow addition of NaHCO₃ solution. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with brine,
- 20 dried over Na₂SO₄. Concentration gave the intermediate (124 mg) *m/z* 366.1, 368.1 (M+H)⁺. To the solution of above intermediate (124 mg, 0.34 mmol) in *t*-butylacetate (3 mL) was added 70% perchloric acid (67 μ L, 1.1 mmol) at 25 °C. The mixture was stirred at 25 °C for 2 hours, quenched with slow addition of NaHCO₃ solution. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with brine,
- 25 dried and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified by flash chromatography (hexanes/EtOAc) to provide (S)-2-(5-bromo-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyethyl pivalate (133 mg). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 422.1, 424.2 (M+H)⁺.

Step 9.

Preparation of (S)-2-(2-acetoxy-5-bromo-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-

- 30 butoxyethyl pivalate (**8H**): To the solution of (S)-2-(5-bromo-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyethyl pivalate (130 mg, 0.31 mmol) in DCM (2 mL) was added mCPBA (70%, 95 mg, 0.39 mmol). The mixture was stirred for 12 hours. The mixture was

diluted with EtOAc, washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate solution, water and brine, and dried over sodium sulfate. Concentration under reduced pressure gave the intermediate N-oxide (147 mg). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 438.2, 440.2 (M+H)⁺. To the above intermediate was added acetic anhydride (5 mL). The mixture was heated at 140 °C for 10 hours. The excess reagents were removed under reduced pressure. The mixture was diluted with EtOAc, washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate solution, water and brine, and dried over sodium sulfate. Concentration gave (S)-2-(2-acetoxy-5-bromo-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyethyl pivalate (130 mg). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 480.0, 482.0 (M+H)⁺.

Step 10.

Preparation of (S)-2-(5-bromo-7-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydroquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyethyl pivalate (**8I**): To the solution of (S)-2-(2-acetoxy-5-bromo-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyethyl pivalate (130 mg) in ethanol (7.5 mL) was added aqueous methylamine solution (0.5 mL, 50%). The mixture was heated at 78 °C for 80 min. Concentration and purification gave (S)-2-(5-bromo-7-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydroquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyethyl pivalate (68 mg). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 438.2, 440.2 (M+H)⁺.

Step 11.

Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydroquinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate (**8J**): The mixture of (S)-2-(5-bromo-7-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydroquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyethyl pivalate (34 mg, 0.078 mmol), Pd(PPh₃)₄ (9 mg), 4-chlorophenylboronic acid (16 mg, 0.1 mmol), aqueous K₂CO₃ solution (0.15 mL, 2 M, 0.3 mmol) in 1,2-dimethoxyethane (2 mL) was heated at 100 °C for 90 minutes. The residue was diluted with ethyl acetate (100 mL), washed with NaHCO₃ solution, water and brine, dried over Na₂SO₄. Concentration and purification gave (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydroquinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate (22 mg). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 470.3 (M+H)⁺.

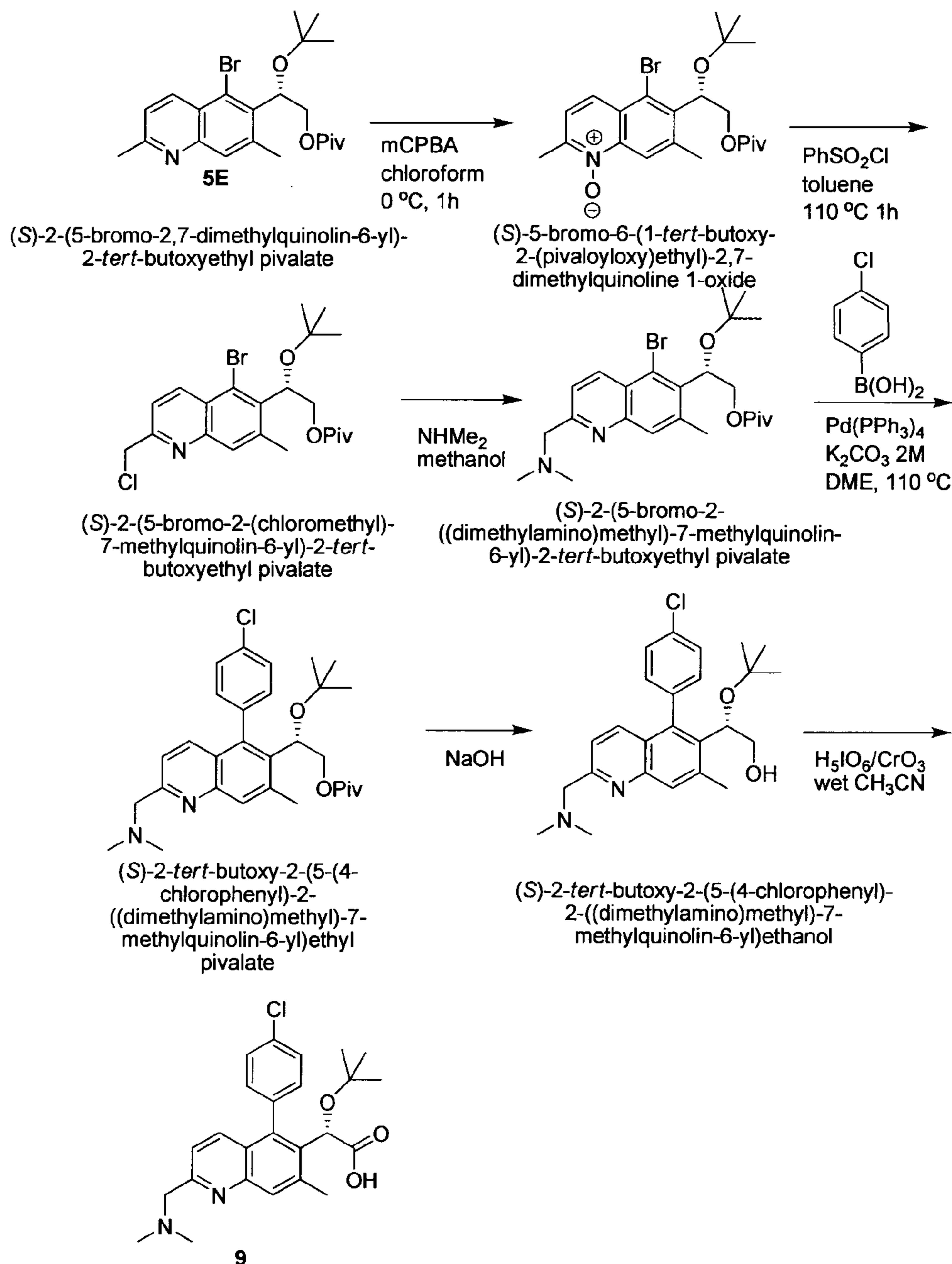
Step 12.

Preparation of (S)-6-(1-tert-butoxy-2-hydroxyethyl)-5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methylquinolin-2(1H)-one (**8K**): To the solution of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydroquinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate (5.8 mg) in THF and methanol (1.5 mL/0.5 mL) was added 1 M NaOH solution (0.6 mL). The mixture

was stirred at 25 °C for 16 hours, diluted with water. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with brine and dried over sodium sulfate. Concentration gave (S)-6-(1-tert-butoxy-2-hydroxyethyl)-5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methylquinolin-2(1H)-one (4.4 mg). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 386.2 (M+H)⁺.

5

Example 9: (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-((dimethylamino)methyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**9**).



Preparation of (S)-5-bromo-6-(1-tert-butoxy-2-(pivaloyloxy)ethyl)-2,7-dimethylquinoline 1-oxide: To a stirred solution of (S)-2-(5-bromo-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyethyl pivalate (**5E**) (118 mg, 0.31 mmol) in
5 chloroform (5 mL) was added mCPBA (209 mg, 77%, 0.93 mmol) at 0 °C. The mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 1 hour before quenched with NaHCO₃ solution. The mixture was extracted with DCM (30 mL), washed with NaHCO₃ solution, water and brine, dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The obtained residue was purified by flash chromatography to provide the desired product (52 mg, 37%). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*):
10 452.1, 454.1 (M+H)⁺.

Preparation of (S)-2-(5-bromo-2-((dimethylamino)methyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyethyl pivalate: To a stirred solution of (S)-5-bromo-6-(1-tert-butoxy-2-(pivaloyloxy)ethyl)-2,7-dimethylquinoline 1-oxide (25 mg, 0.055 mmol) in toluene (3 mL) was added benzenesulfonyl chloride (0.06 mL, 0.24 mmol). The mixture was
15 stirred at 110 °C for 16 hours, then cooled to room temperature. Dimethylamine (2 mL 2 M solution in methanol, excess) was added. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 16 h, then diluted in ethyl acetate (30 mL), washed with NaHCO₃ solution, water and brine, dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The obtained residue was purified by HPLC to provide the desired product as a white solid
20 (11 mg, 42%). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 479.3, 481.3 (M+H)⁺.

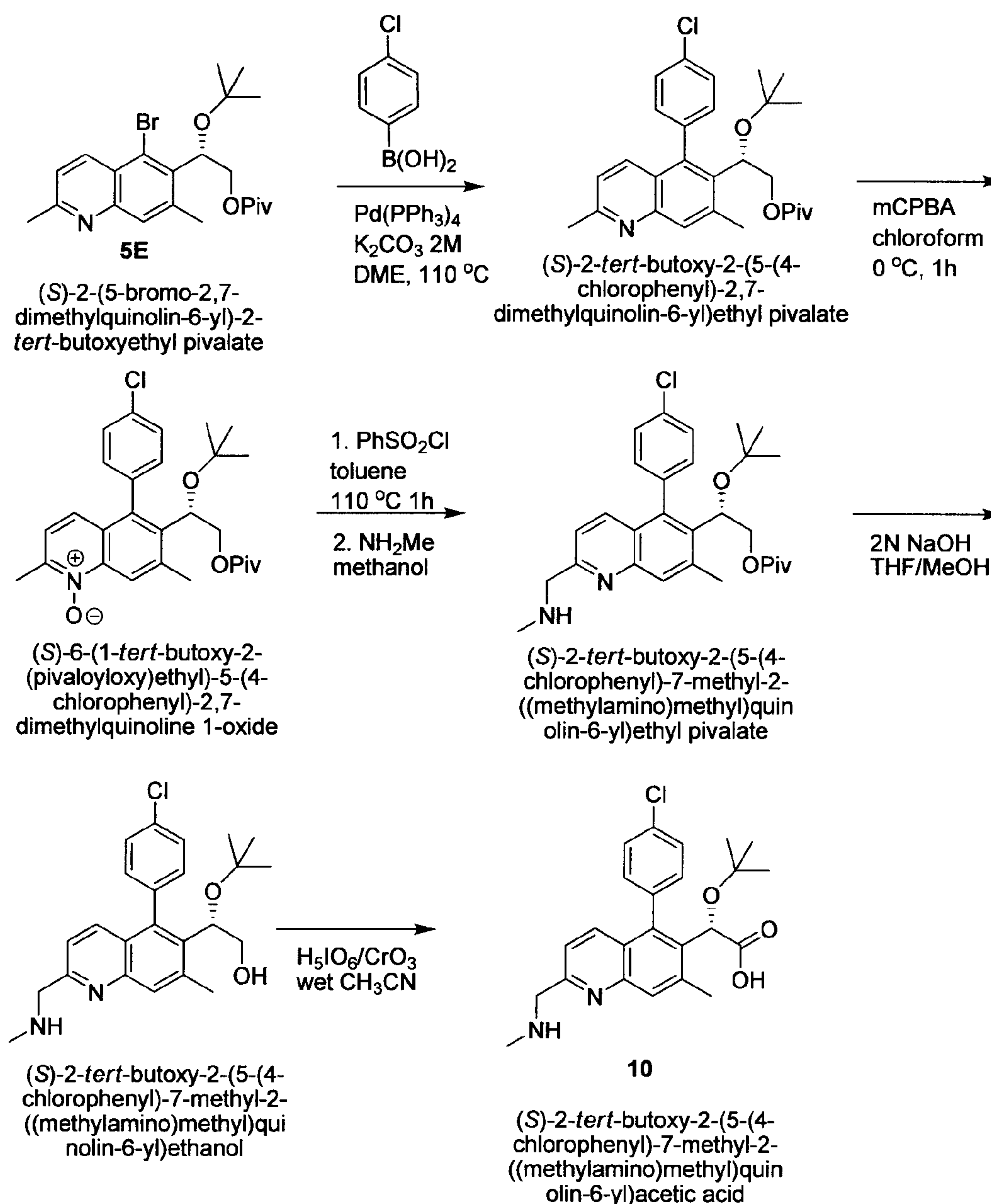
Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-((dimethylamino)methyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate: Pd(PPh₃)₄ (2.5 mg, 0.002 mmol) was added to a mixture (S)-2-(5-bromo-2-((dimethylamino)methyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyethyl pivalate (11 mg, 0.023 mmol), 4-
25 chlorophenylboronic acid (7 mg, 0.046 mmol), K₂CO₃ (0.06 mL 2 M in water, 0.13 mmol) in 1,2-dimethoxyethane (1 mL). The reaction mixture was flushed with nitrogen, heated at 110 °C for 30 min under microwave, and then the volatile component was removed *in vacuo*. The residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate (100 mL), washed with NaHCO₃ solution, water and brine, dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in*
30 *vacuo*. The obtained residue was purified by HPLC to provide the desired product as a white solid (5.6 mg, 48%). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 511.3, 513.3 (M+H)⁺.

Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-
((dimethylamino)methyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethanol: To a stirred solution of (S)-2-
tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-((dimethylamino)methyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-
yl)ethyl pivalate (5.6 mg, 0.011 mmol) in THF and methanol (1.5 mL/0.5 mL) was
5 added 2 M NaOH solution (0.5 mL, excess) at 0 °C. The mixture was stirred at 50 °C
for 3 hours, diluted with water and the resulting mixture was extracted with ethyl
acetate. The organic layer was washed with brine, dried and concentrated *in vacuo*. The
obtained residue was purified by prep-HPLC to provide the desired product (3.0 mg,
64%). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 427.3, 429.2 (M+H)⁺.

10 Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-
((dimethylamino)methyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (9): A stock solution of
periodic acid/chromium trioxide was prepared according to WO 99/52850 by
dissolving periodic acid (11.4 g, 50.0 mmol) and chromium trioxide (23 mg, 1.2 mol
%) in wet acetonitrile (0.75% H₂O) to a volume of 114 mL. This stock solution (0.50
15 mL) was added to a solution of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-
((dimethylamino)methyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethanol (3 mg, 0.007 mmol) in wet
acetonitrile (2.0 mL, 0.75% H₂O) at 0 °C. Reaction mixture was stirred for 30 minutes
at 0 °C and quenched with NaHCO₃ solution. Ethyl acetate was added and organic
layer separated and washed with 1:1 brine/H₂O (2x), then saturated NaHSO₃ /brine.
20 The organic layer was dried (MgSO₄), concentrated and purified by reverse phase
HPLC to give the product as TFA salt (2.5 mg, 81%). ¹H-NMR 300 MHz, (CD₃OD) δ
7.97 (s, 1H), 7.78 (d, 1H), 7.65-7.55 (m, 3H), 7.40-7.30 (m, 2H), 5.22 (s, 1H), 4.65 (s,
2H), 3.04 (s, 6H), 2.68 (s, 3H), 0.98 (s, 9H); LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for
C₂₅H₂₉ClN₂O₃: 441.9; Found: 441.2, 443.3.

25

Example 10: (S)-2-tert-Butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-
((methylamino)methyl)quinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (10).



Preparation of (S)-2-*tert*-Butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate: $\text{Pd(PPh}_3)_4$ (69 mg, 0.06 mmol) was added to a mixture (S)-2-(5-bromo-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)-2-*tert*-butoxyethyl pivalate (**5E**) (325 mg, 0.75 mmol), 4-chlorophenylboronic acid (175 mg, 1.1 mmol), K_2CO_3 (1.3 mL 2 M in water, 2.6 mmol) in 1,2-dimethoxyethane (10 mL). The reaction mixture was flushed with nitrogen, heated at 110 °C for 30 min under microwave, and then the volatile

component was removed *in vacuo*. The residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate (100 mL), washed with NaHCO₃ solution, water and brine, dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The obtained residue was purified by flash chromatography to provide the desired product (256 mg, 73%). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 468.3, 469.3 (M+H)⁺.

5 Preparation of (S)-6-(1-tert-Butoxy-2-(pivaloyloxy)ethyl)-5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2,7-dimethylquinoline 1-oxide: Following the procedure used to prepare compound (S)-5-bromo-6-(1-tert-butoxy-2-(pivaloyloxy)ethyl)-2,7-dimethylquinoline 1-oxide of Example 9, except that (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate was used instead of (S)-2-(5-bromo-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyethyl pivalate. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 484.3, 486.3 (M+H)⁺.

Preparation of (S)-2-tert-Butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-((methylamino)methyl)quinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate: Following the procedure used to prepare compound (S)-2-(5-bromo-2-((dimethylamino)methyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyethyl pivalate of Example 9, except that (S)-6-(1-tert-butoxy-2-(pivaloyloxy)ethyl)-5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2,7-dimethylquinoline 1-oxide was used instead of (S)-5-bromo-6-(1-tert-butoxy-2-(pivaloyloxy)ethyl)-2,7-dimethylquinoline 1-oxide, and methylamine solution was used instead of *N,N*-dimethylamine solution. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 497.3, 499.3 (M+H)⁺.

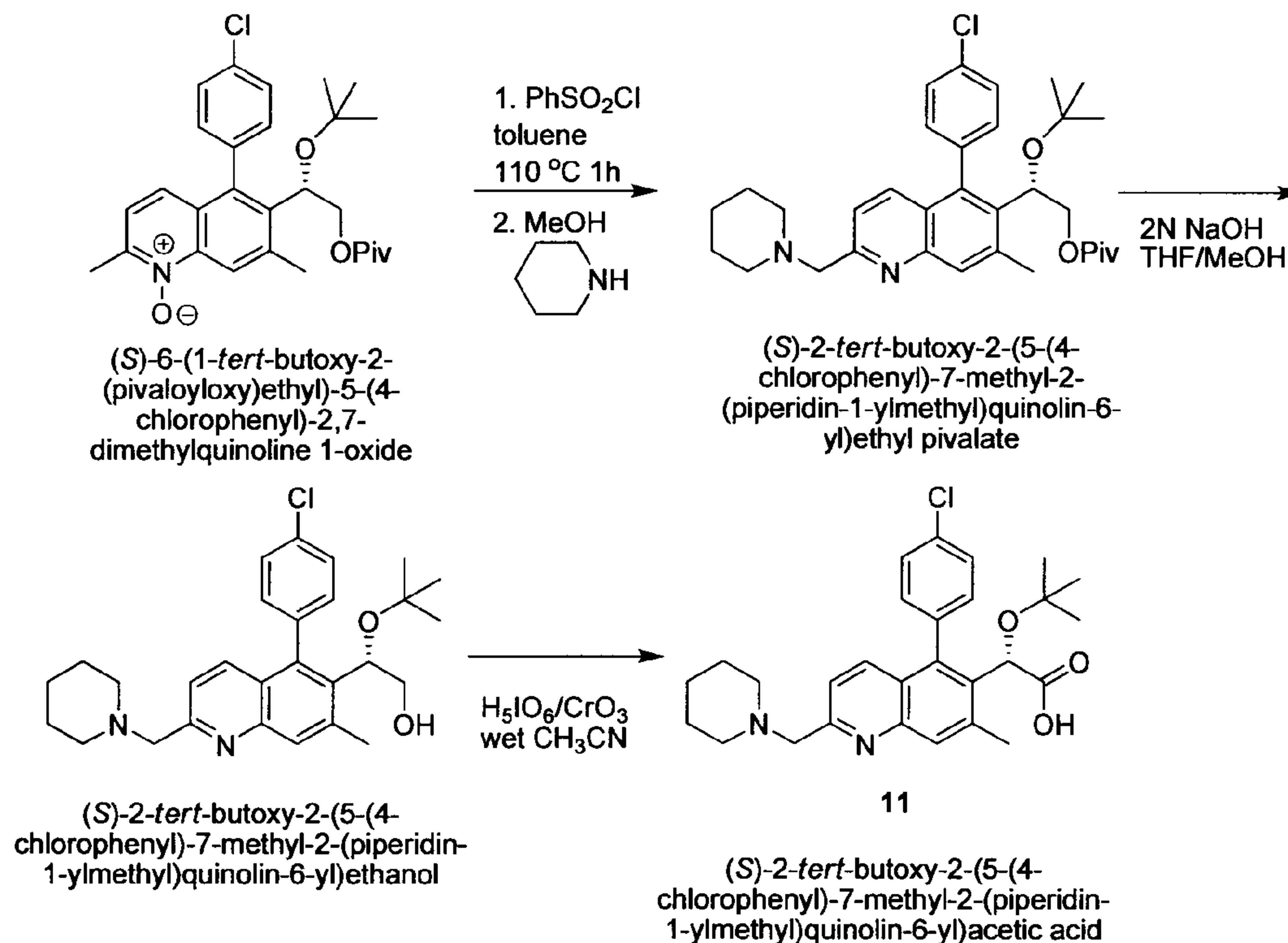
Preparation of (S)-2-tert-Butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-((methylamino)methyl)quinolin-6-yl)ethanol: Following the procedure used to prepare compound (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-((dimethylamino)methyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethanol of Example 9, except that (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-((methylamino)methyl)quinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate was used instead of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-((dimethylamino)methyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 413.3, 415.3 (M+H)⁺.

Preparation of (S)-2-tert-Butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-((methylamino)methyl)quinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (10): Following the procedure used to prepare compound (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-((dimethylamino)methyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (9) of Example 9, except that (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-((methylamino)methyl)quinolin-6-yl)ethanol was used instead of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-

(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-((dimethylamino)methyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethanol. ^1H -NMR 300 MHz, (CD_3OD) δ 7.95 (s, 1H), 7.74 (d, 1H), 7.65-7.55 (m, 3H), 7.35-7.28 (m, 2H), 5.22 (s, 1H), 4.51 (s, 2H), 2.88 (s, 3H), 2.67 (s, 3H), 0.98 (s, 9H); LCMS-ESI $^+$ (m/z): $[\text{M}+\text{H}]^+$ calcd for $\text{C}_{24}\text{H}_{27}\text{ClN}_2\text{O}_3$: 427.9; Found: 427.2, 429.2.

5

Example 11: (S)-2-tert-Butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(piperidin-1-ylmethyl)quinolin-6-yl)acetic acid: (11).



10 Preparation of (S)-2-tert-Butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(piperidin-
1-ylmethyl)quinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate: (S)-2-tert-Butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-
methyl-2-(piperidin-1-ylmethyl)quinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate was prepared following the
procedure used to prepare compound (S)-2-(5-bromo-2-((dimethylamino)methyl)-7-
methylquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyethyl pivalate of Example 9, except that (S)-6-(1-
15 tert-butoxy-2-(pivaloyloxy)ethyl)-5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2,7-dimethylquinoline 1-oxide
was used instead of (S)-5-bromo-6-(1-tert-butoxy-2-(pivaloyloxy)ethyl)-2,7-
dimethylquinoline 1-oxide, and piperidine was used instead of *N,N*-dimethylamine
solution. LCMS-ESI $^+$ (m/z): 551.3, 553.3 ($\text{M}+\text{H}$) $^+$.

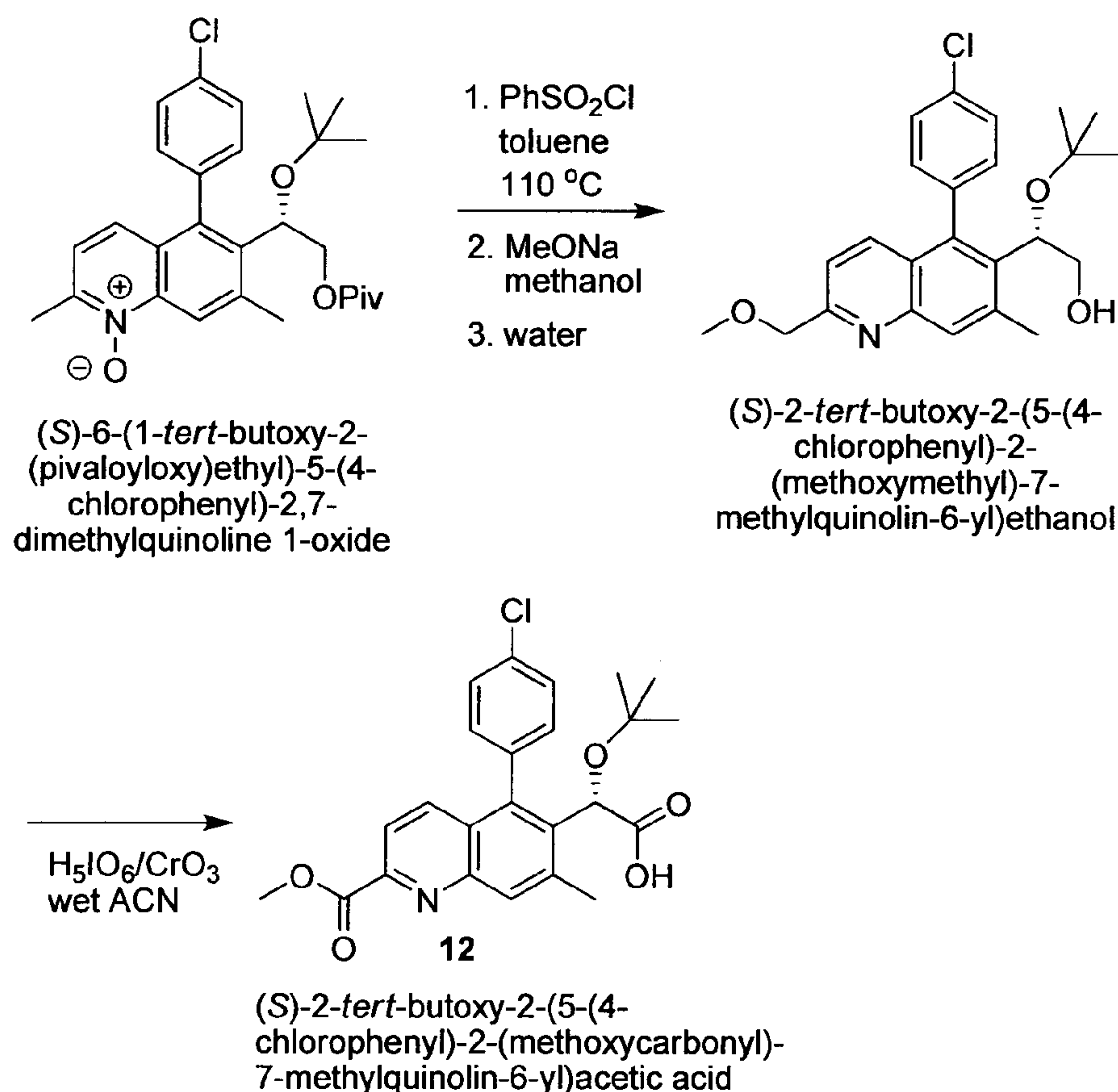
Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(piperidin-1-ylmethyl)quinolin-6-yl)ethanol: (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(piperidin-1-ylmethyl)quinolin-6-yl)ethanol was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-

5 ((dimethylamino)methyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethanol of Example 9, except that (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(piperidin-1-ylmethyl)quinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate was used instead of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-((dimethylamino)methyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 467.4, 469.3 (M+H)⁺.

10 Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(piperidin-1-ylmethyl)quinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**11**): (S)-2-tert-Butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(piperidin-1-ylmethyl)quinolin-6-yl)acetic acid was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-((dimethylamino)methyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**9**) of Example 9, except
15 that (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(piperidin-1-ylmethyl)quinolin-6-yl)ethanol was used instead of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-((dimethylamino)methyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethanol. ¹H-NMR 300 MHz, (CD₃OD) δ 7.97 (s, 1H), 7.77 (d, 1H), 7.65-7.58 (m, 3H), 7.40-7.30 (m, 2H), 5.22 (s, 1H), 4.61 (s, 2H), 3.60-3.20 (m, 4H), 2.69 (s, 3H), 2.00-1.90 (m, 4H), 1.80-1.65
20 (m, 2H), 0.98 (s, 9H); LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₂₈H₃₃ClN₂O₃: 482.0; Found: 481.3, 483.3.

Example 12: (S)-2-tert-Butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-(methoxycarbonyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid: (**12**).

25

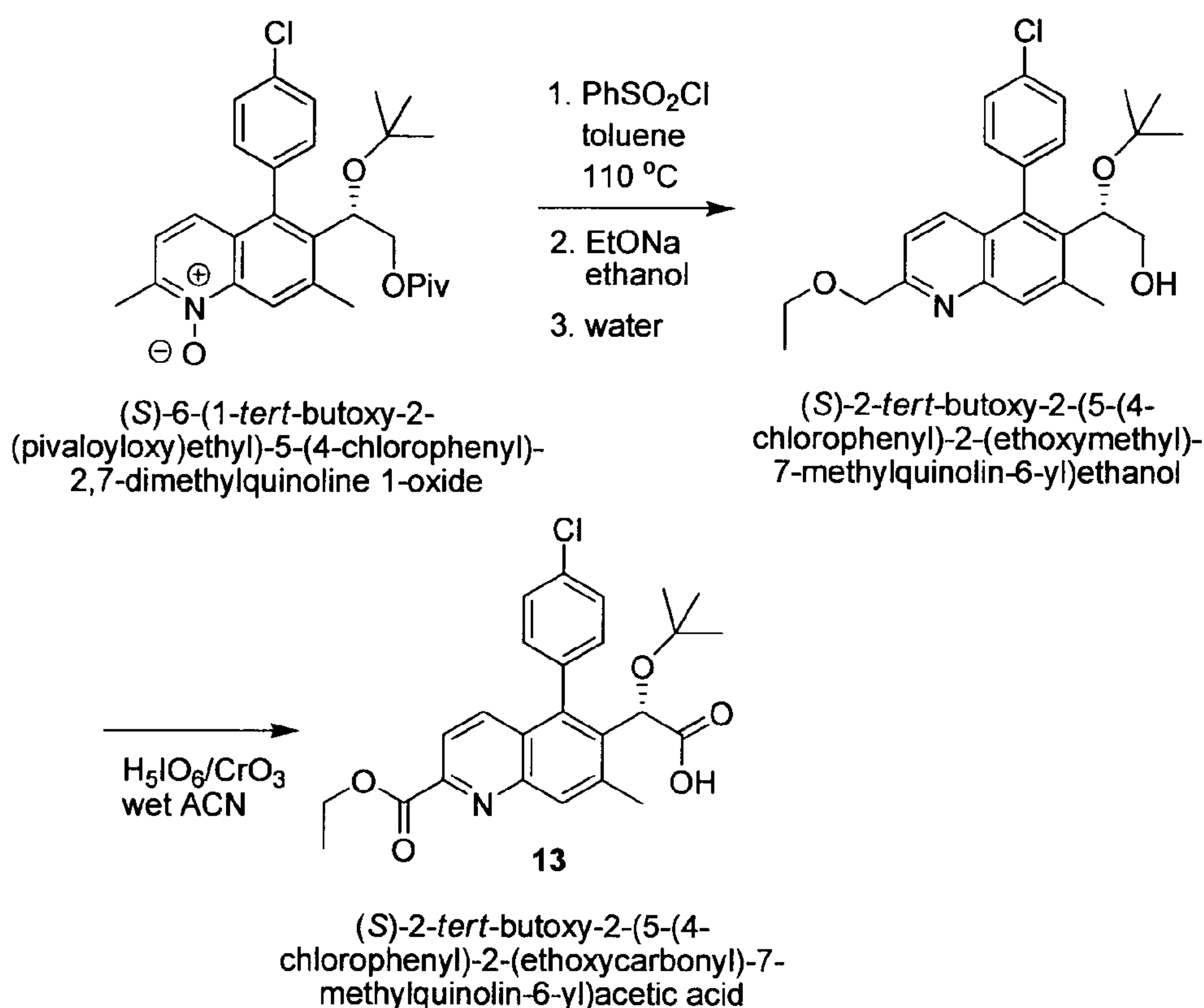


Preparation of (S)-2-*tert*-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-(methoxymethyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethanol: To a stirred solution of (S)-6-(1-*tert*-butoxy-2-(pivaloyloxy)ethyl)-5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2,7-dimethylquinoline 1-oxide (compound of Example 10) (14 mg, 0.03 mmol) in toluene (2 mL) was added benzenesulfonyl chloride (0.04 mL, 0.29 mmol). The mixture was stirred at 110 °C for 16 hours, then cooled to room temperature. Sodium methoxide (1 mL 25% solution in methanol, excess) was added. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 16 hours, then water (1 mL) was added. The mixture was stirred at 60 °C for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was diluted in ethyl acetate (30 mL), washed with NaHCO₃ solution, water and brine, dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The obtained residue was purified by HPLC to provide the desired product as TFA salt (4.8 mg, 33%). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 414.2, 416.2 (M+H)⁺.

Preparation of (S)-2-*tert*-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-(methoxycarbonyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (12): A stock solution of periodic acid/chromium

trioxide was prepared according to WO 99/52850 by dissolving periodic acid (11.4 g, 50.0 mmol) and chromium trioxide (23 mg, 1.2 mol %) in wet acetonitrile (0.75% H₂O) to a volume of 114 mL. This stock solution (0.50 mL) was added to a solution of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-(methoxymethyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethanol (4.8 mg, 0.01 mmol) in wet acetonitrile (2.0 mL, 0.75% H₂O) at 0 °C. The reaction mixture was stirred for 1 hour at 0 °C and quenched with NaHCO₃ solution. Ethyl acetate was added and the organic layer separated and washed with 1:1 brine/H₂O (2x), then saturated NaHSO₃ /brine. The organic layer was dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated and purified by reverse phase HPLC to give the product as TFA salt (2.7 mg, 61%). ¹H-NMR 300 MHz, (CD₃OD) δ 8.10-8.00 (m, 2H), 7.90 (d, 1H), 7.70-7.57 (m, 3H), 7.35 (d, 1H), 5.23 (s, 1H), 4.03 (s, 3H), 2.70 (s, 3H), 0.98 (s, 9H); LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₂₄H₂₅ClNO₅: 442.9; Found: 442.2, 444.2.

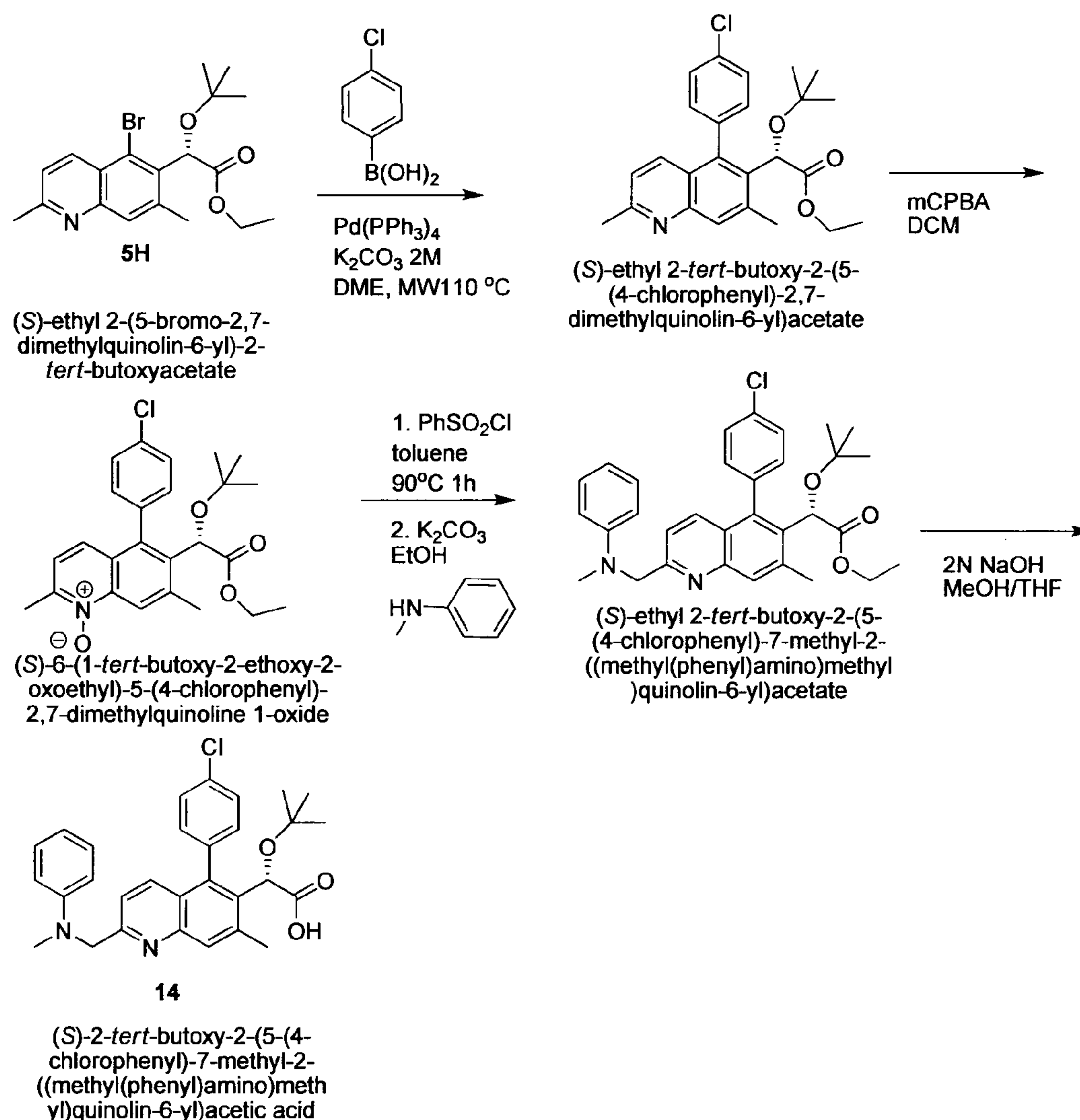
Example 13: (S)-2-tert-Butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-(ethoxycarbonyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**13**).



Preparation of (S)-2-tert-Butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-(ethoxymethyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethanol: (S)-2-tert-Butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-(ethoxymethyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethanol was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-(methoxymethyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethanol of Example 12, except that sodium ethoxide in ethanol solution was used instead of sodium methoxide in methanol solution. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 428.2, 430.2 (M+H)⁺.

Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-(ethoxycarbonyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**13**): (S)-2-tert-Butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-(ethoxycarbonyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-(methoxycarbonyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid of Example 12, except that (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-(ethoxymethyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethanol was used instead of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-(methoxymethyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethanol. ¹H-NMR 300 MHz, (CD₃OD) δ 8.10-8.00 (m, 2H), 7.90 (d, 1H), 7.70-7.57 (m, 3H), 7.35 (d, 1H), 5.23 (s, 1H), 4.50 (q, 2H), 2.70 (s, 3H), 1.46 (t, 3H) 0.98 (s, 9H); LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₂₅H₂₆ClNO₅: 456.9; Found: 456.2, 458.2.

Example 14: (S)-2-tert-Butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-((methyl(phenyl)amino) methyl)quinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**14**).



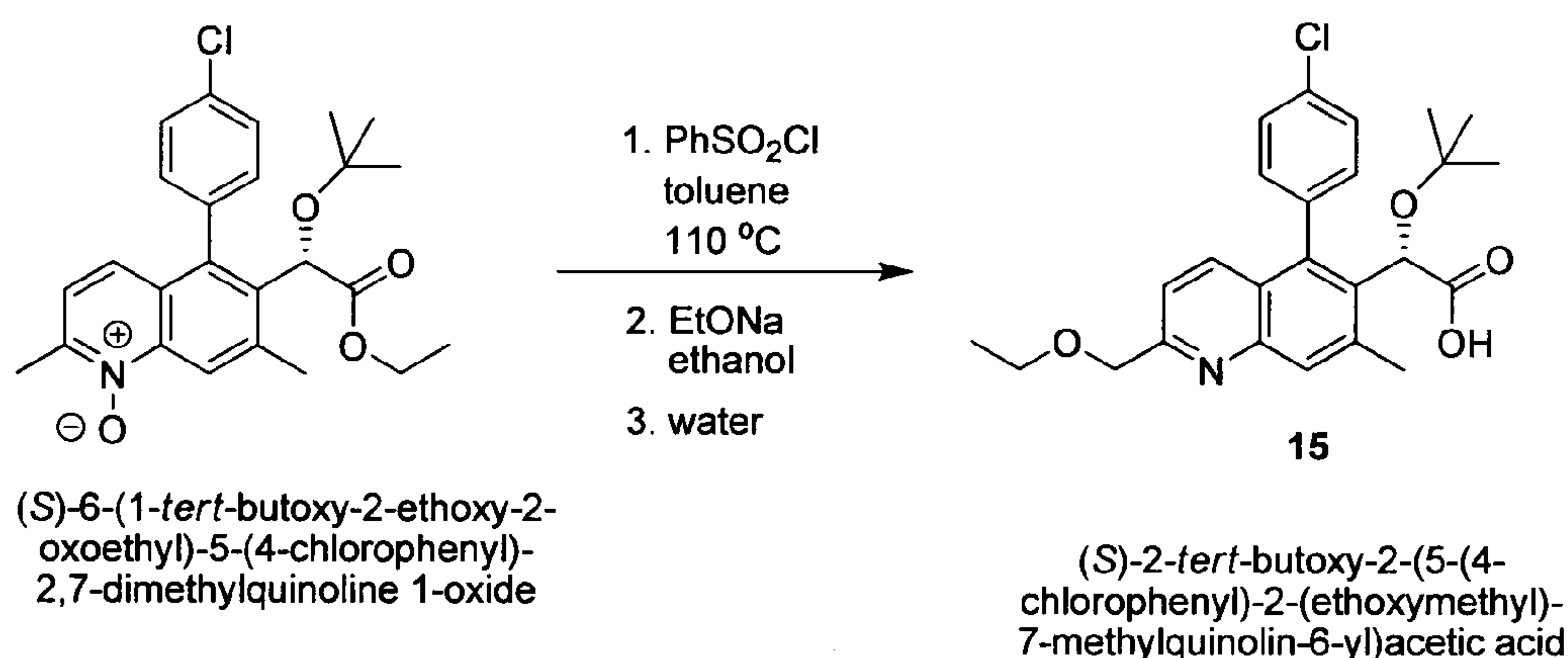
Preparation of (S)-ethyl 2-*tert*-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)acetate: Pd(PPh₃)₄ (68 mg, 0.06 mmol) was added to a mixture of (S)-ethyl 2-(5-bromo-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)-2-*tert*-butoxyacetate (**5H**) (230 mg, 0.59 mmol) and 4-chlorophenylboronic acid (183 mg, 1.17 mmol), K₂CO₃ (1.0 mL 2 M in water, 2.06 mmol) in 1,2-dimethoxyethane (8 mL). The reaction mixture was flushed with nitrogen, heated at 110 °C for 30 min under microwave, and then the volatile component was removed *in vacuo*. The residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate (100 mL), washed with NaHCO₃ solution, water and brine, dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The obtained residue was purified by HPLC to provide the desired product (200 mg, 80%). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 426.2, 428.2 (M+H)⁺.

Preparation of (S)-6-(1-tert-butoxy-2-ethoxy-2-oxoethyl)-5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2,7-dimethylquinoline 1-oxide: To a stirred solution of (S)-ethyl 2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)acetate (100 mg, 0.25 mmol) in dichloromethane (5 mL) was added a solution of mCPBA (114 mg, 77%, 0.51 mmol) in DCM (2 mL) at 0 °C. The mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 1 hour before quenched with NaHCO₃ solution. The mixture was extracted with DCM (30 mL), washed with NaHCO₃ solution, water and brine, dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The obtained residue was purified by flash chromatography to provide the desired product (104 mg, 94%). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 442.2, 444.3 (M+H)⁺.

Preparation of (S)-ethyl 2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-((methyl(phenyl) amino)methyl)quinolin-6-yl)acetate: To a stirred solution of (S)-6-(1-tert-butoxy-2-ethoxy-2-oxoethyl)-5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2,7-dimethylquinoline 1-oxide (13 mg, 0.029 mmol) in toluene (2 mL) was added benzenesulfonyl chloride (0.2 mL, excess). The mixture was stirred at 80 °C for 1 hour, then cooled to room temperature. N-methylaniline (0.2 mL, excess) and K₂CO₃ (250 mg, excess) were added. The mixture was stirred at 60 °C for 16 h, then diluted in ethyl acetate (30 mL), washed with NaHCO₃ solution, water and brine, dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The obtained residue was purified by flash chromatography to provide the desired product (12 mg, 78%). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 531.3, 533.2 (M+H)⁺.

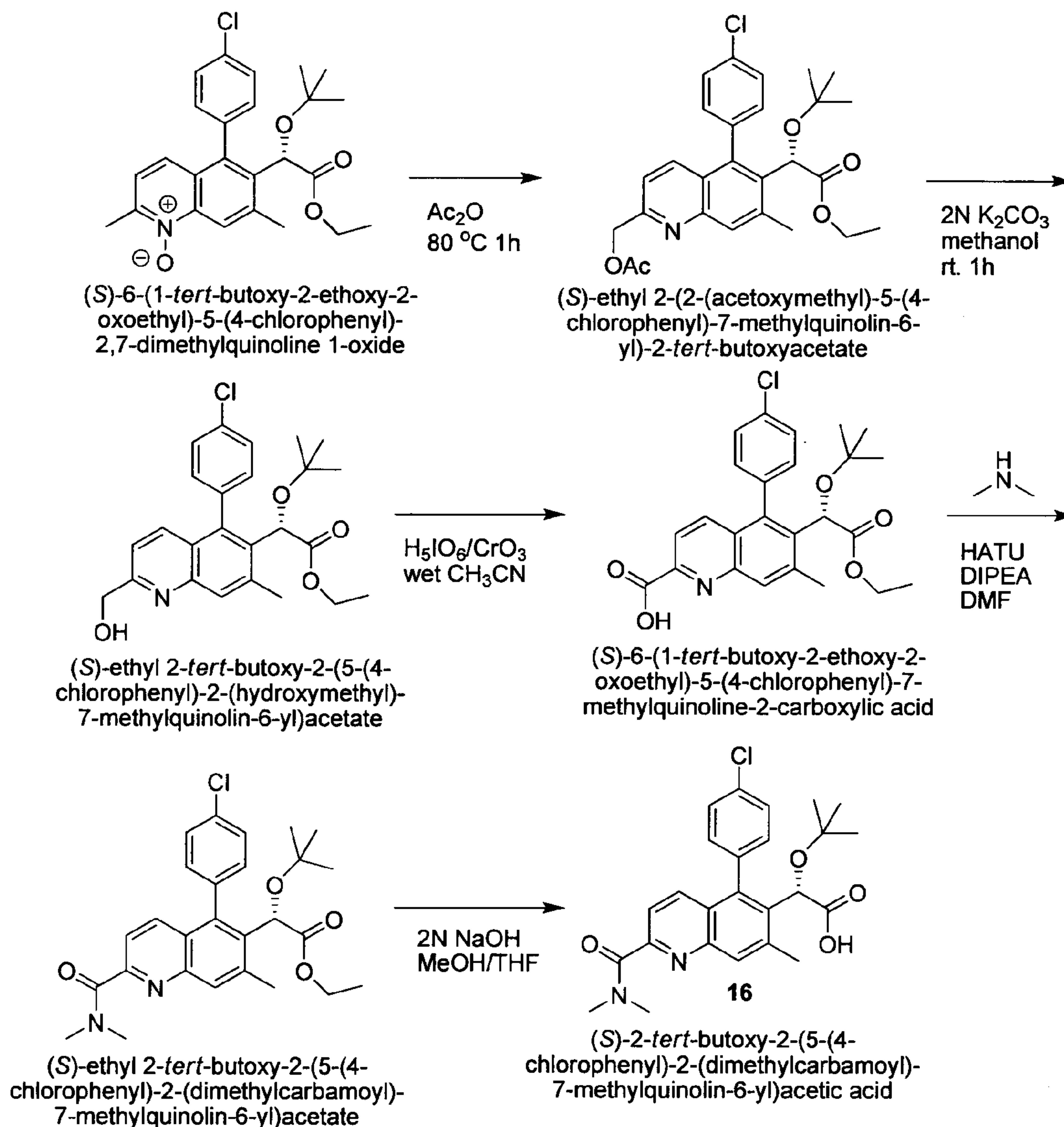
Preparation of (S)-2-tert-Butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-((methyl(phenyl)amino) methyl)quinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (14): To a stirred solution of (S)-ethyl 2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-((methyl(phenyl)amino)methyl)quinolin-6-yl)acetate (12 mg, 0.023 mmol) in THF and methanol (2 mL/1 mL) was added 2 M NaOH solution (0.5 mL, excess) at 0 °C. The mixture was stirred at 50 °C for 3 hours, diluted with water. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with brine, dried and concentrated *in vacuo*. The obtained residue was purified by prep-HPLC to provide the desired product as TFA salt (9.0 mg, 65%). ¹H-NMR 300 MHz, (CD₃OD) δ 8.21 (d, 1H), 8.07 (s, 1H), 7.70-7.55 (m, 4H), 7.40-7.32 (m, 1H), 7.26-7.18 (m, 2H), 6.90-6.75 (m, 3H), 5.24 (s, 1H), 5.01 (s, 2H), 3.17 (s, 3H), 2.77 (s, 3H), 0.98 (s, 9H); LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₃₀H₃₂ClN₂O₃: 504.0; Found: 503.3, 505.2.

Example 15: (S)-2-tert-Butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-((methyl(phenyl)amino) methyl)quinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (15).



- 5 Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-(ethoxymethyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**15**): To a stirred solution of (S)-6-(1-tert-butoxy-2-ethoxy-2-oxoethyl)-5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2,7-dimethylquinoline 1-oxide (compound of Example 14) (12 mg, 0.027 mmol) in toluene (2 mL) was added benzenesulfonyl chloride (0.2 mL, excess). The mixture was stirred at 80 °C for 1 hour, then cooled to
- 10 room temperature. Sodium ethoxide (0.5 mL 21% ethanol solution, excess) was added. The mixture was stirred at 60 °C for 16 h. Water (1 mL) was added, and the mixture was stirred at 60 °C for another 4 hours. The reaction mixture was diluted in ethyl acetate (30 mL), washed with NaHCO₃ solution, water and brine, dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The obtained residue was purified by prep-HPLC to
- 15 provide the desired product as TFA salt (3.0 mg, 21%). ¹H-NMR 300 MHz, (CD₃OD) δ 8.19 (d, 1H), 8.06 (s, 1H), 7.73 (d, 1H), 7.70-7.60 (m, 3H), 7.40-7.35 (m, 1H), 5.24 (s, 1H), 4.95 (s, 2H), 3.75 (q, 2H), 2.75 (s, 3H), 1.32 (t, 3H), 0.98 (s, 9H); LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₂₅H₂₉ClNO₄: 442.9; Found: 442.2, 444.2.

- 20 Example 16: (S)-2-tert-Butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-(dimethylcarbamoyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid: (**16**).



Preparation of (S)-ethyl 2-(2-(acetoxymethyl)-5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)-2-*tert*-butoxyacetate: Acetic anhydride was added to a flask containing (S)-6-(1-*tert*-butoxy-2-ethoxy-2-oxoethyl)-5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2,7-dimethylquinoline 1-oxide (compound of Example 14) (42 mg, 0.095 mmol). The mixture was stirred at 80 °C for 1 hour. Acetic anhydride was removed under vacuum. The residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate (50 mL). The organic layer was washed with NaHCO₃ solution and water, dried and concentrated *in vacuo*. The obtained residue was used for next step reaction without purification. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 484.2, 486.2 (M+H)⁺.

Preparation of (S)-ethyl 2-*tert*-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-(hydroxymethyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetate: To a stirred solution of (S)-ethyl 2-(2-

(acetoxymethyl)-5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyacetate (0.095 mmol) in methanol (2 mL) was added 2 M K₂CO₃ (0.5 mL, excess) at room temperature. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour, diluted with water. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed
5 with brine, dried and concentrated *in vacuo*. The obtained residue was purified by flash chromatography to provide the desired product (26 mg, 62%). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 442.2, 444.2 (M+H)⁺.

Preparation of (S)-6-(1-tert-butoxy-2-ethoxy-2-oxoethyl)-5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methylquinoline-2-carboxylic acid: (S)-6-(1-tert-Butoxy-2-ethoxy-2-oxoethyl)-5-(4-
10 chlorophenyl)-7-methylquinoline-2-carboxylic acid was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-((dimethylamino)methyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid of Example 9, except that (S)-ethyl 2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-(hydroxymethyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetate was used instead of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-
15 ((dimethylamino)methyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethanol. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 456.2, 458.2 (M+H)⁺.

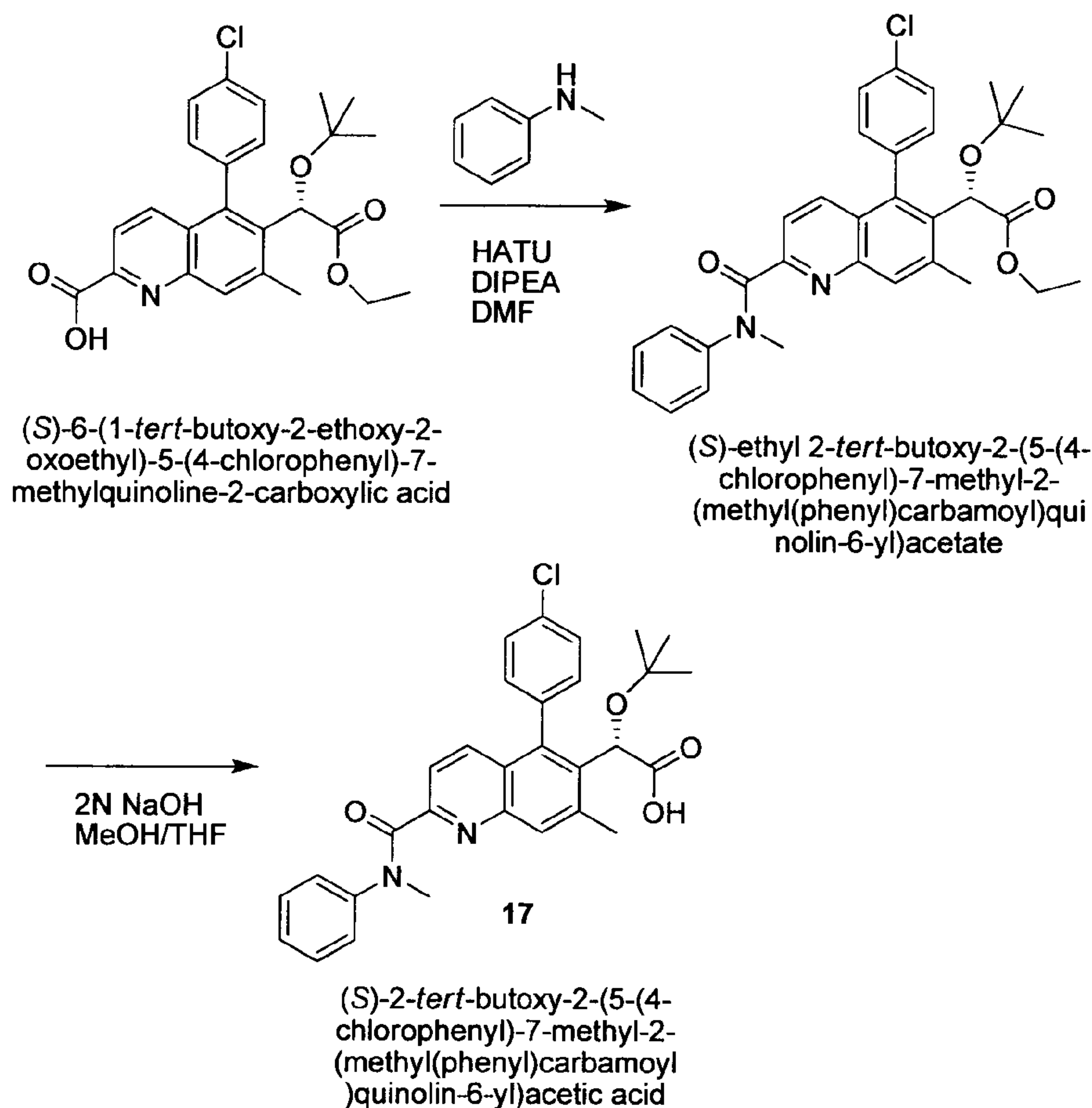
Preparation of (S)-ethyl 2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-(dimethylcarbamoyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetate: To a stirred solution of (S)-6-(1-tert-butoxy-2-ethoxy-2-oxoethyl)-5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methylquinoline-2-carboxylic
20 acid (14 mg, 0.032 mmol), dimethylamine HCl salt (13 mg, 0.16 mmol) and DIPEA (0.056 mL, 0.32 mmol) in DMF (1 mL) was added HATU (61 mg, 0.16 mmol) at 0 °C. The mixture was stirred for 2 hours at ambient temperature. The mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate (30 mL) and washed with water and brine, then dried over Na₂SO₄. Concentration and purification by column chromatography provided the product (7 mg,
25 45%). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 483.2, 485.3 (M+H)⁺.

Preparation of (S)-2-tert-Butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-(dimethylcarbamoyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (16): (S)-2-tert-Butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-(dimethylcarbamoyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid was prepared following the
30 procedure used to prepare compound (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-((methyl(phenyl)amino) methyl)quinolin-6-yl)acetic acid of Example 14, except that (S)-ethyl 2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-(dimethylcarbamoyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetate was used instead of (S)-ethyl 2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-

chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-((methyl(phenyl)amino)methyl) quinolin-6-yl)acetate. ^1H -NMR 300 MHz, (CD_3OD) δ 7.91 (s, 1H), 7.87 (d, 1H), 7.65-7.58 (m, 3H), 7.50 (d, 1H), 7.40-7.32 (m, 1H), 5.23 (s, 1H), 3.18 (s, 3H), 3.05 (s, 3H), 2.69 (s, 3H), 0.99 (s, 9H); LCMS-ESI $^+$ (m/z): $[\text{M}+\text{H}]^+$ calcd for $\text{C}_{25}\text{H}_{28}\text{ClN}_2\text{O}_4$: 455.9; Found: 455.2, 457.2.

5

Example 17: (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(methyl(phenyl)carbamoyl) quinolin-6-yl)acetic acid: (17).



10

Preparation of (S)-ethyl 2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(methyl(phenyl)carbamoyl) quinolin-6-yl)acetate: (S)-Ethyl 2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(methyl(phenyl)carbamoyl) quinolin-6-yl)acetate was

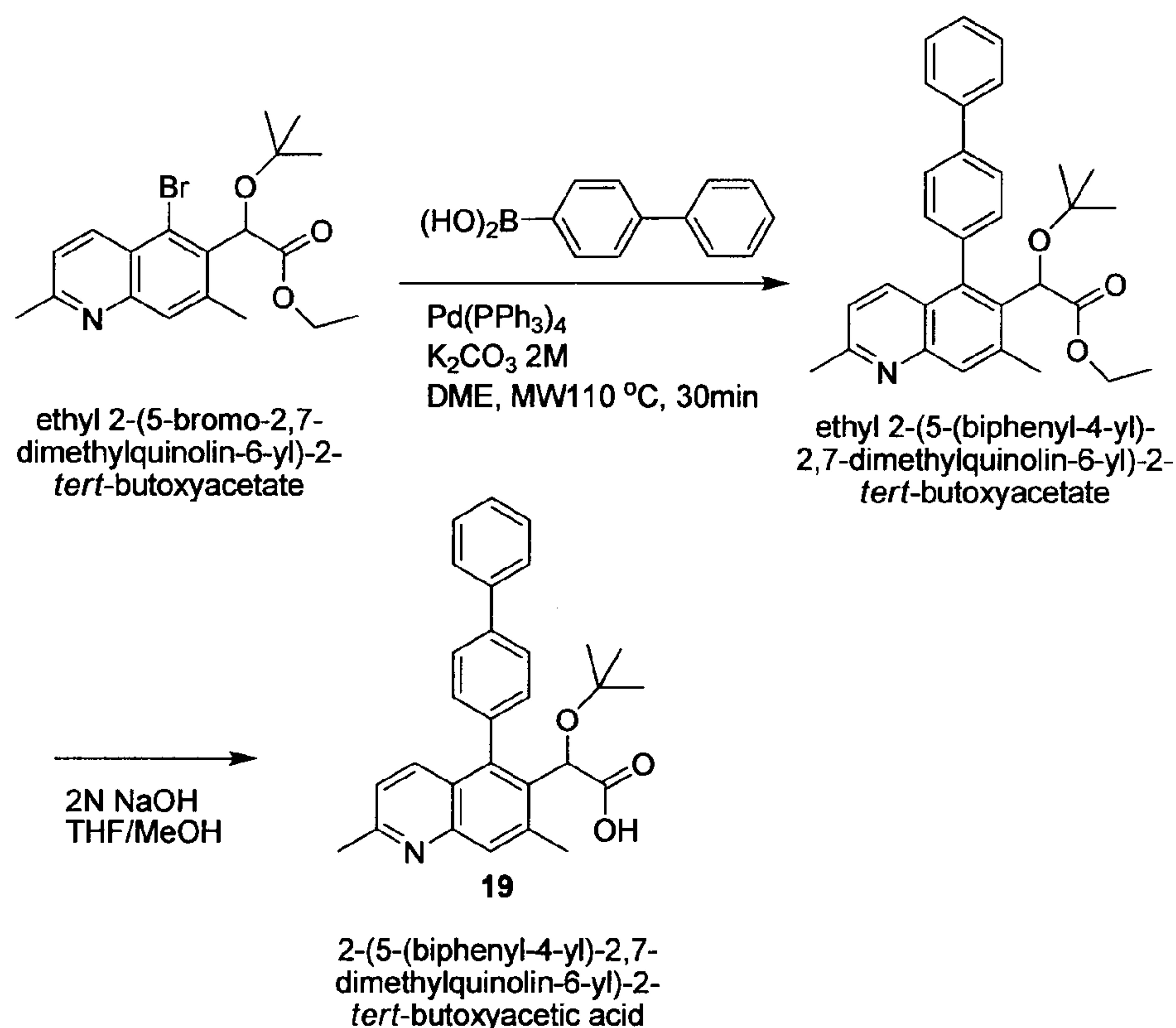
15 prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound (S)-ethyl 2-tert-butoxy-2-

(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-(dimethylcarbamoyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetate of Example 16, except that *N*-methylaniline was used instead of dimethylamine HCl salt. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 545.2, 547.2 (M+H)⁺.

Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(methyl(phenyl)carbamoyl) quinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (17): (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(methyl(phenyl)carbamoyl) quinolin-6-yl)acetic acid was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound (S)-2-tert-Butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-((methyl(phenyl)amino) methyl)quinolin-6-yl)acetic acid of Example 14, except that (S)-ethyl 2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(methyl(phenyl)carbamoyl)quinolin-6-yl)acetate was used instead of (S)-ethyl 2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-((methyl(phenyl)amino)methyl) quinolin-6-yl)acetate. ¹H-NMR 300 MHz, (CD₃OD) δ 7.80-7.50 (m, 6H), 7.40-7.10 (m, 6H), 5.16 (s, 1H), 3.54 (s, 3H), 2.62 (s, 3H), 0.95 (s, 9H); LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₃₀H₃₀ClN₂O₄: 518.0; Found: 517.2, 519.2.

15

Example 19: 2-(5-(Biphenyl-4-yl)-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyacetic acid (19).

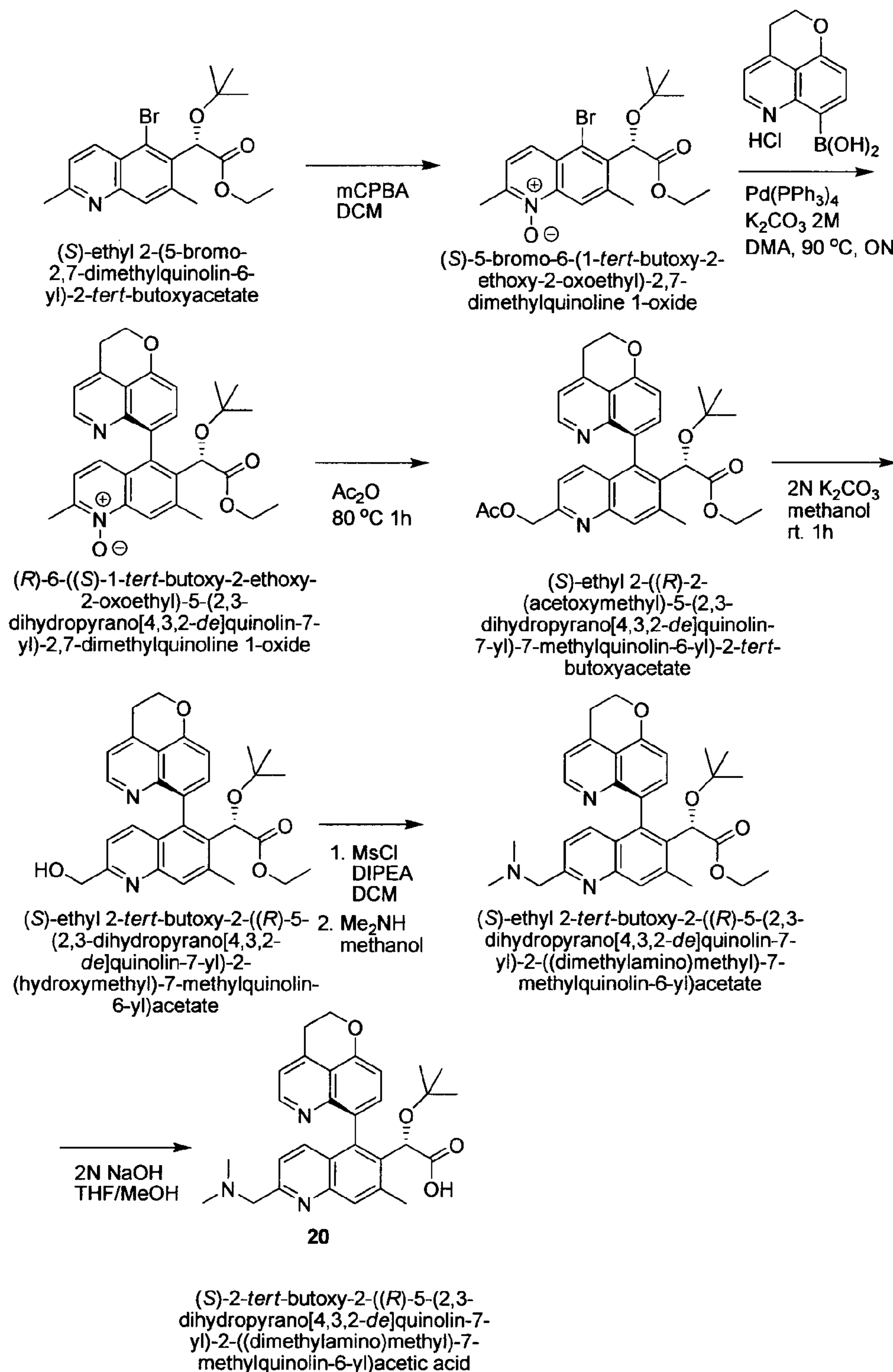


Preparation of ethyl 2-(5-(biphenyl-4-yl)-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyacetate: Ethyl 2-(5-(biphenyl-4-yl)-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyacetate was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound (S)-ethyl 2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)acetate of Example 14, except that biphenyl-4-ylboronic acid was used instead of 4-chlorophenylboronic acid. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 468.3 (M+H)⁺.

Preparation of 2-(5-(biphenyl-4-yl)-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyacetic acid (**19**): 2-(5-(Biphenyl-4-yl)-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyacetic acid was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-((methyl(phenyl)amino)methyl)quinolin-6-yl)acetic acid of Example 14, except that ethyl 2-(5-(biphenyl-4-yl)-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyacetate was used instead of (S)-ethyl 2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-((methyl(phenyl)amino)methyl)quinolin-6-yl)acetate. ¹H-NMR 300 MHz, (CD₃OD) δ 8.40 (d, 1H), 7.96 (s, 1H), 7.95-7.90 (m,

2H), 7.70-7.60 (m, 4H), 7.55-7.40 (m, 4H), 5.39 (s, 1H), 2.96 (s, 3H), 2.80 (s, 3H), 0.98 (s, 9H); LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₂₉H₃₀NO₃: 440.6; Found: 440.2.

Example 20: (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-2-
5 ((dimethylamino)methyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**20**).



Preparation of (S)-5-bromo-6-(1-tert-butoxy-2-ethoxy-2-oxoethyl)-2,7-dimethylquinoline 1-oxide: To a stirred solution of (S)-ethyl 2-(5-bromo-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyacetate (**5H**) (248 mg, 0.63 mmol) in

dichloromethane (8 mL) was added a solution of mCPBA (283 mg, 77%, 1.26 mmol) in DCM (5 mL) at 0 °C. The mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 1 hour before quenched with NaHCO₃ solution. The mixture was extracted with DCM (30 mL), washed with NaHCO₃ solution, water and brine, dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The obtained residue was purified by flash chromatography to provide the desired product (212 mg, 82%). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 410.2, 412.2 (M+H)⁺.

Preparation (R)-6-((S)-1-tert-butoxy-2-ethoxy-2-oxoethyl)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-2,7-dimethylquinoline 1-oxide: Pd(PPh₃)₄ (36 mg, 0.03 mmol) was added to a mixture (S)-5-bromo-6-(1-tert-butoxy-2-ethoxy-2-oxoethyl)-2,7-dimethylquinoline 1-oxide (86 mg, 0.21 mmol), 2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-ylboronic acid hydrochloride (105 mg, 0.42 mmol), K₂CO₃ (0.47 mL 2 M in water, 0.95 mmol) in N,N-dimethylacetamide (3 mL). The reaction mixture was flushed with nitrogen, heated at 90 °C for 16 hours. The mixture was dissolved in ethyl acetate (50 mL), washed with NaHCO₃ solution, water and brine, dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The obtained residue was purified by HPLC to provide the desired product (87 mg, 69%). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 501.2 (M+H)⁺.

Preparation of (S)-ethyl 2-((R)-2-(acetoxymethyl)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyacetate: (S)-Ethyl 2-((R)-2-(acetoxymethyl)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyacetate was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound (S)-ethyl 2-(2-(acetoxymethyl)-5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyacetate of Example 16, except that (R)-6-((S)-1-tert-butoxy-2-ethoxy-2-oxoethyl)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-2,7-dimethylquinoline 1-oxide was used instead of 2-ethoxy-2-oxoethyl)-5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2,7-dimethylquinoline 1-oxide. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 543.1 (M+H)⁺.

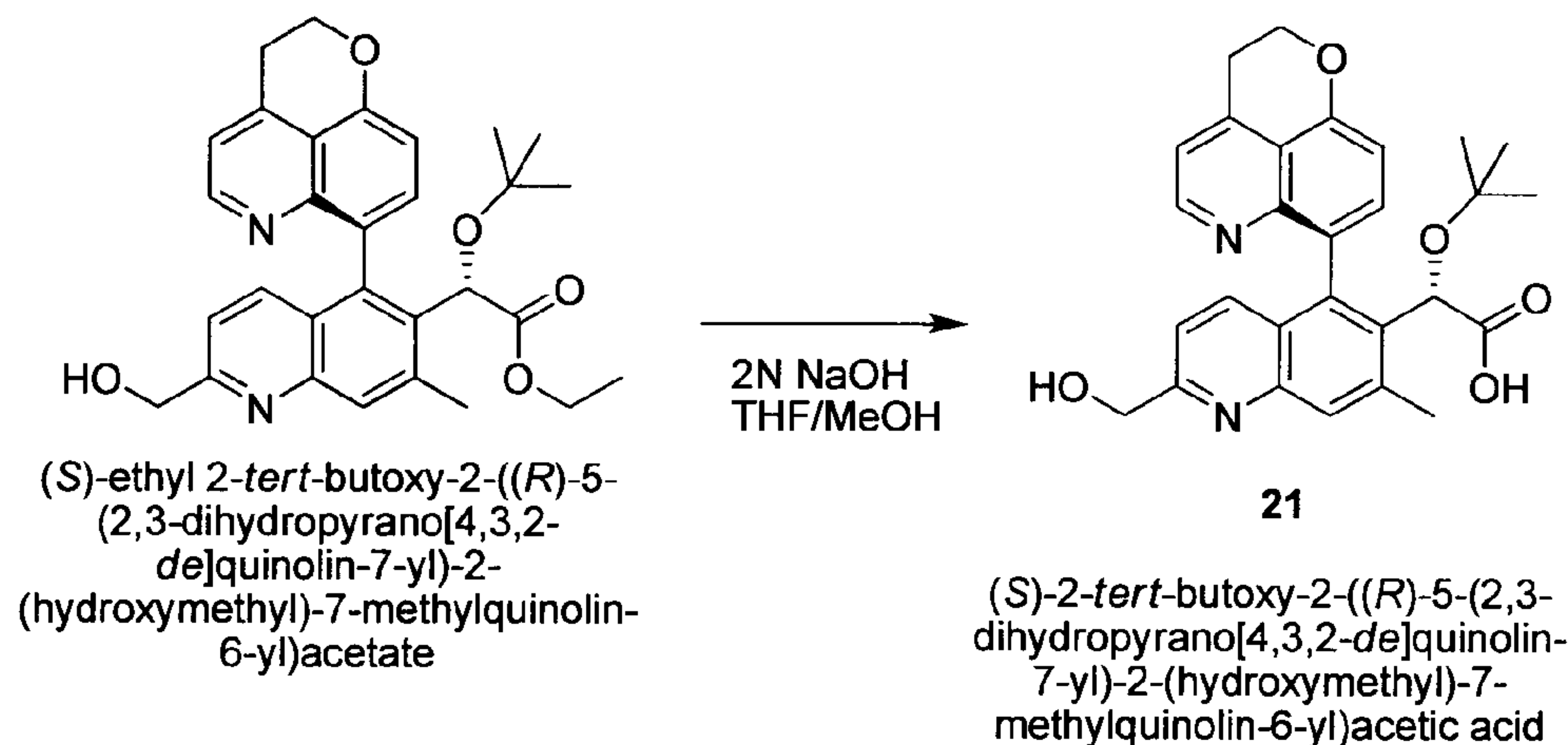
Preparation of (S)-ethyl 2-tert-butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-2-(hydroxymethyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetate: (S)-Ethyl 2-tert-butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-2-(hydroxymethyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetate was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound (S)-ethyl 2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-(hydroxymethyl)-7-

methylquinolin-6-yl)acetate of Example 16, except that (S)-ethyl 2-((R)-2-(acetoxymethyl)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyacetate was used instead of (S)-ethyl 2-(2-(acetoxymethyl)-5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyacetate. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 501.2 (M+H)⁺.

Preparation of (S)-ethyl 2-tert-butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-2-((dimethylamino)methyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetate: To a stirred solution of (S)-ethyl 2-tert-butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-2-(hydroxymethyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetate (15 mg, 0.03 mmol) and DIPEA (0.013 mL, 0.075 mmol) in dichloromethane (1 mL) was added methanesulfonyl chloride (6.8 mg, 0.06 mmol) at 0 °C. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours before the addition of N,N-dimethylamine in methanol (0.5 mL 2 M, excess). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for another 1 h, then diluted in ethyl acetate (30 mL), washed with NaHCO₃ solution, water and brine, dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The obtained residue was purified by HPLC to provide the desired product as TFA salt (18 mg, 97%). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 528.3 (M+H)⁺.

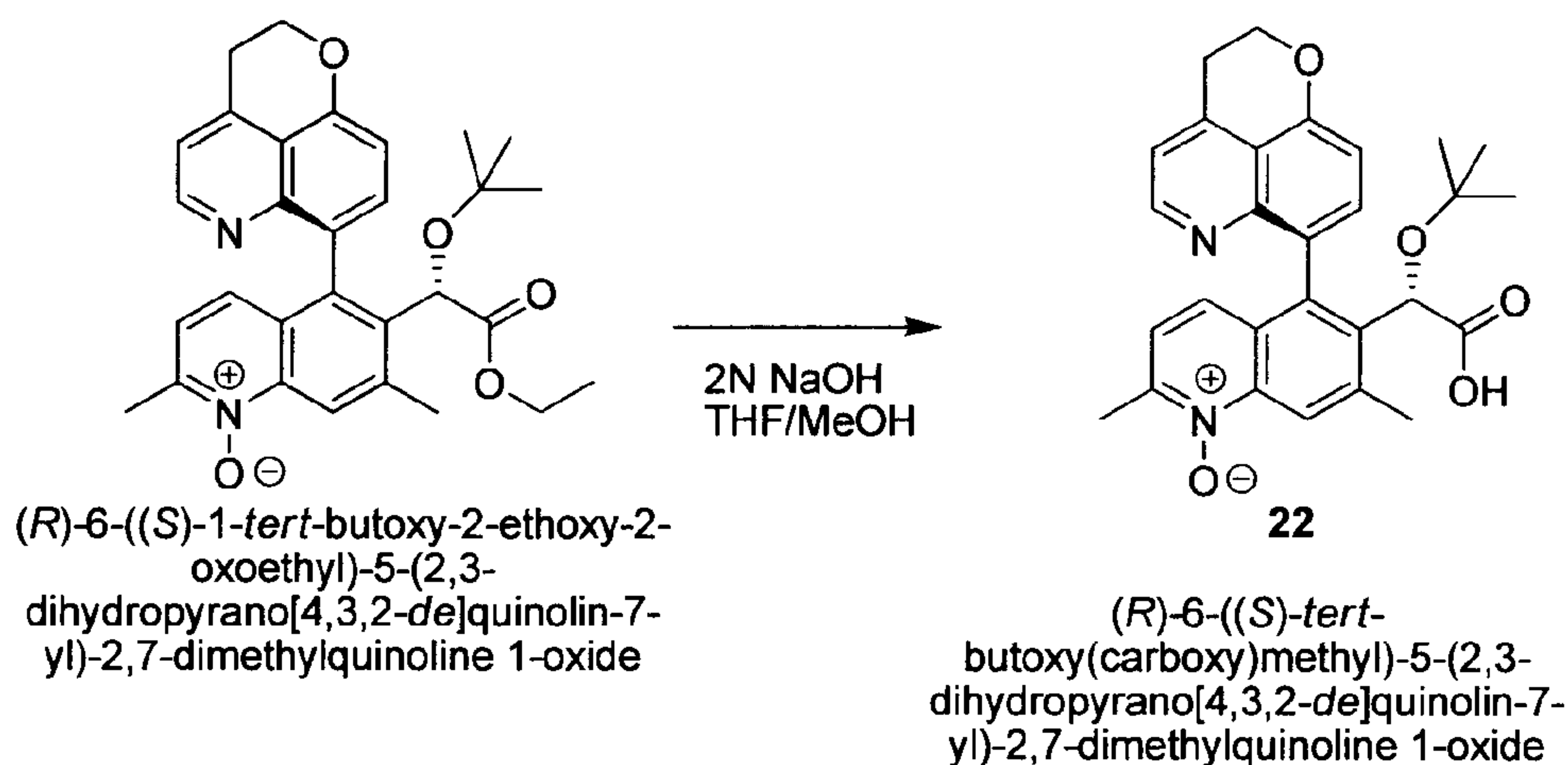
Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-2-((dimethylamino)methyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**20**): (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-2-((dimethylamino)methyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-((methyl(phenyl)amino)methyl)quinolin-6-yl)acetic acid of Example 14, except that (S)-ethyl 2-tert-butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-2-((dimethylamino)methyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetate was used instead of (S)-ethyl 2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-((methyl(phenyl)amino)methyl)quinolin-6-yl)acetate. ¹H-NMR 300 MHz, (CD₃OD) δ 8.70 (d, 1H), 8.20 (s, 1H), 7.83-7.75 (m, 2H), 7.51 (d, 1H), 7.42 (d, 1H), 7.29 (d, 1H), 5.26 (s, 1H), 5.75-5.68 (m, 2H), 4.66 (s, 2H), 3.64 (t, 2H), 3.05 (s, 6H), 2.85 (s, 3H), 0.93 (s, 9H); LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₃₀H₃₄N₃O₄: 500.6; Found: 500.2.

Example 21: (S)-2-tert-Butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-2-(hydroxymethyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**21**).

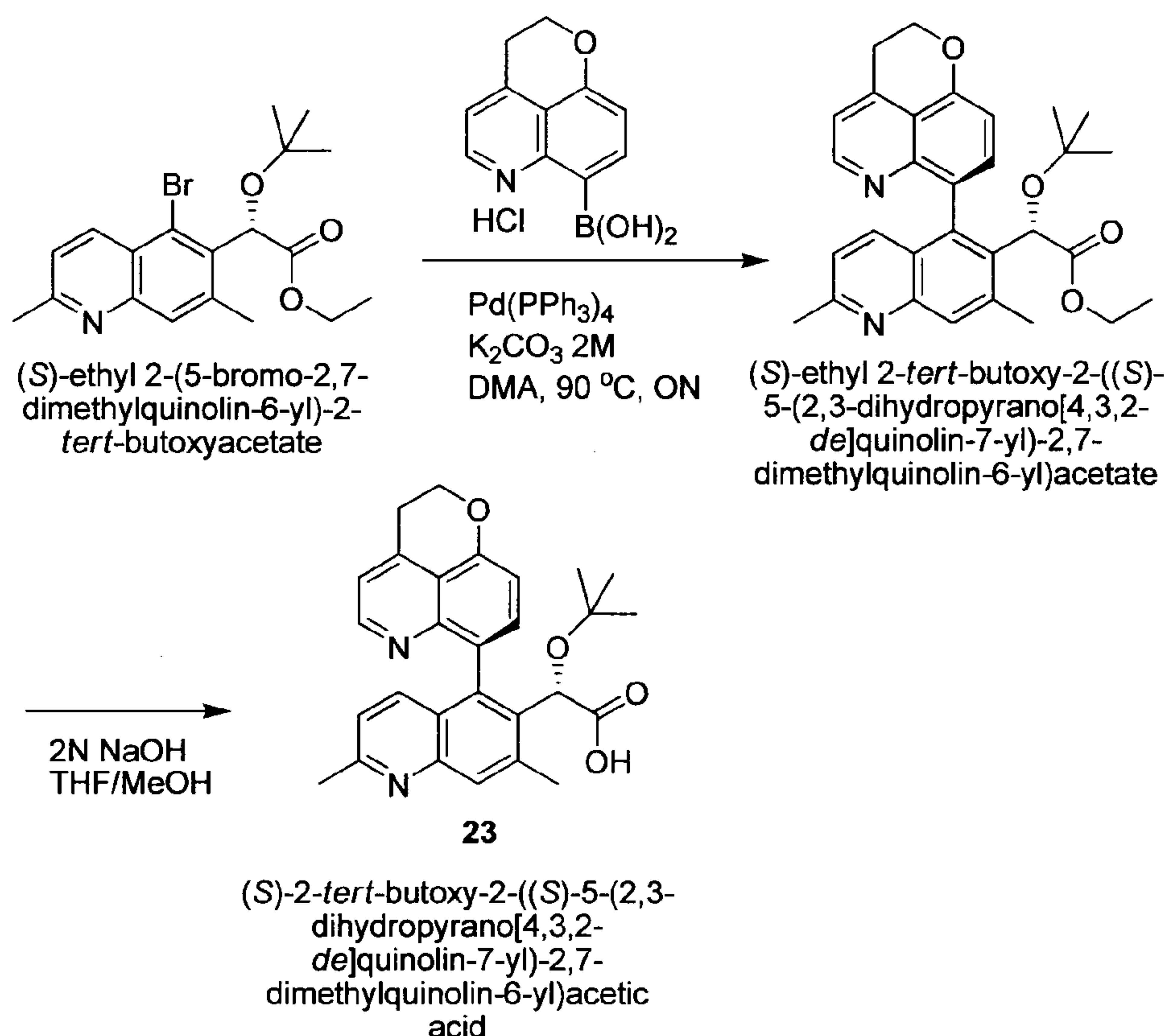


Preparation (S)-2-*tert*-butoxy-2-((*R*)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-*de*]quinolin-7-yl)-2-(hydroxymethyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**21**): To a stirred solution of (S)-ethyl 2-*tert*-butoxy-2-((*R*)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-*de*]quinolin-7-yl)-2-(hydroxymethyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetate (compound of Example 20) (10 mg, 0.02 mmol) in THF and methanol (2 mL/1 mL) was added 2 M NaOH solution (0.5 mL, excess). The mixture was stirred at 50 °C for 3 hours, diluted with water. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with brine, dried and concentrated *in vacuo*. The obtained residue was purified by prep-HPLC to provide the desired product as TFA salt (9.0 mg, 79%). ¹H-NMR 300 MHz, (CD₃OD) δ 8.66 (d, 1H), 8.27 (s, 1H), 7.94 (d, 1H), 7.67 (d, 1H), 7.70-7.60 (m, 2H), 7.37 (d, 1H), 5.26 (s, 1H), 5.06 (s, 2H), 4.75-4.65 (m, 2H), 3.57 (t, 2H), 2.90 (s, 3H), 0.93 (s, 9H); LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₂₈H₂₉N₂O₄: 473.5; Found: 473.1.

Example 22: (R)-6-((S)-*tert*-butoxy(carboxy)methyl)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-*de*]quinolin-7-yl)-2,7-dimethylquinoline 1-oxide (**22**).



- (R) -6-((S)-*tert*-Butoxy(carboxy)methyl)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-*de*]quinolin-7-yl)-2,7-dimethylquinoline 1-oxide (**22**) was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound (S)-2-*tert*-butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-*de*]quinolin-7-yl)-2-(hydroxymethyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid of Example 21, except that (R)-6-((S)-1-*tert*-butoxy-2-ethoxy-2-oxoethyl)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-*de*]quinolin-7-yl)-2,7-dimethylquinoline 1-oxide was used instead of (S)-ethyl 2-*tert*-butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-*de*]quinolin-7-yl)-2-(hydroxymethyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetate. ^1H -NMR 300 MHz, (CD_3OD) δ 8.78-8.70 (m, 2H), 7.85 (d, 1H), 7.78 (d, 1H), 7.44 (d, 1H), 7.35 (d, 1H), 7.11 (d, 1H), 5.23 (s, 1H), 5.75-5.65 (m, 2H), 3.65 (t, 2H), 2.88 (s, 3H), 2.70 (s, 3H), 0.93 (s, 9H); LCMS-ESI $^+$ (m/z): [$M+H$] $^+$ calcd for $C_{28}H_{29}N_2O_5$: 473.5; Found: 473.2.
- Example 23: (S)-2-*tert*-Butoxy-2-((S)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-*de*]quinolin-7-yl)-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**23**).

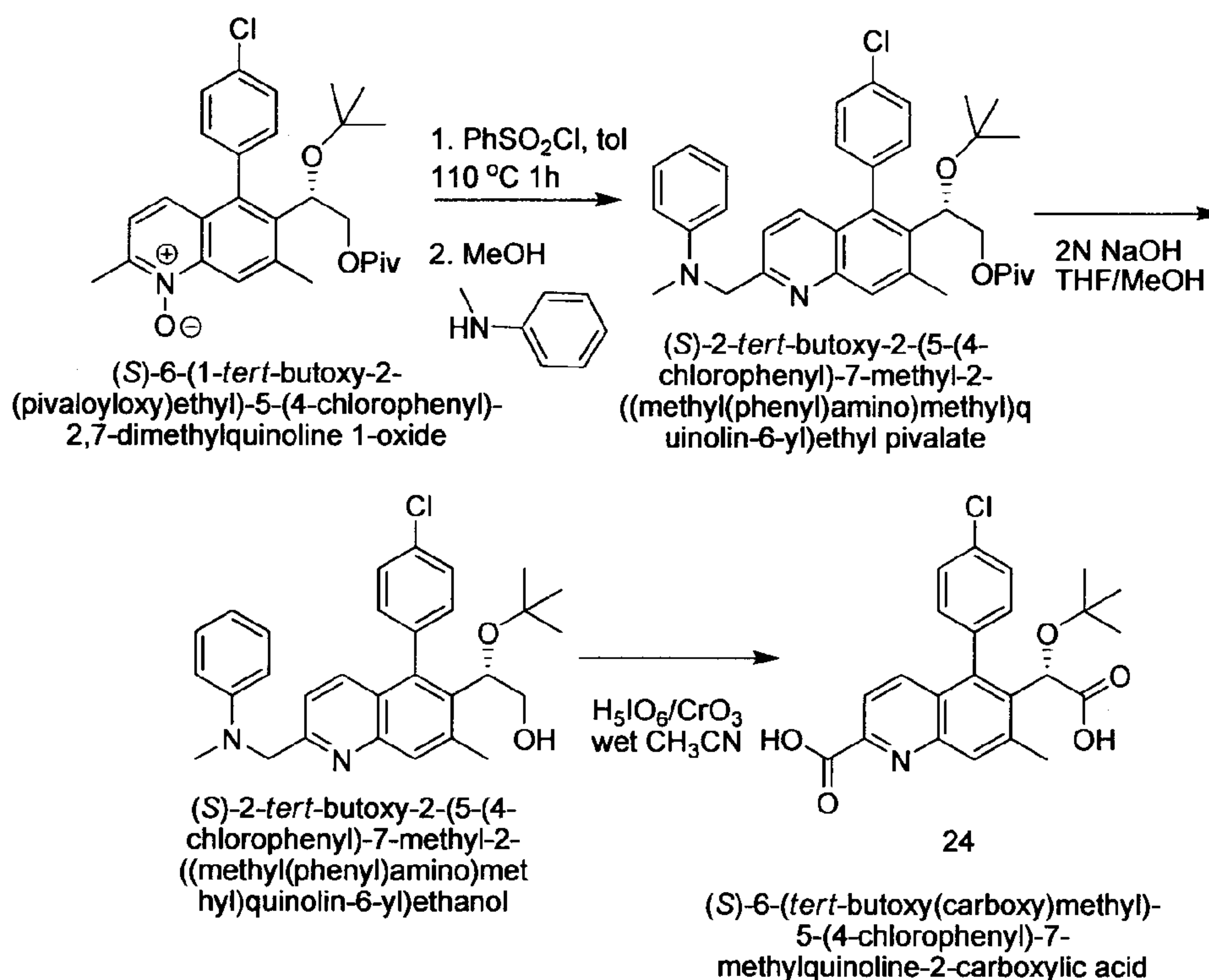


Preparation of (S)-ethyl 2-tert-butoxy-2-((S)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)acetate: $\text{Pd(PPh}_3)_4$ (103 mg, 0.09 mmol) was added to a mixture (S)-ethyl 2-(5-bromo-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyacetate (**5H**) (350 mg, 0.89 mmol), 2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-ylboronic acid hydrochloride (447 mg, 1.78 mmol), K_2CO_3 (2.0 mL 2 M in water, 4.0 mmol) in N,N-dimethylacetamide (10 mL). The reaction mixture was flushed with nitrogen, heated at 90 °C for 16 h. The mixture was dissolved in ethyl acetate (150 mL), washed with NaHCO_3 solution, water and brine, dried over Na_2SO_4 , filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The obtained residue was purified by HPLC to provide the desired product (407 mg, 43%). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 485.2 ($\text{M}+\text{H}$)⁺.

Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-((S)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**23**): (S)-2-tert-Butoxy-2-((S)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-2-(hydroxymethyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid of Example 21, except (S)-ethyl 2-tert-butoxy-2-((S)-5-(2,3-

dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-2,7-dimethylquinolin-6-yl)acetate was used instead of (S)-ethyl 2-tert-butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-2-(hydroxymethyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetate. ¹H-NMR 300 MHz, (CD₃OD) δ 8.51 (d, 2H), 8.02-7.95 (m, 3H), 7.54 (d, 1H), 7.36 (d, 1H), 7.28 (d, 1H), 5.28 (s, 1H), 4.60 (t, 2H), 3.43 (t, 2H), 2.93 (s, 3H), 2.83 (s, 3H), 0.72 (s, 9H); LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₂₈H₂₈N₂O₄: 457.5; Found: 457.1.

Example 24: (S)-6-(tert-Butoxy(carboxy)methyl)-5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methylquinoline-2-carboxylic acid (**24**).



10

Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-((methyl(phenyl)amino)methyl) quinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate: (S)-2-tert-Butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-((methyl(phenyl)amino)methyl) quinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound (S)-ethyl 2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-((methyl(phenyl) amino)methyl)quinolin-6-yl)acetate of Example 14, except that (S)-6-(1-tert-butoxy-2-(pivaloyloxy)ethyl)-5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2,7-dimethylquinoline 1-oxide was used instead of (S)-6-(1-tert-butoxy-

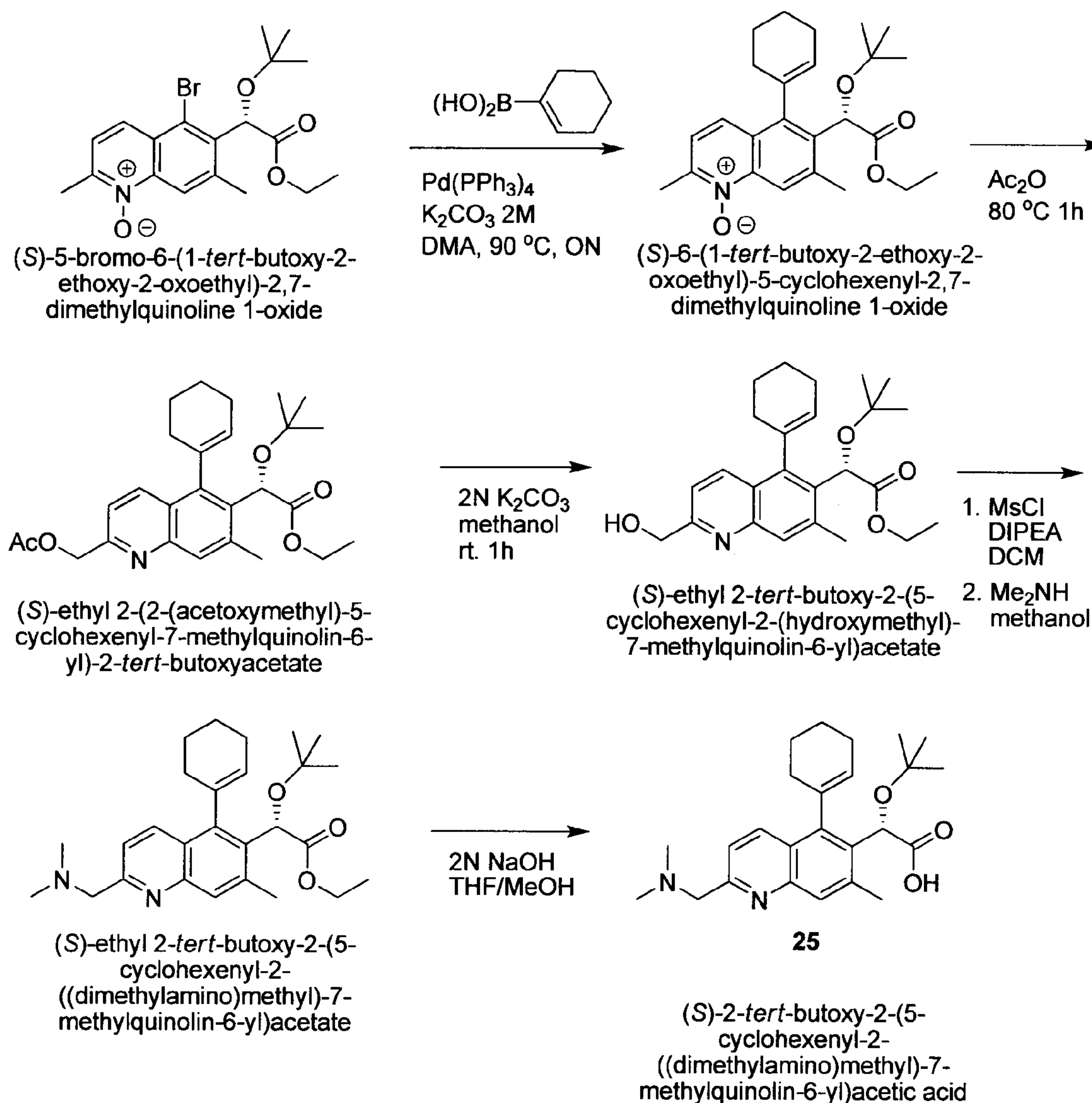
15

2-ethoxy-2-oxoethyl)-5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2,7-dimethylquinoline 1-oxide. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 573.3, 575.4 (M+H)⁺.

Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-
((methyl(phenyl)amino)methyl) quinolin-6-yl)ethanol: (S)-2-tert-Butoxy-2-(5-(4-
5 chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-((methyl(phenyl)amino)methyl) quinolin-6-yl)ethanol was
prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-((R)-5-
(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-2-(hydroxymethyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-
yl)acetic acid of Example 21, except that (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-
methyl-2-((methyl(phenyl)amino)methyl) quinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate was used instead
10 of (S)-ethyl 2-tert-butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-2-
(hydroxymethyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetate. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 489.3, 491.3
(M+H)⁺.

Preparation of (S)-6-(tert-butoxy(carboxy)methyl)-5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-
methylquinoline-2-carboxylic acid (**24**): (S)-6-(tert-Butoxy(carboxy)methyl)-5-(4-
15 chlorophenyl)-7-methylquinoline-2-carboxylic acid was prepared following the
procedure used to prepare compound (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-
(methoxycarbonyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid of Example 12, except that (S)-2-
tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-((methyl(phenyl)amino)methyl)
quinolin-6-yl)ethanol was used instead of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-
20 (methoxymethyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethanol. ¹H-NMR 300 MHz, (CD₃OD) δ 8.15-
8.05 (m, 2H), 7.93 (d, 1H), 7.70-7.60 (m, 3H), 7.40-7.35 (m, 1H), 5.24 (s, 1H), 2.70 (s,
3H), 0.99 (s, 9H); LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₂₃H₂₃ClNO₅: 428.9; Found:
428.1, 430.1.

25 Example 25: (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-cyclohexenyl-2-((dimethylamino)methyl)-7-
methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**25**).



Preparation of (S)-6-(1-*tert*-butoxy-2-ethoxy-2-oxoethyl)-5-cyclohexenyl-2,7-dimethylquinoline 1-oxide: $\text{Pd}(\text{PPh}_3)_4$ (6 mg, 0.006 mmol) was added to a mixture (S)-5-bromo-6-(1-*tert*-butoxy-2-ethoxy-2-oxoethyl)-2,7-dimethylquinoline 1-oxide (compound of Example 20) (20 mg, 0.05 mmol), cyclohexenylboronic acid (12 mg, 0.1 mmol), K_2CO_3 (0.09 mL 2 M in water, 0.17 mmol) in 1,2-dimethoxyethane (1 mL). The reaction mixture was flushed with nitrogen, heated at 85 °C for overnight, and then the volatile component was removed *in vacuo*. The residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate (30 mL), washed with NaHCO_3 solution, water and brine, dried over Na_2SO_4 ,

filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The obtained residue was purified by HPLC to provide the desired product (17 mg, 68%). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 412.3 (M+H)⁺.

Preparation of (S)-ethyl 2-(2-(acetoxymethyl)-5-cyclohexenyl-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyacetate: (S)-Ethyl 2-(2-(acetoxymethyl)-5-cyclohexenyl-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyacetate was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound (S)-ethyl 2-(2-(acetoxymethyl)-5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyacetate of Example 16, except that (S)-6-(1-tert-butoxy-2-ethoxy-2-oxoethyl)-5-cyclohexenyl-2,7-dimethylquinoline 1-oxide was used instead of 2-ethoxy-2-oxoethyl)-5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2,7-dimethylquinoline 1-oxide. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 454.3 (M+H)⁺.

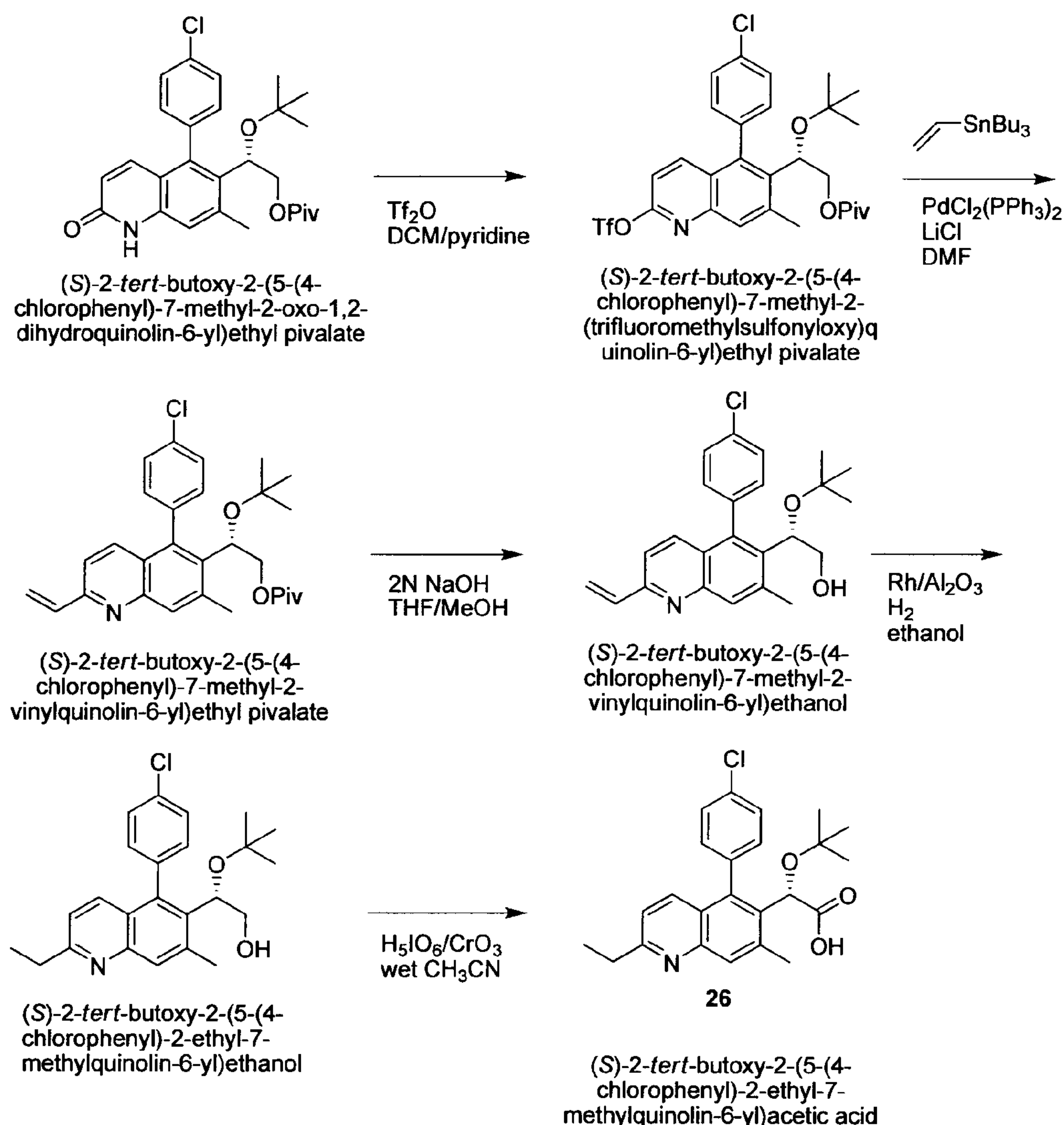
Preparation of (S)-ethyl 2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-cyclohexenyl-2-(hydroxymethyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetate: (S)-Ethyl 2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-cyclohexenyl-2-(hydroxymethyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetate was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound (S)-ethyl 2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-(hydroxymethyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetate of Example 16, except that (S)-ethyl 2-(2-(acetoxymethyl)-5-cyclohexenyl-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyacetate was used instead of (S)-ethyl 2-(2-(acetoxymethyl)-5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyacetate. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 412.3 (M+H)⁺.

Preparation of (S)-ethyl 2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-cyclohexenyl-2-(((dimethylamino)methyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetate: (S)-Ethyl 2-tert-Butoxy-2-(5-cyclohexenyl-2-(((dimethylamino)methyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetate was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound (S)-ethyl 2-tert-butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-2-(((dimethylamino)methyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetate of Example 20 except that (S)-ethyl 2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-cyclohexenyl-2-(hydroxymethyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetate was used instead of (S)-ethyl 2-tert-butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-2-(hydroxymethyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetate. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 439.4 (M+H)⁺.

Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-cyclohexenyl-2-(((dimethylamino)methyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**25**): (S)-2-tert-Butoxy-2-(5-cyclohexenyl-2-(((dimethylamino)methyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-((methyl(phenyl)amino) methyl)quinolin-6-yl)acetic acid of Example 14,

except that (S)-ethyl 2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-cyclohexenyl-2-((dimethylamino) methyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetate was used instead of (S)-ethyl 2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-((methyl(phenyl)amino)methyl) quinolin-6-yl)acetate. ¹H-NMR 300 MHz, (CD₃OD) δ 8.40-8.30 (m, 1H), 7.85-7.78 (m, 1H), 7.42 (d, 1H), 6.04, 5.70 (br, br, 1H), 5.80, 5.64 (s, s, 1H), 4.65 (s, 2H), 3.04 (s, 6H), 2.68-2.56 (m, 4H), 2.40-1.80 (m, 6H), 1.30-1.20 (m, 9H); LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₂₅H₃₄N₂O₃: 411.6; Found: 411.3.

Example 26: (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-ethyl-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**26**).



Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(trifluoromethylsulfonyloxy)quinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate: To a stirred solution of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydroquinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate (**8J**) (200 mg, 0.43 mmol) in dichloromethane (10 mL) and pyridine (0.35 mL) was added Tf₂O (0.1 mL, 0.87 mmol) at -78 °C. The temperature was slowly raised to 0 °C. The mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 2 hours, quenched with slowly addition of NaHCO₃ solution. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with brine, dried and concentrated to provide a brown colored solid. The obtained residue was purified by flash chromatography to provide the desired product (200 mg, 77%). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 602.0, 604.0 (M+H)⁺.

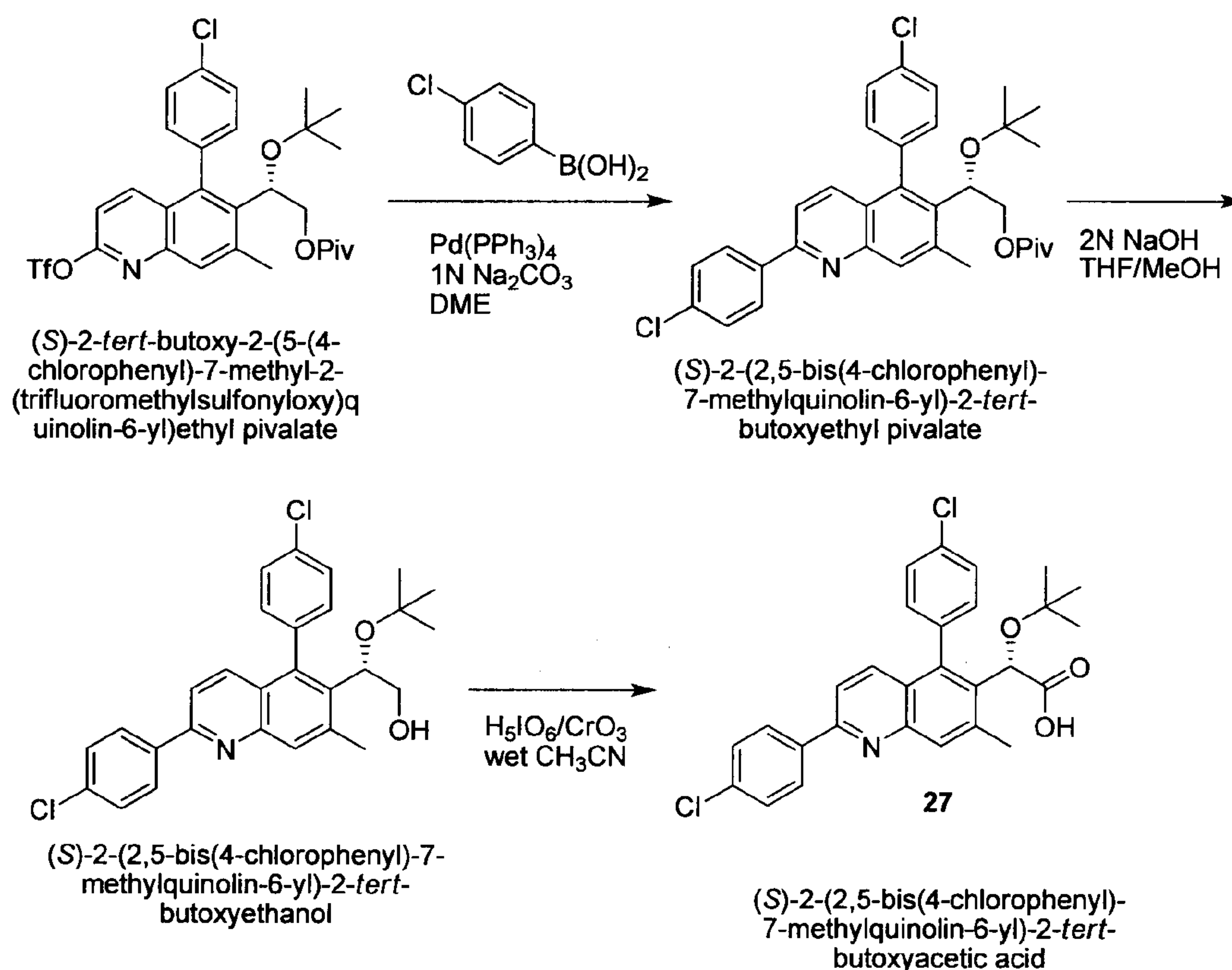
Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-vinylquinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate: PdCl₂(PPh₃)₂ (3 mg, 0.004 mmol) was added to (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(trifluoromethylsulfonyloxy)quinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate (25 mg, 0.04 mmol), tributyl-vinyl-stannane (0.024 mL, 0.08 mmol) and lithium chloride (7 mg, 0.16 mmol) in DMF (2 mL). The reaction mixture was flushed with nitrogen, heated at 90 °C for 16 hours, and then the volatile component was removed *in vacuo*. The residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate (100 mL), washed with NaHCO₃ solution, water and brine, dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The obtained residue was purified by HPLC to provide the desired product as TFA salt (14 mg, 59%). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 480.3, 482.3 (M+H)⁺.

Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-vinylquinolin-6-yl)ethanol: To a stirred solution of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-vinylquinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate TFA salt (14 mg, 0.024 mmol) in THF and methanol (3 mL/1 mL) was added 1 M NaOH solution (0.5 mL, excess). The mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 6 hours and diluted with water. The resulting mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with brine, dried and concentrated *in vacuo*. The obtained residue was used in the next reaction without purification. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 396.2, 398.2 (M+H)⁺.

Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-ethyl-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethanol: A balloon filled with hydrogen was connected to a degassed mixture of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-vinylquinolin-6-yl)ethanol (9 mg, 0.024 mmol) and Rhodium on activated alumina (2 mg, cat.) in

ethanol. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours, filtered and concentrated to dry. The obtained residue was used on next step reaction without purification. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 398.2, 400.2 (M+H)⁺.

- Preparation of (S)-2-*tert*-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-ethyl-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**26**): (S)-2-*tert*-Butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-ethyl-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound *tert*-butoxy-[7-chloro-5-(4-chloro-phenyl)-2-methyl-quinolin-6-yl]-acetic acid of Example 1, except that (S)-2-*tert*-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-ethyl-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethanol was used instead 2-*tert*-butoxy-2-[7-chloro-5-(4-chloro-phenyl)-2-methyl-quinolin-6-yl]-ethanol. ¹H-NMR 300 MHz, (CD₃OD) δ 8.31 (d, 1H), 7.98 (s, 1H), 7.76 (d, 1H), 7.70-7.60 (m, 3H), 7.42-7.35 (m, 1H), 5.25 (s, 1H), 3.21 (q, 2H), 2.78 (s, 3H), 1.48 (t, 3H), 0.98 (s, 9H); LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₂₄H₂₇ClNO₃: 412.9; Found: 412.2, 414.2.
- Example 27: (S)-2-(2,5-bis(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)-2-*tert*-butoxyacetic acid (**27**).



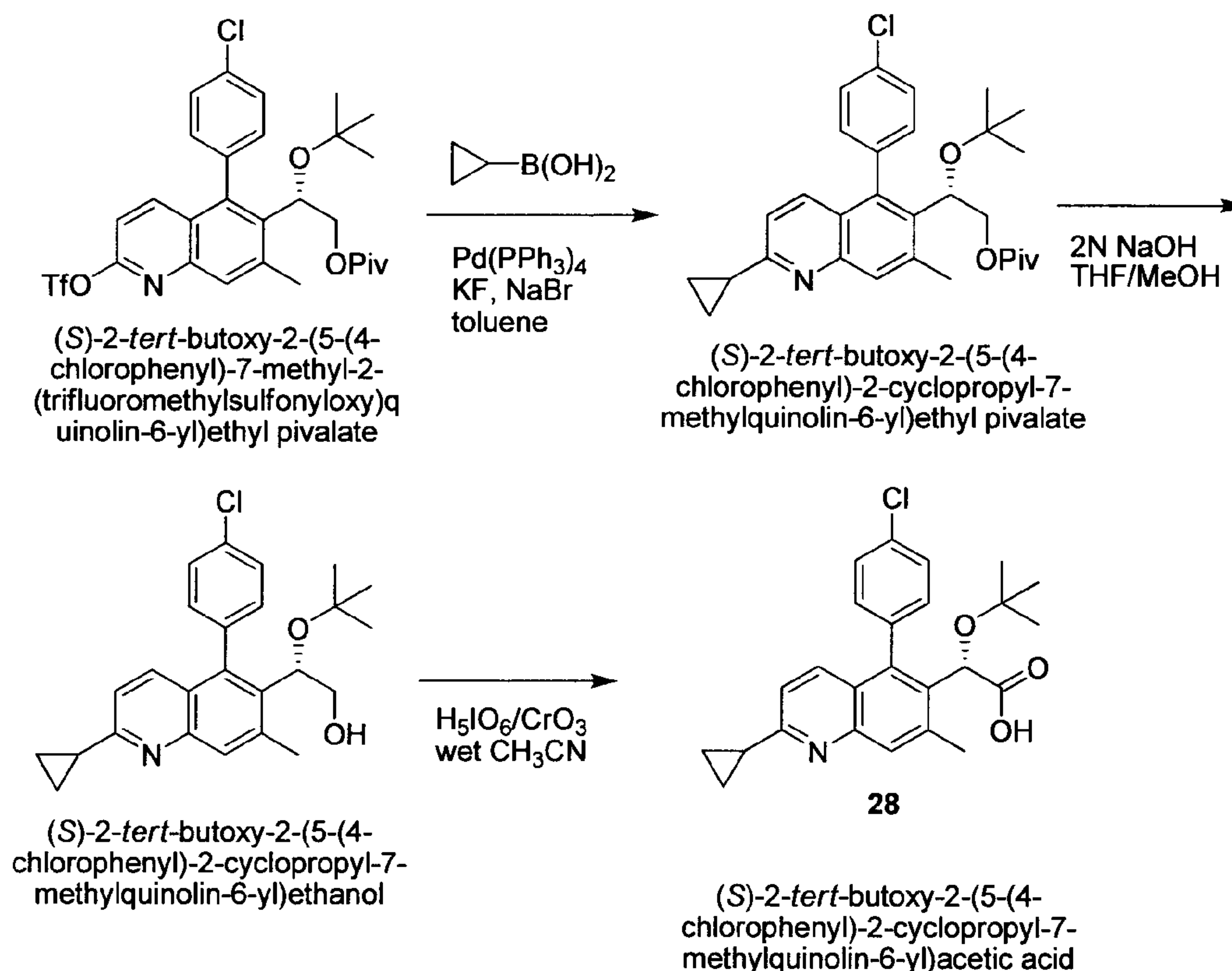
Preparation of (S)-2-(2,5-bis(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyethyl pivalate: Pd(PPh₃)₄ (4.6 mg, 0.004 mmol) was added to a mixture (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(trifluoromethylsulfonyloxy)quinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate (compound of Example 26) (25 mg, 0.04 mmol), 4-chlorophenylboronic acid (13 mg, 0.08 mmol), Na₂CO₃ (0.14 mL 1 M in water, 0.14 mmol) in 1,2-dimethoxyethane (2 mL). The reaction mixture was flushed with nitrogen, heated at 90 °C for 16 hours, and then the volatile component was removed *in vacuo*. The residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate (100 mL), washed with NaHCO₃ solution, water and brine, dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The obtained residue was purified by HPLC to provide the desired product as a TFA salt (15 mg, 55%). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 564.3, 566.3, 568.3 (M+H)⁺.

Preparation of (S)-2-(2,5-bis(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyethanol: (S)-2-(2,5-Bis(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyethanol was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound (S)-2-

tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-vinylquinolin-6-yl)ethanol (compound of Example 26), except that (S)-2-(2,5-bis(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyethyl pivalate was used instead of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-vinylquinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 480.2, 482.2, 484.2
5 (M+H)⁺.

Preparation of (S)-2-(2,5-bis(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyacetic acid (**27**): (S)-2-(2,5-Bis(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyacetic acid was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-ethyl-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid
10 (compound of Example 26), except that (S)-2-(2,5-bis(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyethanol was used instead (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-ethyl-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethanol. ¹H-NMR 300 MHz, (CD₃OD) δ 8.15-8.02 (m, 4H), 7.98 (d, 1H), 7.70-7.60 (m, 5H), 7.38 (d, 1H), 5.24 (s, 1H), 2.74 (s, 3H), 0.98 (s, 9H); LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₂₈H₂₅Cl₂NO₃: 495.4; Found:
15 494.2, 496.2, 498.2.

Example 28: (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-cyclopropyl-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**28**).



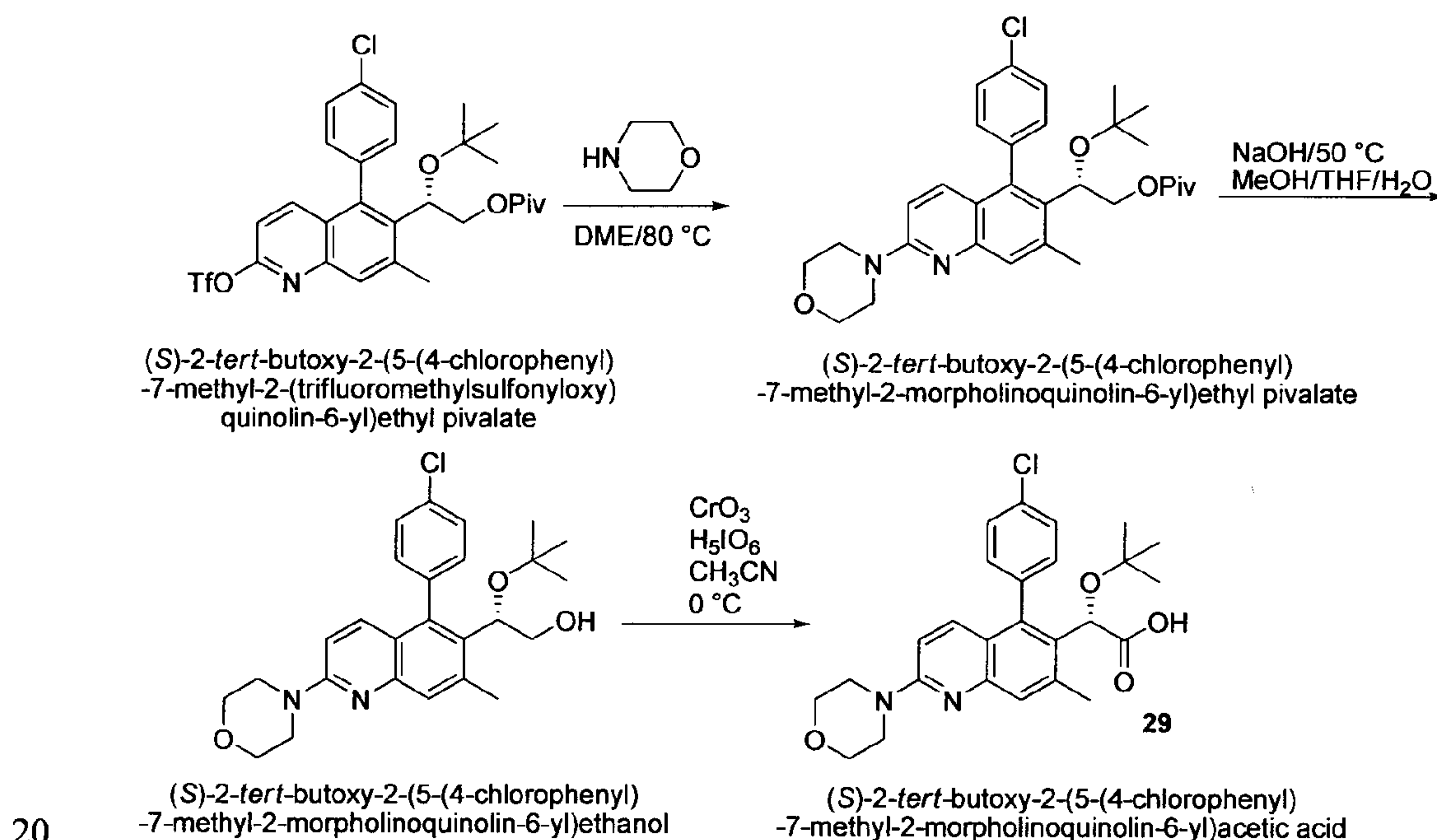
- Preparation of (S)-2-*tert*-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-cyclopropyl-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate: Pd(PPh₃)₄ (4.7 mg, 0.004 mmol) was added to a mixture (S)-2-*tert*-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-
- 5 (trifluoromethylsulfonyloxy)quinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate (compound of Example 26) (25 mg, 0.04 mmol), cyclopropylboronic acid (7 mg, 0.08 mmol), KF (8 mg, 0.14) and NaBr (6 mg, 0.06 mmol) in toluene (2 mL). One drop of water was added to the mixture. The reaction mixture was flushed with nitrogen, heated at 90 °C for 16 hours, and then the volatile component was removed *in vacuo*. The residue was dissolved in
- 10 ethyl acetate (100 mL), washed with NaHCO₃ solution, water and brine, dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The obtained residue was purified by HPLC to provide the desired product as a TFA salt (11 mg, 47%). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 494.3, 496.3 (M+H)⁺.

- 15 Preparation of (S)-2-*tert*-Butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-cyclopropyl-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethanol: (S)-2-*tert*-Butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-cyclopropyl-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethanol was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound (S)-2-*tert*-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-vinylquinolin-6-

yl)ethanol, (compound of Example 26) except that (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-cyclopropyl-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate was used instead of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-vinylquinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): 410.3, 412.2 (M+H)⁺.

- 5 Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-cyclopropyl-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**28**): (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-cyclopropyl-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid was prepared following the procedure used to prepare compound (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-ethyl-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (compound of Example 26) except that (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-cyclopropyl-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethanol was used instead (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-ethyl-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethanol. ¹H-NMR 300 MHz, (CD₃OD) δ 8.19 (d, 1H), 7.96 (s, 1H), 7.70-7.58 (m, 3H, 7.40-7.30 (m, 2H), 5.23 (s, 1H), 2.77 (s, 3H), 2.58-2.48 (m, 1H), 1.65-1.55 (m, 2H), 1.42-1.36 (m, 2H), 0.98 (s, 9H); LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₂₅H₂₆ClNO₃: 424.9; Found: 424.2, 426.2.

Example 29: (S)-2-tert-Butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-morpholinoquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**29**).



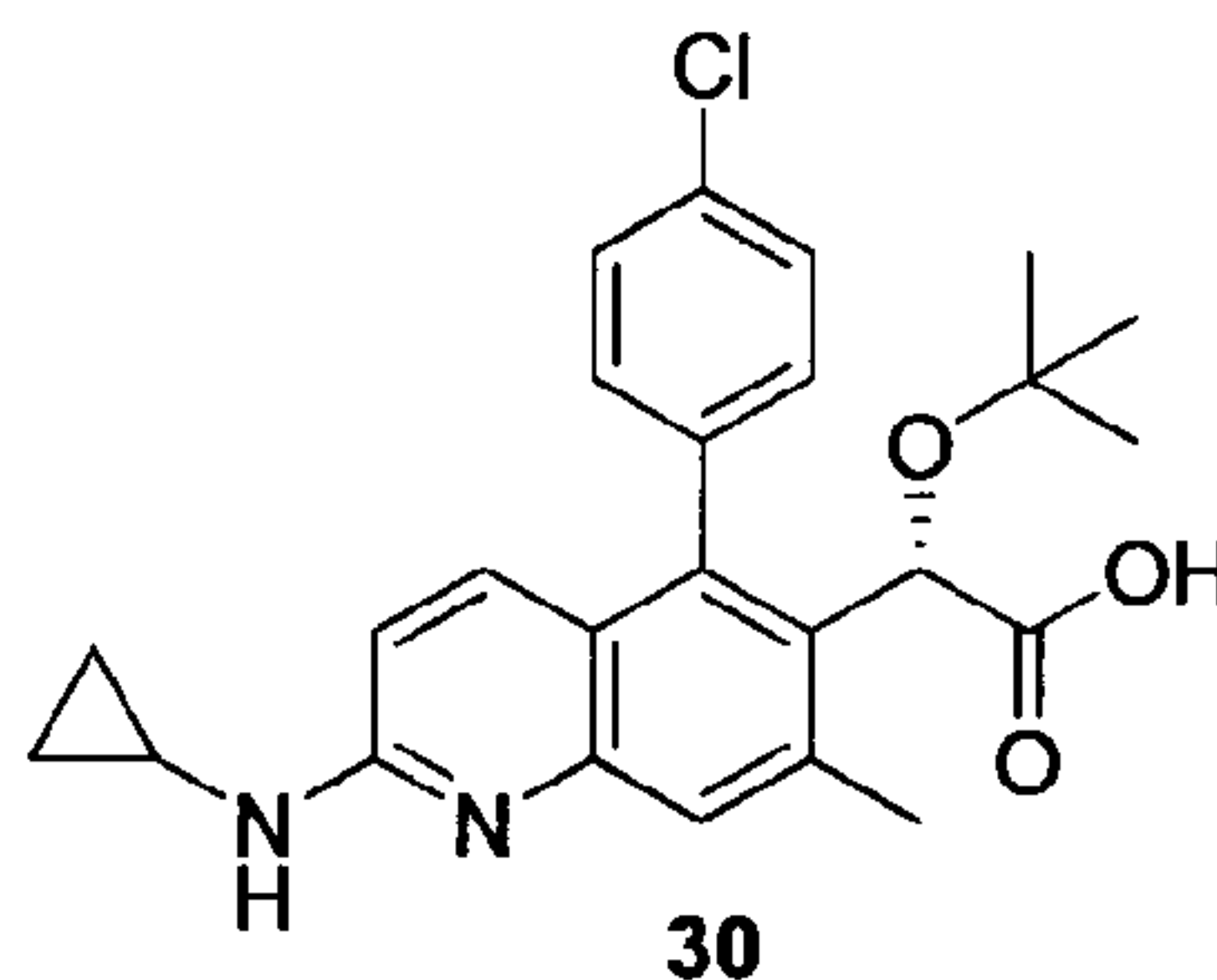
Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-morpholinoquinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate: A mixture of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(trifluoromethylsulfonyloxy)quinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate (12 mg, prepared as in Example 26) and morpholine (0.2 mL) in DME was heated at 80 °C
5 for 12 hours. Concentration *in vacuo* gave (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-morpholinoquinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate (15 mg). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₃₁H₄₀ClN₂O₄: 539.3; Found: 539.4.

Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-morpholinoquinolin-6-yl)ethanol: To the solution of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-morpholinoquinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate (15 mg) in
10 THF/MeOH (1 mL/1 mL) was added sodium hydroxide solution (1.0 N, 1 mL). The mixture was heated at 50 °C for 16 hours and was diluted with water. The aqueous was extracted with ethyl acetate, and the organic phase was washed with brine, and dried over sodium sulfate. Concentration under reduced pressure gave (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-morpholinoquinolin-6-yl)ethanol (10 mg). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₂₆H₃₂ClN₂O₃: 454.2; Found: 455.3.

Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-morpholinoquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**29**): A stock solution of periodic acid/chromium trioxide was prepared according to WO 99/52850 by dissolving periodic acid (11.4 g, 50.0 mmol) and chromium trioxide (23 mg, 1.2 mol %) in wet acetonitrile (0.75% H₂O)
20 to a volume of 114 mL. This stock solution (0.40 mL) was added to a solution of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-morpholinoquinolin-6-yl)ethanol (10 mg) in wet acetonitrile (1.5 mL, 0.75% H₂O) at 0 °C. The reaction mixture was stirred for 30 minutes at 0 °C. Filtration and purification by reverse phase HPLC
25 (0.1%TFA/CH₃CN-0.1%TFA/H₂O) gave (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-morpholinoquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (7.2 mg). ¹H-NMR 400 MHz, (CD₃OD) δ. 7.76 (m, 2 H), 7.62 (m, 3 H), 7.30 (m, 2 H), 5.14 (s, 1 H), 3.89 (m, 8 H), 2.66 (s, 3 H), 0.97 (s, 9 H); LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₂₆H₃₀ClN₂O₄: 469.2; Found: 469.3; LCMS-ESI⁻ (*m/z*): [M-H]⁻ calcd for C₂₆H₂₈ClN₂O₄: 467.2 Found: 467.0.

30

Example 30: (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-(cyclopropylamino)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**30**).

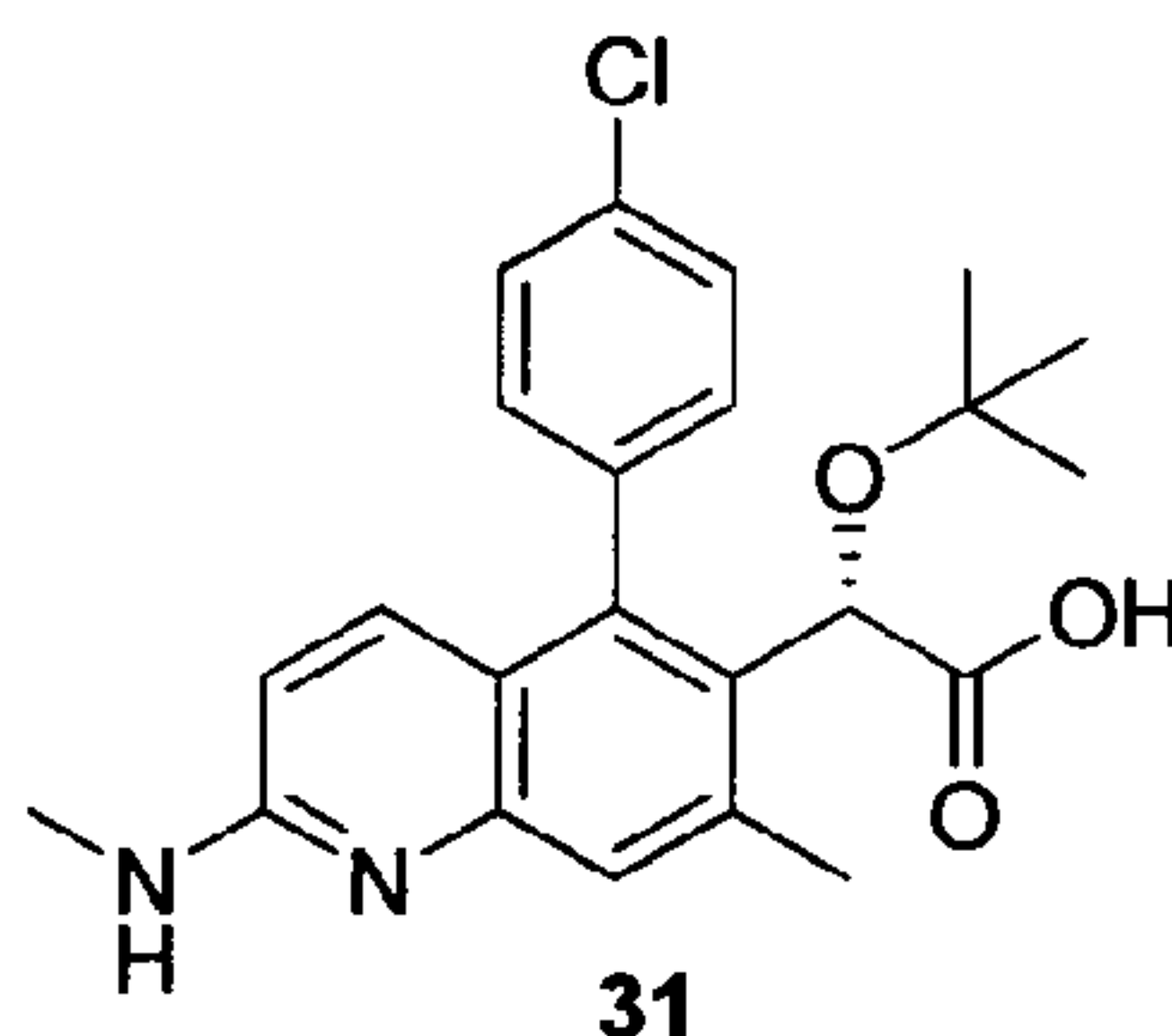


(S)-2-*tert*-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-
-2-(cyclopropylamino)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid

(S)-2-*tert*-Butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-(cyclopropylamino)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**30**) was prepared in a similar manner as compound (S)-2-*tert*-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-morpholinoquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid of Example 29 except using cyclopropylamine instead of morpholine. ¹H-NMR 400 MHz, (CD₃OD) δ. 7.82 (m, 1 H), 7.61 (m, 4 H), 7.30 (d, J = 7.6 Hz, 1 H), 6.80 (m, 1 H), 5.12 (s, 1 H), 2.90 (m, 1 H), 2.67 (s, 3 H), 1.10 (m, 2 H), 0.97 (s, 9 H), 0.81 (m, 2 H); LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₂₅H₂₈ClN₂O₃: 439.2; Found: 439.2; LCMS-ESI⁻ (*m/z*): [M-H]⁻ calcd for C₂₅H₂₆ClN₂O₃: 437.2; Found: 437.0;

10

Example 31: (S)-2-*tert*-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(methylamino)quinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**31**).

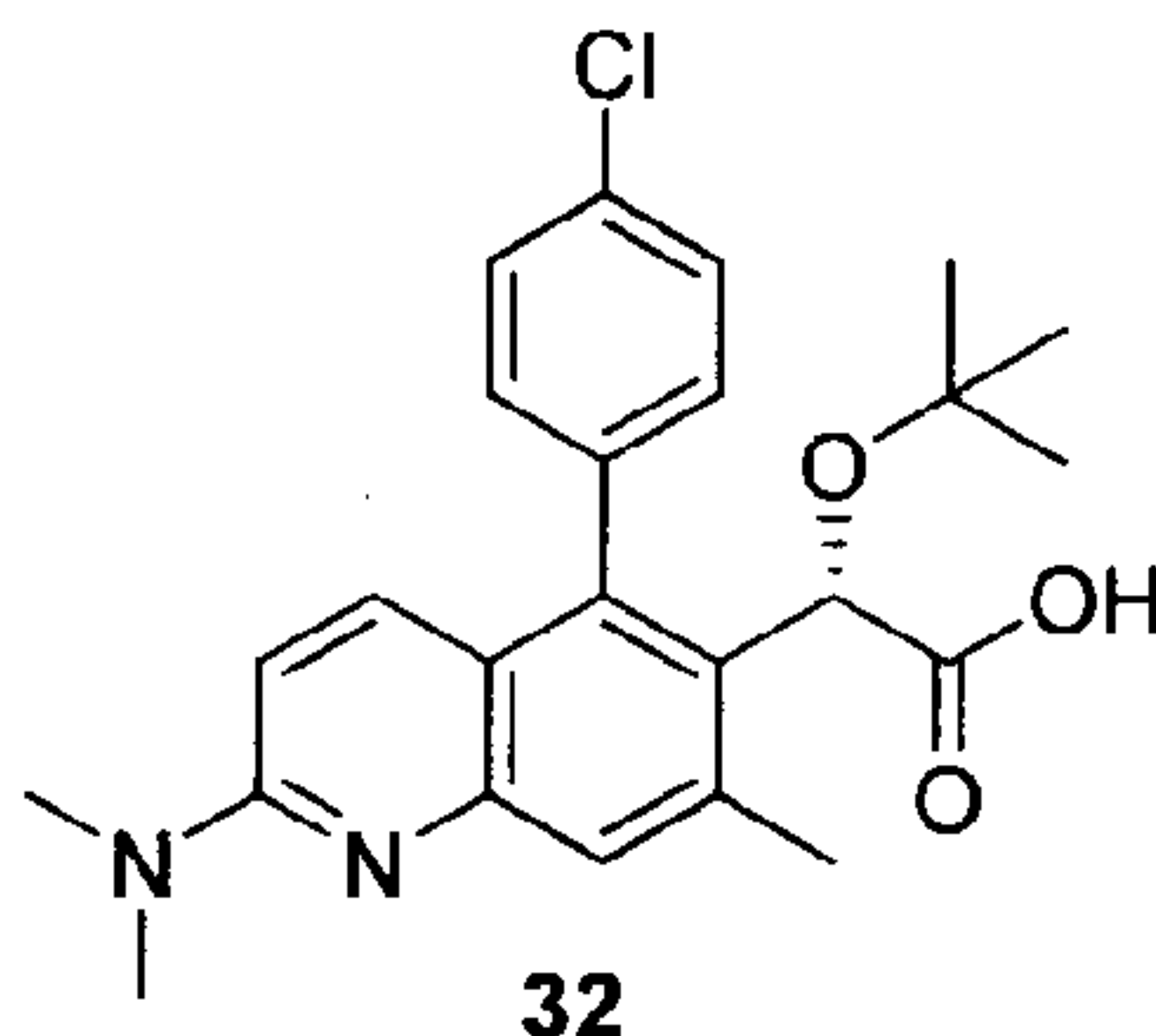


(S)-2-*tert*-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-
-7-methyl-2-(methylamino)quinolin-6-yl)acetic acid

(S)-2-*tert*-Butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(methylamino)quinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**31**) was prepared in a similar manner as compound (S)-2-*tert*-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-morpholinoquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid of Example 29 except using methylamine instead of morpholine. ¹H-NMR 400 MHz, (CD₃OD) δ. 7.7 (m, 1 H), 7.58 (m, 4 H), 7.30 (d, J = 8.4 Hz, 1 H), 6.82 (m, 1 H), 5.11 (s, 1 H), 3.19 (s,

3 H), 2.64 (s, 3 H), 0.97 (s, 9 H); LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₂₃H₂₆ClN₂O₃: 413.2; Found: 413.2.

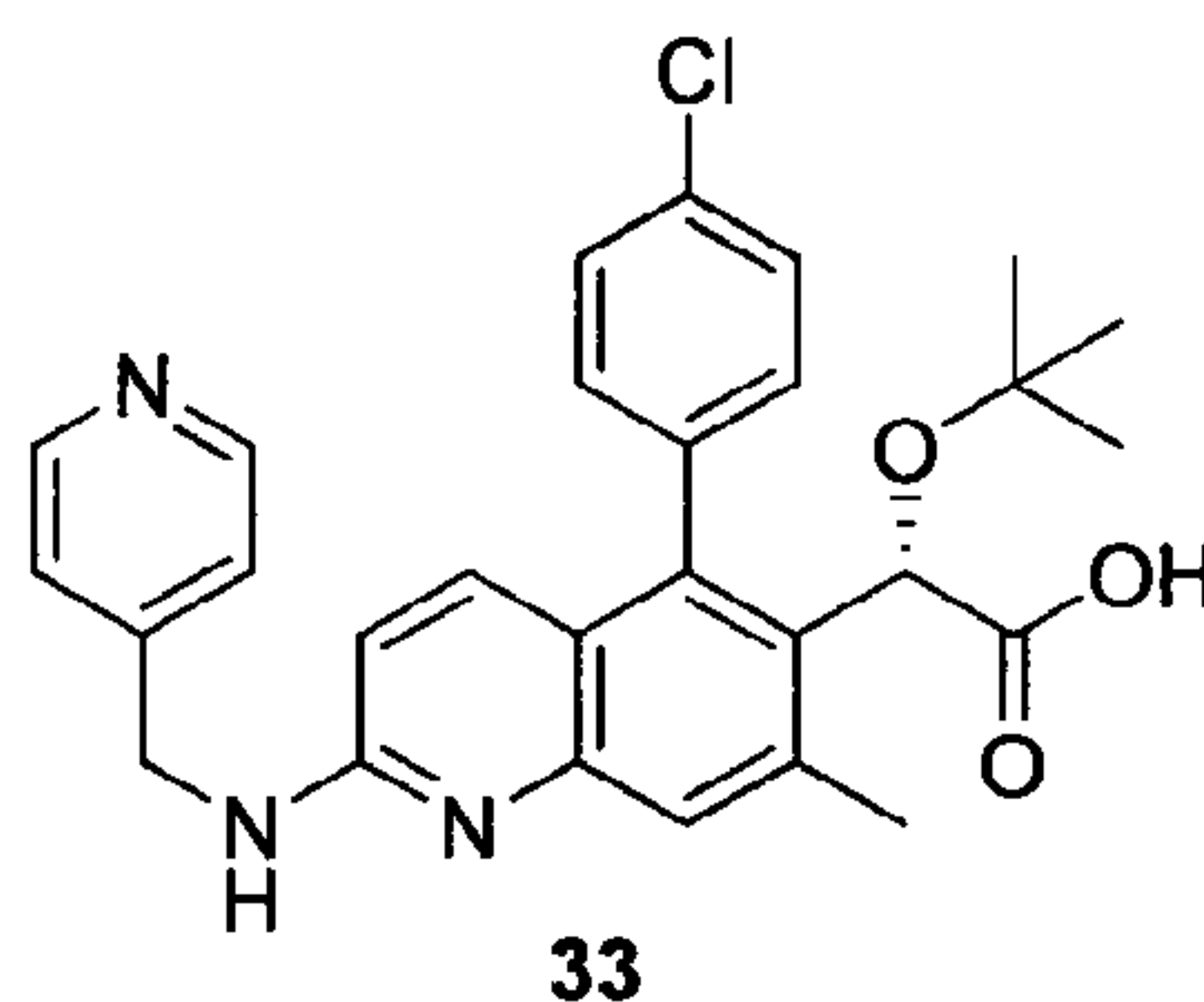
Example 32: (S)-2-tert-Butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-(dimethylamino)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**32**).



(S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-(dimethylamino)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid

(S)-2-tert-Butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-(dimethylamino)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**32**) was prepared in a similar manner as compound (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-morpholinoquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid of Example 29 except using dimethylamine instead of morpholine. ¹H-NMR 400 MHz, (CD₃OD) δ.7.79 (s, 1 H), 7.71 (d, J = 10 Hz, 1 H), 7.60 (m, 3 H), 7.31 (d, J = 8 Hz, 1 H), 7.16 (d, J = 10.4 Hz, 1 H), 5.13 (s, 1 H), 3.42 (s, 6 H), 2.66 (s, 3 H), 0.97 (s, 9 H); LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₂₄H₂₈ClN₂O₃: 427.2; Found: 427.2; LCMS-ESI⁻ (*m/z*): [M-H]⁻ calcd for C₂₄H₂₆ClN₂O₃: 425.2; Found: 425.0.

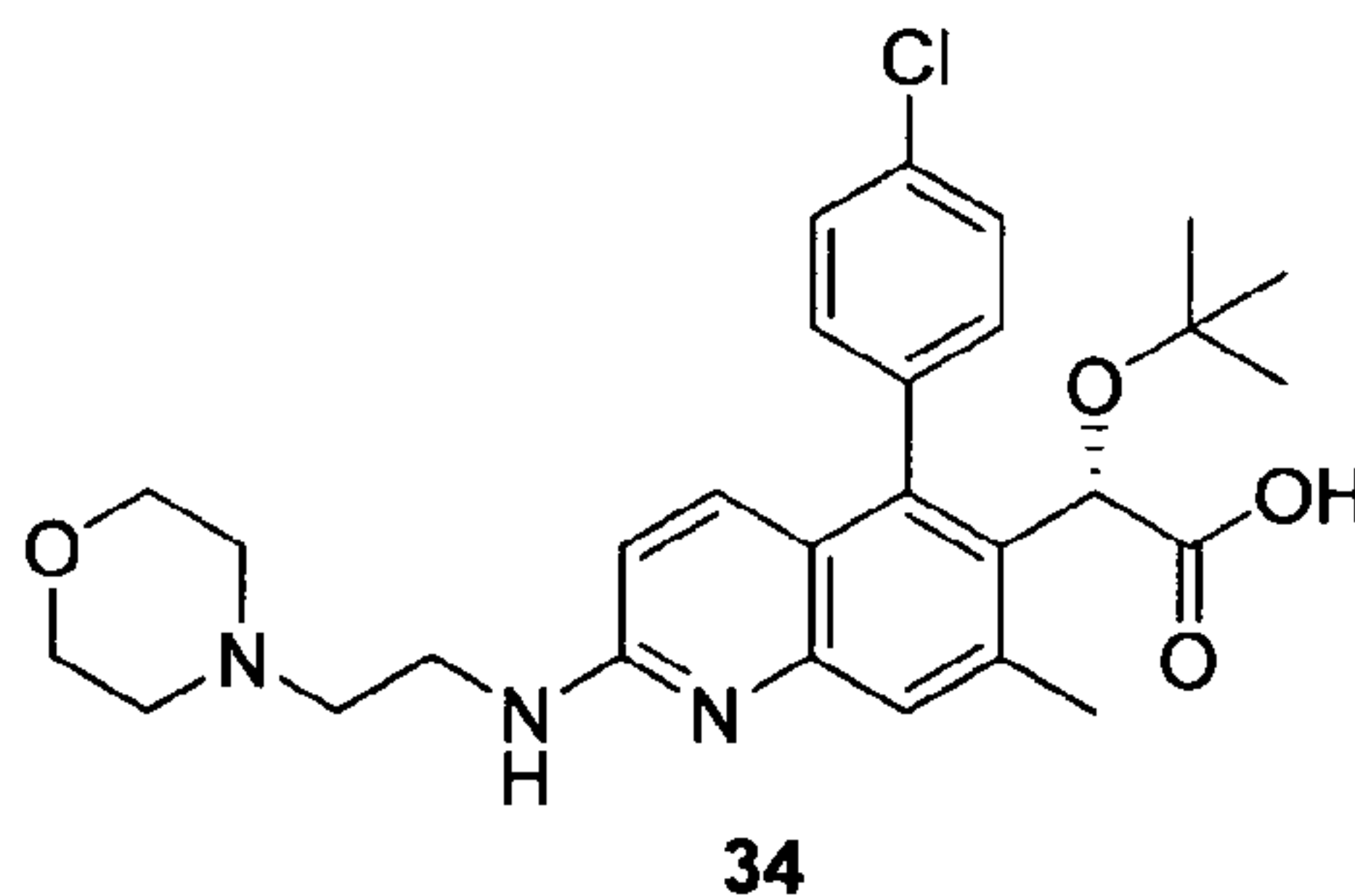
Example 33: (S)-2-tert-Butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(pyridin-4-ylmethylamino)quinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**33**).



(S)-2-*tert*-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(pyridin-4-ylmethylamino)quinolin-6-yl)acetic acid

(S)-2-*tert*-Butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(pyridin-4-ylmethylamino)quinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**33**) was prepared in a similar manner as compound (S)-2-*tert*-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-morpholinoquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid of Example 29 except using pyridin-4-ylmethanamine instead of morpholine. ¹H-NMR 400 MHz, (CD₃OD) δ 8.67 (m, 2 H), 7.72 (m, 3 H), 7.60 (m, 4 H), 7.31 (d, J = 8.4 Hz, 1 H), 6.97 (d, J = 9.2 Hz, 1 H), 5.12 (s, 1 H), 5.0 (s, 2 H), 2.64 (s, 3 H), 0.96 (s, 9 H); LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₂₈H₂₉ClN₃O₃: 490.2; Found: 490.2; LCMS-ESI⁻ (*m/z*): [M-H]⁻ calcd for C₂₈H₂₇ClN₃O₃: 488.2; Found: 488.0.

Example 34: (S)-2-*tert*-Butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(2-morpholinoethylamino)quinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**34**).

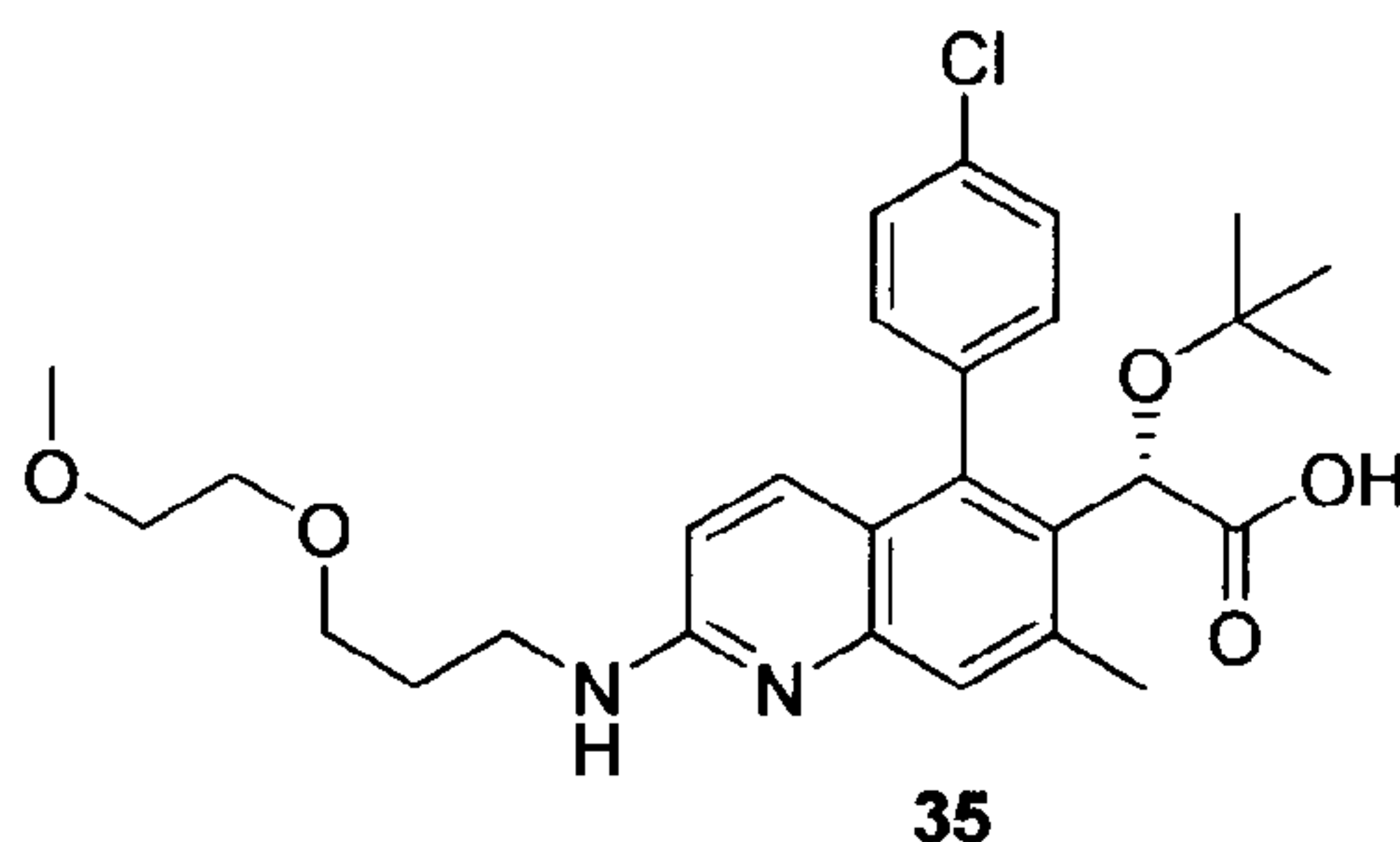


(S)-2-*tert*-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(2-morpholinoethylamino)quinolin-6-yl)acetic acid

(S)-2-*tert*-Butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(2-morpholinoethylamino)quinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**34**) was prepared in a similar manner as compound (S)-2-*tert*-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-morpholinoquinolin-

6-yl)acetic acid of Example 29 except using 2-morpholinoethanamine instead of morpholine. $^1\text{H-NMR}$ 400 MHz, (CD_3OD) δ 7.73-7.55 (m, 5 H), 7.29 (d, $J = 8$ Hz, 1 H), 6.90 (m, 1 H), 5.12 (s, 1 H), 4.05-3.81 (m, 6 H), 3.45-3.35 (m, 6 H), 2.65 (s, 3 H), 0.97 (s, 9 H); LCMS-ESI $^+$ (m/z): $[\text{M}+\text{H}]^+$ calcd for $\text{C}_{28}\text{H}_{35}\text{ClN}_3\text{O}_4$: 512.2; Found: 512.2; LCMS-ESI $^-$ (m/z): $[\text{M}-\text{H}]^-$ calcd for $\text{C}_{28}\text{H}_{33}\text{ClN}_3\text{O}_4$: 510.2; Found: 510.1.

Example 35: (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-(2-methoxyethoxy)propylamino)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**35**).



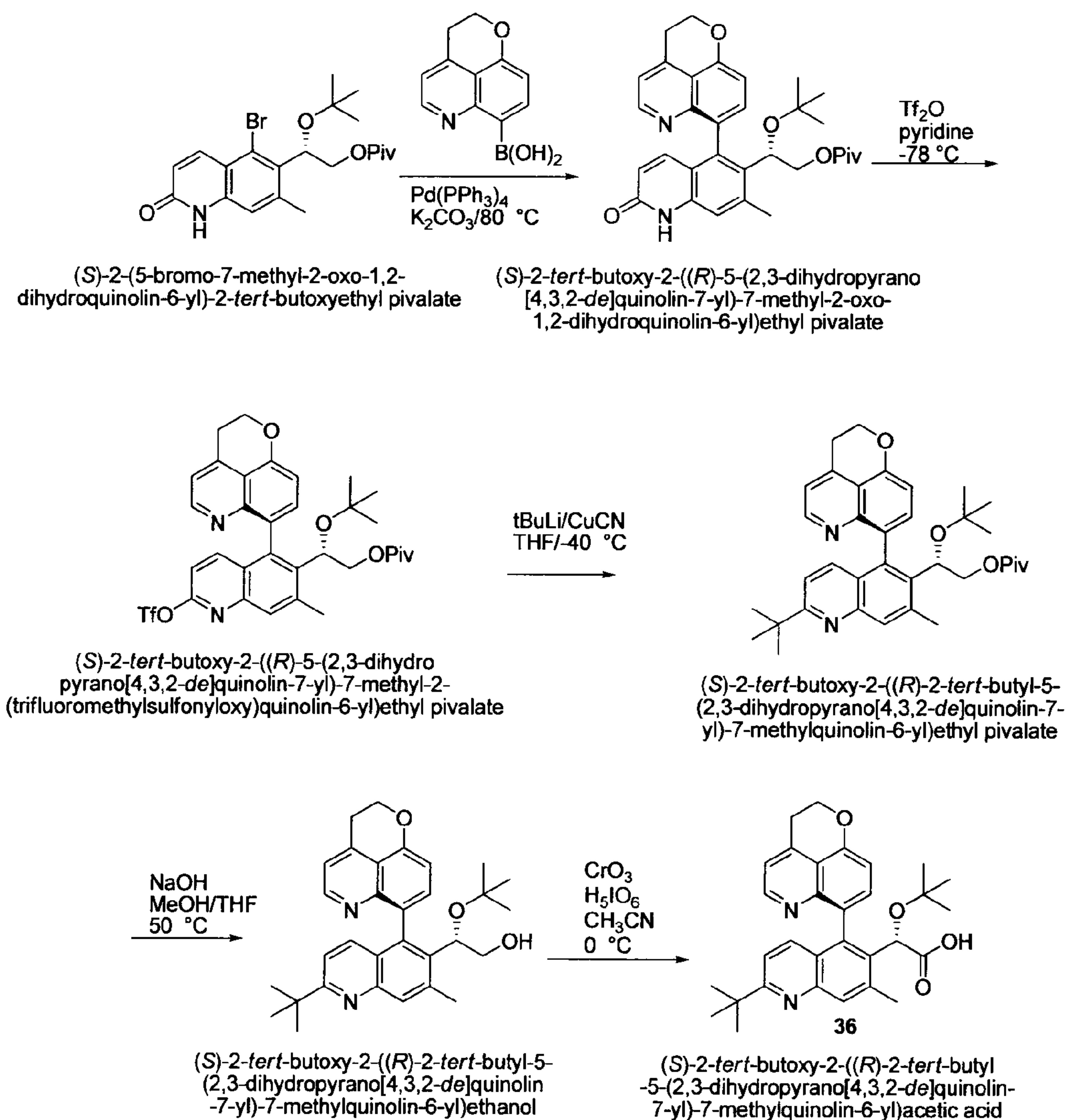
(S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-(2-methoxyethoxy)propylamino)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid

10

((S)-2-tert-Butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-(2-methoxyethoxy)propylamino)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**35**) was prepared in a similar manner as compound (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-morpholinoquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid of Example 29 except using 3-(2-methoxyethoxy)propan-1-amine instead of morpholine. $^1\text{H-NMR}$ 400 MHz, (CD_3OD) δ 7.7-7.55 (m, 5 H), 7.30 (d, $J = 8$ Hz, 1 H), 6.85 (m, 1 H), 5.11 (s, 1 H), 3.7-3.5 (m, 8 H), 3.35 (s, 3 H), 2.65 (s, 3 H), 2.05 (m, 2 H), 0.97 (s, 9 H); LCMS-ESI $^+$ (m/z): $[\text{M}+\text{H}]^+$ calcd for $\text{C}_{28}\text{H}_{36}\text{ClN}_2\text{O}_5$: 515.2; Found: 515.3; LCMS-ESI $^-$ (m/z): $[\text{M}-\text{H}]^-$ calcd for $\text{C}_{28}\text{H}_{34}\text{ClN}_2\text{O}_5$: 513.2; Found: 513.0.

20

Example 36: (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-((R)-2-tert-butyl-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**36**).



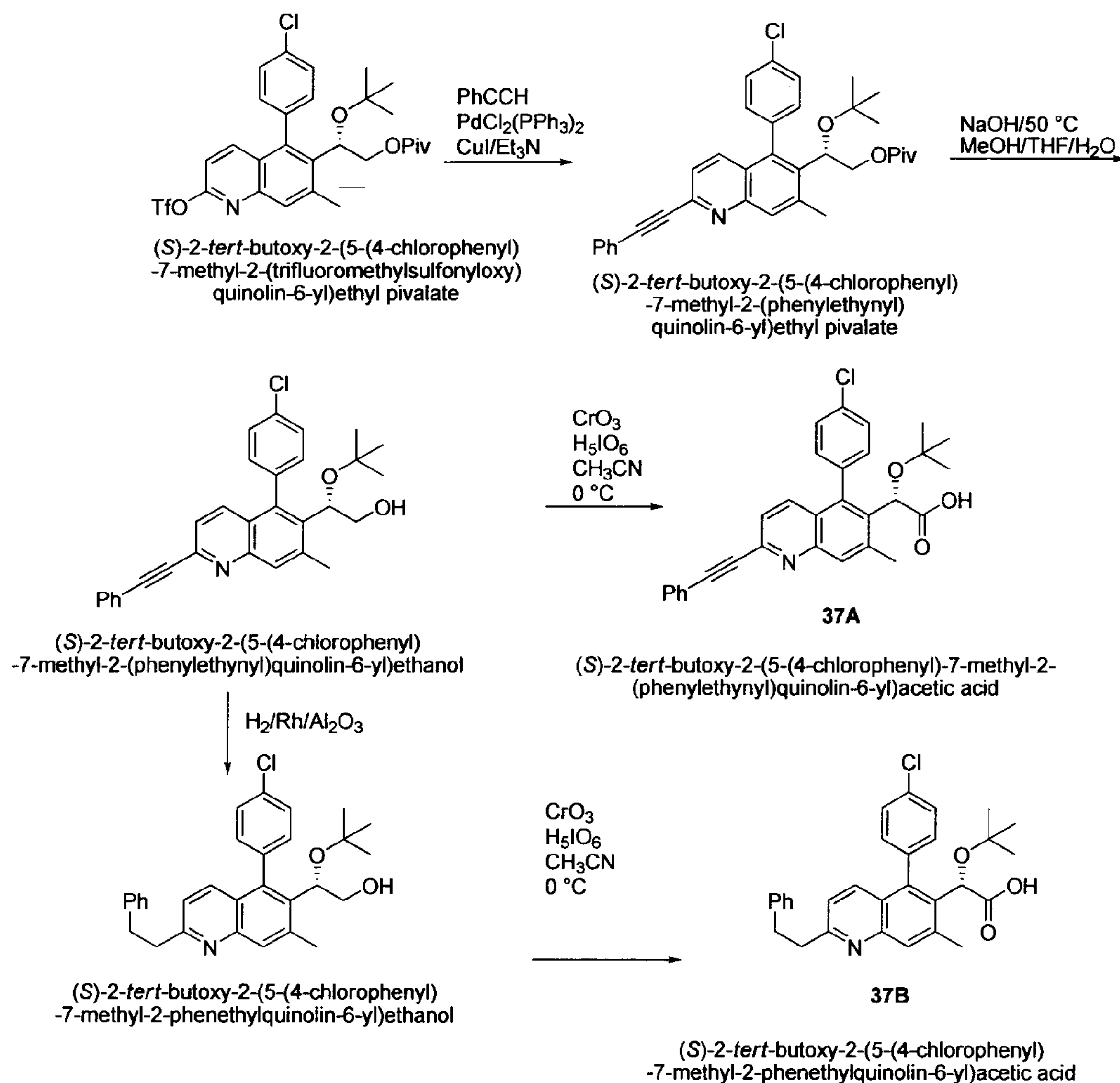
Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydroquinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate: (S)-2-tert-Butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydroquinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate (800 mg) was prepared in a similar manner as compound (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydroquinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate of Example 29 except using 2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-ylboronic acid hydrochloride instead of 4-chlorophenylboronic acid. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₃₂H₃₇N₂O₅: 529.3; Found: 529.0.

Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methyl-2-(trifluoromethylsulfonyloxy)quinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate: (S)-2-tert-Butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methyl-2-(trifluoromethylsulfonyloxy)quinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate was prepared in a similar
 5 manner as compound (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(trifluoromethylsulfonyloxy)quinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate of Example 29 except using (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydroquinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate instead of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydroquinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate LCMS-ESI⁺
 10 (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₃₃H₃₆F₃N₂O₇S: 661.2; Found: 661.0.

Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-((R)-2-tert-butyl-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate: To a suspension of copper(I) cyanide (40 mg, 0.44 mmol) in THF (1 mL) at -40 °C was added tert-butyllithium (0.48 mL, 1.7 N, 0.82 mmol) slowly. The mixture was stirred for 5 minutes, and a solution
 15 of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methyl-2-(trifluoromethylsulfonyloxy)quinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate (40 mg, 0.06 mmol) in THF (0.5 mL) was added dropwise. The reaction mixture was kept at -45 to -35 °C for 4 hours, and warmed to 25 °C slowly and stirred for 12 hours. The reaction was quenched with water, and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed
 20 with brine, and dried with sodium sulfate. Concentration and purification by flash column chromatography (hexanes/EtOAc) gave (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-((R)-2-tert-butyl-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate (14 mg). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₃₆H₄₅N₂O₄: 569.3; Found: 569.4.

Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-((R)-2-tert-butyl-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethanol: (S)-2-tert-Butoxy-2-((R)-2-tert-butyl-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethanol (13 mg)
 25 was prepared in a similar manner as compound ((S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-morpholinoquinolin-6-yl)ethanol of Example 29, except using (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-((R)-2-tert-butyl-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate instead of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-morpholinoquinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₃₁H₃₇N₂O₃: 485.2; Found: 485.1.
 30

- Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-((R)-2-tert-butyl-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**36**): (S)-2-tert-Butoxy-2-((R)-2-tert-butyl-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (11.6 mg) was prepared in a similar manner as compound ((S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-morpholinoquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid of Example 29, except using (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-((R)-2-tert-butyl-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethanol instead of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-morpholinoquinolin-6-yl)ethanol. ¹H-NMR 400 MHz (CD₃OD) δ 8.62 (d, J = 4.8 Hz, 1 H), 8.27 (s, 1 H), 7.81 (d, J = 8.4 Hz, 1 H), 7.71 (d, J = 8 Hz, 1 H), 7.66 (d, J = 8.8 Hz, 1 H), 7.59 (d, J = 5.2 Hz, 1 H), 7.33 (d, J = 7.6 Hz, 1 H), 5.26 (s, 1 H), 4.66 (m, 2 H), 3.55 (m, 2 H), 2.89 (s, 3 H), 1.54 (s, 9 H), 0.92 (s, 9 H); LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₃₁H₃₅N₂O₄: 499.2; Found: 499.2; LCMS-ESI⁻ (*m/z*): [M-H]⁻ calcd for C₃₁H₃₃N₂O₄: 497.2; Found: 497.2.
- 15 Example 37: (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(phenylethynyl)quinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**37A**) and (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(phenylethynyl)quinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**37B**).



- Preparation of (S)-2-*tert*-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl))-7-methyl-2-(phenylethynyl)quinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate: The solution of (S)-2-*tert*-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl))-7-methyl-2-(trifluoromethylsulfonyloxy)quinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate (compound of Example 26) (35 mg, 0.06 mmol), ethynylbenzene (8 μ L, 0.08 mmol), and triethylamine (1 mL) in ethyl acetate (0.5 mL) was degassed with nitrogen. Copper(I) iodide (1 mg) and bis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (II) dichloride (7 mg) were added, and the mixture was stirred for 12 hours. The mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate, washed with water and brine, and dried with sodium sulfate.
- Concentration and purification by flash column chromatography (silica gel, ethyl acetate/hexanes) gave (S)-2-*tert*-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl))-7-methyl-2-(phenylethynyl)quinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₃₅H₃₇ClINO₃: 554.2; Found: 554.3.

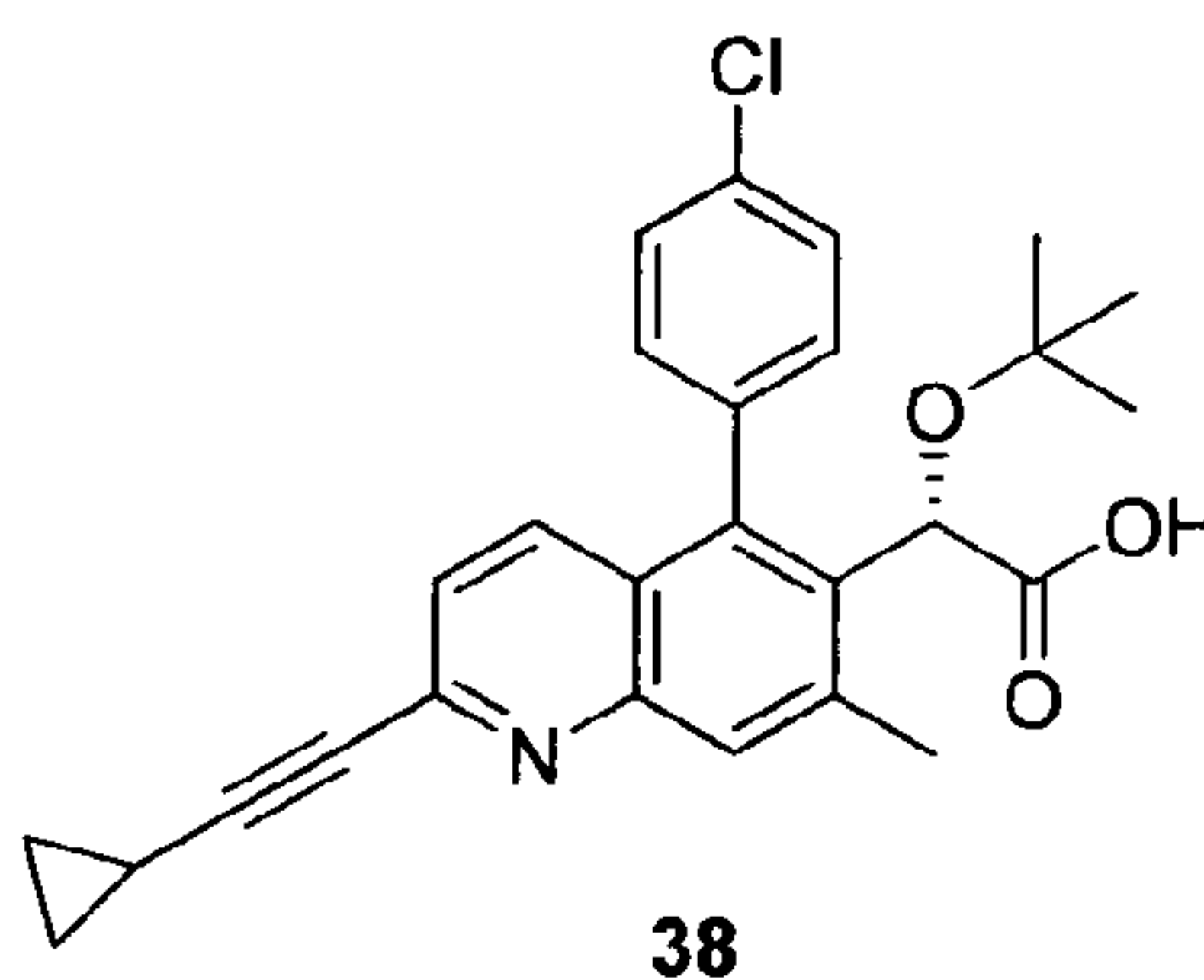
Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(phenylethynyl)quinolin-6-yl)ethanol: (S)-2-tert-Butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(phenylethynyl)quinolin-6-yl)ethanol (12 mg) was prepared in a similar manner as compound (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-morpholinoquinolin-6-yl)ethanol of Example 29 except using (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(phenylethynyl)quinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate instead of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-morpholinoquinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₃₀H₂₉ClNO₂: 470.2; Found: 470.2.

Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(phenylethynyl)quinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (37A): (S)-2-tert-Butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(phenylethynyl)quinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (4.9 mg) was prepared in a similar manner as compound (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-morpholinoquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid of Example 29 except using (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(phenylethynyl)quinolin-6-yl)ethanol instead of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-morpholinoquinolin-6-yl)ethanol. ¹H-NMR 400 MHz (CD₃OD) δ 7.95 (m, 1 H), 7.90 (s, 1 H), 7.7-7.6 (m, 6 H), 7.50 (m, 3 H), 7.37 (d, J = 8.8 Hz, 1 H), 5.23 (s, 1 H), 2.72 (s, 3 H), 0.99 (s, 9 H); LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₃₀H₂₇ClNO₃: 484.2; Found: 484.2. Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-phenethylquinolin-6-yl)ethanol: The mixture of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(phenylethynyl)quinolin-6-yl)ethanol (6 mg) and rhodium on alumina (2 mg) in ethanol (1.5 mL) was stirred under 1 atm of hydrogen for 3 hours. Celite was added, and the mixture was filtered and washed with ethyl acetate. Concentration of the mother liquor under reduced pressure gave (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-phenethylquinolin-6-yl)ethanol (6.5 mg). LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₃₀H₃₃ClNO₂: 474.2; Found: 474.3.

Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-phenethylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (37B): (S)-2-tert-Butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-phenethylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (4.8 mg) was prepared in a similar manner as compound (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-morpholinoquinolin-

6-yl)acetic acid of Example 29 except using (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-phenethylquinolin-6-yl)ethanol instead of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-morpholinoquinolin-6-yl)ethanol. ¹H-NMR 400 MHz (CD₃OD) δ 8.21 (d, J = 8 Hz, 1 H), 7.93 (s, 1 H), 7.7-7.6 (m, 4 H), 7.37 (d, J = 8 Hz, 1 H), 7.3-7.15 (m, 5 H), 5.24 (s, 1 H), 3.46 (d, J = 7.6 Hz, 2 H), 3.18 (d, J = 7.6 Hz, 2 H), 2.76 (s, 3 H), 0.96 (s, 9 H); LCMS-ESI⁺ (m/z): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₃₀H₃₁ClNO₃: 488.2; Found: 488.2.

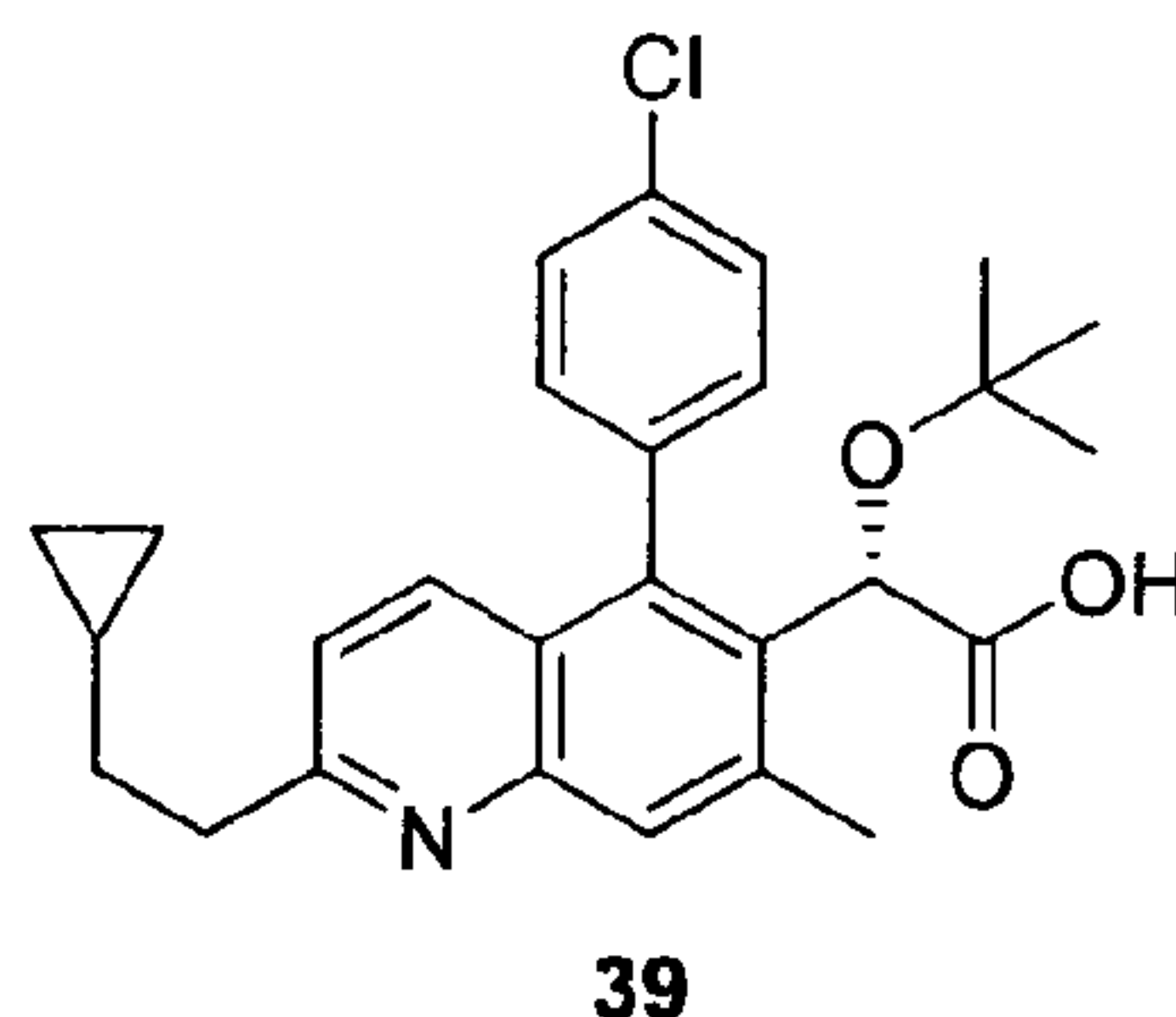
Example 38: (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-(cyclopropylethynyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**38**).



(S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-(cyclopropylethynyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid

(S)-2-tert-Butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-(cyclopropylethynyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**38**) (5.5 mg) was prepared in a similar manner as compound (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(phenylethynyl)quinolin-6-yl)acetic acid of Example 37 except using ethynylcyclopropane instead of ethynylbenzene. ¹H-NMR 400 MHz (CD₃OD) δ 8.0 (m, 1 H), 7.84 (s, 1 H), 7.64-7.55 (4 H, m), 7.35 (d, J = 7.6 Hz, 1 H), 5.21 (s, 1 H), 2.72 (s, 3 H), 1.65 (m, 1 H), 1.13-1.02 (m, 4 H), 0.98 (s, 9 H); LCMS-ESI⁺ (m/z): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₂₇H₂₇ClNO₃: 448.2; Found: 448.2.

Example 39: (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-(2-cyclopropylethyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**39**).

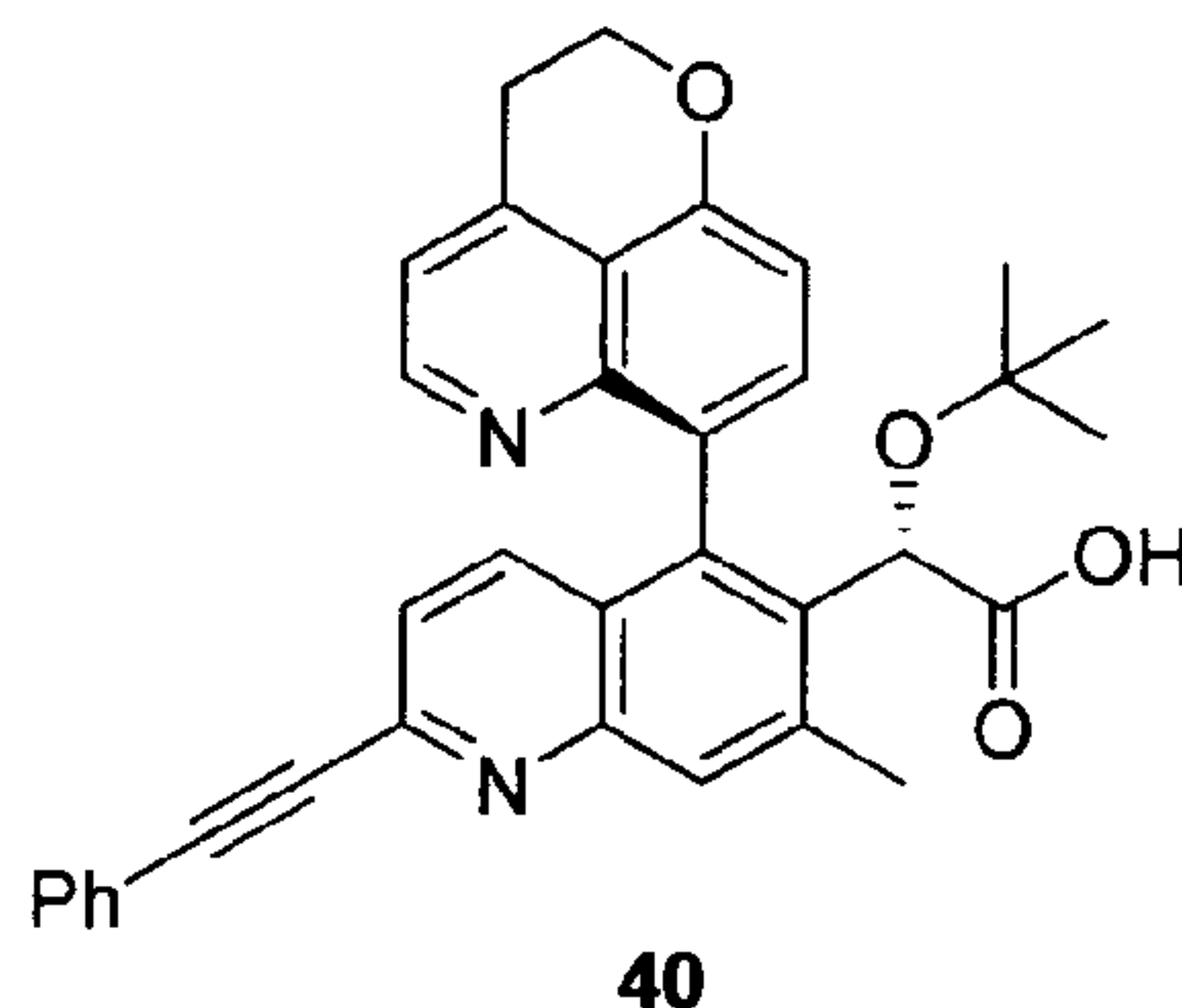


(S)-2-(*tert*-butoxy)-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-(2-cyclopropylethyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid

(S)-2-*tert*-Butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-(2-cyclopropylethyl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**39**) (5.7 mg) was prepared in a similar manner as compound (S)-2-*tert*-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-phenethylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid of Example 37 except using ethynylcyclopropane instead of ethynylbenzene. ¹H-NMR 400 MHz (CD₃OD) δ 8.17 (d, J = 8.4 Hz, 1 H), 7.91 (s, 1 H), 7.66 (d, J = 8.8 Hz, 1 H), 7.6-7.5 (m, 3 H), 7.31 (m, 1 H), 5.18 (s, 1 H), 3.21 (m, 2 H), 2.71 (s, 3 H), 1.72 (m, 2 H), 0.92 (s, 9 H), 0.75 (m, 1 H), 0.41 (m, 2 H), 0.02 (m, 2 H); LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₂₇H₃₁ClNO₃: 452.2; Found: 452.2.

10

Example 40: (S)-2-*tert*-butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-*de*]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methyl-2-(phenylethynyl)quinolin-6-yl)acetic acid: (**40**).

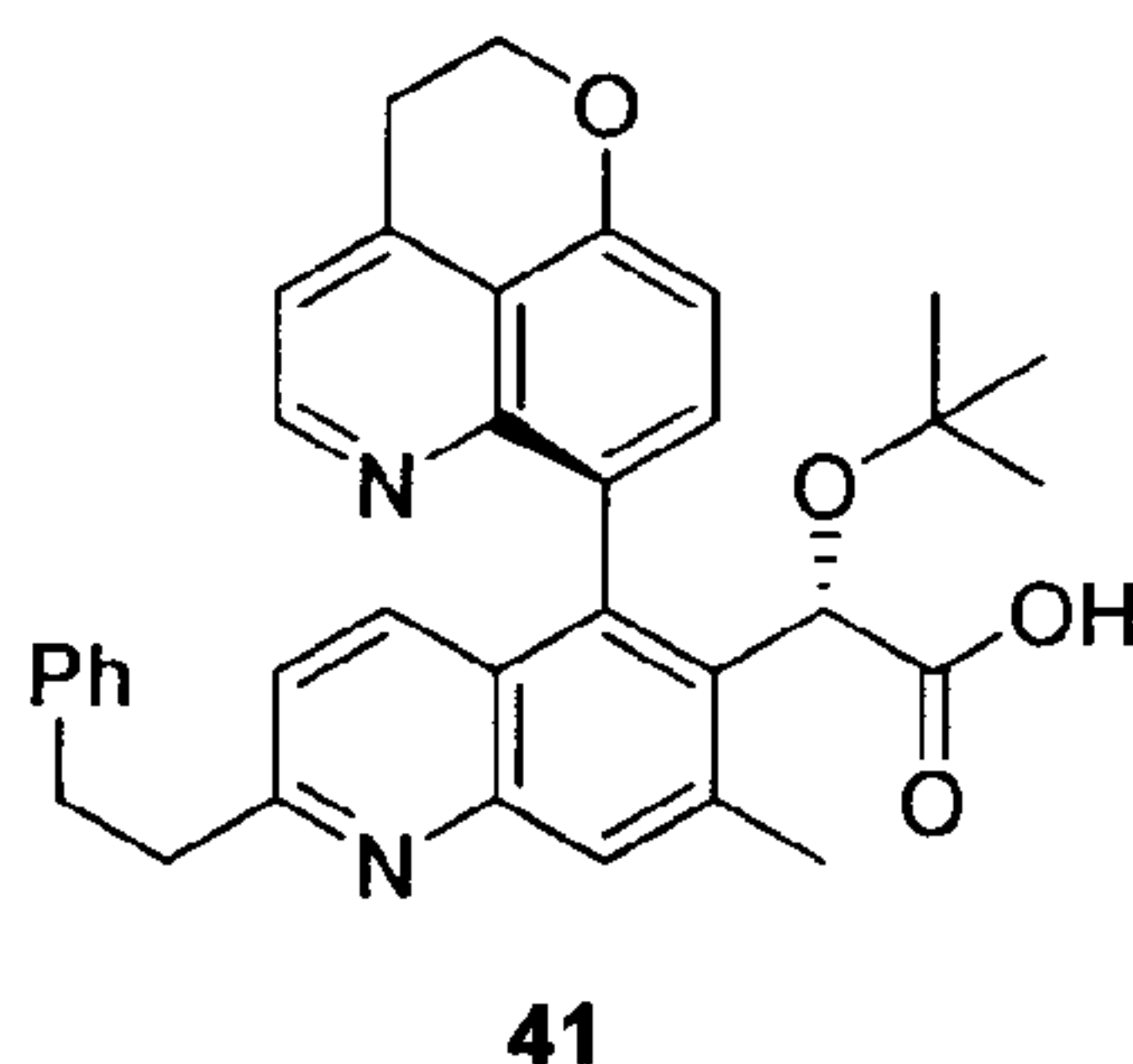


(S)-2-*tert*-butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-*de*]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methyl-2-(phenylethynyl)quinolin-6-yl)acetic acid

(S)-2-*tert*-Butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-*de*]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methyl-2-(phenylethynyl)quinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**40**) (4.9 mg) was prepared in a similar manner as compound (S)-2-*tert*-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(phenylethynyl)quinolin-6-yl)acetic acid of Example 37 except using (S)-2-*tert*-butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-*de*]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methyl-2-

(trifluoromethylsulfonyloxy)quinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate instead of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(trifluoromethylsulfonyloxy)quinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate. ¹H-NMR 400 MHz (CD₃OD) δ 8.71 (d, J = 5.2 Hz, 1 H), 8.10 (s, 1 H), 7.9-7.8 (m, 2 H), 7.65 (m, 2 H), 7.58 (m, 2 H), 7.45 (m, 4 H), 5.26 (s, 1 H), 4.75 (m, 2 H), 3.64 (m, 2 H), 2.85 (s, 3 H), 0.94 (s, 9 H); LCMS-ESI⁺ (m/z): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₃₅H₃₁N₂O₄: 543.2; Found: 543.1; LCMS-ESI⁻ (m/z): [M-H]⁻ calcd for C₃₅H₂₉N₂O₄: 541.2; Found: 541.0.

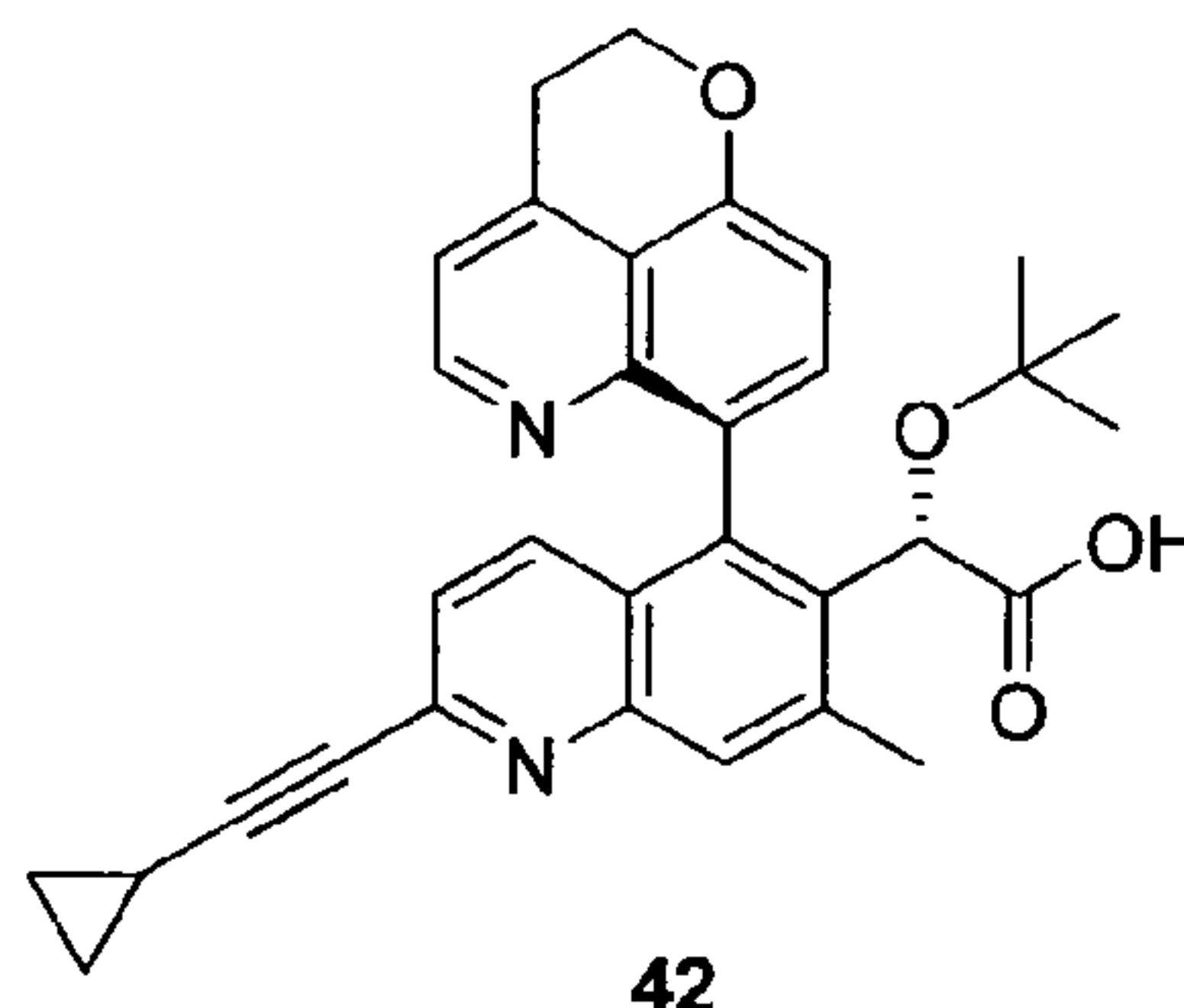
Example 41: (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methyl-2-phenethylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid: (**41**).



(S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methyl-2-phenethylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid

(S)-2-tert-Butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methyl-2-phenethylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**41**) (5.2 mg) was prepared in a similar manner as compound (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-phenethylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid of Example 37 except using (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methyl-2-(trifluoromethylsulfonyloxy)quinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate instead of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(trifluoromethylsulfonyloxy)quinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate. ¹H-NMR 400 MHz (CD₃OD) δ 8.51 (d, J = 5.7 Hz, 1 H), 7.96 (s, 1 H), 7.80 (d, J = 8.8 Hz, 1 H), 7.59 (d, J = 7.6 Hz, 1 H), 7.45 (m, 2 H), 7.2-7.05 (m, 6 H), 5.15 (s, 1 H), 4.56 (m, 2 H), 3.35 (d, J = 6.8 Hz, 2 H), 3.22 (m, 2 H), 3.07 (t, J = 7.2 Hz, 2 H), 2.80 (s, 3 H), 0.82 (s, 9 H); LCMS-ESI⁺ (m/z): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₃₅H₃₅N₂O₄: 547.2; Found: 547.2; LCMS-ESI⁻ (m/z): [M-H]⁻ calcd for C₃₅H₃₃N₂O₄: 545.2; Found: 545.1.

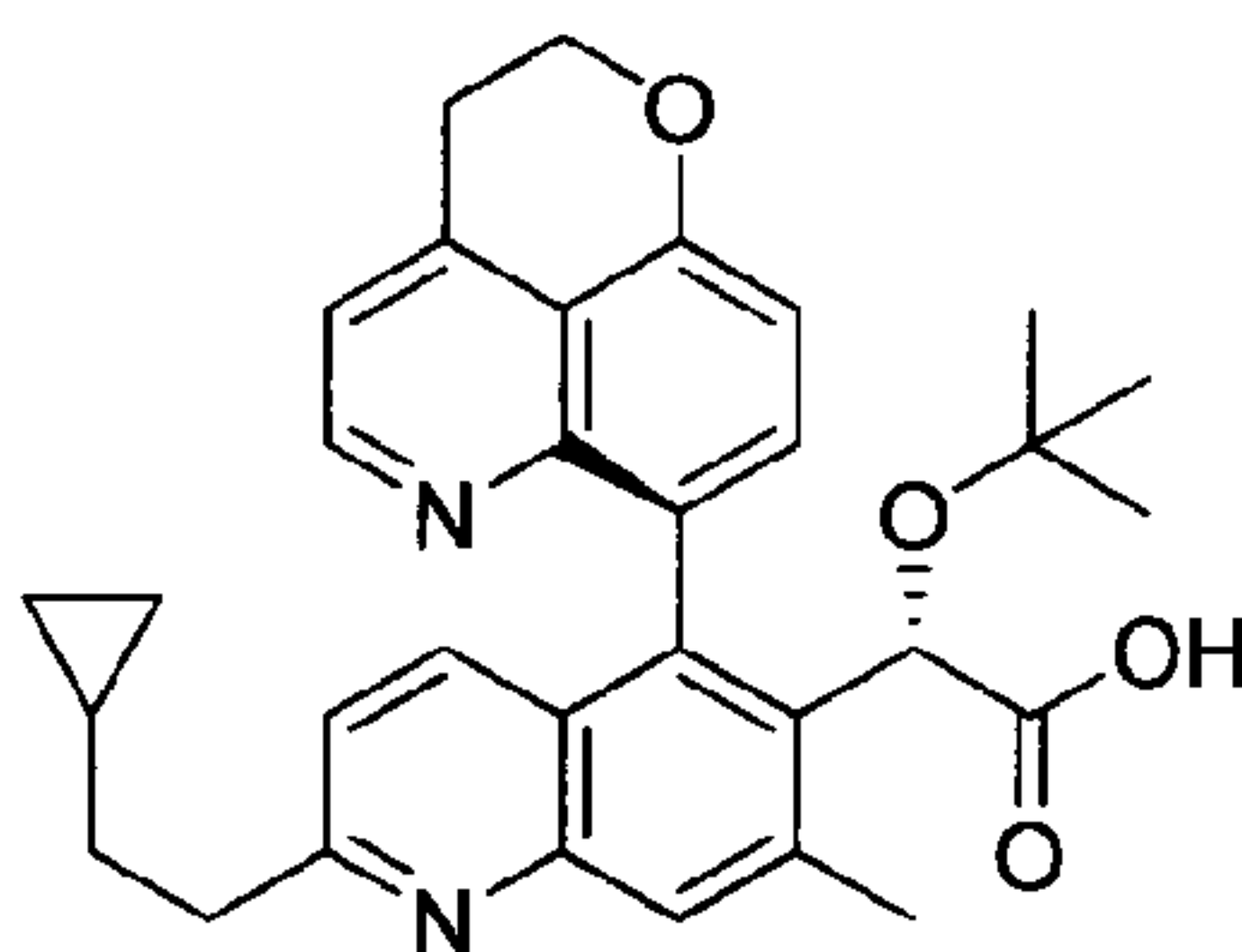
Example 42: (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-((R)-2-(cyclopropylethynyl)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**42**).



(S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-((R)-2-(cyclopropylethynyl)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid

(S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-((R)-2-(cyclopropylethynyl)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**42**) (5.2 mg) was prepared in a similar manner as compound (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(phenylethynyl)quinolin-6-yl)acetic acid of Example 37 except using (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methyl-2-(trifluoromethylsulfonyloxy)quinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate and ethynylcyclopropane instead of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(trifluoromethylsulfonyloxy)quinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate and ethynylbenzene. ¹H-NMR 400 MHz (CD₃OD) δ 8.68 (d, J = 5.6 Hz, 1 H), 8.0 (s, 1 H), 7.80 (d, J = 7.6 Hz, 1 H), 7.74 (d, J = 5.6 Hz, 1 H), 7.5 (d, J = 8.4 Hz, 1 H), 7.41 (d, J = 7.6 Hz, 1H), 7.35 (d, J = 8.8 Hz, 1 H), 5.23 (s, 1 H), 4.70 (m, 2 H), 3.62 (m, 2 H), 2.83 (s, 3 H), 1.60 (m, 1 H), 1.05-0.88 (m, 4 H), 0.93 (s, 9 H); LCMS-ESI⁺ (m/z): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₃₂H₃₁N₂O₄: 507.2; Found: 507.1; LCMS-ESI⁺ (m/z): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₃₂H₂₉N₂O₄: 505.2; Found: 505.1.

Example 43: (S)-2-tert-Butoxy-2-((R)-2-(2-cyclopropylethyl)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**43**).

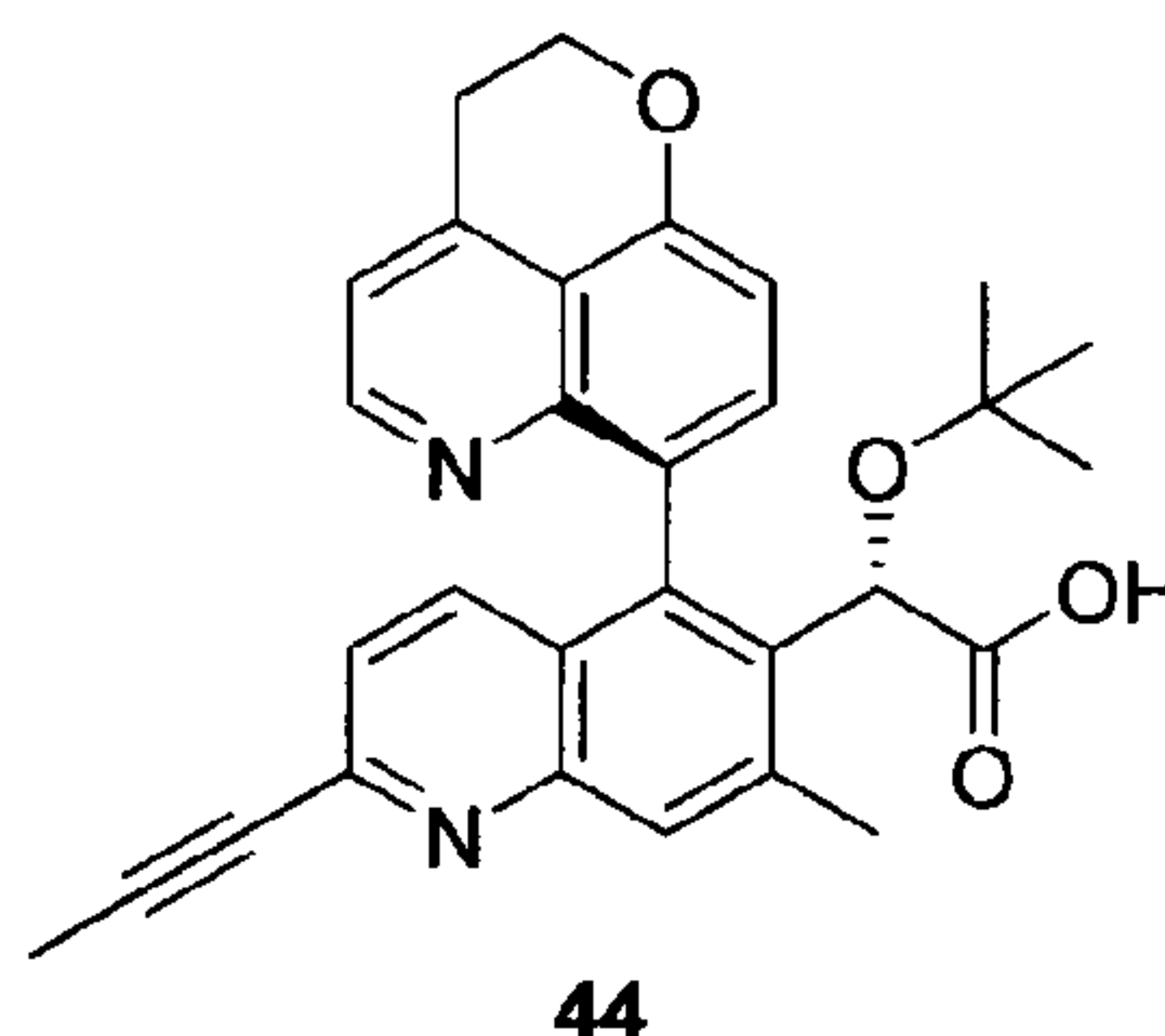
**43**

(S)-2-*tert*-butoxy-2-((R)-2-(2-cyclopropylethyl)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-*de*]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid

(S)-2-*tert*-butoxy-2-((R)-2-(2-cyclopropylethyl)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-*de*]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**43**) (5.9 mg) was prepared in a similar manner as compound (S)-2-*tert*-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-phenethylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid of Example 37 except using (S)-2-*tert*-butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-*de*]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methyl-2-(trifluoromethylsulfonyloxy)quinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate and ethynylcyclopropane instead of (S)-2-*tert*-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(trifluoromethylsulfonyloxy)quinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate and ethynylbenzene. ¹H-NMR 400 MHz (CD₃OD) δ 8.55 (m, 1 H), 8.03 (s, 1H), 7.92 (d, J = 8.4 Hz, 1 H), 7.62-7.45 (m, 3 H), 7.23 (d, J = 7.6 Hz, 1 H), 5.19 (s, 1 H), 4.78 (m, 2 H), 3.43 (m, 2 H), 3.20 (m, 2 H), 2.84 (s, 3 H), 1.65 (m, 2 H), 0.84 (s, 9 H), 0.7 (m, 1 H), 0.4 (m, 2 H), 0.02 (m, 2 H); LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₃₂H₃₅N₂O₄: 511.2; Found: 511.2; LCMS-ESI⁻ (*m/z*): [M-H]⁻ calcd for C₃₂H₃₃N₂O₄: 509.2; Found: 509.1.

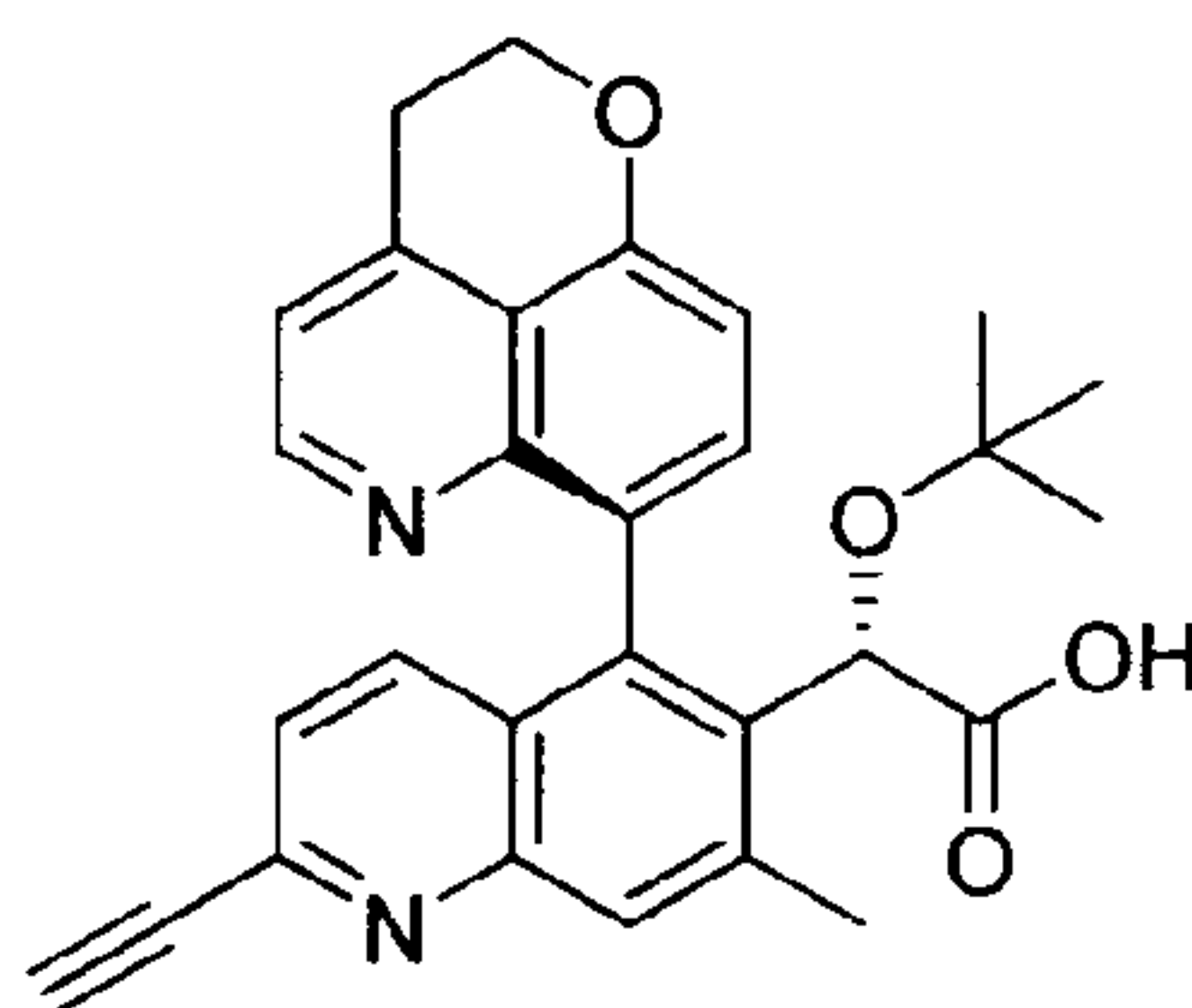
15

Example 44: (S)-2-*tert*-Butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-*de*]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methyl-2-(prop-1-ynyl)quinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**44**).



(S)-2-*tert*-butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-*de*]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methyl-2-(prop-1-ynyl)quinolin-6-yl)acetic acid

- (S)-2-*tert*-butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-*de*]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methyl-2-(prop-1-ynyl)quinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**44**) (4.6 mg) was prepared in a similar manner as compound (S)-2-*tert*-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(phenylethynyl)quinolin-6-yl)acetic acid of Example 37 except using (S)-2-*tert*-butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-*de*]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methyl-2-(trifluoromethylsulfonyloxy)quinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate and prop-1-yne instead of (S)-2-*tert*-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(trifluoromethylsulfonyloxy)quinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate and ethynylbenzene. ¹H-NMR 400 MHz (CD₃OD) δ 8.67 (d, J = 5.6 Hz, 1 H), 8.02 (s, 1 H), 7.85-7.75 (m, 2 H), 7.5-7.4 (m, 1 H), 7.42 (d, J = 8 Hz, 1 H), 7.35 (d, J = 8.8 Hz, 1 H), 5.23 (s, 1 H), 4.70 (m, 2 H), 3.62 (m, 2 H), 2.83 (s, 3 H), 2.15 (s, 3 H), 0.93 (s, 9 H); LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₃₀H₂₉N₂O₄: 481.2; Found: 481.4; LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₃₀H₂₇N₂O₄: 479.2; Found: 479.1.
- Example 45: (S)-2-*tert*-butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-*de*]quinolin-7-yl)-2-ethynyl-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**45**).

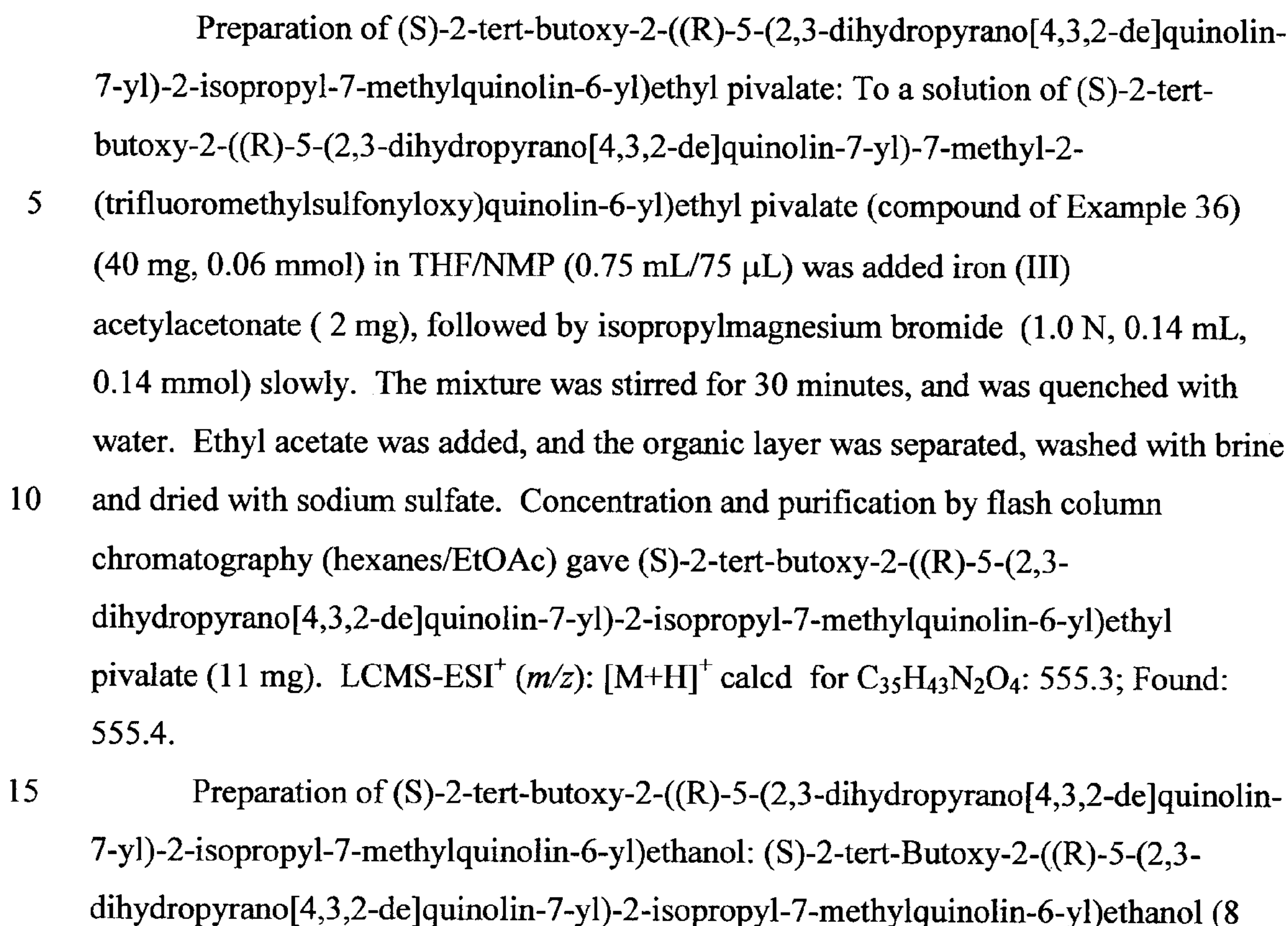
**45**

(S)-2-*tert*-butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-*de*]quinolin-7-yl)-2-ethynyl-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid

(S)-2-*tert*-butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-*de*]quinolin-7-yl)-2-ethynyl-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**45**) (5 mg) was prepared in a similar manner as compound (S)-2-*tert*-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(phenylethynyl)quinolin-6-yl)acetic acid of Example 37 except using (S)-2-*tert*-butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-*de*]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methyl-2-(trifluoromethylsulfonyloxy)quinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate and ethynyltrimethylsilane instead of (S)-2-*tert*-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-(trifluoromethylsulfonyloxy)quinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate and ethynylbenzene. ¹H-NMR 400 MHz (CD₃OD) δ 8.69 (d, J = 5.6 Hz, 1 H), 8.07 (s, 1 H), 7.85-7.75 (m, 2 H), 7.5-7.4 (m, 3 H), 5.24 (s, 1 H), 4.75 (m, 2 H), 3.98 (s, 1 H), 3.65 (m, 2 H), 2.83 (s, 3 H), 0.93 (s, 9 H); LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₂₉H₂₇N₂O₄: 467.2; Found: 467.1; LCMS-ESI⁻ (*m/z*): [M-H]⁻ calcd for C₂₉H₂₅N₂O₄: 465.2; Found: 465.0 .

15

Example 46: (S)-2-*tert*-Butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-*de*]quinolin-7-yl)-2-isopropyl-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**46**).

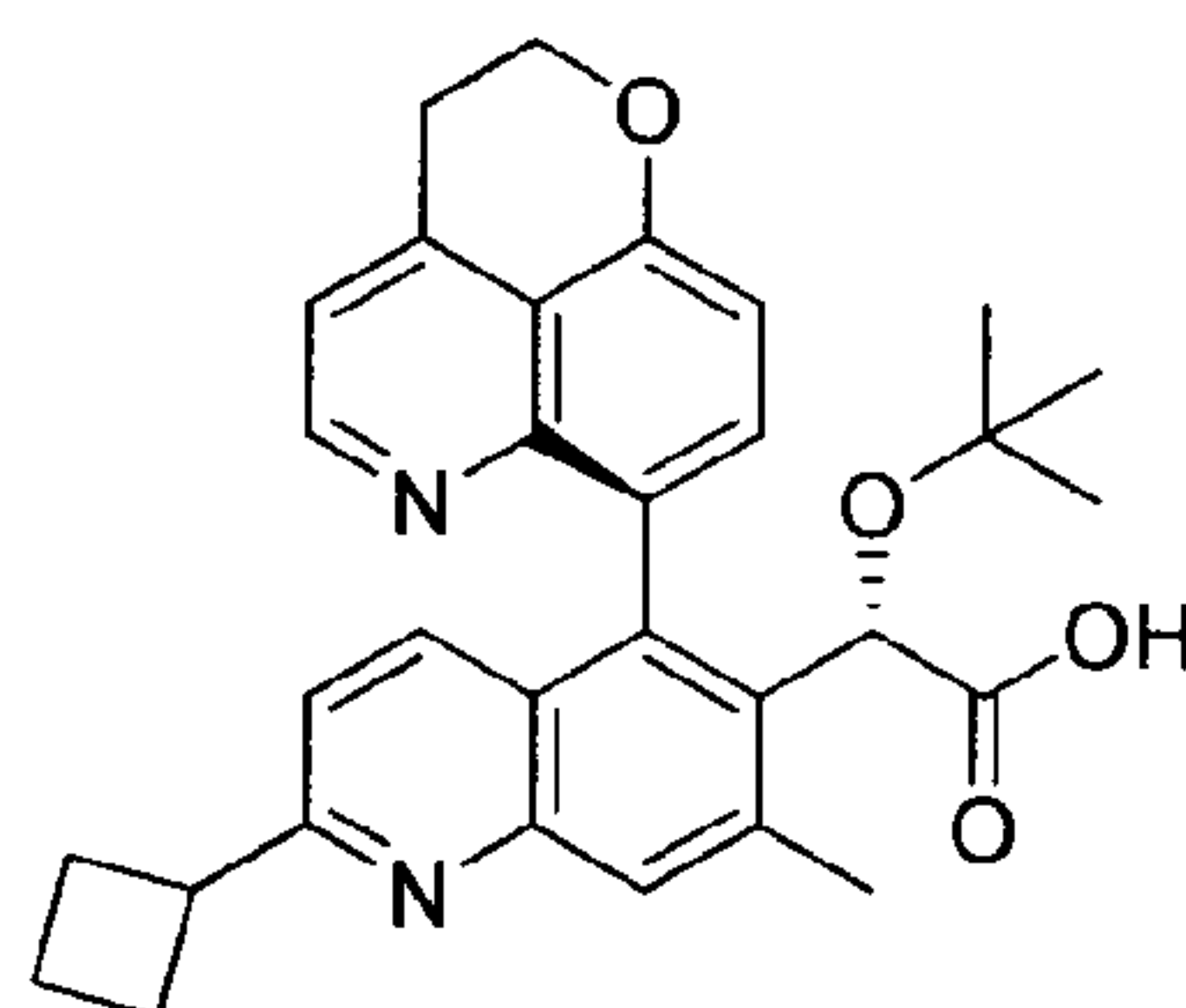


mg) was prepared in a similar manner as compound (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-morpholinoquinolin-6-yl)ethanol of Example 29 except using (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-2-isopropyl-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate instead of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-morpholinoquinolin-6-yl)ethyl pivalate. LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₃₀H₃₅N₂O₃: 471.3; Found: 471.3.

Preparation of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-2-isopropyl-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**46**): (S)-2-tert-Butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-2-isopropyl-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (7 mg) was prepared in a similar manner as compound ((S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-morpholinoquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid of Example 29 except using (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-2-isopropyl-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)ethanol instead of (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-(5-(4-chlorophenyl)-7-methyl-2-morpholinoquinolin-6-yl)ethanol. ¹H-NMR 400 MHz (CD₃OD) δ 8.60 (d, J = 5.2 Hz, 1 H), 8.11 (s, 1 H), 7.98 (d, J = 9.2 Hz, 1 H), 7.7-7.6 (m, 2 H), 7.51 (d, J = 4.8 Hz, 1 H), 7.29 (d, J = 8.4 Hz, 1 H), 5.26 (s, 1 H), 4.64 (m, 2 H), 3.55-3.40 (m, 3 H), 2.90 (s, 3 H), 1.46 (m, 6 H), 0.91 (s, 9 H); LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₃₀H₃₃N₂O₄: 485.2; Found: 485.2; LCMS-ESI⁻ (*m/z*): [M-H]⁻ calcd for C₃₀H₃₁N₂O₄: 483.2; Found: 483.2.

20

Example 47: (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-((R)-2-cyclobutyl-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**47**).

**47**

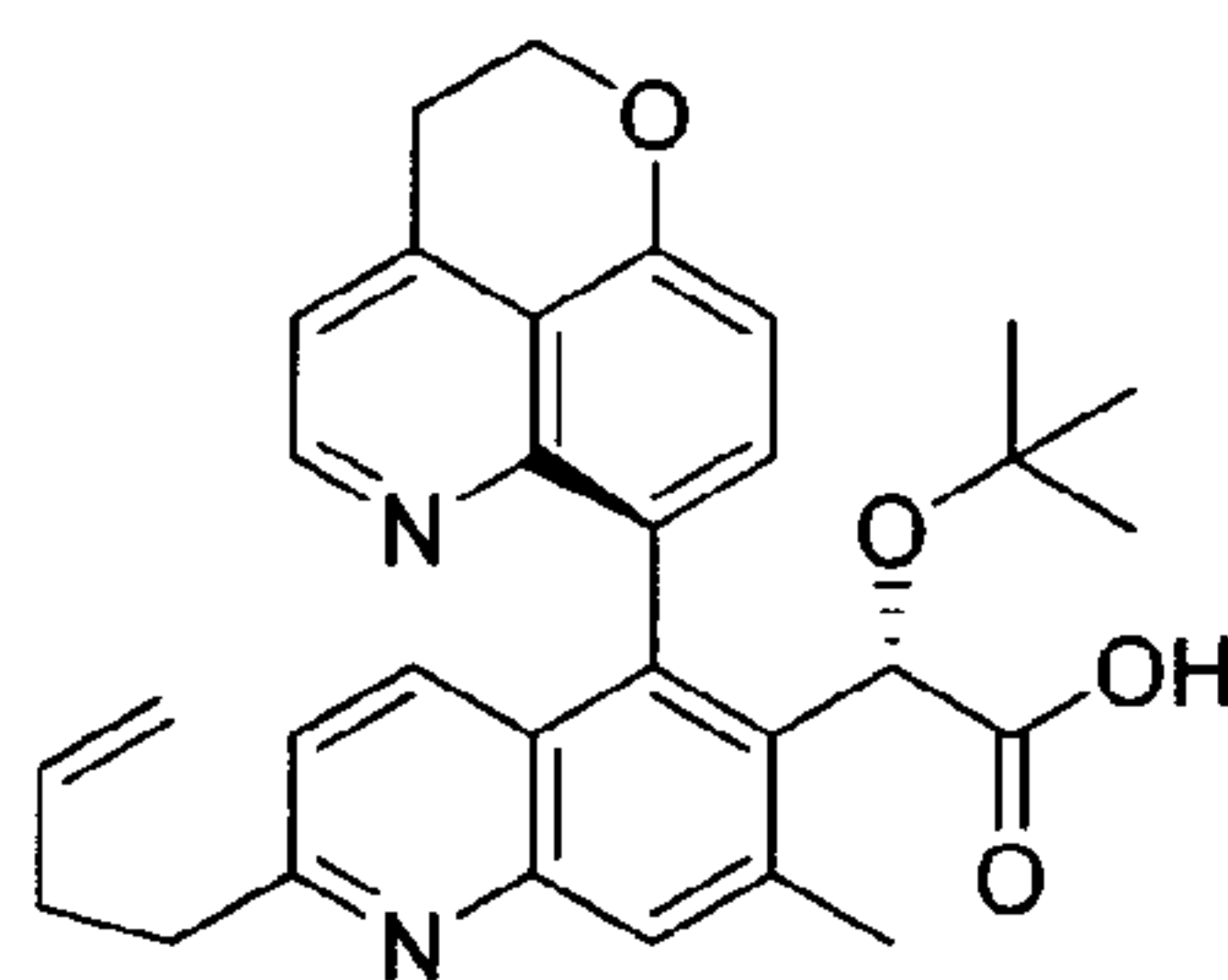
(S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-((R)-2-cyclobutyl-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid

(S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-((R)-2-cyclobutyl-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**47**) (10 mg) was prepared in a similar manner as compound (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-2-isopropyl-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid of Example 46 except using

5 cyclobutylmagnesium bromide instead of isopropylmagnesium bromide. ¹H-NMR 400 MHz (CD₃OD) δ 8.60 (m, 1 H), 8.10 (m, 1 H), 7.95 (m, 1 H), 7.65 (m, 2 H), 7.45 (m, 1 H), 7.24 (m, 1 H), 5.25 (s, 1 H), 4.63 (m, 2 H), 3.5 (m, 2 H), 3.30 (m, 1 H), 2.90 (s, 3 H), 2.6-2.4 (m, 4 H), 2.3 (m, 1 H), 2.0 (m, 1 H), 0.91 (s, 9 H); LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₃₁H₃₃N₂O₄: 497.2; Found: 497.2; LCMS-ESI⁻ (*m/z*): [M-H]⁻ calcd for C₃₁H₃₁N₂O₄: 495.2; Found: 495.2.

10

Example 48: (S)-2-((R)-2-(but-3-enyl)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyacetic acid (**48**).

**48**

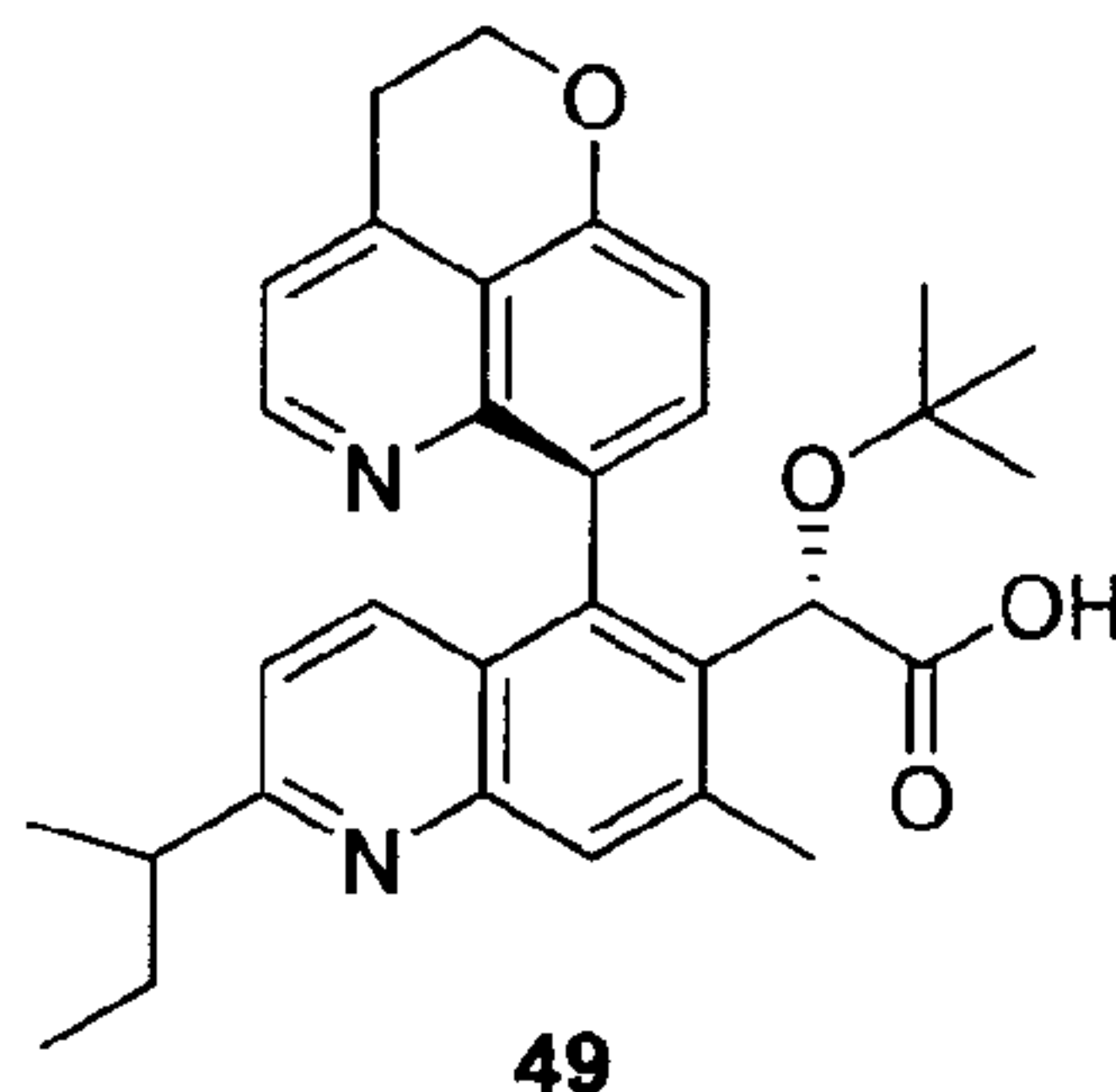
15 (S)-2-((R)-2-(but-3-enyl)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyacetic acid

(S)-2-((R)-2-(but-3-enyl)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)-2-tert-butoxyacetic acid (**48**) (12 mg) was prepared in a similar manner as compound (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-2-isopropyl-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid of Example 46 except using but-3-enylmagnesium bromide instead of isopropylmagnesium bromide. ¹H-NMR 400 MHz (CD₃OD) δ 8.62 (m, 1 H), 8.09 (s, 1 H), 7.94 (m, 1 H), 7.68 (m, 1 H), 7.57 (m, 2 H), 7.32 (m, 1 H), 5.90 (m, 1 H), 5.25 (s, 1 H), 5.08 (m, 2 H), 4.64 (m, 2 H), 3.52 (m, 2 H), 3.25 (m, 2 H), 2.90 (s, 3 H), 2.62 (m, 2 H), 0.91 (s, 9 H); LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₃₁H₃₃N₂O₄: 497.2; Found: 497.2; LCMS-ESI⁻ (*m/z*): [M-H]⁻ calcd for

20

25 C₃₁H₃₁N₂O₄: 495.2; Found: 495.1.

Example 49: (2S)-2-tert-Butoxy-2-((5R)-2-sec-butyl-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**49**).



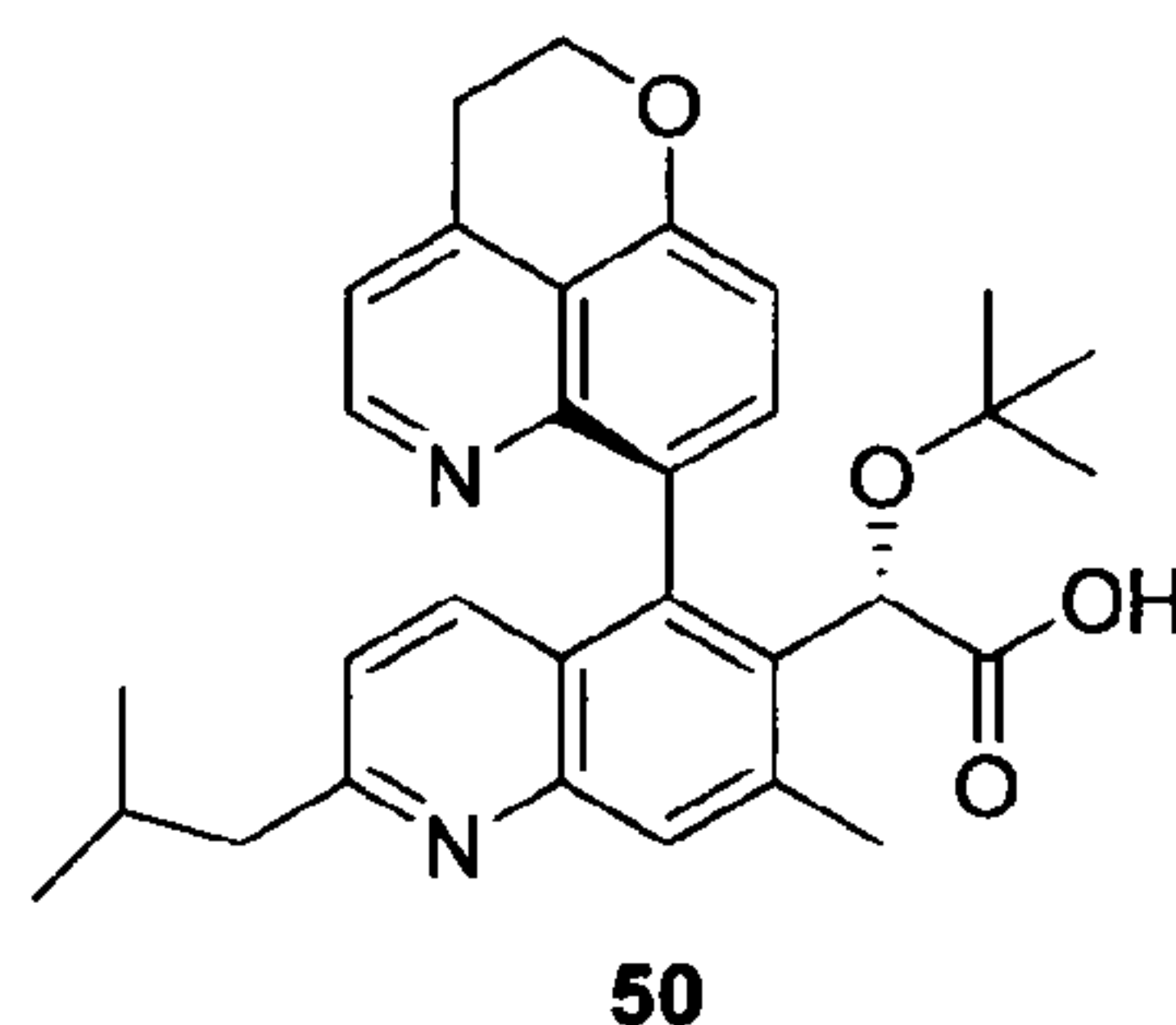
(2S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-((5R)-2-sec-butyl-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano
[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid

5

(2S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-((5R)-2-sec-butyl-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**49**) (9.4 mg) was prepared in a similar manner as compound (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-2-isopropyl-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid of Example 46 except using sec-butylmagnesium bromide instead of isopropylmagnesium bromide. ¹H-NMR 400 MHz (CD₃OD) δ 8.58 (d, J = 4.4 Hz, 1 H), 8.10 (s, 1 H), 7.96 (m, 1 H), 7.67-7.58 (m, 2 H), 7.48 (m, 1 H), 7.26 (d, J = 8 Hz, 1 H), 5.25 (s, 1 H), 4.62 (m, 2 H), 3.48 (m, 2 H), 3.2 (m, 1 H), 2.90 (s, 3 H), 1.85 (m, 2 H), 1.44 (m, 3 H), 0.91 (m, 12 H); LCMS-ESI⁺ (m/z): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₃₁H₃₅N₂O₄: 499.2; Found: 499.2; LCMS-ESI⁻ (m/z): [M-H]⁻ calcd for C₃₁H₃₃N₂O₄: 497.2; Found: 497.2.

15

Example 50: (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-2-isobutyl-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**50**).

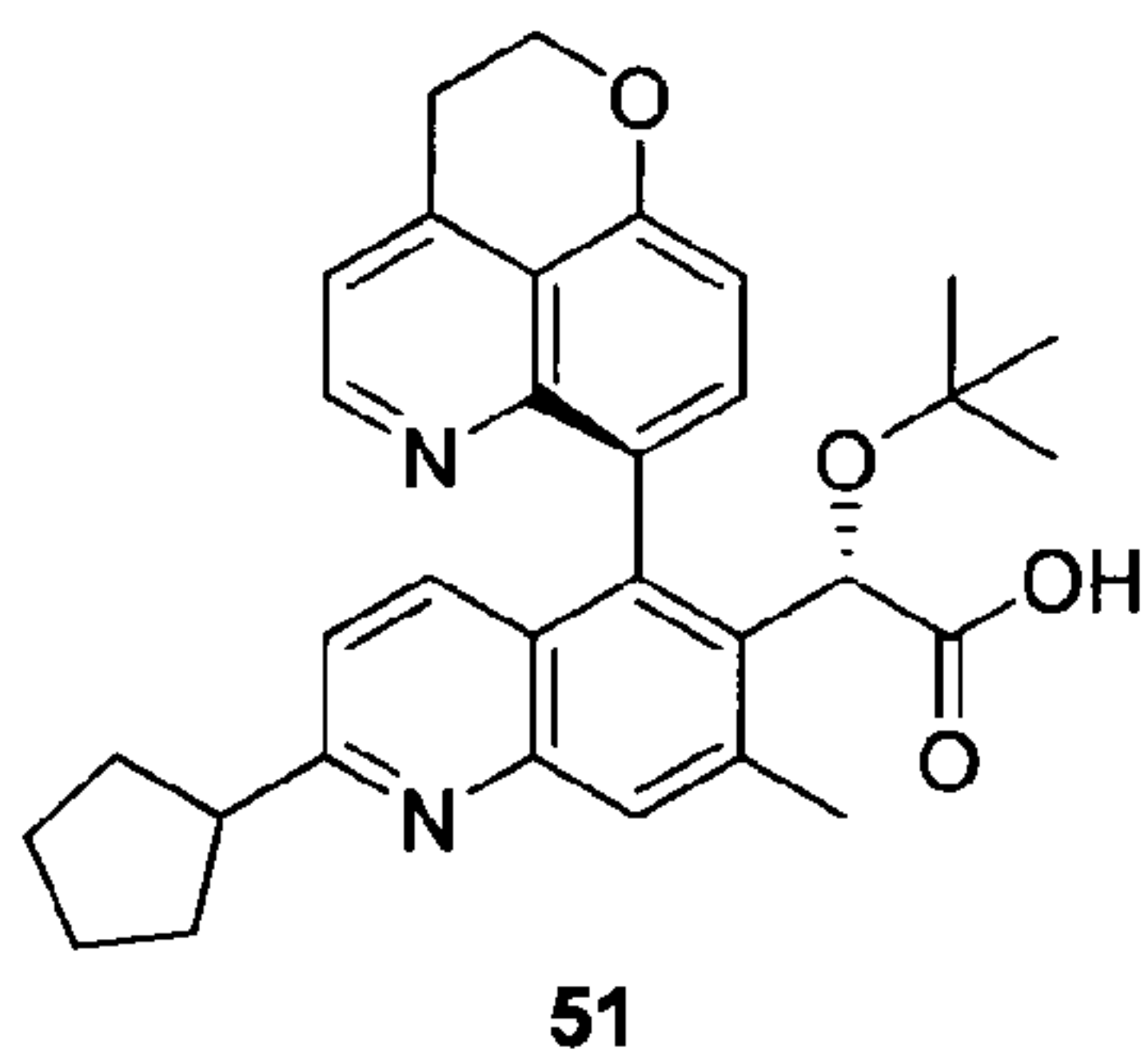


(S)-2-*tert*-butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-*de*]
quinolin-7-yl)-2-isobutyl-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid

(S)-2-*tert*-butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-*de*]quinolin-7-yl)-2-isobutyl-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**50**) (10 mg) was prepared in a similar manner as compound (S)-2-*tert*-butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-*de*]quinolin-7-yl)-2-isopropyl-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid of Example 46 except using isobutylmagnesium bromide instead of isopropylmagnesium bromide. ¹H-NMR 400 MHz (CD₃OD) δ 8.65 (d, J = 5.2 Hz, 1 H), 8.12 (s, 1 H), 8.03 (d, J = 9.2 Hz, 1 H), 7.72 (d, J = 8 Hz, 1 H), 7.63-7.58 (m, 2 H), 7.33 (d, J = 8 Hz, 1 H), 5.26 (s, 1 H), 4.65 (m, 2 H), 3.55 (m, 2 H), 3.05 (d, J = 7.2 Hz, 2 H), 2.92 (s, 3 H), 2.2 (m, 1 H), 1.02 (d, J = 6.8 Hz, 6 H), 0.92 (s, 9 H); LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₃₁H₃₅N₂O₄: 499.2; Found: 499.2; LCMS-ESI⁻ (*m/z*): [M-H]⁻ calcd for C₃₁H₃₃N₂O₄: 497.2; Found: 497.2.

Example 51: (S)-2-*tert*-Butoxy-2-((R)-2-cyclopentyl-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-*de*]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**51**).

15

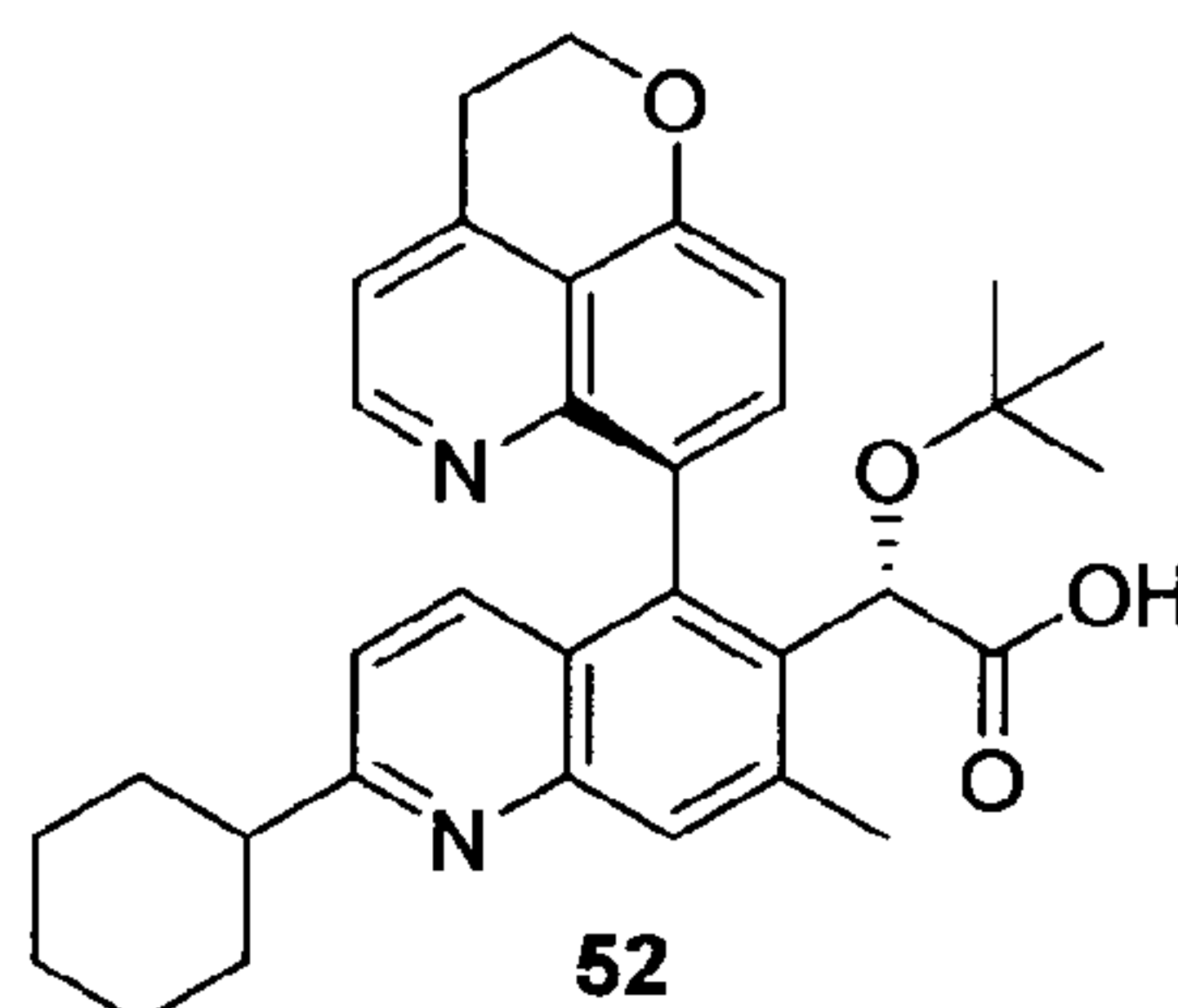


(S)-2-*tert*-butoxy-2-((R)-2-cyclopentyl-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano
[4,3,2-*de*]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid

(S)-2-*tert*-Butoxy-2-((R)-2-cyclopentyl-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-*de*]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**51**) (8 mg) was prepared in a

similar manner as compound (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-2-isopropyl-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid in of Example 46 except using cyclopentylmagnesium bromide instead of isopropylmagnesium bromide. ¹H-NMR 400 MHz (CD₃OD) δ 8.63 (m, 1 H), 8.12 (s, 1 H), 8.01 (d, J = 7.2 Hz, 1 H), 7.65 (m, 2 H), 7.54 (m, 1 H), 7.32 (m, 1 H), 5.26 (s, 1 H), 4.65 (m, 2 H), 3.52 (m, 3 H), 2.91 (s, 3 H), 2.30 (m, 2 H), 2.0-1.8 (m, 6 H), 0.91 (s, 9 H); LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₃₂H₃₅N₂O₄: 511.2; Found: 511.1; LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₃₂H₃₃N₂O₄: 509.2 Found: 509.1.

10 Example 52: (S)-2-tert-Butoxy-2-((R)-2-cyclohexyl-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**52**).



(S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-((R)-2-cyclohexyl-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid

(S)-2-tert-Butoxy-2-((R)-2-cyclohexyl-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid (**52**) (11 mg) was prepared in a similar manner as compound (S)-2-tert-butoxy-2-((R)-5-(2,3-dihydropyrano[4,3,2-de]quinolin-7-yl)-2-isopropyl-7-methylquinolin-6-yl)acetic acid in of Example 46 except using cyclohexylmagnesium bromide instead of isopropylmagnesium bromide. ¹H-NMR 400 MHz (CD₃OD) δ 8.62 (m, 1 H), 8.13 (s, 1 H), 8.02 (d, J = 8.4 Hz, 1 H), 7.65 (m, 2 H), 7.54 (m, 1 H), 7.30 (d, J = 8 Hz, 1 H), 5.26 (s, 1 H), 4.65 (m, 2 H), 3.50 (m, 2 H), 3.15 (m, 1 H), 2.91 (s, 3 H), 2.1-1.35 (m, 10 H), 0.91 (s, 9 H); LCMS-ESI⁺ (*m/z*): [M+H]⁺ calcd for C₃₃H₃₇N₂O₄: 525.3 ; Found: 525.2; LCMS-ESI⁻ (*m/z*): [M-H]⁻ calcd for C₃₃H₃₅N₂O₄: 523.3; Found: 523.2.

DEMANDES OU BREVETS VOLUMINEUX

**LA PRÉSENTE PARTIE DE CETTE DEMANDE OU CE BREVETS
COMPREND PLUS D'UN TOME.**

CECI EST LE TOME __1__ DE __2__

NOTE: Pour les tomes additionels, veuillez contacter le Bureau Canadien des Brevets.

JUMBO APPLICATIONS / PATENTS

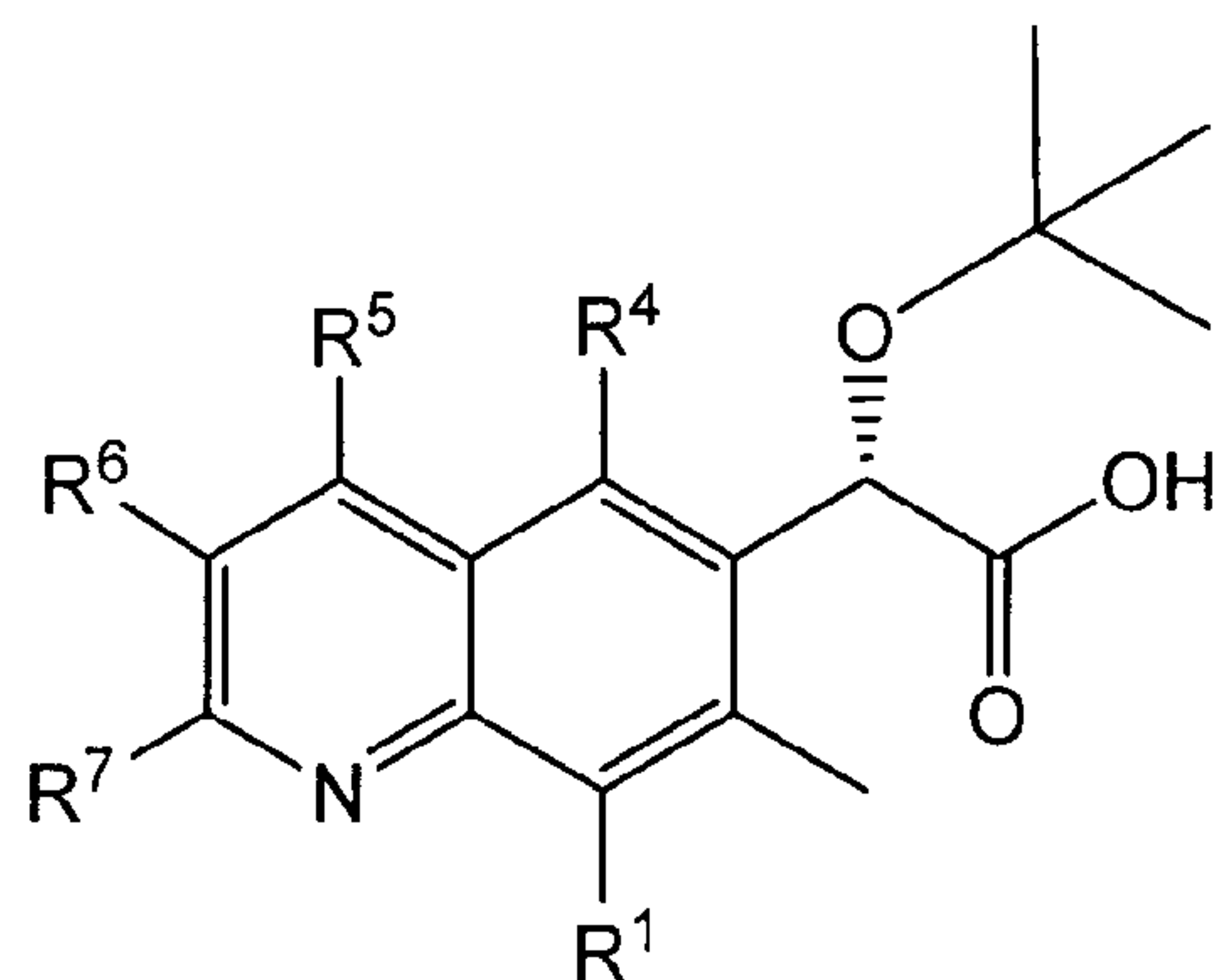
**THIS SECTION OF THE APPLICATION / PATENT CONTAINS MORE
THAN ONE VOLUME.**

THIS IS VOLUME __1__ OF __2__

NOTE: For additional volumes please contact the Canadian Patent Office.

CLAIMS

1. A compound of formula Ih or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof



Ih

wherein:

R^1 is R^{1a} or R^{1b} ;

R^4 is R^{4a} ;

R^5 is R^{5a} or R^{5b} ;

R^6 is R^{6a} or R^{6b} ;

R^7 is R^{7a} or R^{7b} ;

R^{1a} is selected from the group consisting of:

- a) H, halo, (C₁-C₆)alkyl and (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl;
- b) (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, nitro, cyano, (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl;
- c) -C(=O)-R¹¹, -C(=O)-O-R¹¹, -O-R¹¹, -S-R¹¹, -S(O)-R¹¹, -SO₂-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-O-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-S-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-S(O)-R¹¹ and -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-SO₂-R¹¹, wherein each R¹¹ is independently selected from the group consisting of H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl; and

- d) $-\text{N}(\text{R}^9)\text{R}^{10}$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})-\text{N}(\text{R}^9)\text{R}^{10}$, $-\text{O}-\text{C}(=\text{O})-\text{N}(\text{R}^9)\text{R}^{10}$, $-\text{SO}_2-\text{N}(\text{R}^9)\text{R}^{10}$,
 $-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-\text{N}(\text{R}^9)\text{R}^{10}$, $-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-\text{C}(=\text{O})-\text{N}(\text{R}^9)\text{R}^{10}$,
 $-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-\text{O}-\text{C}(=\text{O})-\text{N}(\text{R}^9)\text{R}^{10}$ and $-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-\text{SO}_2-\text{N}(\text{R}^9)\text{R}^{10}$,
wherein each R^{10} is independently selected from the group consisting
of R^{11} , $-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-\text{R}^{11}$, $-\text{SO}_2-\text{R}^{11}$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})-\text{R}^{11}$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^{11}$ and $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^9)\text{R}^{11}$, each R^9 is independently selected from the group
consisting of H, $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}$ and
 $(\text{C}_3-\text{C}_7)\text{cycloalkyl}$, and wherein each R^{11} is independently selected
from the group consisting of H, $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}$, $(\text{C}_2-\text{C}_6)\text{alkenyl}$,
 $(\text{C}_2-\text{C}_6)\text{alkynyl}$, $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{haloalkyl}$, $(\text{C}_3-\text{C}_7)\text{cycloalkyl}$, $(\text{C}_6-\text{C}_{20})\text{aryl}$,
heterocycle and heteroaryl,

and wherein any $(\text{C}_6-\text{C}_{20})\text{aryl}$, heterocycle or heteroaryl of R^{1a} is optionally
independently substituted with 1 to 3 Z^{10} groups;

R^{1b} is selected from the group consisting of:

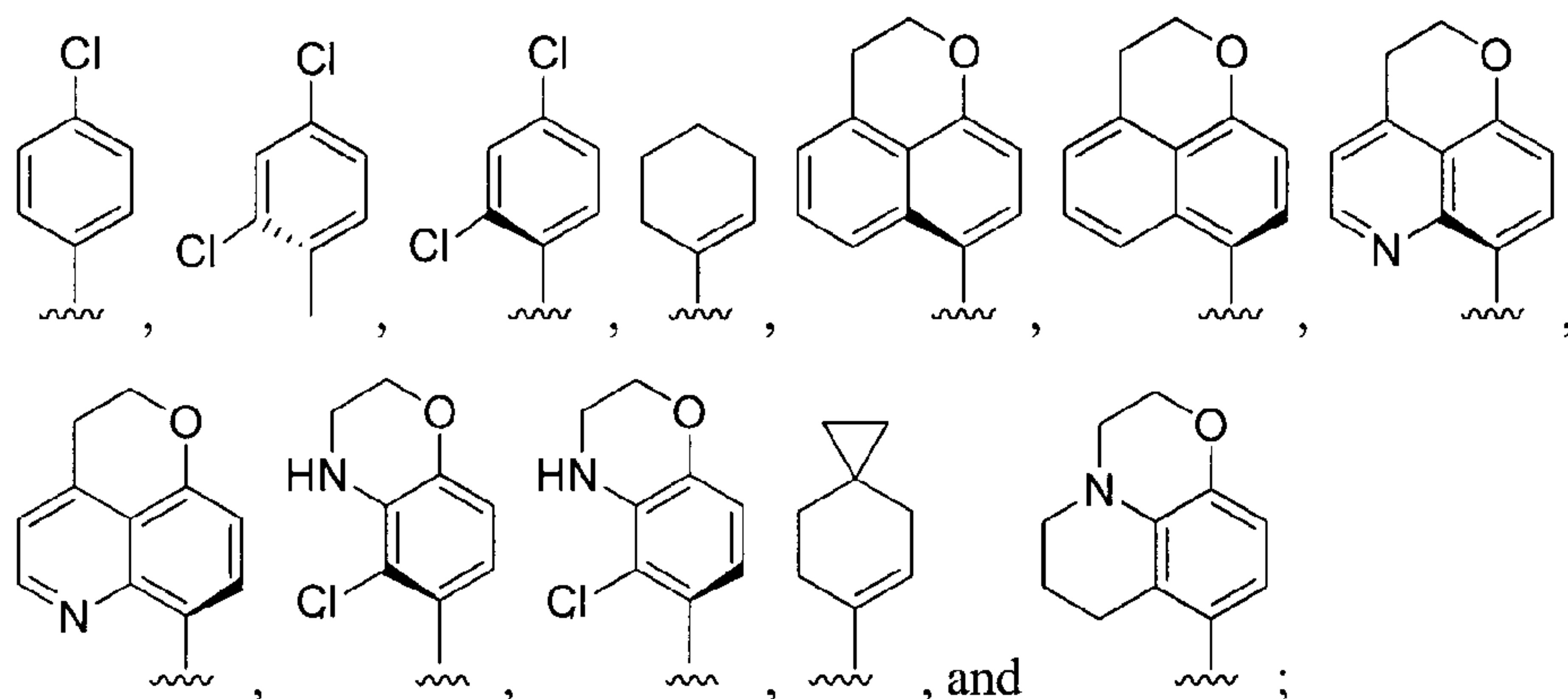
- a) $-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-\text{O}-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-(\text{C}_3-\text{C}_7)\text{carbocycle}$,
 $-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-\text{S}-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-(\text{C}_3-\text{C}_7)\text{carbocycle}$,
 $-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-\text{S}(\text{O})-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-(\text{C}_3-\text{C}_7)\text{carbocycle}$,
 $-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-\text{SO}_2-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-(\text{C}_3-\text{C}_7)\text{carbocycle}$,
 $-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-\text{SO}_2-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-\text{Z}^{13}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-\text{Z}^{13}$,
 $-\text{O}-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-\text{Z}^{13}$, $-\text{S}-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-\text{Z}^{13}$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-\text{Z}^{13}$,
 $-\text{SO}_2-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-\text{Z}^{13}$, $-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-\text{Z}^{14}$,
 $-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-\text{C}(\text{O})-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-\text{Z}^{13}$,
 $-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-\text{C}(\text{O})-\text{O}-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-\text{Z}^{13}$,
 $-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-\text{O}-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-\text{Z}^{13}$, $-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-\text{S}-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-\text{Z}^{13}$,
 $-(\text{C}_2-\text{C}_6)\text{alkenyl}-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{haloalkyl}$, $-(\text{C}_2-\text{C}_6)\text{alkynyl}-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{haloalkyl}$,
 $-(\text{C}_3-\text{C}_7)\text{halocarbocycle}$, $-\text{NR}_a\text{SO}_2\text{NR}_c\text{R}_d$,
 $-\text{NR}_a\text{SO}_2\text{O}-(\text{C}_3-\text{C}_7)\text{carbocycle}$, $-\text{NR}_a\text{SO}_2\text{O}-(\text{C}_6-\text{C}_{20})\text{aryl}$,
 $-(\text{C}_2-\text{C}_6)\text{alkenyl}-(\text{C}_3-\text{C}_7)\text{carbocycle}$, $-(\text{C}_2-\text{C}_6)\text{alkenyl}-(\text{C}_6-\text{C}_{20})\text{aryl}$,
 $-(\text{C}_2-\text{C}_6)\text{alkenyl}-\text{heteroaryl}$, $-(\text{C}_2-\text{C}_6)\text{alkenyl}-\text{heterocycle}$,
 $-(\text{C}_2-\text{C}_6)\text{alkynyl}-(\text{C}_3-\text{C}_7)\text{carbocycle}$, $-(\text{C}_2-\text{C}_6)\text{alkynyl}-(\text{C}_6-\text{C}_{20})\text{aryl}$,

-(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-heteroaryl -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-heterocycle,
 -(C₃-C₇)carbocycle-Z¹ and -halo(C₁-C₆)alkyl-Z³, wherein each
 (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle,
 (C₃-C₇)halocarbo cycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₆-C₂₀)aryl,
 heterocycle and heteroaryl, either alone or as part of a group, is
 optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups;

- b) spiro-bicyclic carbocycle, fused-bicyclic carbocycle and bridged-bicyclic carbocycle, wherein each spiro-bicyclic carbocycle, fused-bicyclic carbocycle and bridged-bicyclic carbocycle is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups, wherein two Z¹ groups together with the atom or atoms to which they are attached optionally form a (C₃-C₇)carbocycle or heterocycle, wherein the (C₃-C₇)carbocycle or heterocycle is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups;
- c) (C₁-C₆)alkyl, wherein (C₁-C₆)alkyl is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z² groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups;
- d) -X(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -X(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -X(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -X(C₂-C₆)alkynyl and -X(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, wherein each X(C₁-C₆)alkyl and X(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z³ groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups, and wherein each X(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, X(C₂-C₆)alkynyl and X(C₃-C₇)carbocycle is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z⁴ groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups;
- e) (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heteroaryl, heterocycle, -X(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -Xheteroaryl and -Xheterocycle, wherein each (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heteroaryl and heterocycle, either alone or as part of a group, is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z⁵ groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups;

- f) (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, and (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, wherein each (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl and (C₂-C₆)alkynyl is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z⁶ groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups; and
- g) -NR_eR_f, -C(O)NR_eR_f, -OC(O)NR_eR_f, -SO₂NR_eR_f, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-NR_eR_f, -(C₁-C₆)alkylC(O)-NR_eR_f, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(O)-NR_eR_f and -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-SO₂NR_eR_f, wherein each (C₁-C₆)alkyl, as part of a group, is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups,

R^{4a} is selected from the group consisting of:



R^{5a} is selected from the group consisting of:

- a) halo, nitro and cyano;
- b) R¹¹, -C(=O)-R¹¹, -C(=O)-O-R¹¹, -O-R¹¹, -S-R¹¹, -S(O)-R¹¹, -SO₂-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-O-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-S-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-S(O)-R¹¹ and -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-SO₂-R¹¹, wherein each R¹¹ is independently selected from the group consisting of H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, wherein each (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 3 Z¹¹ groups;

- c) $-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-C(=O)-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-O-C(=O)-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-SO_2-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-C(=O)-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-C(=O)-N(R^9)R^{10}$, and $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-SO_2-N(R^9)R^{10}$, wherein each R^{10} is independently selected from the group consisting of R^{11} , $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-R^{11}$, $-SO_2-R^{11}$, $-C(=O)-R^{11}$, $-C(=O)OR^{11}$ and $-C(=O)N(R^9)R^{11}$, each R^9 is independently selected from the group consisting of H, $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$ and $(C_3-C_7)cycloalkyl$, and wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from the group consisting of H, $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$, $(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $(C_3-C_7)cycloalkyl$, $(C_6-C_{20})aryl$, heterocycle and heteroaryl;

R^{5b} is selected from the group consisting of:

- a) $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkylS(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_6)carbocycle$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkylSO_2(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $-(C_3-C_7)halocarbocycle$, $-NR_aSO_2NR_cR_d$, $-NR_aSO_2O(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-NR_aSO_2O(C_6-C_{20})aryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-(C_6-C_{20})aryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-heteroaryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-heterocycle$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-(C_6-C_{20})aryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-heteroaryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-heterocycle$, $-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle-Z^1$ and $-halo(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^3$, wherein each $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $(C_3-C_7)halocarbocycle$, $(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$, $(C_6-C_{20})aryl$, heterocycle and heteroaryl, either alone or as part of a group, is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^1 groups;
- b) spiro-bicyclic carbocycle, fused-bicyclic carbocycle and bridged-bicyclic carbocycle, wherein each spiro-bicyclic carbocycle, fused-

bicyclic carbocycle and bridged-bicyclic carbocycle is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^1 groups, wherein two Z^1 groups together with the atom or atoms to which they are attached optionally form a (C₃-C₇)carbocycle or heterocycle, wherein the (C₃-C₇)carbocycle or heterocycle is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^1 groups;

- c) (C₁-C₆)alkyl, wherein (C₁-C₆)alkyl is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^2 groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^1 groups;
- d) -X(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -X(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -X(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -X(C₂-C₆)alkynyl and -X(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, wherein each X(C₁-C₆)alkyl and X(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^3 groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^1 groups, and wherein each X(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, X(C₂-C₆)alkynyl and X(C₃-C₇)carbocycle is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^4 groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^1 groups;
- e) (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heteroaryl, heterocycle, -X(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -Xheteroaryl and -Xheterocycle, wherein each (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heteroaryl and heterocycle, either alone or as part of a group, is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^5 groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^1 groups;
- f) (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, and (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, wherein each (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl and (C₂-C₆)alkynyl is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^6 groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^1 groups; and
- g) -NR_eR_f, -C(O)NR_eR_f, -OC(O)NR_eR_f, -SO₂NR_eR_f, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-NR_eR_f, -(C₁-C₆)alkylC(O)-NR_eR_f, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(O)-NR_eR_f and

-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-SO₂NR_eR_f, wherein each (C₁-C₆)alkyl, as part of a group, is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups;

R^{6a} is selected from the group consisting of:

- a) H, halo, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, and (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl;
- b) (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, nitro, cyano, (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl;
- c) -C(=O)-R¹¹, -C(=O)-O-R¹¹, -O-R¹¹, -S-R¹¹, -S(O)-R¹¹, -SO₂-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-O-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-S-R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-S(O)-R¹¹ and -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-SO₂-R¹¹, wherein each R¹¹ is independently selected from the group consisting of H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl; and
- d) -N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -C(=O)-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -O-C(=O)-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -SO₂-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(=O)-N(R⁹)R¹⁰ and -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-SO₂-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, wherein each R¹⁰ is independently selected from the group consisting of R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-R¹¹, -SO₂-R¹¹, -C(=O)-R¹¹, -C(=O)OR¹¹ and -C(=O)N(R⁹)R¹¹, each R⁹ is independently selected from the group consisting of H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl and (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, and wherein each R¹¹ is independently selected from the group consisting of H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl;

and wherein any (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heterocycle or heteroaryl of R^{6a} is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 3 Z¹⁰ groups;

R^{6b} is selected from the group consisting of:

- a) $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$,
 $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$,
 $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$,
 $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-SO_2-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$,
 $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$,
 $-halo(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-NR_aSO_2NR_cR_d$,
 $-NR_aSO_2O(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-NR_aSO_2O(C_6-C_{20})aryl$,
 $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-(C_6-C_{20})aryl$,
 $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-heteroaryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-heterocycle$,
 $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-(C_6-C_{20})aryl$,
 $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-heteroaryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-heterocycle$,
 $-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle-Z^1$ and $-halo(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^3$, wherein each
 $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$,
 $(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$, $(C_6-C_{20})aryl$, heterocycle and heteroaryl, either
alone or as part of a group, is optionally independently substituted
with 1 to 5 Z^1 groups;
- b) spiro-bicyclic carbocycle, fused-bicyclic carbocycle and bridged-bicyclic carbocycle, wherein each spiro-bicyclic carbocycle, fused-bicyclic carbocycle and bridged-bicyclic carbocycle is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^1 groups, wherein two Z^1 groups together with the atom or atoms to which they are attached optionally form a carbocycle or heterocycle wherein the carbocycle or heterocycle is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^1 groups;
- c) $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, wherein $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$ is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^2 groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^1 groups;
- d) $-X(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $-X(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $-X(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$,
 $-X(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$ and $-X(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, wherein each $X(C_1-C_6)alkyl$ and $X(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$ is independently substituted with 1

to 5 Z^3 groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^1 groups, and wherein each $X(C_2-C_6)$ alkenyl, $X(C_2-C_6)$ alkynyl and $X(C_3-C_7)$ carbocycle is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^4 groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^1 groups;

- e) (C_6-C_{20}) aryl, heteroaryl, heterocycle, $-X(C_6-C_{20})$ aryl, $-X$ heteroaryl and $-X$ heterocycle, wherein each (C_6-C_{20}) aryl, heteroaryl and heterocycle, either alone or as part of a group, is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^5 groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^1 groups;
- f) (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl, (C_3-C_7) carbocycle, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl, and (C_2-C_6) alkynyl, wherein each (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl, (C_3-C_7) carbocycle, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl and (C_2-C_6) alkynyl is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^6 groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^1 groups; and
- g) $-NR_eR_f$, $-C(O)NR_eR_f$, $-OC(O)NR_eR_f$, $-SO_2NR_eR_f$, $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- NR_eR_f , $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl $C(O)-NR_eR_f$, $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- $O-C(O)-NR_eR_f$ and $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- $SO_2NR_eR_f$ wherein each (C_1-C_6) alkyl, as part of a group, is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^1 groups;

R^{7a} is selected from the group consisting of:

- a) H, halo, (C_1-C_6) alkyl and (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl;
- b) (C_2-C_6) alkenyl, (C_2-C_6) alkynyl, (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl, nitro, cyano, (C_6-C_{20}) aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl;
- c) $-C(=O)-R^{11}$, $-C(=O)-O-R^{11}$, $-O-R^{11}$, $-S-R^{11}$, $-S(O)-R^{11}$, $-SO_2-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- R^{11} , $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- $C(=O)-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- $C(=O)-O-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- $O-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- $S-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- $S(O)-R^{11}$ and $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- SO_2-R^{11} , wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from the group consisting of H,

(C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl; and

- d) -N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -C(=O)-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -O-C(=O)-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -SO₂-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(=O)-N(R⁹)R¹⁰ and -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-SO₂-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, wherein each R¹⁰ is independently selected from the group consisting of R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-R¹¹, -SO₂-R¹¹, -C(=O)-R¹¹, -C(=O)OR¹¹ and -C(=O)N(R⁹)R¹¹, each R⁹ is independently selected from the group consisting of H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl and (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, and wherein each R¹¹ is independently selected from the group consisting of H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl,

and wherein any (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heterocycle or heteroaryl of R^{7a} is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 3 Z¹⁰ groups;

R^{7b} is selected from the group consisting of:

- a) -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-SO₂-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-Z¹³, -C(O)-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-Z¹³, -O-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-Z¹³, -S-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-Z¹³, -S(O)-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-Z¹³, -SO₂-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-Z¹³, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-Z¹⁴, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(O)-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-Z¹³, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(O)-O(C₁-C₆)alkyl-Z¹³, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-Z¹³, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-S-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-Z¹³, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-S-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-S(O)-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-SO₂-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl-(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -(C₃-C₇)halocarbo-
 cycle, -NR_aSO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -NR_aSO₂O(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl-(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl-(C₆-C₂₀)aryl,

- (C₂-C₆)alkenyl-heteroaryl, -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl-heterocycle,
 -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-(C₆-C₂₀)aryl,
 -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-heteroaryl, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-heterocycle,
 -(C₃-C₇)carbocycle-Z¹ and -halo(C₁-C₆)alkyl-Z³, wherein each
 (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle,
 (C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₆-C₂₀)aryl,
 heterocycle and heteroaryl, either alone or as part of a group, is
 optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups;
- b) spiro-bicyclic carbocycle, fused-bicyclic carbocycle and bridged-bicyclic carbocycle, wherein each spiro-bicyclic carbocycle, fused-bicyclic carbocycle and bridged-bicyclic carbocycle is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups, wherein two Z¹ groups together with the atom or atoms to which they are attached optionally form a (C₃-C₇)carbocycle or heterocycle, wherein the (C₃-C₇)carbocycle or heterocycle is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups;
- c) (C₁-C₆)alkyl, wherein (C₁-C₆)alkyl is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z² groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups;
- d) -X(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -X(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -X(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -X(C₂-C₆)alkynyl and -X(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, wherein each X(C₁-C₆)alkyl and X(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z³ groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups, and wherein each X(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, X(C₂-C₆)alkynyl and X(C₃-C₇)carbocycle is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z⁴ groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups;
- e) (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heteroaryl, heterocycle, -X(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -Xheteroaryl and -Xheterocycle, wherein each (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heteroaryl and heterocycle, either alone or as part of a group, is independently

substituted with 1 to 5 Z^5 groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^1 groups;

- f) (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl and (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, wherein each (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl and (C₂-C₆)alkynyl is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^6 groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^1 groups; and
- g) -NR_eR_f, -C(O)NR_eR_f, -OC(O)NR_eR_f, -SO₂NR_eR_f, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-NR_eR_f, -(C₁-C₆)alkylC(O)-NR_eR_f, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(O)-NR_eR_f and -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-SO₂NR_eR_f, wherein each (C₁-C₆)alkyl is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^1 groups;

or any of R^{5a} and R^{6a} or R^{6a} and R^{7a}, together with the atoms to which they are attached form a 5 or 6-membered carbocycle or a 4, 5, 6 or 7-membered heterocycle, wherein the 5 or 6-membered carbocycle or the 4, 5, 6 or 7-membered heterocycle is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halo, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, -OH, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -SH, -S(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -NH₂, -NH(C₁-C₆)alkyl and -N((C₁-C₆)alkyl)₂;

or any of R⁵ and R⁶ or R⁶ and R⁷, together with the atoms to which they are attached form a 5 or 6-membered carbocycle or a 4, 5, 6 or 7-membered heterocycle, wherein each 5 or 6-membered carbocycle or 4, 5, 6 or 7-membered heterocycle is independently substituted with 1 to 3 Z^7 or Z^8 groups, wherein when two Z^7 groups are on same atom the two Z^7 groups together with the atom to which they are attached optionally form a (C₃-C₇)carbocycle or 4, 5 or 6-membered heterocycle;

X is independently selected from the group consisting of O, -C(O)-, -C(O)O-, -S-, -S(O)-, -SO₂-, -(C₁-C₆)alkylO-, -(C₁-C₆)alkylC(O)-, -(C₁-C₆)alkylC(O)O-, -(C₁-C₆)alkylS-, -(C₁-C₆)alkylS(O)- and -(C₁-C₆)alkylSO₂-;

each Z^1 is independently selected from the group consisting of halo, $-NO_2$, $-OH$, $=NOR_a$, $-SH$, $-CN$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$, $-(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_3-C_7)halocarbocycle$, $-(C_6-C_{20})aryl$, $-heteroaryl$, $-heterocycle$, $-O(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $-O(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $-O(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$, $-O(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $-O(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-O(C_3-C_7)halocarbocycle$, $-O(C_6-C_{20})aryl$, $-Oheteroaryl$, $-Oheterocycle$, $-S(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $-S(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $-S(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$, $-S(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $-S(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-S(C_3-C_7)halocarbocycle$, $-S(C_6-C_{20})aryl$, $-Sheteroaryl$, $-Sheterocycle$, $-S(O)(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $-S(O)(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $-S(O)(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$, $-S(O)(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $-S(O)(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-S(O)(C_3-C_7)halocarbocycle$, $-SO_2(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $-S(O)(C_6-C_{20})aryl$, $-S(O)carbocycle$, $-S(O)heteroaryl$, $-S(O)heterocycle$, $-SO_2(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $-SO_2(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$, $-SO_2(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $-SO_2(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-SO_2(C_3-C_7)halocarbocycle$, $-SO_2(C_6-C_{20})aryl$, $-SO_2heteroaryl$, $-SO_2heterocycle$, $-SO_2NR_cR_d$, $-NR_cR_d$, $-NR_aC(O)R_a$, $-NR_aC(O)OR_a$, $-NR_aC(O)NR_cR_d$, $-NR_aSO_2R_b$, $-NR_aSO_2NR_cR_d$, $-NR_aSO_2O(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-NR_aSO_2O(C_6-C_{20})aryl$, $-OS(O)_2R_a$, $-C(O)R_a$, $-C(O)OR_b$, $-C(O)NR_cR_d$, and $-OC(O)NR_cR_d$, wherein any $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$, $-(C_3-C_7)halocarbocycle$, $(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $(C_3-C_7)halocarbocycle$, $(C_6-C_{20})aryl$, $heteroaryl$ and $heterocycle$ of Z^1 , either alone or as part of a group, is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 halogen, $-OH$, $-OR_b$, $-CN$, $-NR_aC(O)_2R_b$, $heteroaryl$, $heterocycle$, $-Oheteroaryl$, $-Oheterocycle$, $-NHheteroaryl$, $-NHheterocycle$, or $-S(O)_2NR_cR_d$;

each Z^2 is independently selected from the group consisting of $-NO_2$, $-CN$, spiro-heterocycle, bridged-heterocycle, spiro-bicyclic carbocycle, bridged-bicyclic carbocycle, $NR_aSO_2(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-NR_aSO_2(C_6-C_{20})aryl$, $-NR_aSO_2heteroaryl$, $-NR_aSO_2NR_cR_d$, $-NR_aSO_2O(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$ and $-NR_aSO_2O(C_6-C_{20})aryl$;

each Z^3 is independently selected from the group consisting of $-NO_2$, $-CN$, $-OH$, oxo, $=NOR_a$, thioxo, $-(C_6-C_{20})aryl$, $-heterocycle$, $-heteroaryl$,

-(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -Ohalo(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -O(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -Oheterocycle, -Oheteroaryl, -S(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -S(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -S(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -Sheterocycle, -Sheteroaryl, -S(O)(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(O)(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -S(O)(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -S(O)(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -S(O)heterocycle, -S(O)heteroaryl, -SO₂(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -SO₂(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -SO₂(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, SO₂(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -SO₂heterocycle, -SO₂heteroaryl, -NR_aR_b, -NR_aC(O)R_b, -C(O)NR_cR_d, -SO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle and -NR_aSO₂O(C₆-C₂₀)aryl;

each Z⁴ is independently selected from the group consisting of halogen,

-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -halo(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -NO₂, -CN, -OH, oxo, =NOR_a, thioxo, -(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -heterocycle, -heteroaryl, -(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -O(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -O(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -Oheterocycle, -Oheteroaryl, -S(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -S(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -S(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -Sheterocycle, -Sheteroaryl, -S(O)(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(O)(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -S(O)(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -S(O)(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -S(O)heterocycle, -S(O)heteroaryl, -SO₂(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -SO₂(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -SO₂(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, SO₂(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -SO₂heterocycle, -SO₂heteroaryl, -NR_aR_b, -NR_aC(O)R_a, -C(O)NR_cR_d, -SO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle and -NR_aSO₂O(C₆-C₂₀)aryl;

each Z⁵ is independently selected from the group consisting of -NO₂, -CN,

-NR_aSO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -NR_aSO₂O(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -NR_aSO₂(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -NR_aSO₂(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -NR_aSO₂(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, -NR_aSO₂(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -NR_aSO₂(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -NR_aSO₂(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -NR_aSO₂heteroaryl, -NR_aSO₂heterocycle, -NR_aC(O)alkyl, -NR_aC(O)alkenyl, -NR_aC(O)alkynyl, -NR_aC(O)(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -NR_aC(O)(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle,

-NR_aC(O) (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -NR_aC(O)heteroaryl, -NR_aC(O)heterocycle,
NR_aC(O)NR_cR_d and NR_aC(O)OR_b;

each Z⁶ is independently selected from the group consisting of -NO₂, -CN, -NR_aR_a,
NR_aC(O)R_b, -C(O)NR_cR_d, -(C₃-C₇)halocarboxy, -(C₆-C₂₀)aryl,
-heteroaryl, -heterocycle, -O(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -Oheteroaryl, -Oheterocycle,
-O(C₃-C₇)halocarboxy, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-(C₁-C₆)alkyl,
-O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -Ohalo(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -Sheteroaryl,
-Sheterocycle, -S(C₃-C₇)halocarboxy, -S(C₁-C₆)alkyl,
-S(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -S(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -S(O)(C₆-C₂₀)aryl,
-S(O)heteroaryl, -S(O)heterocycle, -S(O)(C₃-C₇)halocarboxy,
-S(O)(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(O)(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -S(O)halo(C₁-C₆)alkyl,
-SO₂(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -SO₂heteroaryl, -SO₂heterocycle, -SO₂(C₁-C₆)alkyl,
-SO₂halo(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -SO₂(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -SO₂(C₃-C₇)halocarboxy,
-SO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂(C₃-C₇)halocarboxy, -NR_aSO₂(C₆-C₂₀)aryl,
-NR_aSO₂heteroaryl, -NR_aSO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle and
-NR_aSO₂O(C₆-C₂₀)aryl;

each Z⁷ is independently selected from the group consisting of -NO₂, =NOR_a, -CN,
-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-Z¹², -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl-Z¹², -(C₂-C₆)alkenylOH,
-(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-Z¹², -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-OH, -(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl-Z¹²,
-(C₁-C₆)haloalkylOH, -(C₃-C₇)carbocycle-Z¹², -(C₃-C₇)carbocycleOH,
-(C₃-C₇)halocarboxy, -(C₁-C₆)alkylNR_cR_d, -(C₁-C₆)alkylNR_aC(O)R_a,
-(C₁-C₆)alkylNR_aSO₂R_a, -(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -heteroaryl, -heterocycle,
-O(C₁-C₆)alkyl-Z¹², -O(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -O(C₂-C₆)alkynyl,
-O(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -O(C₃-C₇)halocarboxy,
-O(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -O(C₁-C₆)alkylNR_cR_d, -O(C₁-C₆)alkylNR_aC(O)R_a,
-O(C₁-C₆)alkylNR_aSO₂R_a, -Oheteroaryl, -Oheterocycle, -S(C₁-C₆)alkyl-Z¹²,
-S(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -S(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, -S(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl,
-S(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -S(C₃-C₇)halocarboxy, -S(C₁-C₆)alkylNR_cR_d,
-S(C₁-C₆)alkylNR_aC(O)R_a, -S(C₁-C₆)alkylNR_aSO₂R_a, -S(C₆-C₂₀)aryl,
-Sheteroaryl, -Sheterocycle, -S(O)(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(O)(C₂-C₆)alkenyl,
-S(O)(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, -S(O)(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -S(O)(C₃-C₇)carbocycle,

-S(O)(C₃-C₇)halocarboxy, -SO₂(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(O)(C₁-C₆)alkylNR_cR_d,
 -S(O)(C₁-C₆)alkylNR_aC(O)R_a, -S(O)(C₁-C₆)alkylNR_aSO₂R_a,
 -S(O)(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -S(O)heteroaryl, -S(O)heterocycle, -SO₂(C₁-C₆)alkyl,
 -SO₂(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -SO₂(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, -SO₂(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl,
 -SO₂(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -SO₂(C₃-C₇)halocarboxy, -SO₂(C₆-C₂₀)aryl,
 -SO₂heteroaryl, -SO₂heterocycle, -SO₂(C₁-C₆)alkylNR_cR_d,
 -SO₂(C₁-C₆)alkylNR_aC(O)R_a, -SO₂(C₁-C₆)alkylNR_aSO₂R_a, -SO₂NR_cR_d,
 -NR_aC(O)OR_b, -NR_aC(O)NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂R_b, -NR_aSO₂NR_cR_d,
 -NR_aSO₂O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -NR_aSO₂O(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -OS(O)₂R_a,
 -C(O)NR_cR_d, and -OC(O)NR_cR_d, wherein any (C₁-C₆)alkyl,
 (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle,
 (C₃-C₇)halocarboxy, (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heteroaryl and heterocycle of Z⁷, either
 alone or as part of a group, is optionally independently substituted with 1 to
 5 halogen, -OH, -OR_b, -CN, -NR_aC(O)₂R_b, -heteroaryl, -heterocycle, -
 Oheteroaryl, -Oheterocycle, -NHheteroaryl, -NHheterocycle, or
 -S(O)₂NR_cR_d;

each Z⁸ is independently selected from the group consisting of -NO₂ and -CN;

each Z⁹ is independently selected from the group consisting of -(C₁-C₆)alkyl and
 -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl;

each Z¹¹ is independently selected from the group consisting of Z¹⁰, -C(=O)-NH₂, -
 C(=O)-NH(C₁-C₄)alkyl, -C(=O)-N((C₁-C₄)alkyl)₂, -C(=O)-(C₆-C₂₀)aryl,
 -C(=O)-heterocycle and -C(=O)-heteroaryl;

each Z¹⁰ is independently selected from the group consisting of:

- i) halo, oxo, thioxo, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl,
 (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl,
 (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-, -OH, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl,
 -O(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl,
 -SH, -S(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -SO(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -SO₂(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -NH₂,
 -NH(C₁-C₆)alkyl and -N((C₁-C₆)alkyl)₂;

- ii) (C₁-C₆)alkyl optionally independently substituted with -OH, -O-(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, or -O-(C₁-C₆)alkyl; and
- iii) (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, which each (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl is optionally independently substituted with halo, (C₁-C₆)alkyl or COOH;

each Z¹² is independently selected from the group consisting of -NO₂, =NOR_a, thioxo, -(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -heterocycle, -heteroaryl, -(C₃-C₇)halocarbo-
 cycle, -(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -Ohalo(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -O(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -Oheterocycle, -Oheteroaryl, -S(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -Shalo(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -S(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -Sheterocycle, -Sheteroaryl, -S(O)(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(O)(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -S(O)halo(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -S(O)(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -S(O)heterocycle, -S(O)heteroaryl, -SO₂(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -SO₂(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -SO₂(C₃-C₇)halocarbo-
 cycle, SO₂(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -SO₂heterocycle, -SO₂heteroaryl, -NR_aR_a, -NR_aC(O)R_b, -C(O)NR_cR_d, -SO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle and -NR_aSO₂O(C₆-C₂₀)aryl;

each Z¹³ is independently selected from the group consisting of -NO₂, -OH, =NOR_a, -SH, -CN, -(C₃-C₇)halocarbo-
 cycle, -O(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -O(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -O(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, -O(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -O(C₃-C₇)halocarbo-
 cycle, -O(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -Oheteroaryl, -Oheterocycle, -S(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -S(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, -S(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -S(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -S(C₃-C₇)halocarbo-
 cycle, -S(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -Sheteroaryl, -Sheterocycle, -S(O)(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -S(O)(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -S(O)(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, -S(O)(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -S(O)(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -S(O)(C₃-C₇)halocarbo-
 cycle, -S(O)(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -S(O)heteroaryl, -S(O)heterocycle, -SO₂(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -SO₂(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -SO₂(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, -SO₂(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, -SO₂(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -SO₂(C₃-C₇)halocarbo-
 cycle, -SO₂(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -SO₂heteroaryl, -SO₂heterocycle, -SO₂NR_cR_d, -NR_cR_d, -NR_aC(O)R_a, -NR_aC(O)OR_b, -NR_aC(O)NR_cR_d, -NR_aSO₂R_b, -NR_aSO₂NR_cR_d,

-NR_aSO₂O(C₃-C₇)carbocycle, -NR_aSO₂O(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, -OS(O)₂R_a, -C(O)R_a,
 -C(O)OR_b, -C(O)NR_cR_d, and -OC(O)NR_cR_d, wherein any
 (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl,
 (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heteroaryl and
 heterocycle of Z¹³, either alone or as part of a group, is optionally
 independently substituted with 1 to 5 halogen, -OH, -OR_b, -CN,
 -NR_aC(O)₂R_b, -heteroaryl, -heterocycle, -Oheteroaryl, -Oheterocycle,
 -NHheteroaryl, -NHheterocycle, or -S(O)₂NR_cR_d;

each Z¹⁴ is independently selected from the group consisting of -NO₂, =NOR_a, -CN,
 -(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -O(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle,
 -S(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -S(O)(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle,
 -SO₂(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -NR_aSO₂NR_cR_d,
 -NR_aSO₂O(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle, -NR_aSO₂O(C₆-C₂₀)aryl and -OS(O)₂R_a,
 wherein any -(C₃-C₇)halocarbocycle of Z¹⁴, either alone or as part of a
 group, is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 halogen, -OH,
 -OR_b, -CN, -NR_aC(O)₂R_b, -heteroaryl, -heterocycle, -Oheteroaryl,
 -Oheterocycle, -NHheteroaryl, -NHheterocycle, or -S(O)₂NR_cR_d;

each R_a is independently H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl,
 (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, heterocycle, (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, (C₆-C₂₀)aryl(C₁-C₆)alkyl-,
 heteroaryl or heteroaryl(C₁-C₆)alkyl-, wherein any (C₁-C₆)alkyl,
 (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, heterocycle,
 (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, or heteroaryl of R_a, either alone or as part of a group, is
 optionally independently substituted by 1 to 5 halogen, OH or cyano;

each R_b is independently -(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl,
 (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, heterocycle, (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, (C₆-C₂₀)aryl(C₁-C₆)alkyl-,
 heteroaryl or heteroaryl(C₁-C₆)alkyl-; wherein any (C₁-C₆)alkyl,
 -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, heterocycle,
 (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, or heteroaryl of R_b, either alone or as part of a group, is
 optionally independently substituted by 1 to 5 halogen, OH or cyano;

R_c and R_d are each independently selected from the group consisting of H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, (C₆-C₂₀)aryl(C₁-C₆)alkyl-, heterocycle, heteroaryl and heteroaryl(C₁-C₆)alkyl-, wherein any (C₁-C₆)alkyl, -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl, -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, heterocycle, (C₆-C₂₀)aryl and heteroaryl of R_c or R_d, either alone or as part of a group, is optionally independently substituted by 1 to 5 halogen, OH or cyano; or R_c and R_d together with the nitrogen to which they are attached form a heterocycle, wherein any heterocycle of R_c and R_d together with the nitrogen to which they are attached is optionally independently substituted by 1 to 5 halogen, OH or cyano;

each R_e is independently selected from the group consisting of -OR_a, (C₁-C₆)alkyl and (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, wherein each (C₁-C₆)alkyl and (C₃-C₇)carbocycle is independently substituted by 1 to 5 Z⁶ and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹, -(C₂-C₆)haloalkyl, -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl and -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl, wherein each -(C₂-C₆)haloalkyl, -(C₂-C₆)alkenyl and -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹; and (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl wherein each (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl is independently substituted by 1 to 5 Z⁵;

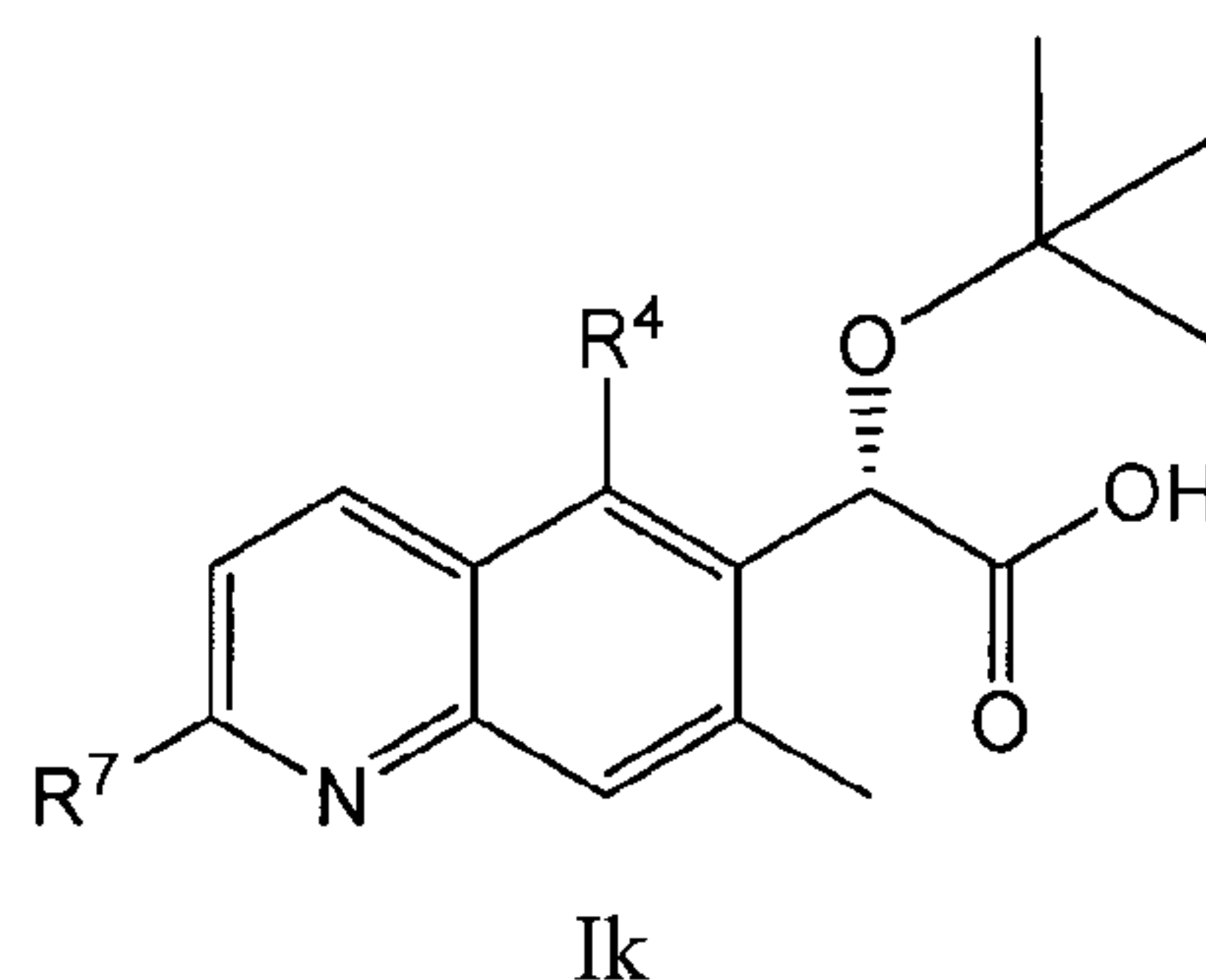
each R_f is independently selected from the group consisting of -R_g, -OR_a, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-Z⁶, -SO₂R_g, -C(O)R_g, C(O)OR_g and -C(O)NR_eR_g; and

each R_g is independently selected from the group consisting of H, -OR_a, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, wherein any (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle -(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl of R_g is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z₁ groups;

wherein each heteroaryl has 1 to 6 carbon atoms and 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from the group consisting of oxygen, nitrogen and sulfur, and each heterocycle has 1 to 6 carbon

atoms and 1 to 3 heteroatoms selected from the group consisting of oxygen, nitrogen and sulfur.

2. The compound of claim 1, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein R^1 is H.
3. The compound of claim 1 or 2, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein R^6 is H.
4. The compound of any one of claims 1 to 3, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein R^5 is H or (C_1-C_6) alkyl.
5. The compound of claim 1, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, which is a compound of formula Ik



6. The compound of claim 1, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein:
 R^7 is R^{7a} or R^{7b} ;
 R^{7a} is selected from the group consisting of:
 - a) H, halo, (C_1-C_6) alkyl and (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl;
 - b) (C_2-C_6) alkenyl, (C_2-C_6) alkynyl, (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl, nitro, cyano, (C_6-C_{20}) aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl;
 - c) $-C(=O)-R^{11}$, $-C(=O)-O-R^{11}$, $-O-R^{11}$, $-S-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- R^{11} , $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- $C(=O)-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl- $C(=O)-O-R^{11}$,

-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-R¹¹, and -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-S-R¹¹, wherein each R¹¹ is independently selected from the group consisting of H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl; and

- d) -N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -C(=O)-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -O-C(=O)-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, and -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(=O)-N(R⁹)R¹⁰, wherein each R⁹ is independently selected from the group consisting of H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl and (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, each R¹⁰ is independently selected from the group consisting of R¹¹, -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-R¹¹, -C(=O)-R¹¹, and -C(=O)OR¹¹, and wherein each R¹¹ is independently selected from the group consisting of H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl, (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl,

and wherein any (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heterocycle or heteroaryl of R^{7a} is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 3 Z¹⁰ groups;

R^{7b} is selected from the group consisting of:

- a) -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-(C₃-C₇)carbocycle and -(C₂-C₆)alkynyl-(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, wherein each (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, and (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, either alone or as part of a group, is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups;
- d) -X(C₁-C₆)alkyl and -X(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, wherein each -X(C₁-C₆)alkyl and -X(C₁-C₆)haloalkyl is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z³ groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups;
- f) (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl and (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, wherein each (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl and (C₂-C₆)alkynyl is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z⁶ groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups; and

- g) $\text{-NR}_e\text{R}_f$, $\text{-C(O)NR}_e\text{R}_f$, $\text{-OC(O)NR}_e\text{R}_f$, $\text{-(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl-NR}_e\text{R}_f$,
 $\text{-(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkylC(O)-NR}_e\text{R}_f$, and $\text{-(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl-O-C(O)-NR}_e\text{R}_f$,
 wherein each $\text{(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl}$ is optionally independently substituted
 with 1 to 5 Z^1 groups;

X is O;

each Z^1 is independently selected from the group consisting of halo and
 $\text{-(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl}$;

each Z^3 is independently selected from the group consisting of $\text{-(C}_6\text{-C}_{20}\text{)aryl}$ and
 $\text{(C}_3\text{-C}_7\text{)carbocycle}$;

each Z^{11} is independently Z^{10} ;

each Z^{10} is independently selected from the group consisting of halo and
 $\text{(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl}$;

each R_e is independently $\text{(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl}$ independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^6 ;

each Z^6 is independently selected from the group consisting of $\text{-(C}_6\text{-C}_{20}\text{)aryl}$,
 -heteroaryl , -heterocycle , and $\text{-O(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl-O-(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl}$; and

each R_f is H.

7. The compound of claim 1, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein:

R^7 is R^{7a} or R^{7b} ;

R^{7a} is selected from the group consisting of:

- a) H, $\text{(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl}$ and $\text{(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)haloalkyl}$;
- b) $\text{(C}_2\text{-C}_6\text{)alkenyl}$, $\text{(C}_2\text{-C}_6\text{)alkynyl}$, $\text{(C}_3\text{-C}_7\text{)cycloalkyl}$, $\text{(C}_6\text{-C}_{20}\text{)aryl}$,
 heterocycle and heteroaryl;
- c) -C(=O)-R^{11} , -C(=O)-O-R^{11} , -O-R^{11} , $\text{-(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl-R}^{11}$, and
 $\text{-(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl-O-R}^{11}$, wherein each R^{11} is independently selected
 from the group consisting of H, $\text{(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl}$, $\text{(C}_3\text{-C}_7\text{)cycloalkyl}$,
 $\text{(C}_6\text{-C}_{20}\text{)aryl}$, and heterocycle; and

- d) $-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-C(=O)-N(R^9)R^{10}$, and $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-N(R^9)R^{10}$, wherein each R^9 is independently selected from the group consisting of H, $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$ and $(C_3-C_7)cycloalkyl$, each R^{10} is independently selected from the group consisting of R^{11} and $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-R^{11}$, and wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from the group consisting of H, $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $(C_3-C_7)cycloalkyl$, $(C_6-C_{20})aryl$, heterocycle and heteroaryl,

and wherein any $(C_6-C_{20})aryl$, heterocycle or heteroaryl of R^{7a} is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 2 Z^{10} groups;

R^{7b} is selected from the group consisting of:

- a) $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$ and $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-(C_6-C_{20})aryl$;
b) $-X(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, wherein $-X(C_1-C_6)alkyl$ is substituted with 1 Z^3 group;
c) $(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$ substituted with 1 Z^6 group; and
d) $-NR_eR_f$;

X is O;

each Z^1 is independently selected from the group consisting of halo and $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl$;

each Z^3 is independently selected from the group consisting of $-(C_6-C_{20})aryl$ and $(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$;

each Z^{11} is independently Z^{10} ;

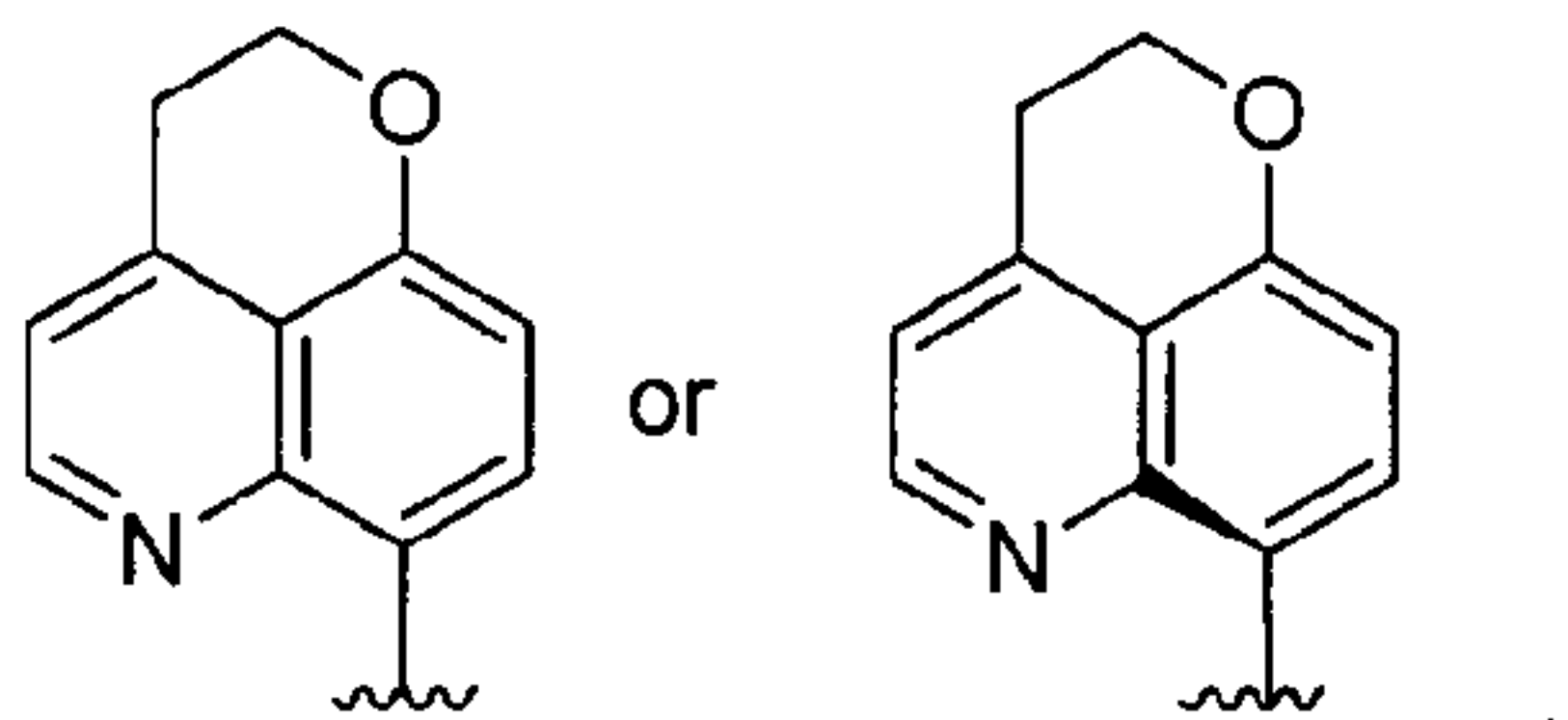
each Z^{10} is independently selected from the group consisting of halo and $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$;

each R_e is independently $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$ independently substituted with 1 Z^6 ;

each Z^6 is independently selected from the group consisting of $-(C_6-C_{20})aryl$, -heteroaryl, -heterocycle, and $-O(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-(C_1-C_6)alkyl$; and

each R_f is H.

8. The compound of any one of claims 1 to 7, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein R^4 is:



9. The compound of any one of claims 1 to 8, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein R^7 is selected from the group consisting of:

- a) H, halo, (C_1-C_6) alkyl and (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl;
- b) (C_2-C_6) alkenyl, (C_2-C_6) alkynyl, (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl, nitro, cyano, (C_6-C_{20}) aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, wherein each (C_6-C_{20}) aryl, heterocycle or heteroaryl is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 3 Z^{10} groups;
- c) $-C(=O)-R^{11}$, $-C(=O)-O-R^{11}$, $-O-R^{11}$, $-S-R^{11}$, $-S(O)-R^{11}$, $-SO_2-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-C(=O)-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-C(=O)-O-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S-R^{11}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S(O)-R^{11}$ and $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-SO_2-R^{11}$, wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from the group consisting of H, (C_1-C_6) alkyl, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl, (C_2-C_6) alkynyl, (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl, (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl, (C_6-C_{20}) aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, wherein each (C_6-C_{20}) aryl, heterocycle or heteroaryl is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 3 Z^{10} groups;
- d) $-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-C(=O)-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-O-C(=O)-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-SO_2-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-C(=O)-N(R^9)R^{10}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-C(=O)-N(R^9)R^{10}$ and $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-SO_2-N(R^9)R^{10}$, wherein each R^9 is independently selected from H, (C_1-C_6) alkyl and (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl, and each R^{10} is independently selected from the group consisting of R^{11} , $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-R^{11}$, $-SO_2-R^{11}$, $-C(=O)-R^{11}$, $-C(=O)OR^{11}$ and $-C(=O)N(R^9)R^{11}$, wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from the group consisting of H, (C_1-C_6) alkyl, (C_2-C_6) alkenyl, (C_2-C_6) alkynyl, (C_1-C_6) haloalkyl, (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl, (C_6-C_{20}) aryl, heterocycle and heteroaryl, wherein each (C_6-C_{20}) aryl, heterocycle or heteroaryl is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 3 Z^{10} groups;

e) $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-SO_2-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-C(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-O-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-S-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-S(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-SO_2-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{14}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-C(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-C(O)-O(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^{13}$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-S(O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-SO_2-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $-(C_3-C_7)halocarbocycle$, $-NR_aSO_2NR_cR_d$, $-NR_aSO_2O(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-NR_aSO_2O(C_6-C_{20})aryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-(C_6-C_{20})aryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-heteroaryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkenyl-heterocycle$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-(C_6-C_{20})aryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-heteroaryl$, $-(C_2-C_6)alkynyl-heterocycle$, $-(C_3-C_7)carbocycle-Z^1$ and $-halo(C_1-C_6)alkyl-Z^3$, wherein each $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$, $(C_6-C_{20})aryl$, heterocycle and heteroaryl, either alone or as a group, is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^1 groups;

f) $-X(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $X(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $X(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $-X(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$ and $-X(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, wherein each $X(C_1-C_6)alkyl$ and $X(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$ is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^3 groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^1 groups, and wherein each $X(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$, $-X(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$ and $-X(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$ is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^4 groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^1 groups;

g) $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, wherein $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$ is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^2 groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^1 groups;

h) $(C_6-C_{20})aryl$, heteroaryl, heterocycle, $-X(C_6-C_{20})aryl$, $-Xheteroaryl$ and $-Xheterocycle$, wherein each $(C_6-C_{20})aryl$, heteroaryl and heterocycle, either alone or as part of a group, is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^5 groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^1 groups;

i) $(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$ and $(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$, wherein each $(C_1-C_6)haloalkyl$, $(C_3-C_7)carbocycle$, $(C_2-C_6)alkenyl$ and $(C_2-C_6)alkynyl$ is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^6 groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^1 groups; and

j) $-\text{NR}_e\text{R}_f$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}_e\text{R}_f$, $-\text{OC}(\text{O})\text{NR}_e\text{R}_f$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NR}_e\text{R}_f$, $-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-\text{NR}_e\text{R}_f$, $-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkylC}(\text{O})-\text{NR}_e\text{R}_f$, $-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-\text{O}-\text{C}(\text{O})-\text{NR}_e\text{R}_f$ and $-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-\text{SO}_2\text{NR}_e\text{R}_f$, wherein each $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}$ is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^1 groups.

10. The compound of any one of claims 1 to 9, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein R^7 is selected from the group consisting of:

- a) H , $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}$ and $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{haloalkyl}$;
- b) $(\text{C}_2-\text{C}_6)\text{alkenyl}$, $(\text{C}_2-\text{C}_6)\text{alkynyl}$, $(\text{C}_3-\text{C}_7)\text{cycloalkyl}$, $(\text{C}_6-\text{C}_{20})\text{aryl}$, heterocycle and heteroaryl, wherein each $(\text{C}_6-\text{C}_{20})\text{aryl}$, heterocycle or heteroaryl is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 3 Z^{10} groups;
- c) $-\text{C}(=\text{O})-\text{O}-\text{R}^{11}$, $-\text{O}-\text{R}^{11}$, $-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-\text{R}^{11}$ and $-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-\text{O}-\text{R}^{11}$, wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from the group consisting of H , $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}$, $(\text{C}_2-\text{C}_6)\text{alkenyl}$, $(\text{C}_2-\text{C}_6)\text{alkynyl}$, $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{haloalkyl}$, $(\text{C}_3-\text{C}_7)\text{cycloalkyl}$, $(\text{C}_6-\text{C}_{20})\text{aryl}$, heterocycle and heteroaryl, wherein each $(\text{C}_6-\text{C}_{20})\text{aryl}$, heterocycle or heteroaryl is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 3 Z^{10} groups;
- d) $-\text{N}(\text{R}^9)\text{R}^{10}$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})-\text{N}(\text{R}^9)\text{R}^{10}$, $-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-\text{N}(\text{R}^9)\text{R}^{10}$, wherein each R^9 is independently selected from the group consisting of H , $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}$ and $(\text{C}_3-\text{C}_7)\text{cycloalkyl}$, and each R^{10} is independently selected from the group consisting of R^{11} , $-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-\text{R}^{11}$, $-\text{SO}_2-\text{R}^{11}$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})-\text{R}^{11}$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^{11}$ and $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^9)\text{R}^{11}$, each R^9 is independently selected from the group consisting of H , $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}$ and $(\text{C}_3-\text{C}_7)\text{cycloalkyl}$, and wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from the group consisting of H , $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}$, $(\text{C}_2-\text{C}_6)\text{alkenyl}$, $(\text{C}_2-\text{C}_6)\text{alkynyl}$, $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{haloalkyl}$, $(\text{C}_3-\text{C}_7)\text{cycloalkyl}$, $(\text{C}_6-\text{C}_{20})\text{aryl}$, heterocycle and heteroaryl, wherein each $(\text{C}_6-\text{C}_{20})\text{aryl}$, heterocycle or heteroaryl is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 3 Z^{10} groups;
- e) $-(\text{C}_2-\text{C}_6)\text{alkynyl}-(\text{C}_3-\text{C}_7)\text{carbocycle}$ and $-(\text{C}_2-\text{C}_6)\text{alkynyl}-(\text{C}_6-\text{C}_{20})\text{aryl}$, wherein each $-(\text{C}_2-\text{C}_6)\text{alkynyl}-(\text{C}_3-\text{C}_7)\text{carbocycle}$ and $-(\text{C}_2-\text{C}_6)\text{alkynyl}-(\text{C}_6-\text{C}_{20})\text{aryl}$ is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^1 groups;
- f) $-\text{X}(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}$, wherein $-\text{X}(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}$ is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^3 groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z^1 groups, and wherein X is O ;

- g) (C₁-C₆)alkyl, wherein (C₁-C₆)alkyl is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z² groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups;
- h) (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heteroaryl and heterocycle, wherein each (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, heteroaryl and heterocycle is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z⁵ groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups;
- i) (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl and (C₂-C₆)alkynyl, wherein each (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, (C₃-C₇)carbocycle, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl and (C₂-C₆)alkynyl is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z⁶ groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups; and
- j) -NR_eR_f, -C(O)NR_eR_f and -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-NR_eR_f, wherein -(C₁-C₆)alkyl-NR_eR_f is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups.

11. The compound of any one of claims 1 to 10, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein R⁷ is selected from the group consisting of:

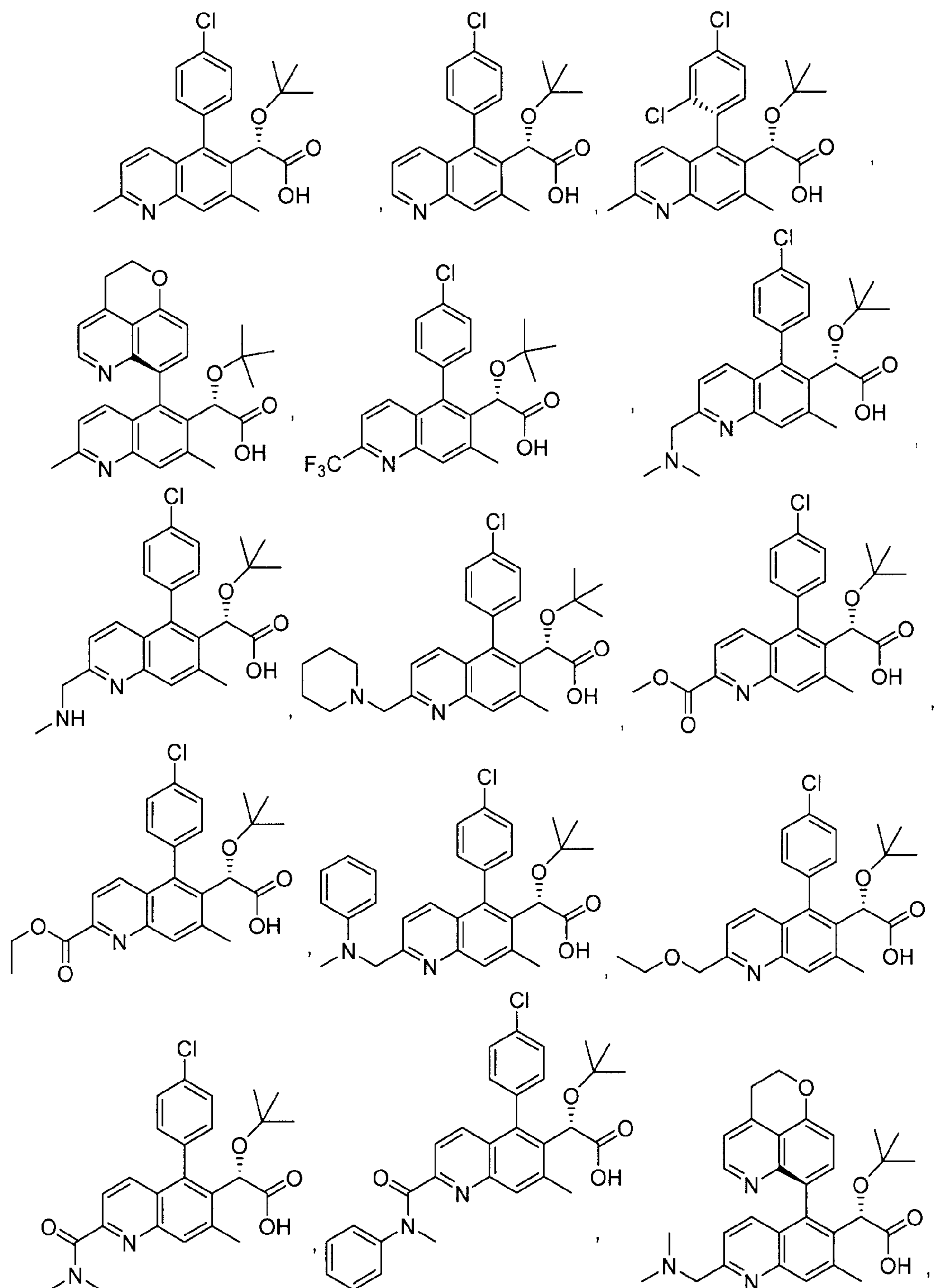
- a) H, (C₁-C₆)alkyl and (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl;
- b) (C₂-C₆)alkynyl and (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, wherein each (C₆-C₂₀)aryl is optionally independently substituted with 1 to 3 Z¹⁰ groups;
- c) (C₁-C₆)alkyl, wherein (C₁-C₆)alkyl is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z² groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups;
- d) (C₆-C₂₀)aryl, wherein (C₆-C₂₀)aryl is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z⁵ groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups; and
- e) (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, wherein (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z⁶ groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups.

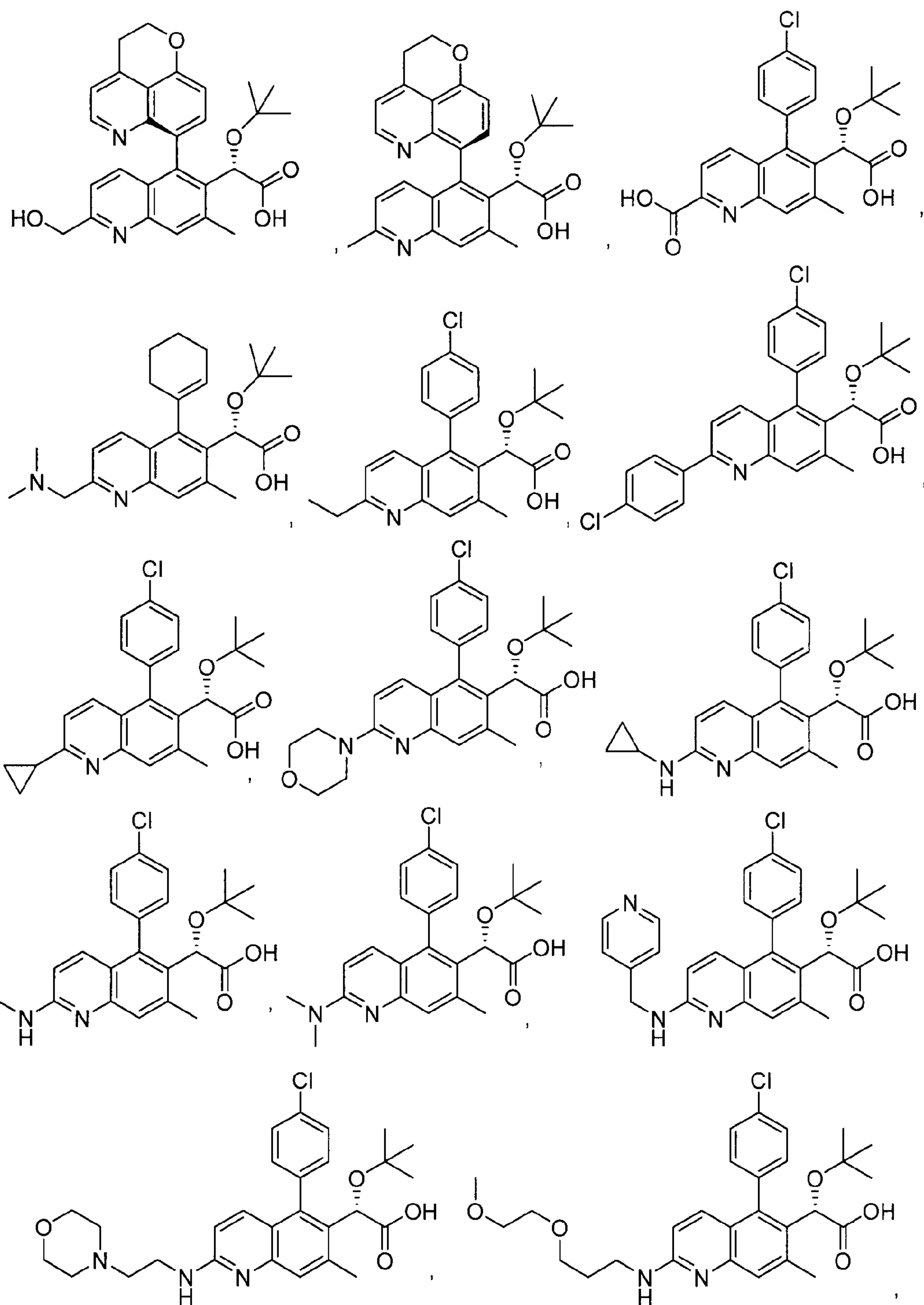
12. The compound of any one of claims 1 to 11, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein R⁷ is selected from the group consisting of:

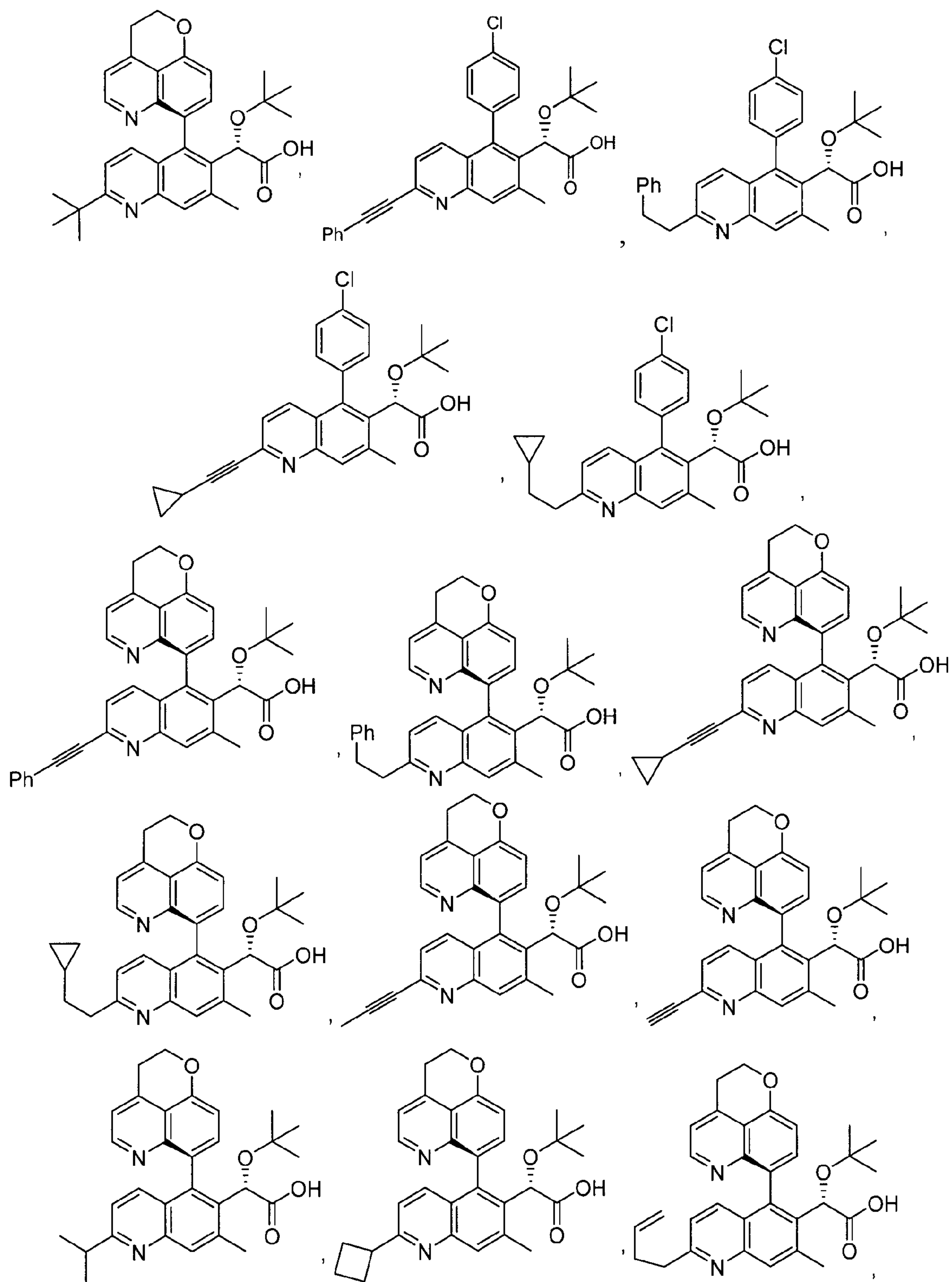
- a) (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl; and
- b) (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl, wherein (C₁-C₆)haloalkyl is independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z⁶ groups and optionally independently substituted with 1 to 5 Z¹ groups.

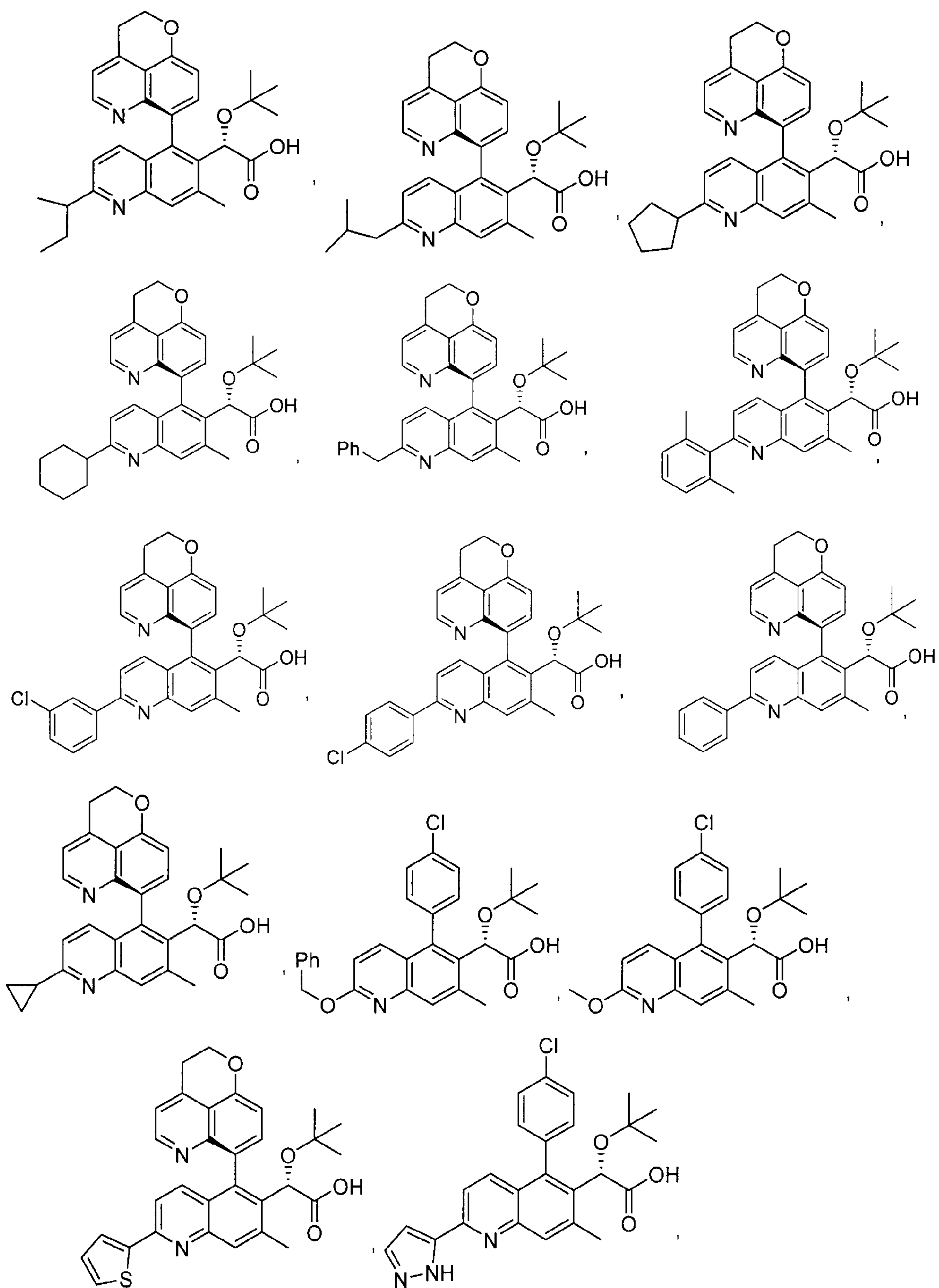
H, C, HO, C(C)(C)C, C1CC1, c1ccccc1, CC(C)C, CC(C)C, C=CC, c1ccccc1,
F, F, C1CCC1, C1CCCC1, C1CC1, C1CCCCC1, CC(C)C, C(F)(F)F, CC, CN, CN,
c1ccccc1, CCOC, C1CCNCC1, CCO, CCOC(=O)C, CN(C)C(=O)C, CCOC(=O)C,
CN(C)C(=O)c1ccccc1, OC(=O)C, CC(=O)C, C1CC1, CN, CN, CN, CNCCc1cccnc1, CNCCN1CCOCC1,
COCCOCCN, C1CCNCC1, C1CCN1, CC(C)C, CN, CN, CCOC,
c1ccccc1, C#C, C#C, C1CC1, c1ccccc1, c1ccccc1, Clc1ccccc1,
Clc1ccc(cc1), c1ccccc1, c1ccsc1, c1cc[nH]c1, c1ccnnc1, c1cccnc1, c1ccncc1, c1cc[nH]c1,
c1cc[nH]c1, c1ccncc1, c1ccnnc1, c1ccnnc1, c1ccnnc1, c1ccnnc1, c1ccnnc1, c1ccnnc1,
c1ccnnc1, CCOC1CC1 or CC(O)C.

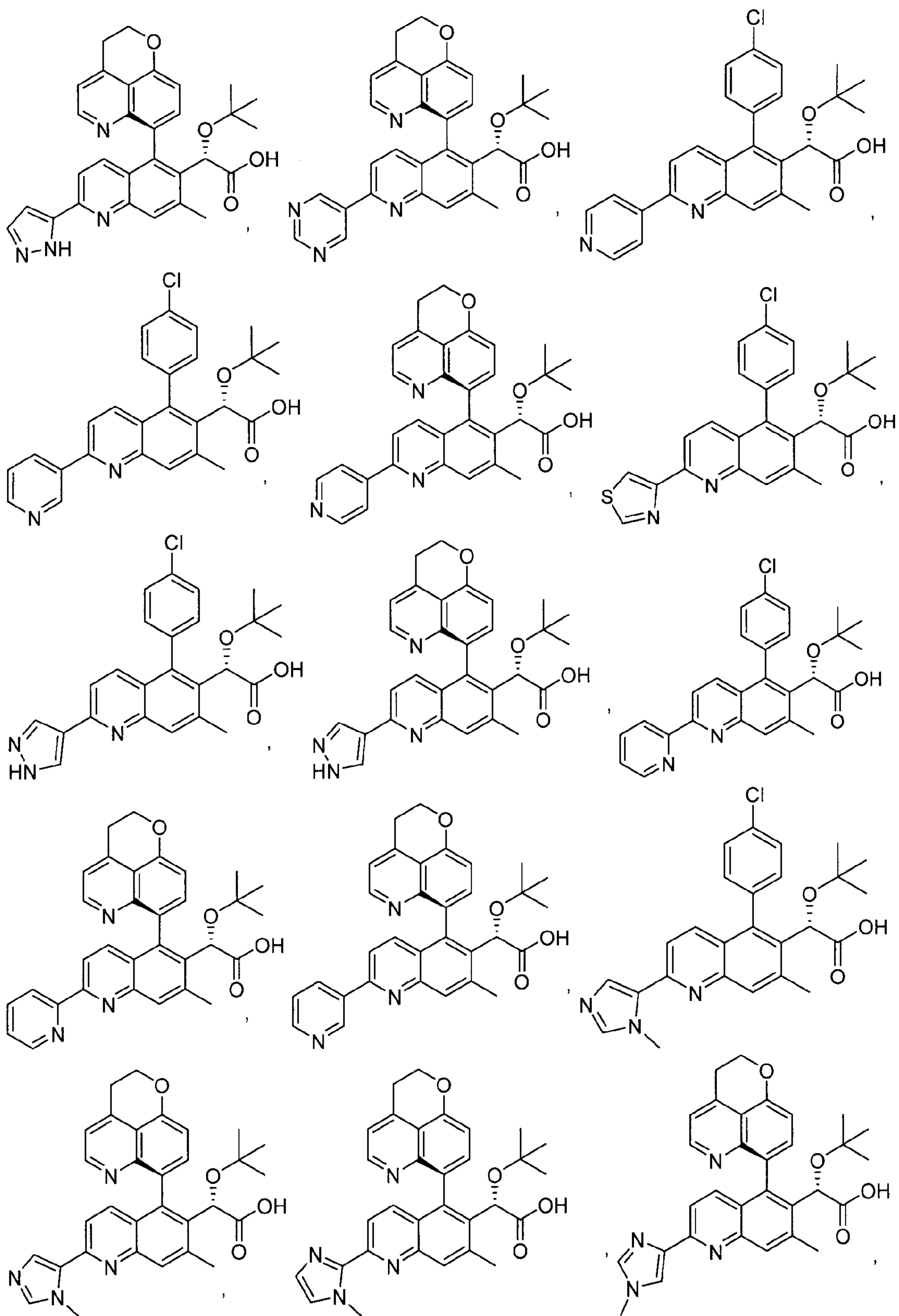
14. The compound of claim 1, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, selected from the group consisting of:

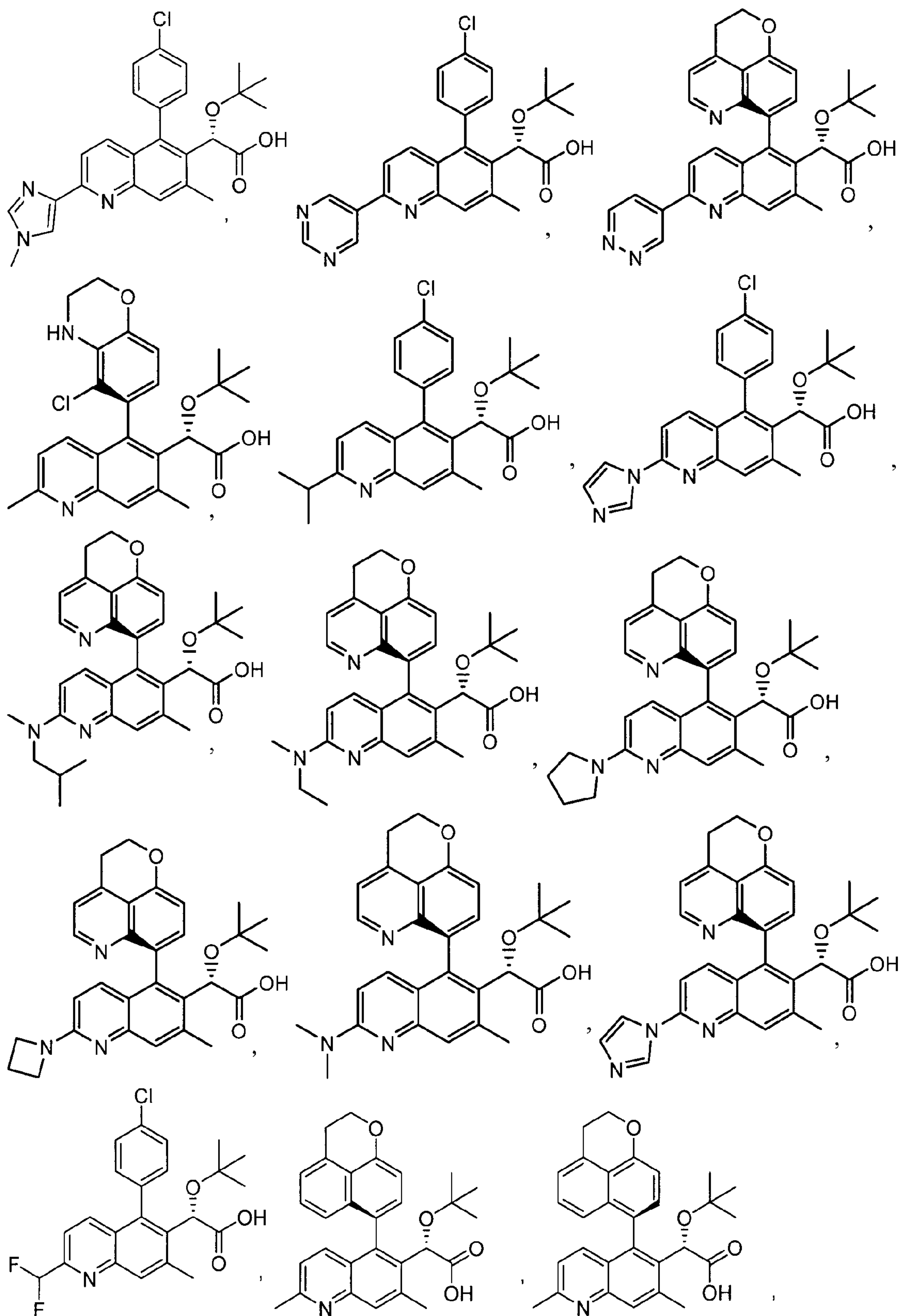


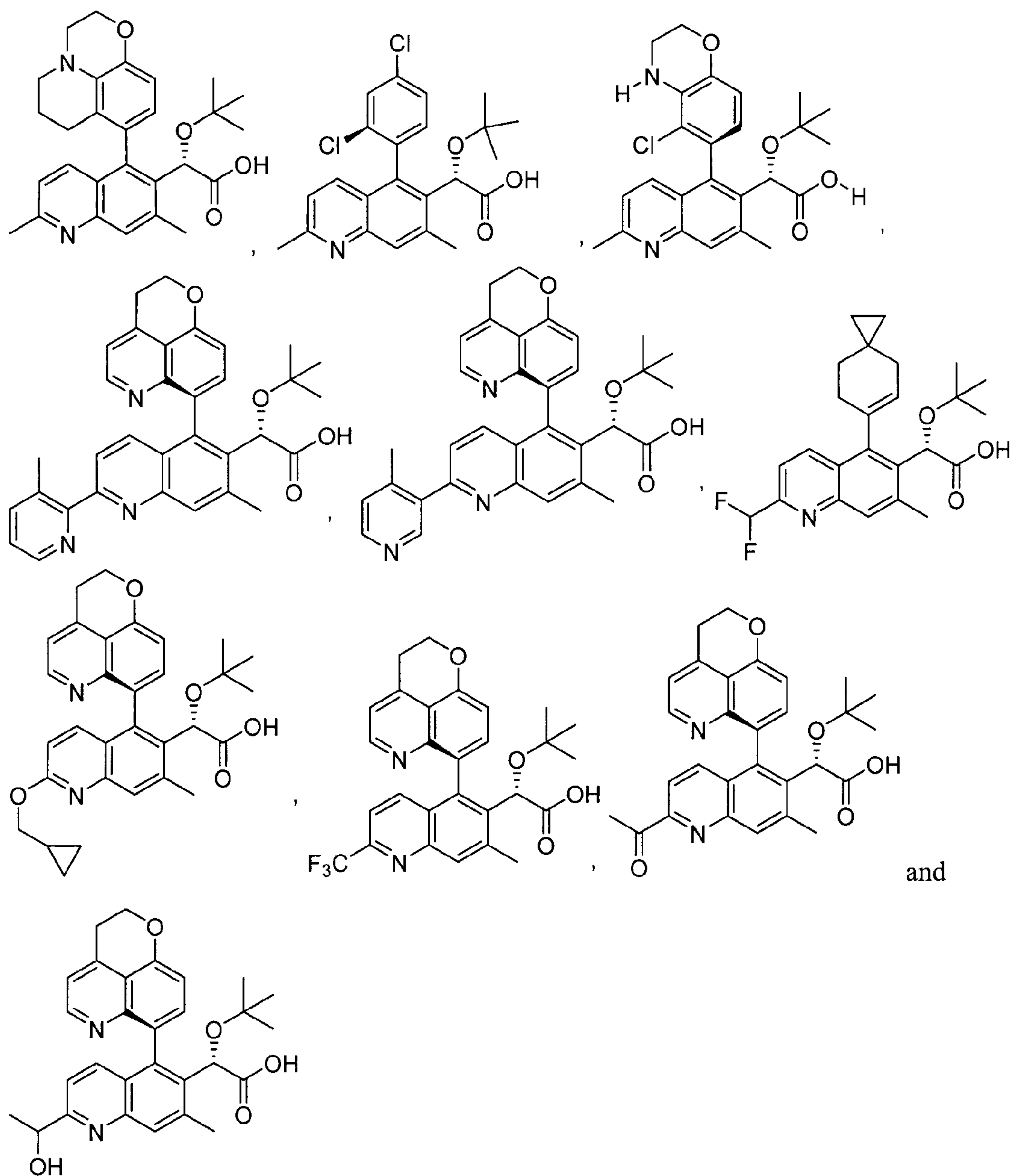












15. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a compound as defined in any one of claims 1 to 14, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, in combination with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

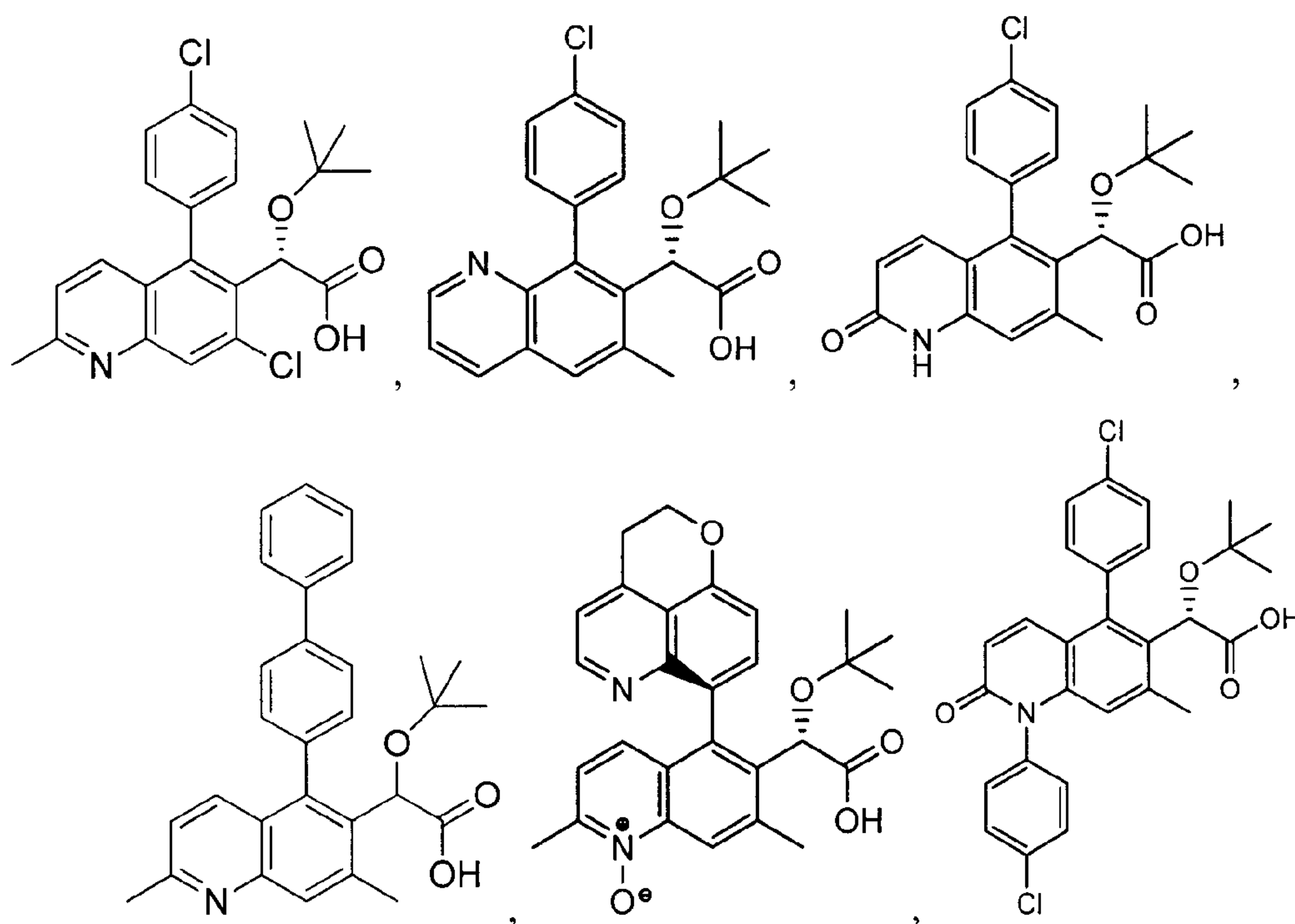
16. Use of a compound as defined in any one of claims 1 to 14, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, or a composition as defined in claim 15 for treating the proliferation

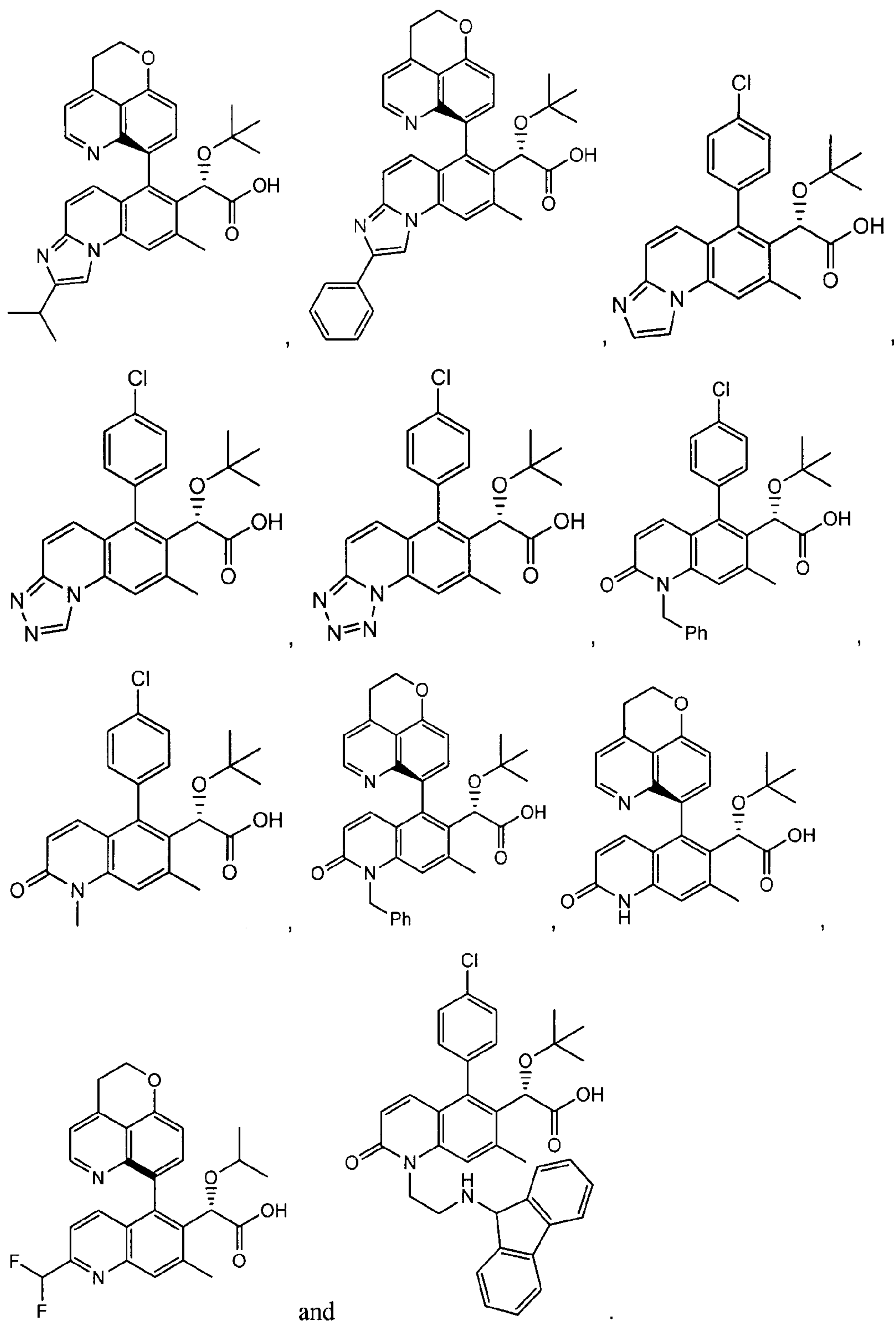
of the HIV virus, treating AIDS or delaying the onset of AIDS or ARC symptoms in a mammal.

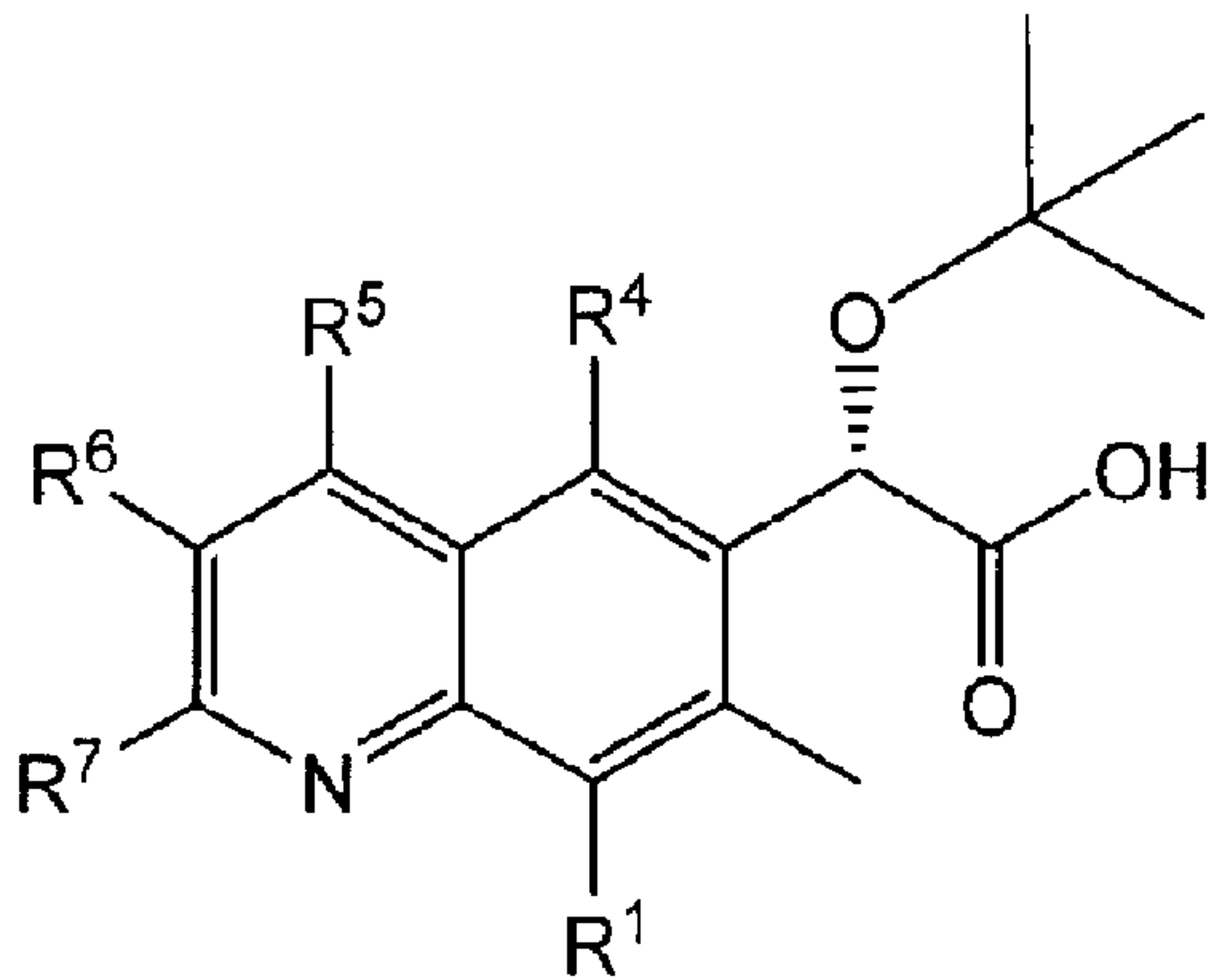
17. A compound as defined in any one of claims 1 to 14 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, for use in the prophylactic or therapeutic treatment of the proliferation of the HIV virus or AIDS or for use in the therapeutic treatment of delaying the onset of AIDS or ARC symptoms.

18. Use of a compound as defined in any one of claims 1 to 14 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, for the manufacture of a medicament for treating the proliferation of the HIV virus, treating AIDS or delaying the onset of AIDS or ARC symptoms in a mammal.

19. A compound, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, selected from the group consisting of:







Ih